Contact Information

Forescout Technologies, Inc.
190 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134 USA

https://www.forescout.com/support/
Toll-Free (US): 1.866.377.8771
Tel (Intl): 1.408.213.3191
Support: 1.708.237.6591

About the Documentation

- Refer to the Resources page on the Forescout website for additional technical documentation: https://www.forescout.com/company/resources/
- Have feedback or questions? Write to us at documentation@forescout.com

Legal Notice

© 2019 Forescout Technologies, Inc. All rights reserved. Forescout Technologies, Inc. is a Delaware corporation. A list of our trademarks and patents can be found at https://www.forescout.com/company/legal/intellectual-property-patents-trademarks. Other brands, products, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of their respective owners.
# Table of Contents

**Preface**

- About This Guide ....................................................................................................... 19
- Additional Forescout Documentation ................................................................. 21
  - Documentation Downloads ............................................................................ 22
  - Documentation Portal ................................................................................... 22
  - Forescout Help Tools .................................................................................... 23

**Chapter 1: Welcome to Forescout**

- About Forescout 8.1 .................................................................................. 25
  - Real-Time Network Visibility ....................................................................... 25
  - Policy-Initiated or Manual Control ............................................................... 26
  - Comprehensive Third-Party Orchestration ............................................... 27
  - On-Demand Asset Intelligence ..................................................................... 27
- Forescout Components .................................................................................. 28
  - The Appliance ............................................................................................ 29
  - The Enterprise Manager ............................................................................ 30
  - Virtual Systems ......................................................................................... 30
- Forescout User Interfaces ........................................................................... 30
  - The Forescout Console ............................................................................ 30
  - Forescout Web Portals .............................................................................. 32
- Help Tools ...................................................................................................... 32
  - Console Help Buttons .................................................................................. 32
  - Forescout Help ............................................................................................ 33
  - Feature Dialog Box Descriptions ................................................................. 33
  - On-Screen Troubleshooting ......................................................................... 33
  - Documentation Portal .................................................................................. 35
  - Plugin/Module Configuration Help ............................................................... 35
- Log In to the Forescout Console .................................................................. 36
- Forgot Your Password?  .................................................................................. 39
  - Reset an Admin Password .......................................................................... 39

**Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard**

- About the Initial Setup Wizard ................................................................. 42
  - Before You Begin .......................................................................................... 42
  - Update Wizard Settings ............................................................................... 43
- Setup Scenarios .............................................................................................. 43
- Set Up an Appliance from Scratch .............................................................. 43
  - Welcome ..................................................................................................... 43
  - Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program .................................. 44
  - License (Forescout Virtual Systems Only, Per-Appliance Licensing Mode) ....... 45
  - Time .......................................................................................................... 47
  - Mail ........................................................................................................... 48
  - User Directory ............................................................................................ 49
  - Domain Credentials .................................................................................... 51
  - Authentication Servers ............................................................................... 52
Table of Contents

Internal Network ........................................................................................................53
Enforcement Mode ......................................................................................................54
Channels .....................................................................................................................54
Switch .........................................................................................................................58
Policies .........................................................................................................................60
Inventory ......................................................................................................................62
Finish ............................................................................................................................64

Set Up an Appliance with Enterprise Manager Settings .............................................64
Assign IP Addresses ..................................................................................................66
Finish ............................................................................................................................67

Set Up an Enterprise Manager from Scratch ..............................................................67
Set Up an Enterprise Manager with Appliance Settings ..............................................68
Finish ............................................................................................................................69

When You Are Done ....................................................................................................70
Review Console and Assets Portal Access Assignments ..............................................70
Set Up Segments ...........................................................................................................70
Set Up Segment Properties ..........................................................................................71
Set Up Ignored IP Addresses .......................................................................................71
Review, Run and Edit Pre-Defined Template Policies ...............................................71
Set Up HTTP Redirection for Policies ........................................................................72
Set Up a Threat Protection Policy and Define Legitimate Traffic for Threat Protection Policies .......................................................................................................................72
Review Asset Inventory Items and Create Lists .........................................................72
Set Up Map Locations ..................................................................................................73

Chapter 3: Working in the Console ............................................................................74
About the Console .........................................................................................................75
Console Components ....................................................................................................75
Title Bar .......................................................................................................................75
Menu Bar ......................................................................................................................76
Toolbar – Console Views ..............................................................................................76
Status Bar .......................................................................................................................79

Console Searches .........................................................................................................80
Wildcard Searches .........................................................................................................81

Working in the Site Map ..............................................................................................81
Enable or Disable the Map .............................................................................................83
Set Up the Map – Create Site Locations ......................................................................83
Customize Display Thresholds for Map Indicators .....................................................85
Map Tools .....................................................................................................................87

Working with Forescout Detections ............................................................................90
Home Views ................................................................................................................92

Working in the Detections Pane ..................................................................................95
Track Endpoints Using the Detections Pane Filter ......................................................95
Configure the Detections Pane Columns .....................................................................96
View Table Tooltip Information ..................................................................................98
Control Endpoints from the Detections Pane .............................................................99

Working in the Filters Pane .........................................................................................106
Working with Asset Inventory Detections ....................................................................107
How the Asset Inventory Is Learned .........................................................................108
### Table of Contents

Filtering the View ................................................................. 110
Asset Inventory Panes ............................................................ 111
Customizing the Asset Inventory .............................................. 114
View Lists and Values Associated with an Asset Inventory Item ............................................................................. 117
Use Inventory Detections to Create Powerful Policies .......................................................... 118

Working with Forescout Segments .............................................. 119
Work with the Segments Manager ............................................ 119
Importing and Exporting the Segment Tree .................................. 122

Working with Organizational Units ........................................... 124
Add an Organizational Unit .................................................... 125
Add/Remove Segments from Organizational Units .................... 126

Working with Forescout Groups .................................................. 127
Work with the Group Manager .................................................. 128

Creating an Ignored IP Address List ............................................. 131
Restricting Endpoint Inspection ................................................... 131

Getting More Information about Endpoints .................................. 132
Details Pane .............................................................................. 132
Host Log .................................................................................... 140
Assets Portal .............................................................................. 142

Working with the Forescout Compliance Center ........................... 142
Using the Compliance Center vs. Policies .................................. 143
What Endpoint Users See ......................................................... 143
Access the Compliance Center from the Endpoint ....................... 145
Exit the Console ........................................................................ 145

#### Chapter 4: Policy Management .......................................................... 146
What Is a Policy? ........................................................................ 147
How Policies Are Structured ..................................................... 147

Working with Policies ............................................................... 148
When Are Policies Run? ............................................................. 148
View Detected Endpoints in the Console ..................................... 149
Using Groups ............................................................................ 154
Broaden the Scope – Plugins and eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules) ......................................................... 154
Basic Policy Rollout Tips ........................................................... 154
Policy Priorities ........................................................................ 155
How Forescout 8.1 Handles Endpoint Identity Changes ................ 156
Stop the Policy from the Appliance ............................................. 156
View and Manage Endpoints ..................................................... 157

The Policy Manager ..................................................................... 159
Policy Manager Tools ............................................................... 159
Working with the Policy Manager .............................................. 161

Create a Custom Policy ............................................................... 165
Naming Tips .............................................................................. 167
Define Policy Scope .................................................................... 168
Defining a Policy Main Rule ....................................................... 170
Defining Policy Sub-Rules .......................................................... 172
Advanced Policy Options ........................................................... 174
Main Rule Advanced Options .................................................... 174
Sub-Rule Advanced Options ...................................................... 178
### Policy Preferences
- Defining Authentication Servers ................................................................. 182
- HTTP Preferences ....................................................................................... 183
- Customizing HTTP Pages ........................................................................... 190
- Email Preferences ...................................................................................... 191
- Customizing Endpoint Identity Change Thresholds and Detection Mechanisms .............................................................................. 192
- Time Settings ............................................................................................. 193
- HTTP Login Attempts ................................................................................ 195

### Property Lists
- Categorizing Policies .................................................................................. 197

### Policy Reports and Logs
- Policies Summary ....................................................................................... 199
- Policy Logs ................................................................................................. 199

### Policy Safety Features
- Working with Action Thresholds ............................................................. 202
- Handling Irresolvable Criteria ................................................................ 209
- Handling Criteria Defined as Empty Lists ................................................. 210
- Misconfigured Add to Group Policy .......................................................... 211

### Chapter 5: Policy Templates ..................................................................... 212
- Working with Policy Templates ................................................................. 213
- Creating Policies Using Templates – Basics .............................................. 213
- Tips for Rolling Out Templates .................................................................. 216
- Template Structure .................................................................................... 217

### Primary Classification Template
- About Classification .................................................................................. 218
- Replacing Asset Classification Policies ...................................................... 218
- Template Classification Groups .................................................................. 219
- Properties Resolved by a Primary Classification Policy ............................... 220
- Prerequisites ............................................................................................... 221
- Create a Primary Classification Policy .......................................................... 221
- How Devices Are Inspected – Policy Scope ............................................... 223
- How Devices Are Classified – Policy Conditions ......................................... 224
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions ................. 225
- Use an Action to Assign a Classification ...................................................... 225
- Fine-Tune the Classification Mechanism ...................................................... 227

### Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis Template ........................................ 228
- Prerequisites ............................................................................................... 229
- Using the Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis Template ....................... 229
- Which Devices Are Inspected – Policy Scope .............................................. 230
- How Devices Are Classified and Compared – Policy Condition ................. 231
- Compare Classification Results ................................................................... 232
- Stop the Migration Classification Policy ....................................................... 232
- Upgrade the Classification Version ............................................................. 233

### Mobile Classification Template
- About the Mobile Classification Template .................................................. 233
- Prerequisites ............................................................................................... 234
- Create a Mobile Classification Policy .......................................................... 234
- How Forescout 8.1 Detects Mobile Devices – Policy Condition ....................... 235
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manually Assigning a Classification</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Device Classification Template</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the External Device Classification Template</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an External Device Classification Policy</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Machine Classification Template</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the Virtual Machine Template</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a Virtual Machine Policy</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Forescout 8.1 Detects Virtual Machines – Policy Condition</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Forescout 8.1 Handles Virtual Machines – Policy Actions</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive Learning Mode Template</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the Passive Learning Mode Template</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a Passive Learning Mode Policy</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive Learning Sub-Rules</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate/Guest Control Template</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the Corporate/Guest Control Template</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deploying a Corporate/Guest Control Policy</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About Corporate/Guest Classification</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a Corporate/Guest Control Policy</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Guests Are Handled</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Guest Registration Options</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What If Authentication Values Change?</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Disk Drive Compliance Template</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the External Disk Drive Compliance Template</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an External Disk Drive Compliance Policy</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detect Authorized External Disk Drives</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detect External Disk Drives – Policy Sub-Rules</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Forescout 8.1 Handles Noncompliant External Disk Drives – Policy Actions</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall Endpoint Compliance Template</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the Overall Endpoint Compliance Template</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an Overall Endpoint Compliance Policy</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required and Restricted Applications Panes</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detect Compliance Status – Policy Condition</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Forescout 8.1 Handles Noncompliant Devices – Policy Actions</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance Notification at Endpoint</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual Compliance Templates</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Update Compliance Template</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the Windows Update Compliance Template</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the Windows Update Compliance Policy</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detect Noncompliant Windows Endpoints – Policy Condition</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Forescout 8.1 Handles Windows Hosts – Policy Actions</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macintosh Update Compliance Template</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the Macintosh Update Compliance Template</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of Contents

- Prerequisites ................................................................. 272
- Create a Macintosh Update Compliance Policy .................. 272
- Detect Noncompliant Macintosh Endpoints – Policy Condition ... 273
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Macintosh Hosts – Policy Actions ... 274
- Threats Templates ............................................................ 274
  - About the Threats Templates ........................................ 275
  - Prerequisites ............................................................. 275
  - Create a Threats Policy ............................................... 275
  - Malicious Hosts Template .......................................... 276
  - ARP Spoofing Template ........................................... 278
  - Impersonation Template ........................................... 280
  - Dual Homed Template ............................................... 282
- Track Changes Templates .................................................. 285
  - About the Track Changes Templates ............................. 285
  - Prerequisites ............................................................. 285
  - Create a Track Changes Policy ..................................... 285
  - How a Change Is Detected – Policy Condition ............... 287
  - How a Change Is Handled – Policy Actions .................. 288
  - How to Modify a Condition – Advanced Settings .......... 288
- New TCP/IP Port Template ................................................ 288
  - About the New TCP/IP Port Template .......................... 289
  - Prerequisites ............................................................. 289
  - Create a New TCP/IP Port Policy ................................. 289
  - Detect Endpoints with New TCP/IP Ports – Policy Condition ... 290
  - How Endpoints with New TCP/IP Ports Are Handled – Policy Actions ... 291

## Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions ........................................... 292

- About Policy Conditions .................................................. 293
  - What Is a Policy Condition? ................................. 293
  - Meeting Condition Criteria ................................ 294
  - Condition Shortcuts ................................................. 294
  - Irresolvable Criteria ................................................ 294
  - Case Sensitivity ......................................................... 294
  - Properties ................................................................. 294
  - Property Expression Types ...................................... 295
  - Properties and Scripts .............................................. 295
  - Windows Endpoint Applications Vendor Support .......... 295

- Working with Properties ................................................... 296
  - Properties Delivered with Plugins and eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules) ........................................... 296
  - How Forescout 8.1 Queries Property Values ................. 297
  - Define Properties ...................................................... 297
  - Detect New Vulnerabilities and Newly Supported Vendor Applications ................................. 324
  - Define Custom Conditions ...................................... 324
  - Comparing Property Results .................................. 327

- Defining and Managing Lists .............................................. 328
  - Use a Wizard to Create Lists ..................................... 329
  - Edit and Remove Lists .............................................. 331
  - View Only Lists Generated from the Asset Inventory View ...... 331
  - Create Lists Based on Endpoint Detections .................. 331
  - Use Your Custom Lists ............................................ 332
## Chapter 7: Working with Actions .............................................................. 335

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>About Actions</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions Delivered with Plugins and eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules)</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gradual Action Enforcement</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action Tools</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling and Disabling Actions</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action Schedules</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action Thresholds</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Tags in Actions</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scripts and Interactive Actions</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessing Console Actions</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Working with Actions ........................................................................ 339

### Audit Actions ..................................................................................... 340

### Authenticate Actions ......................................................................... 341

#### HTTP Login                                                        | 341  |
#### HTTP Sign Out                                                     | 363  |

### Classify Actions ............................................................................ 364

#### Set Function Classification                                      | 364  |
#### Set OS Classification                                             | 366  |
#### Set Network Function                                              | 367  |

### Manage Actions ............................................................................... 367

#### Add to Group                                                      | 368  |
#### Add Label                                                         | 369  |
#### Add Value to List                                                 | 370  |
#### Delete Label                                                      | 371  |
#### Delete Host                                                       | 371  |
#### Delete Properties                                                 | 372  |
#### Disable Remote Inspection                                         | 372  |
#### HTTP Localhost Login                                              | 373  |
#### Recheck Host                                                      | 375  |
#### Start SecureConnector / Stop SecureConnector                      | 375  |
#### Upgrade OS X SecureConnector                                      | 380  |
#### Set Counter                                                       | 381  |

### Notify Actions .............................................................................. 381

#### HTTP Notification                                                 | 382  |
#### HTTP Redirection to URL                                           | 384  |
#### Send Balloon Notification                                          | 384  |
#### Send Email                                                        | 385  |
#### Send Email to User                                                | 386  |
#### Send Notification (OS X) Action                                   | 387  |

### Remediate Actions .......................................................................... 387

#### Disable Adapters on Dual Homed Devices                            | 388  |
#### Disable External Devices                                          | 388  |
#### Expedite IP Discovery                                              | 389  |
#### Kill Instant Messaging                                             | 390  |
#### Kill Cloud Storage                                                 | 391  |
#### Kill Peer-to-Peer                                                  | 392  |
#### Kill Process on Linux and Kill Process on Macintosh               | 393  |
#### Kill Process on Windows                                            | 393  |
#### Run Script on Forescout 8.1                                        | 394  |
# Table of Contents

- Run Script on Linux and Run Script on Macintosh .................................................. 395
- Run Script on Windows .......................................................................................... 396
- Set Registry Key on Windows ................................................................................. 398
- Start Antivirus ......................................................................................................... 399
- Start Macintosh Updates ......................................................................................... 400
- Start Windows Updates ......................................................................................... 401
- Update Antivirus ....................................................................................................... 406
- Windows Self Remediation .................................................................................... 407
- Restrict Actions ....................................................................................................... 410
- Switch Restrict Actions ......................................................................................... 410
- Virtual Firewall ....................................................................................................... 414
- Enabling and Disabling Actions ............................................................................. 418
- Action Tools ............................................................................................................ 418
  - Action Schedules .................................................................................................. 419
  - Property Tags ....................................................................................................... 420
  - Action Icon Display Tool .................................................................................... 422
  - Policy Action Log ............................................................................................... 423
  - HTTP Actions ...................................................................................................... 424
  - Transmitting Actions via HTTPS ......................................................................... 425
  - Captive Portal Detection Exceptions ................................................................... 426
  - Action Thresholds ............................................................................................... 427

## Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products ...... 428
- About Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products ......................... 429
  - Base Modules ....................................................................................................... 429
  - Content Modules .................................................................................................. 433
  - eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules) ............................................................. 433
- Centralized Module Management ........................................................................... 436
  - Installing a Module .............................................................................................. 437
  - Plugin Configuration Management ....................................................................... 437
  - Plugin and Module Security ................................................................................ 438
- Checking for Updates ............................................................................................. 438
  - How Do You Know if a New Software Version Is Available? ............................... 438
  - Configuring Check for Updates ........................................................................... 439
  - Roll Back to Previous Module Versions .............................................................. 440
- Designing Customized Plugins .............................................................................. 440

## Chapter 9: Forescout Web Portals ................................................................. 441
- Web Portal User Management ................................................................................... 442
- Logging In to Forescout Web Portals ....................................................................... 442
- Forgot Your Password? .......................................................................................... 444

## Chapter 10: Assets Portal .............................................................................. 445
- About the Assets Portal .......................................................................................... 446
- Search Tools ............................................................................................................ 446
- Search Status ........................................................................................................... 446
- Expanding Information Discovered by the Assets Portal ....................................... 447
  - Importing and Exporting Information ............................................................... 447
- Accessing the Assets Portal .................................................................................... 448
### Table of Contents

Add the Assets Portal to Your Web Browser .................................................. 448
Performing an Assets Portal Search .................................................................. 448
Host-Based Ticket Results ............................................................................. 450
User-Based Ticket Results ............................................................................. 451
Viewing Additional Information .................................................................... 451
Page Display ................................................................................................. 451
Clearing Events Detections ........................................................................... 451

**Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs** .................................................. 453

- About Reports .......................................................................................... 454
- Report Types ......................................................................................... 454
- Report Management .............................................................................. 454
- On-Screen Threat Protection Reporting ................................................. 454
  - Executive Reports ............................................................................... 455
  - Operational Reports ............................................................................ 455
- Generating On-Screen Threat Protection Reports .................................. 459
- Customizing Reports .............................................................................. 460
- Viewing Multiple Reports ....................................................................... 463
- Viewing Report Definitions .................................................................... 463
- Working with On-Screen Report Management Tools ................................. 464
- Generating Scheduled Reports ................................................................. 465
  - Report Scheduler Management Tools .................................................. 469
- Opening Saved Reports .......................................................................... 471
- Open a Scheduled Report ......................................................................... 473
- Reports Portal ........................................................................................ 473
- Work with System Event Logs ................................................................. 475
- View Block Events ................................................................................... 477
- Refresh the Events List ............................................................................ 478
- View a History of Monitored and Blocked Services .................................. 478

**Chapter 12: Managing Your Virtual Firewall Policy** .................................. 480

- Defining a Virtual Firewall Policy ........................................................... 481
- View Virtual Firewall Rules ...................................................................... 481
- Policy Priorities ...................................................................................... 482
- Working with Block Rules ....................................................................... 482
  - TCP vs. UDP Blocking ......................................................................... 482
  - Define Block Rules ............................................................................... 483
  - Edit or Remove Block Rules ................................................................ 484
- View Block Events ................................................................................... 484
- Working with Allow Rules ........................................................................ 485
  - Define Allow Rules ............................................................................... 485
  - Removing and Editing Allow Rules ..................................................... 487

**Chapter 13: Threat Protection** ................................................................. 488

- About Threat Protection ........................................................................... 489
- Detecting Threats – How It Works ............................................................ 489
- Basic Terminology .................................................................................. 490
- About the Threat Protection Policy .......................................................... 494
- About Advanced Policy Tools .................................................................. 495
# Table of Contents

- **Viewing Threat Detections** ................................................................. 495
  - High Activity Mode ........................................................................... 495
- **Viewing and Updating the Policy** .................................................... 496
  - Blocking Worms Using Plugins ......................................................... 499
- **Customizing Basic Policy Settings** .................................................. 499
  - Customize Scan Settings ................................................................... 499
  - Customizing Bite Settings .................................................................. 502
  - Bite Type Details ............................................................................... 505
  - Customizing Email Worm Settings .................................................... 506
  - Configure the Block Method ............................................................... 509
- **Handling Service Attacks** ............................................................... 510
- **Manage Threat Protection Mail Alert Deliveries** ............................ 515
- **Working with Manually Added Endpoints** ........................................ 517
  - Manually Add an Endpoint ................................................................ 517
- **Defining the Active Response Range** ............................................. 520
- **Managing Enterprise Lockdown Alerts** .......................................... 527
- **Legitimate Traffic** ............................................................................ 529
  - About Handling Legitimate Activity from Malicious Sources ............ 530
  - View Legitimate Traffic .................................................................... 531
  - Define Legitimate Scanning Activity – Wizard ................................... 532
  - Manually Define Legitimate Scanning Applications ........................... 533
  - Manually Define Removed Servers ................................................... 535
  - Create Customized Legitimate Traffic .............................................. 535
  - Edit and Remove Legitimate Traffic .................................................. 538

## Chapter 14: Threat Protection, Advanced Tools ........................................ 540

- **Defining Mark Naming Conventions** ............................................... 541
  - About Mark Rules ............................................................................. 541
  - Define Mark Rules ............................................................................ 542
  - Edit and Remove Mark Naming Rules .............................................. 544
  - Define Lists ...................................................................................... 545
  - Apply Mark Naming Rules ................................................................. 545
- **Defining Virtual Site Endpoint Operating System Parameters** ............... 546
- **Parsing Event Information Displayed in Email Alerts** ......................... 547

## Chapter 15: Managing Users ................................................................. 548

- **About User Management** ............................................................... 549
  - Default Admin User ........................................................................... 549
  - User Groups ...................................................................................... 549
  - Monitoring User Activity ................................................................... 550
  - Permissions and Scope Options ....................................................... 550
- **Creating Users and User Groups** .................................................... 550
  - Access to Console Tools – Permissions ............................................. 555
  - Access to Network Endpoints – Scope ............................................ 557
  - Modify User Details .......................................................................... 559
  - Remove Users .................................................................................. 559
- **Password Protection** ....................................................................... 559
# Table of Contents

- **Audit Logs** ........................................................................................................... 561
- **Login Preferences** ................................................................................................. 562
- **Display Terms and Conditions** ........................................................................... 562
- **Configure User Login to Forescout Web Portals** ................................................. 563
- **Set the Period for the Number of Logins Displayed** ........................................... 563
- **Display the User Login Summary** ....................................................................... 563
- **Session Handling Preferences** ............................................................................ 564
- **Prevent Multiple User Sessions** ........................................................................... 564
- **Limit Session Length** .......................................................................................... 565
- **Disconnect Inactive Users** .................................................................................. 566
- **Restore Dropped Sessions** .................................................................................. 566
- **Manual User Password Change** ........................................................................... 567
- **Using Smart Card Authentication** ......................................................................... 568
  - **Smart Card Configuration** ................................................................................ 568
  - **Smart Card User Setup** .................................................................................... 570
- **Monitoring User Activity** .................................................................................... 570
  - **View Audit Trail Reports** .................................................................................. 571
  - **Save Log to an External File** ............................................................................ 573

### Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles... 574

- **About Management** ............................................................................................ 575
  - **CounterACT Device Management Overview** .................................................... 575
- **Console and Web Portal Management** ................................................................ 576
  - **Define Console Access** .................................................................................... 576
  - **Multiple Console Logins** .................................................................................. 577
  - **Define Web Access** .......................................................................................... 577
  - **Disable Web Portals** ....................................................................................... 579
  - **Configure HTTP Strict Transport Security** ...................................................... 581
  - **Configure the Time Zone** ................................................................................. 581
  - **Configure NTP Server Synchronization** ............................................................ 582
  - **Customize Alarm Indicators** ............................................................................. 582
  - **Configure Console Memory Settings** ................................................................ 583
  - **Configure Console View Settings** .................................................................... 584
  - **Configure the Network Traffic Boundaries** ...................................................... 584
- **Standalone Appliance Management** .................................................................... 585
- **Enterprise Manager Management** ....................................................................... 585
  - **Upgrade the Enterprise Manager Software** .................................................... 585
  - **View Enterprise Manager System Health Information** .................................... 587
  - **Stop and Start the Enterprise Manager** ............................................................ 588
- **Appliance Management** .................................................................................... 588
  - **View Appliance Health Information** ................................................................ 589
  - **Register Appliances with the Enterprise Manager** .......................................... 590
  - **Upgrade Appliance Software** .......................................................................... 592
  - **Upgrade the Console** ...................................................................................... 596
  - **Start and Stop Appliances** ............................................................................... 596
  - **Working with Appliance Folders** ..................................................................... 597
  - **Managing Groups of Appliances** ..................................................................... 602
  - **Appliance Endpoint Performance Capacity** ..................................................... 604
  - **License Endpoint Capacity** ............................................................................... 604
  - **Working with Appliance Channel Assignments** .............................................. 604
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View Information about CounterACT Devices</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Appliance Traffic Statistics</td>
<td>615</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances</td>
<td>616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apply Uniform Configuration Settings to All Appliances</td>
<td>617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define a Configuration for a Single Device or Group of Devices</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit and Update a Configuration</td>
<td>619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limiting User Access to Appliances</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Limitations</td>
<td>619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling Command-line Access to CounterACT Devices</td>
<td>620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Session Security Features for Command-Line Interaction</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Password Protection for the Boot Loader</td>
<td>622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 17: The Dashboard</td>
<td>622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the Dashboard</td>
<td>623</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessing the Dashboard</td>
<td>623</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control User Access to the Dashboard</td>
<td>624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What You See in the Dashboard</td>
<td>625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dashboard Layout</td>
<td>626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before You Begin</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How the Dashboard is Populated</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run the Dashboard Policy Template</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Dashboard Widgets</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select the Reporting Interval</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expand a Widget</td>
<td>631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add a Widget</td>
<td>632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit a Widget</td>
<td>636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dashboard Feature Updates</td>
<td>638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 18: License Management</td>
<td>639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About License Management</td>
<td>640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifying Your Licensing Mode</td>
<td>640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexx Licensing</td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-Appliance Licensing</td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-Appliance CounterACT Device License</td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-Appliance Extended Module License</td>
<td>653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch from Per-Appliance to Flexx Licensing</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receiving License Alerts</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 19: Additional Options</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with the Internal Network</td>
<td>664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define the Internal Network</td>
<td>664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work with Hosts without IPv4 Addresses</td>
<td>665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work with Hosts Whose IPv4 Address Is Used by Another Host</td>
<td>666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Email Notification Addresses</td>
<td>667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signing Emails with an S/MIME Certificate</td>
<td>668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate CSRs and Import Signed Certificates</td>
<td>668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work with Digitally Signed Emails</td>
<td>668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Endpoint Discovery Rules</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Set the Enforcement Mode ................................................................. 674
Back up System and Component Settings ........................................... 675
Schedule Automatic Backups of Forescout 8.1 Settings to External Servers.. 675
Perform a One-Time System Backup .................................................. 680
Back Up and Restore the rSite for Your Appliances ............................ 681
Recovering an Enterprise Manager .................................................... 682
Language Support ............................................................................ 682
Display Endpoint Information in a Local Language ......................... 682
Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages .............. 683
Display Local Languages in Reports, Actions, and Other Features ....... 687
Localize Guest Management Portal Texts .......................................... 688
Pre-Registration and Guest Registration Management ....................... 688
Guest Management Portal ................................................................. 689
Guest Registration Pane ................................................................. 690
Registered Guests ........................................................................... 691
Define Password Policy ...................................................................... 699
Define User Policy ........................................................................... 700
Define Sponsors ............................................................................... 700
Define Terms and Conditions ............................................................ 701
Define Guest Notifications ................................................................. 702
Define Sponsor Notifications ............................................................... 703
The Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program .................. 704
Sharing Additional Endpoint Properties ............................................. 705
Opting In or Out of Data Sharing ....................................................... 705

### Appendix 1: Handling Network Connectivity Failures ...................... 708

### Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints ...................................... 710
When Is Remote Access to Endpoints Needed? .................................. 711
Domain Account Requirements ......................................................... 711
Using a Domain-Wide Policy ............................................................ 711
Using an Administrator Group ........................................................... 712
Using the Security Configuration Wizard ........................................... 713
Working with Windows XP SP2 Machines ........................................... 713
Updating Group Policy Objects with New Windows Firewall Settings .... 713
Troubleshooting Domain Credentials ............................................... 715
Test the Domain Credentials ............................................................. 715
Test the Credentials on the Endpoint Using a Localhost Query ............ 716
Test the Credentials in the Endpoint Using Remote Query .................. 716
Troubleshooting Deep Inspection ....................................................... 721

### Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate 723

### Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection ...................................................... 725
About HTTP Redirection .................................................................. 726
HTTP Redirection Procedure ............................................................ 726
Security Considerations .................................................................... 727
Sample fstool netconfig Session ....................................................... 727
Appendix 5: SNMP Support and Integration ............................................. 730
SNMP Integration .............................................................................. 731
About SNMP Service Settings ............................................................ 731
Configure SNMP Service Settings ....................................................... 731
Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications ............................... 739

Appendix 6: SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances ............................ 741
About the SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances ............................. 742
MIB Table Objects for CounterACT Appliances ................................ 743
SNMP Trap Notifications for CounterACT Appliances ....................... 748

Appendix 7: Customizing User Interfaces ............................................. 755
The Forescout 8.1 User Portal Builder .................................................. 756
Opening the User Portal Builder ......................................................... 757
Using the User Portal Builder to Customize Skins ............................... 758
Deploying a Skin for a User Interface .................................................. 760
The Legacy Customization Tool .......................................................... 761
Opening the Legacy Customization Tool ............................................. 761
Using the Customization Tool to Customize Skins ............................... 765
Saving and Integrating a Customized Page ......................................... 769
Customized Forescout Compliance Center (FCC) Pages ...................... 770
Customize Text and Labels ................................................................ 771

Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface ................................. 775
About the Certificate Interface ............................................................ 776
Configure Certificate-Related Settings ............................................... 776
Configure Certificate Expiration Monitoring ....................................... 777
Auto-download CRLs ........................................................................ 777
Verify Ongoing TLS Sessions .............................................................. 778
Configure the Trusted Certificates Table .......................................... 778
Import and Configure Trusted Certificates ........................................ 778
Edit Trusted Certificate Entries ......................................................... 781
Remove Trusted Certificate Entries .................................................... 784
Configure the System Certificates Table ............................................ 784
Certificate Precedence between Appliance and Enterprise Manager .... 785
Import and Configure System Certificates ......................................... 785
Generate a New System Certificate ..................................................... 788
Generate a CSR for a New System Certificate ..................................... 789
Duplicate System Certificate Entries .................................................. 793
Export System Certificate Entries ...................................................... 793
Edit System Certificate Entries .......................................................... 794
Remove System Certificate Entries .................................................... 796

Appendix 9: Security Deployment Hardening Best Practices ............... 797
About Security Best Practices .............................................................. 798
Restrict Access to the Management Interface ...................................... 798
Restrict Workstation Access to Management Interfaces .................... 798
Protect iDRAC Interfaces ................................................................. 798
Limit Access to the Console ............................................................... 799
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limit Access to Web Portals</td>
<td>799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit Access via SSH</td>
<td>799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Availability Sync Connectivity</td>
<td>799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintain Up-To-Date Versions</td>
<td>799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Secure Configuration Settings</td>
<td>799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password and Sessions Policy Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Permissions and Scope Options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart Card Authentication Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPS Inspection Engine Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Directory Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTPS Redirection Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Server Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIPS Support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Forescout Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preface

This section provides the following information:

✅ About This Guide
✅ Additional Forescout Documentation
About This Guide

This guide is a manual for new users and a reference tool for experienced users. It is intended for users who have logged in to the Console from a Forescout® Enterprise Manager or Appliance. Instructions and explanations in the guide refer to both login scenarios, unless specifically noted.

Refer to the Forescout Installation Guide for information on software installation, post-installation and other installation procedures for Forescout components, including the Enterprise Manager, Appliance and Console. See for Additional Forescout Documentation information on how to access the Installation Guide.

This Administration Guide consists of the following chapters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 1: Welcome to Forescout</strong></td>
<td>This chapter presents general information about Forescout functionality and components.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard</strong></td>
<td>This chapter describes the initial steps required to configure Forescout 8.1. The Initial Setup Wizard provides critical configurations to ensure that you get your system up and running quickly and efficiently.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 3: Working in the Console</strong></td>
<td>This chapter describes the basic Console tools that you should be familiar with before you begin working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 4: Policy Management</strong></td>
<td>This chapter describes how to create and manage custom policies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 5: Policy Templates</strong></td>
<td>Forescout 8.1 provides a full range of templates to help you create NAC policies quickly and effectively using default settings. This chapter instructs you how to work with templates in general and then provides step-by-step procedures for creating template-based policies that cover important network security tasks, for example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td> Primary classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td> Antivirus, Peer-to-Peer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td> Corporate and guest control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td> Windows and Macintosh update compliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td> Mobile device classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td> External disk drive compliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td> Virtual machine classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions</strong></td>
<td>This chapter describes how to work with policy conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 7: Working with Actions</strong></td>
<td>This chapter describes how to work with policy actions, used to control network endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products</strong></td>
<td>This chapter describes Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend products (Extended Modules).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 9: Forescout Web Portals</strong></td>
<td>This chapter describes the Forescout Web Portal and how it accessed by users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Chapter 10: Assets Portal | This chapter describes how to set up and work with the Assets Portal. The Assets Portal is a web-based search and discovery tool that lets you leverage extensive network information collected and correlated by Forescout 8.1 and plugins. This includes not only endpoint information, but also Policy violations, login histories, User Directory details, organizational mapping details and endpoint device connections. The information is useful across your organization, especially for:
- Security teams
- IT departments
- Help Desk |

| Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs | This chapter describes report generation tools. These tools provide you with important compliance information, as well as detailed information about malware and self-propagating code. Reports about policy compliance, inventory and vulnerabilities can be generated from the Reports site. In addition, user audit trail and system event logs can also be generated. |

| Chapter 12: Managing Your Virtual Firewall Policy | This chapter contains information about working with Virtual Firewall rules. Network Virtual Firewall protection lets you easily create network security zones to give you more control over network traffic and provides all the benefits of an inline firewall without being located inline. |

| Chapter 13: Threat Protection | Forescout’s Active Response technology fights worms and other self-propagating malware by:
- Pinpointing threats at the earliest stage of the infection process
- Providing real-time protection against zero-day worms
- Protecting your network against infection methods known and unknown to the security community
This chapter provides basic information about the Active Response malicious endpoints technology, including how Forescout 8.1 defines, detects and handles threats. It also describes how to define legitimate traffic as part of your Threat Protection policy, i.e., traffic to be ignored for requirements that compel you to grant full access to specific addresses. |

| Chapter 14: Threat Protection, Advanced Tools | This chapter provides information regarding advanced tools available for handling threats including: defining naming conventions for marks, defining virtual site endpoint operating system distribution and density, and parsing event information displayed in email alerts. |

| Chapter 15: Managing Users | This chapter describes how to:
- Create and manage CounterACT users.
- Define user permissions.
- Create password protection policies.
- Audit user activity. |

| Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles | This chapter describes the tools for updating settings defined during your setup. Additional options, such as upgrading your software version are also detailed. |
Chapter 17: The Dashboard
This chapter describes how to set up and use the Dashboard.

Chapter 18: License Management
This chapter describes how to acquire and manage Forescout product licenses.

Chapter 19: Additional Options
This chapter describes additional options.

Appendix 1: Handling Network Connectivity Failures
This appendix describes how to handle network connectivity failures between the Appliance and your network.

Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints
This appendix describes how to gain remote access to an endpoint’s registry service. You must perform these steps to take advantage of the policy scanning processes.

Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate
This appendix describes how to generate and import a trusted certificate and remove the browser security warning that opens when trying to access the Forescout Web Portals.

Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection
For browser notification, login and remediation actions the Appliance must see traffic going to the web. This appendix describes how to make these actions work properly, including how to set the IP address used by the HTTP redirection features.

Appendix 5: SNMP Support and Integration
This appendix describes Forescout SNMP support.

Appendix 6: SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances
This appendix describes:
- About the SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances
- MIB Table Objects for CounterACT Appliances
- SNMP Trap Notifications for CounterACT Appliances

Appendix 7: Customizing User Interfaces
This appendix describes customizations that can be made to the user interface:
- The Forescout User Portal Builder
- The Legacy Customization Tool
- Customize Text and Labels

Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface
This appendix describes how to use the Certificates Interface for handling trusted and system certificates.

Appendix 9: Security Deployment Hardening
This appendix gives best practice suggestions for how to harden the security of your Forescout platform and devices.

Additional Forescout Documentation
For information about other Forescout features and modules, refer to the following resources:
- Documentation Downloads
- Documentation Portal
- Forescout Help Tools
Documentation Downloads

Access documentation downloads from the Forescout Resources Page, or one of two Forescout portals, depending on which licensing mode your deployment is using.

- **Per-Appliance Licensing Mode** – Product Updates Portal
- **Flexx Licensing Mode** – Customer Portal

Software downloads are also available from these portals.

To identify your licensing mode:
- From the Console, select Help > About Forescout.

Forescout Resources Page

The Forescout Resources Page provides links to the full range of technical documentation.

To access the Forescout Resources Page:

Product Updates Portal

The Product Updates Portal provides links to Forescout version releases, Base and Content Modules, and eyeExtend products, as well as related documentation. The portal also provides a variety of additional documentation.

To access the Product Updates Portal:
- Go to https://updates.forescout.com/support/index.php?url=counteract and select the version you want to discover.

Customer Portal

The Downloads page on the Forescout Customer Portal provides links to purchased Forescout version releases, Base and Content Modules, and eyeExtend products, as well as related documentation. Software and related documentation only appear on the Downloads page if you have a license entitlement for the software.

To access documentation on the Forescout Customer Portal:
- Go to https://Forescout.force.com/support/ and select Downloads.

Documentation Portal

The Forescout Documentation Portal is a searchable, web-based library containing information about Forescout tools, features, functionality, and integrations.

If your deployment is using Flexx Licensing Mode, you may not have received credentials to access this portal.
To access the Documentation Portal:

- Go to https://updates.forescout.com/support/files/counteract/docs_portal/ and use your customer support credentials to log in.

Forescout Help Tools

Access information directly from the Console.

Console Help Buttons

Use context-sensitive Help buttons to access information about tasks and topics quickly.

Forescout Administration Guide

- Select Forescout Help from the Help menu.

Plugin Help Files

- After installing the plugin, select Tools > Options > Modules, select the plugin, and then select Help.

Online Documentation

- Select Online Documentation from the Help menu to access either the Forescout Resources Page (Flexx licensing) or the Documentation Portal (Per-Appliance licensing).
Chapter 1: Welcome to Forescout

✅ About Forescout 8.1
✅ Forescout Components
✅ Help Tools
✅ Log In to the Forescout Console
✅ Forgot Your Password?
About Forescout 8.1

The Forescout platform provides infrastructure and device visibility, policy management, orchestration and workflow streamlining to enhance network security. The platform provides enterprises with real-time contextual information of devices and users on the network. Policies are defined using this contextual information that helps ensure compliance, remediation, appropriate network access and streamlining of service operations.

This is delivered by providing:

- Real-Time Network Visibility
- Policy-Initiated or Manual Control
- Comprehensive Third-Party
- On-Demand Asset Intelligence

Real-Time Network Visibility

Forescout 8.1 classifies devices the moment they attempt to access your network. For example:

- Desktops, laptops and servers
- Mobile devices, such as smartphones and tablets
- Personal and corporate devices
- On-premises virtual machines and off-premises cloud instances
- Switches, WLAN controllers and access points, devices connecting via VPNs, routers, printers, modems, VoIP phones (including PoE-connected VoIP phones and devices), WLAN access points, and other network devices
- Peripheral devices, such as USB memory sticks, external disk drives, and webcams
- IoT devices
- Rogue device

Inspection capabilities resolve an extensive range of information about these devices, for example:

- Desktop and mobile operating system information
- Virtual machine details, for example, VMware Guest Machine health status or Amazon EC2 instance type
- User directory information
- Applications installed and running
- Login and authentication information
- Software patch levels
- Endpoint-connected devices, such as USB drives
- Switch ports to which devices are connected
- Windows registry information
Policy-Initiated or Manual Control

Networks are constantly changing, including the connected device types, software, configurations, compliance requirements, and the internal and external threat landscape. The Forescout Console enterprise policies are used to implement the necessary notification, remediation, and restriction controls to secure the network.

Examples of Forescout 8.1 capabilities include:

User Enforcement and Education

- Open trouble tickets
- Send email to users or administrators
- Personalize captive portal messages to notify end users, enforce policy confirmation and allow self-remediation
- Force authentication/password change
- Log-off user, disable user AD account

Application Control and Remediation

- Start/stop applications
- Start/stop peer-to-peer/IM
- Apply updates and patches
- Help ensure antivirus products are up-to-date
- Start/stop processes

Network Restrictions

- Port disable (802.1X, SNMP, CLI)
- VLAN control
- VPN disconnect
- ACL block at switches, firewalls and routers
- Wireless allow/deny
- Quarantine until the device is remediated

Traffic Control

- Virtual firewall
- Update network ACL (switch, router, firewall)

Operating System Control & Remediation

- Patch/hotfix update
- Registry configuration

Device Control

- Disable NIC
Chapter 1: Welcome to Forescout

- Disable use of peripheral devices

**Comprehensive Third-Party Orchestration**

Forescout 8.1 allows information sharing with third-party network, security, mobility and IT management products, allowing for automated workflows, time and cost savings and enhanced security. This sharing of information can resolve security issues and contain compromised devices. Use the information in this guide to integrate with a variety of third-party systems, for example:

- Advanced Threat Detection systems
- Security Information and Event Management systems
- IT Service Management systems
- Endpoint Protection Platforms/Endpoint Detection and Response systems
- Vulnerability Assessment systems
- Next-Generation Firewall systems
- Enterprise Mobility Management systems
- Almost any third-party product using a web API, SQL or LDAP

When integrating with third-party systems, use the Forescout tools described in this guide to:

- Trigger third-party remediation and ticketing systems
- Efficiently exchange information with third-party systems
- Mitigate a wide variety of network, security and operational issues
- Extend the network visibility provided by Forescout 8.1 to third-party systems
- Set up third-party systems to trigger actions on Forescout 8.1

Integration is carried out by working with *Forescout eyeExtend products (Extended Modules)*. See [Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products](#) for details.

**On-Demand Asset Intelligence**

Use Forescout tools to carry out information sharing and automation among your existing IT security and management systems. These tools help you fix security issues and contain breaches.

**Generate Reports**

The Reports Plugin lets you generate reports showing real-time and trend information about policies, endpoint compliance status, vulnerabilities, device details, assets and network guests. Use reports to keep network administrators, executives, the Help Desk, IT teams, security teams or other enterprise teams well-informed about network activity. Reports can help you understand:

- Long-term network compliance progress and trends
- Immediate security needs
• Compliance with policies
• Status of a specific policy
• Network device statistics

**Analyze a Real-Time Network Inventory**
A live network Asset Inventory view displays current network activity on multiple levels, such as processes and services running, vulnerabilities detected, open ports, or logged in users. Use the Asset Inventory to:

• Broaden your view of the network from endpoint-specific to activity-specific.
• View endpoints that have been detected with specific attributes, whether or not they are policy-compliant.
• Easily track network activity.
• Incorporate inventory detections into policies. For example, if you discover that network guests are running unauthorized processes on your network, create a policy that detects and halts these processes on guest machines.

**Work with an Assets Portal**
The Assets Portal is a web-based search and discovery tool that lets you leverage extensive network information collected and correlated by Forescout 8.1 and its plugins. This includes not only endpoint information, but also network policy violations, current login information, User Directory identity details, organizational mapping details, and endpoint device connections. The accumulated information makes the portal valuable across organizational teams.

• Security teams can use the IP address provided by the Assets Portal to quickly locate and shut down switch ports and eliminate a security threat.
• IT departments can use the IP address provided by the Assets Portal to locate and contact users when maintenance is required at the endpoint.
• The Help Desk can effortlessly link IP addresses, computer hardware addresses and switch ports to employees in real time.

**Forescout Components**
Forescout 8.1 comprises the following components:

• **The Appliance**
• **The Enterprise Manager**
• **Virtual Systems**

![Sample CounterACT Device](image)
Connections between CounterACT devices use fingerprints for verification purposes. When a connection is established, the fingerprints of the two CounterACT devices are compared. If they match, the connection is accepted. This ensures that only trusted CounterACT devices connect with each other.

This includes connections between:

- Enterprise Managers and Appliances
- Enterprise Managers and Recovery Enterprise Managers
- Appliances and other Appliances (Direct Inter-Appliance Communication)

Refer to the *Enterprise Manager/Appliance Communication, Forescout Technical Note* for information regarding Enterprise Manager/Appliance communication. See *Additional Forescout Documentation* for information on how to access this guide.

**The Appliance**

A CounterACT appliance (Appliance) is a dedicated device that monitors traffic going through your corporate network. It protects the network against malicious activity and performs extensive network protection.

Your Appliance should have been installed at your network so that it sees vital network traffic.

**To handle malware and intelligent hackers, the Appliance should be set up:**

- At the connection point between the Internal Network and the rest of the network. This enables protection of a specific network range against infection attempts initiated from the rest of the network, and network protection against infection attempts generated from a specific network area (for example, contractors segment, which is potentially more dangerous).
- Behind a VPN concentrator, where encrypted VPN channels are decrypted, and malicious traffic enters your network.
- Behind remote access servers, where remote access users enter your network.

**To apply an admission control policy, the Appliance should be set up:**

- Within broadcast domains, preferably mirroring trunk ports.

**To work with the Virtual Firewall, the Appliance should be set up:**

- Between segments or VLANs.

Your Appliance may be one of several Appliances included in an Enterprise solution or may be part of a High Availability system. The High Availability feature provides high network uptime utilizing redundancy and automatic recovery.

For more information about the High Availability feature, refer to the *Forescout Resiliency Solutions* guide. For more information about Appliance installation, Appliance specifications and deployment, refer to the Forescout Installation Guide. See *Additional Forescout Documentation* for information on how to access these guides.
The Enterprise Manager

The Enterprise Manager is an aggregation device that communicates with multiple CounterACT Appliances distributed across an enterprise. It manages Appliance activity and policies, and collects information about endpoint activity detected at each Appliance. This information can be displayed and reported in the Enterprise Manager.

Your Enterprise Manager may be part of a High Availability system or a remote recovery system. The High Availability feature provides high network uptime utilizing redundancy and automatic recovery. The Recovery Enterprise Manager is used as a remote recovery device for an Enterprise Manager that is no longer functioning due to, for example, a natural disaster or crisis.

Virtual Systems

CounterACT virtual devices (Appliances and Enterprise Managers) can be installed and managed in virtual data centers and IT environments. They provide capabilities identical to CounterACT device software installations carried out on dedicated machines.

Refer to the Forescout Installation Guide for details about installing virtual systems.

Using CounterACT virtual devices lets you:

- Simplify and ease product distribution and deployment, especially for distributed remote sites.
- Reduce IT costs, space, energy consumption and maintenance by using less hardware.
- Comply with green IT requirements.

If your deployment is operating in Per-Appliance Licensing, installing and working with licenses differs slightly for virtual systems and physical systems. Refer to Virtual Licenses for details.

Hybrid Deployments

Hybrid deployments are also supported. A physical Enterprise Manager can manage both physical and virtual Appliances, and a virtual Enterprise Manager can manage both physical and virtual Appliances.

Forescout User Interfaces

- The Forescout Console
- Forescout Web Portals

The Forescout Console

The Forescout Console is the management application used to view important detailed information about endpoints and control them. This information is collected by CounterACT devices.
Chapter 1: Welcome to Forescout

About the Forescout Console

Detection information is displayed in the Forescout Console, which serves as your unified information, management, and control center. Key features include:

- An integrated display of endpoints detected by your NAC, Threat Protection, Compliance, and Corporate/Guest Control policies, as well as other endpoints discovered by Forescout 8.1.
- Display of extensive endpoint details, such as MAC address, IP address, domain, and NetBIOS machine information; related user information, such as mail addresses and telephone numbers, as well as the machine block or release status.
- A live network inventory view that displays network activity at multiple levels, for example, processes and services running, detected vulnerabilities, open ports, or logged in users.
- A site map, powered by Google Maps, that provides at-a-glance, real-time corporate and guest status information, compliance levels, security alerts, and more—across offices, cities, countries, and continents.
- Powerful command options that let you manually and automatically remediate and control detected endpoints and communicate with endpoint users.
- Sophisticated reporting tools let you generate an extensive range of reports that detail and summarize important network activity, asset and inventory information, NAC policy activity, vulnerability scanning and more, as well as the Forescout platform’s response to these activities.
- Control tools let you start and stop CounterACT devices and update the configuration defined during installation, for example, the network range Forescout 8.1 is protecting or the time zone setting. Other control tools let you communicate with your network management application and work with third-party applications.
Forescout Web Portals
Forescout offers additional features that can be accessed via browser-based portals. These include:

- **Assets Portal**: Displays endpoint information, policy violations, login information, User Directory details, organizational mapping details, and endpoint device connections.
- **Legacy Dashboard**: Displays at-a-glance information about network compliance, threats, and guests.
- **User Portal Builder**: Allows you to create, duplicate, preview or export/import customized Guest Management Portal and HTTP pages.
- **Reports Portal**: Allows you to generate comprehensive real-time and trend information about policies, vulnerabilities and the network inventory.

> Other portals may be available depending on your license.

Help Tools
The Forescout Console provides a range of Help tools to assist first-time users in gaining proficiency and an understanding of the Console. Help tools also guide veteran users in working with more advanced Console options. This section describes the available help tools and how to access them.

- **Console Help Buttons**
- **Forescout Help**
- **Feature Dialog Box Descriptions**
- **On-Screen Troubleshooting**
- **Documentation Portal**
- **Plugin/Module Configuration Help**

**Console Help Buttons**
You can quickly access specific information about the tasks and topics by using the Help buttons that appear in Console dialog boxes, panes, and wizard panes.
Forescout Help

Select Forescout Help from the Help menu to open the Forescout Administration Guide.

Feature Dialog Box Descriptions

Forescout dialog boxes are designed to automatically display helpful descriptions about various Console features. For example:

On-Screen Troubleshooting

Two types of on-screen troubleshooting are available:
Troubleshooting Messages

Troubleshooting messages about various issues, failed actions, and other errors can be viewed in the Detections pane for a selected endpoint. Information is also available about resolving these issues.

To view troubleshooting tips:

1. From the Home view, select (Show troubleshooting messages) at the top right corner of the Details pane.
2. In the Details pane, select the Details link. The link may appear in any tab where an unresolved event occurred. A window opens with troubleshooting details and tips.

Troubleshooting Endpoint Policy Matches

You can quickly troubleshoot an endpoint policy match by viewing member-of-group assignments per policy. This information is presented in a Policy flow diagram accessed from the All Policies tab for each endpoint detected. This is useful if you want to investigate why a certain action, such as Assign to VLAN, was applied to an endpoint. See Root Cause Analysis of Endpoint Policy Match for details.
Documentation Portal

The Documentation Portal is an online library containing a comprehensive range of information about Forescout tools, features and functionality. The portal includes the following sets of documents:

- Forescout Administration Guide (this document)
- Forescout Installation Guides
- Forescout How-to Guides
- Forescout Plugin and Module Configuration Guides
- FStool Command Reference Guide
- Forescout Glossary Reference Guide
- Forescout Console Features Shortcuts Reference Guide
- Advanced Technical Notes

Access the Documentation Portal:

- From your Internet browser, at http://www.forescout.com/kb (use Product Updates Portal login credentials).
- At the Console, select Help and then select Online Help.

  If your deployment is using Flexx Licensing, you may not have credentials to access the documentation portal. Selecting Online Help from the Help menu will instead take you to the Forescout Resources page.

Plugin/Module Configuration Help

When configuring Forescout’s various components, you can access the Configuration Guides directly from the Modules pane by selecting the plugin or module, and then selecting Help to display the corresponding help file.
For example:

Log In to the Forescout Console

You can manage CounterACT devices via the Console after the CounterACT device IP address and user login credentials that you provide are verified. Make sure that you have this information before attempting to log in.

It is not recommended to run the Forescout Console using the Windows 10 built-in administrator account, as it prevents the use of certain Console functionality.

To log in:

1. Select **ForeScout > Console** from the **Start** menu.
2. Enter the CounterACT device IP address or host name in the **IP/Name** field.

3. Select a login method.
   - Select **Password** to perform standard authentication. Enter your user name and password.
   - Select **Smart Card** to allow authentication using a connected smart card. If the Smart Card contains more than one certificate, select the certificate for login to this CounterACT device. Enter your user name and smart card PIN code. If the **Dll Location** field is empty, enter the location where the Smart Card driver is installed on your computer.
4. Select **Remember this address and user name** to instruct Forescout 8.1 to automatically fill in this information when you next attempt to log in.

5. Select **Log In**.

   A window may open displaying terms and conditions. To continue working, read and accept the terms. The login process continues.

6. If two-factor authentication is required, complete the Security Verification requirements and then select **Verify**.

**Verifying the CounterACT Device**

When logging in to the Console for the first time, you are prompted to verify that you are connecting to a trusted CounterACT device. To do this, compare the output of a Forescout CLI command with the string that appears in the dialog box. This ensures that you are logging in to a secured Forescout component with protected Console credentials.

Select **Yes** to proceed with login **only after** you have followed the instructions and completed the verification process.
To verify the device:

1. Log in to the CounterACT device through the command-line interface (CLI).
2. Run the following command:
   `fingerprintkey`

   In the Bash shell, run `fstool key` instead. Refer to the Forescout CLI Commands Reference Guide for more information.

3. Verify that the output of the command matches the value displayed in the Forescout Login dialog box, and select Yes.

Confirming Last Login Information

When the Forescout Login dialog box opens, review the following last login information for your account:

- The user name and IP address of your current login session
- The time and IP address of this user’s previous successful login
- The number of this user’s recent, consecutive login attempts that failed

If you suspect this information is incorrect, report it to your security officer. Otherwise, select OK.

Forgot Your Password?

If you forget your password, contact your System Administrator or another user authorized to change your password at the Console. See Modify User Details for information about resetting a forgotten password.

Reset an Admin Password

Only the admin user has permissions to change the admin password at the Console. If the admin password is forgotten, it must be updated by a user with cliadmin privileges at the CounterACT device command-line interface (CLI).

To reset the admin user password:

1. Log in to the CounterACT device CLI as user ‘cliadmin’.
2. Run the following command:
fstool passwd --reset

The following message is displayed:

Enter ’cliadmin‘ password:

3. Type the cliadmin password.

The following message is displayed:

New Admin password:

4. Type a new admin user password. The default password properties require that the password include between six and 15 characters, including at least one non-alphabetic character.

5. Press Enter.

The following message is displayed:

New Admin password (confirm):

6. Retype the new password, and press Enter.

The following message is displayed:

User ’admin‘ password updated.
Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard

- About the Initial Setup Wizard
- Setup Scenarios
- When You Are Done
About the Initial Setup Wizard

The Initial Setup Wizard guides you through important configuration steps to ensure that CounterACT devices are set up quickly and efficiently. The wizard opens automatically when you log in to Forescout for the first time.

Proceed as follows:

1. Review the Before You Begin section.
2. Log in to the Forescout Console. See Log In to the Forescout Console.
3. Run the Initial Setup Wizard. See Set Up an Appliance from Scratch.
4. Review the When You Are Done section for information regarding additional basic setup tasks.

Before You Begin

Prepare the following information regarding the CounterACT device that you want to configure:

- NTP server address used by your organization.
- Internal mail relay IP address. This allows delivery of email alerts if SMTP traffic is not allowed from the Appliance.
- Forescout 8.1 administrator’s email address.
- Monitor and response interfaces assignments defined in the Data Center. The monitor interface tracks traffic going through your network. The response interface is used to protect against malicious activity, carrying out Virtual Firewall blocking and HTTP redirection. This information is not required for Enterprise Manager setup.
- For segments or VLANs with no DHCP, the network segment or VLANs to which the monitoring interface is directly connected and a permanent IP address to be used by Forescout 8.1 at each such VLAN. This information is not required for Enterprise Manager setup.
- IP address ranges that the Appliance will protect (all the internal addresses, including unused addresses).
- User Directory account information and the User Directory server IP address.
- Domain credentials, including domain administrative account name and password.
- Authentication servers so that Forescout 8.1 can analyze which endpoints have successfully authenticated.
- Core switch IP address, vendor, and SNMP parameters.
- IP address ranges of endpoints known to be sensitive to network probing.

This information may be tested before it is saved by the wizard at each stage of the setup. A verification message is displayed, indicating if the settings are valid.
**Update Wizard Settings**

Most of the options defined in the Initial Setup Wizard can be modified from the Forescout Options window.

**To access the Options window:**

1. Open the Forescout Console.
2. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.

---

**Setup Scenarios**

The following sections describe the various setup scenarios available when installing an Enterprise Manager or Appliance.

- Set Up an Appliance from Scratch
- Set Up an Appliance with Enterprise Manager Settings
- Set Up an Enterprise Manager from Scratch
- Set Up an Enterprise Manager with Appliance Settings

---

**Set Up an Appliance from Scratch**

After logging in to the Console for the first time, you are prompted to follow the on-screen wizard instructions described in the following sections.

**Welcome**

The Welcome pane displays the Forescout component to which you logged in, as well as information you defined during the installation in the Data Center. More Appliance information can be viewed in the Forescout Options window.

Select **Next** to start the Initial Setup Wizard.
Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program

Forescout continually attempts to provide better services to customers. Customers who voluntarily opt in to the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program allow anonymous information from their environment to be shared with Forescout researchers for improving the product. For more information, including how to view an up-to-date list of the shared properties and how the properties are anonymized, see The Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program.

Following the Forescout installation, you are prompted to accept the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program participation terms.
If you ask to be prompted later, the prompt will be displayed the next time you log in to Forescout.

If you do not accept the terms, nothing will be shared with Forescout.

If you accept the terms, a selection of endpoint properties will be shared with Forescout.

License (Forescout Virtual Systems Only, Per-Appliance Licensing Mode)

If you are working with a Forescout virtual system operating in Per-Appliance Licensing, the License pane opens.

The virtual license feature is designed to meet the needs of users working in Virtual IT environments, including environments that require a proxy server. These features ensure that such users are working with authorized, secure, and protected licenses.

Refer to the Forescout Installation Guide for information about installing Forescout virtual systems.

In the License pane, you can install the virtual demo license provided by your Forescout representative by email. This license is valid for 30 days from the time it was generated by the Forescout representative. When you install the license, the license’s expiration date is indicated. You must request and install a permanent license before this period expires. See Virtual Licenses for details.
You will be contacted via email regarding the license expiration date and any license violations. In addition, license alerts, violations, status and troubleshooting information can be accessed from the Appliance, Details pane. See View License Alerts for details.

Virtual licenses are authenticated daily by the Forescout License Server (at https://license2.forescout.com). Licenses that cannot be authenticated for a month are revoked and significant Forescout functionality stops. See Virtual Licenses for information about working with the License Server.

To install a virtual license:

1. Select Install License.

2. Browse to and select the license file and then select OK. The Install License from File dialog box opens.
When working with the initial demo license, you can select any license file for any device, provided that a specific license file is installed on one device only. (If you use the same license file for more than one device, the license may be revoked. Moreover, you will be unable to add an Appliance to the Enterprise Manager if an Appliance with the same license is already connected.) You can rename the file if required. Extended demo licenses and permanent licenses are intended for a specific device.

3. Select the device and then select **Install**.

   A dialog box displays information about the start and end date for installing the license, as well as other license information.

4. Select **Next**.

**Time**

In the Time pane, you can define the time zone and NTP time server synchronization settings for this Appliance.

*The NTP time server settings can be modified after the initial setup by selecting **Options > General > Time** in the Console. See [Configure NTP Server Synchronization](#).*

- **Time Zone**: Set the time zone according to your geographical location or by GMT offset. The default value is the time zone of the Appliance. This time zone is used when displaying and recording detection times in the Console.

- **Enable sync with NTP server**: Select this option to synchronize the system clock with an NTP time server. This lets you set an NTP server address and enter an authentication key string (SHA1). Enabled by default.

- **NTP Server**: CounterACT devices require NTP connectivity (port 123 UDP) to an NTP server.
Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard

To configure the NTP server:
1. Enter an NTP server that your organization connects to or use the Forescout default server (ntp.forescout.net).
2. (Recommended) Enter an authentication key.
3. Select Test to test the availability of the NTP server.
4. If the test fails, contact your IT professional.

To use a CLI command to define additional NTP servers:
1. Log in to the Enterprise Manager through the command-line interface (CLI).
2. Run the following command:
   ```
   fstool ntp setup <server IP>@<key idx>@<authentication key>
   ```
   where <server IP> is the IP address of the NTP server you prefer (local or remote) <key idx> is the key identification index, and <authentication key> is the SHA-1 key string used for authentication of the NTP server connection. Forescout 8.1 will use this server for time synchronization.

Mail

Forescout 8.1 generates email messages regarding:
- Policy and Threat Protection alerts
- Scheduled reports
- Critical system operation alerts
- Licensing alerts

In the Mail pane, you define the Mail relay and Admin email addresses.
Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard

**Admin Email (Required)**
The Forescout 8.1 administrator address or another address that should receive alerts. Separate multiple addresses by commas, spaces or semicolons.
- Example 1: admin@company.com
- Example 2: admin@company.com, deputy@company.com
You can sign these emails using a digital certificate, as specified by the Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) standard. See **Signing Emails with an S/MIME Certificate** for details.

**Mail Relay**
The internal mail relay IP address to allow delivery of email alerts if SMTP (port 25) traffic is not allowed from Forescout 8.1 to the Internet. This must be the fully qualified host name. For example, mail-relay.example.com.
If you enter an incorrect address you will not receive alerts.

You can change these addresses from the Forescout Options window by selecting **General** and then **Mail**.

**User Directory**
In the User Directory pane, you define the credentials for a User Directory server. These credentials are used to validate network authentication and resolve user details. For example, the endpoint user’s User Directory display name, department name, or email address.

Forescout 8.1 lets you define various types of User Directory servers. The following user directory and authentication servers are supported:
- Microsoft Active Directory
- Novell eDirectory
- Oracle Directory
- IBM Lotus Notes
- OpenLDAP Server
- RADIUS
- TACACS
Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard

You can work with more than one server type simultaneously. For example, if your organization uses Microsoft Active Directory for retrieving user details and a RADIUS server for verifying authentication, you can configure the plugin to work with both these server types.

You cannot configure RADIUS or TACACS authentication servers in the Initial Setup Wizard.

You can define additional User Directory servers from the Forescout Options window by selecting **User Directory** and then selecting **Add**.

![User Directory Configuration Screen](image)

Setup requires a User Directory server that can be queried to validate authentication and obtain details regarding users at detected endpoints. Configure the following settings in the User Directory pane:

| **Name** | Enter the hostname of the server.  
**Note:** This value cannot be edited later. |
| --- | --- |
| **Type** | Select a server type:  
- Microsoft Active Directory  
- Novell eDirectory  
- Oracle Directory  
- IBM Lotus Notes  
- OpenLDAP Server  
**Note:** This value cannot be edited later. |
Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard

## Address/DNS Detection

Do one of the following:

- Enter the remote address of the server, such as an IP address, an FQDN address string, or an IPv6 address string. For server types other than Microsoft Active Directory, this is the only option.

- Select **DNS Detection** to instruct Forescout 8.1 to learn directory servers based on the domain name configured in the **Directory** section **Domain** field. This option applies to Microsoft Active Directory servers only. For more information, refer to the *User Directory Plugin Configuration Guide*.

## Port

Enter the server port in the **Port** field. The default port for servers used as directories to retrieve user information is 636.

## Use TLS

For some server types, you can instruct Forescout 8.1 to use TLS to encrypt communication with the User Directory server. By default, **Use TLS** is enabled.

Ensure that TLS communication is supported and enabled on servers used as directories to retrieve user information. The User Directory Plugin can communicate with servers that support TLS 1.1 or TLS 1.2. It cannot communicate with servers that support TLS 1.0 only.

---

After User Directory server setup, you can view and edit the existing User Directory server configuration by selecting **Tools > Options > User Directory** in the Console. User details and authentication status are displayed in the Detections pane. For more information about User Directory server setup, refer to the *User Directory Plugin Configuration Guide*.

### Domain Credentials

Network domain credentials are used by the Appliance to perform deep inspection on endpoints.

In the Domains pane, enter the domain information necessary for the Appliance to authenticate with the Domain Controller. Domains should include endpoints that are handled by your policies. You may include several domain entries.
In the Domains pane, select **Add** and define the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Domain Controller</strong></th>
<th>The Domain Controller IP address. This information is used to test password validity and provide defaults for the authentication servers defined later.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Domain Name</strong></td>
<td>The domain name. The domain should include all endpoints that you want to inspect via the policy. Endpoints in this domain must also be in the Internal Network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User</strong></td>
<td>The domain administrator name for this domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Password</strong></td>
<td>The domain administrator password for this domain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional domain options let you fine-tune certain inspection process definitions and perform other testing. Refer to the "Configuration" section of the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide. See [Additional Forescout Documentation](#) for information on how to access this guide.

If the verification test fails, you may need to perform troubleshooting tasks. See [Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints](#) for details.

### Authentication Servers

Policies can be created to verify that endpoints have authenticated successfully.

In the Authentication Servers pane, define the authentication servers used in your network (such as domain controllers or exchange servers). Any previously entered domain controllers appear here automatically.

In the Authentication Servers pane, select **Add** and define authentication servers. Forescout 8.1 supports the following services for authentication:

- HTTP (80/TCP)
- Telnet (23/TCP)
- NetBIOS-SSN (139/TCP)
Internal Network

The Internal Network is a set of network segments or IP ranges that defines your network in the Forescout platform. When Forescout eyeSight detects endpoints with IP addresses within the Internal Network, they are assumed to be in your network.

The Internal Network defines the extent of Forescout platform management activity. For example, when a Forescout policy scope is defined as "All IPs," the policy is applied to all IP addresses in the Internal Network. Network segments that are part of your physical network, but are not included in the Internal Network definition, are not managed by Forescout products. In addition, endpoints in the Internal Network must be visible to Forescout Appliances.

The Internal Network is defined in Forescout 8.1 as a set of named IP ranges. Typically these ranges correspond to logical segments of your network.

Several Forescout tools use these Internal Network segments. For example, you use these segments to assign sectors of your network to Appliances, to define the scope of a policy, and to define the active response range for Threat Protection features.

Segments you define during setup can be fine-tuned to more closely represent the structure of your corporate network, and you can add additional segments later. See Working with Forescout Segments for details.

In the Internal Network pane, select **Add** to define IP ranges or subnets. The Segment name field is mandatory.
Enforcement Mode
You can define either of the following Appliance enforcement modes:

- **Full Enforcement mode** allows complete functionality.
- **Partial Enforcement mode** lets you monitor network traffic but limits your ability to respond to it. Specifically, the Threat Protection, HTTP Actions, and Virtual Firewall options are disabled in Partial Enforcement mode. This mode is recommended for evaluation purposes only.

Select **NAT Detection** to detect NAT devices.

The **Partial Enforcement Mode** icon is displayed on the status bar if your system is set to this mode.

If you select **Auto Discovery**, Forescout 8.1 resolves and displays endpoint properties, such as NetBIOS names, Nmap and domain information. See Define Endpoint Discovery Rules for details.

Channels
A channel defines a pair of interfaces used by the Appliance to protect your network.

In general, one interface monitors traffic going through the network (monitor interface). The other interface generates traffic back into the network (response interface). Response traffic is used to:

- Protect against self-propagating malware, worms and hackers.
- Carry out Virtual Firewall blocking.
- Perform policy actions. These actions may include, for example, redirecting web browsers or blocking access to the Internet.

A single interface may also be used as both the monitoring and the response interface.
The monitoring and response interfaces and the appropriate physical connections in the Data Center should be defined when installing the Appliance and connecting it to the network switch. If the definition is later changed, an Appliance reboot is required.

For optimal performance, the following is recommended:

- Configure one or two 10G monitor ports in each physical Appliance that monitors traffic.
- When an Appliance uses more than two monitor ports:
  - Ensure that an even number of monitor ports is used.
  - Do not mix interface types, such as a 1Gb network adapter together with a 10Gb network adapter.

**Completing interface assignments made in the Data Center**

If you change the monitoring interface assignment in the Channels pane, you must go back to the Data Center and readjust the physical interface connections so that they match.

If your network architecture is set up to work with VLANs, the Appliance automatically detects them. These VLANs are listed in the Channels pane.

**Add Channels**

You must define channel definitions to match Appliance interface connections in order to detect and respond to traffic on network interfaces.

**To add channels:**

1. From the **Channel** drop-down menu, select **Add**.
The interfaces detected on your Appliance appear in the Interface List. Every few seconds, traffic is captured on the selected interface and is broken down into the different VLANs.

2. Review the interfaces and related information to verify that traffic is detected on the interfaces that you connected to in the Data Center, for example, if traffic is actually mirrored. If you change the monitoring interface assignment here because no traffic is detected (or for any other reason), you must go back to the Data Center and adjust the physical interface connections.

The Add Channel dialog box contains the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>The interface name.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Traffic</td>
<td>The total VLAN traffic monitored by the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcast</td>
<td>The percentage of broadcast traffic detected on the VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirrored</td>
<td>The percentage of total traffic not broadcast and not directed at the Appliance. This information indicates whether the device is monitoring traffic. A value of less than 20% indicates that the switch was not correctly configured. Under most circumstances, the mirrored traffic percentage should be very high on all but relatively quiet VLANs. A quiet VLAN shows a high percentage of broadcast traffic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Unicast | The percentage of traffic sent to and from the Ethernet address on the interface. |

Troubleshooting information is displayed at the bottom of the dialog box if traffic detection is exceptionally low or high.

3. From the Monitor drop-down menu, select the interface connected in the Data Center.

4. From the Response drop-down menu, select the interface connected in the Data Center.

5. You can select Advanced to modify VLAN tagging definitions. See Customize VLAN Tagging Definitions for details.

6. Select OK. The Channels pane displays the defined channel setup.
Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard

The Channels pane contains the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enabled</strong></td>
<td>Activates the channel configuration. Monitoring and response activity do not take place until you select <strong>Apply</strong> from the Channels pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monitor Interface Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor VLAN</td>
<td>Displays all VLAN IDs discovered for the selected monitor interface. If you defined a channel that works with an IP layer, that VLAN is displayed as <strong>IP LAYER</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic</td>
<td>Displays total VLAN traffic detected on the monitor interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirrored Traffic</td>
<td>Displays the percentage of mirrored traffic from the total VLAN traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symmetric</td>
<td>Indicates whether the interfaces passed the Symmetric Traffic test. The test verifies that the Appliance can see symmetric traffic on the monitoring interfaces. That is, for every TCP conversation, both incoming and outgoing traffic is visible. If this condition is detected, traffic received on the channel is ignored until the condition has cleared. The test runs continually. If the test fails, you can review related troubleshooting information at the bottom of the Channels pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong># Hosts</strong></td>
<td>Displays the total number of endpoints monitored on the VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Response Interface Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response VLAN</td>
<td>Displays all VLAN IDs discovered for the selected response interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic</td>
<td>Displays total VLAN traffic detected on the response interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response</td>
<td>Indicates whether the Response Traffic test succeeded on the VLAN. The test verifies that the Appliance successfully sends response traffic to the network. The test is runs continually. If the test fails, you can review related troubleshooting information at the bottom of the Channels pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Displays the DHCP address used by the Appliance for response traffic. By default, the IP address is acquired through DHCP. If the DHCP is not successful, Forescout 8.1 cannot respond to ARP requests. In this case, manually define the address. Addresses are defined per VLAN, if required. See <strong>Manually Add a VLAN</strong> for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Select **Use DHCP by Default** if a DHCP address is used by Forescout 8.1 for monitored traffic. Clear **Use DHCP by Default** to manually configure the IP address.

8. Select the **Enabled** checkbox for each VLAN that you want to activate.

9. Select **Apply**. Symmetric and Response tests are performed. If the tests fail, you can review related troubleshooting information at the bottom of the dialog box.

**Indicators**
An indicator is displayed on the Console status bar if:

- There is a connectivity problem on an enabled VLAN or interface.
- No channels are enabled.
- A new VLAN is discovered by the Appliance.

A tooltip provides details about the event. For example:

![Tooltip Example]

**Switch**

For switches managed by the Switch Plugin, Forescout switch tools let you:

- Track the location of endpoints connected to network switches and retrieve relevant switch information. For example, users can view the switch IP address and switch port to which endpoints are connected.
- Detect new endpoints on the network, by alerting Forescout 8.1 on port status changes via SNMP traps.
- Assign switch ports to VLANs, allowing you to set up dynamic, role-based VLAN assignment policies or quarantined VLANs.
- Use ACLs to open or close network zones, services, or protocols on specific endpoints at the switch.
- Block endpoints based on IP addresses or MAC addresses.
- Shut down switch ports completely.
In the Switch pane, you can configure a switch that exists in your network by selecting **Add** and completing the Add Switch wizard.

You can configure the switch here to add other switches in your network to Forescout 8.1 in two ways:

- **Auto-discover additional switches:** Switches of certain vendors (Cisco, HP, Brocade/Foundry, Enterasys and Nortel) can *auto-discover* neighboring switches of any of these vendors.
- **Discovered switches inherit basic attributes of the switch that detected them.**
- **All permissions and ACL configurations in discovered switches are disabled.**
You will need to complete the configuration of auto-discovered switches including (recommended) enabling auto-discovery (so that their neighbors can also be auto-discovered) and then enabling these switches.

- Use the switch configuration as a template for other switches: When an unmanaged switch (that is, a switch that is not managed by the Forescout Switch Plugin) sends an SNMP trap and the community string of the unmanaged switch matches the community string of this switch, then all the settings of this switch (except its IP address) are applied to the unmanaged switch. Switches detected in this manner are automatically added to Forescout 8.1.

You can also add additional switches here and then select Switch in the Forescout Options window to edit switch configurations and use additional Switch Plugin features.

Refer to the Switch Plugin Configuration Guide for information about additional switch configuration features. To open this file, select Options from the Tools menu, select Switch and then select Help.

Policies

In the Policies pane, you can classify endpoints into easily manageable groups of network assets and corporate/guest users. Network asset classification is carried out by a Forescout Primary Classification policy. Corporate/guest user classification is carried out by a Corporate/Guest Control policy. These policies are created using core policy templates.
How Classification Works
A proprietary algorithm is used to compare the properties of endpoints with the properties of pre-defined device classification profiles, each composed of properties and corresponding values. When the classification algorithm detects that certain endpoint properties match a given profile, the endpoint is classified appropriately. For example, the profile defined for Apple iPad considers a set of properties that includes the HTTP banner, the NIC vendor, and Nmap scan results.

Primary Classification
Primary Classification resolves function, operating system, vendor, and model classification properties on connected devices, and groups the devices into the following easily manageable groups:

- CounterACT Devices
- NAT devices: Devices that may hide other devices.
- Printers
- VoIP devices
- Network devices: Networking equipment, such as WLAN controllers, routers, switches, and wireless controllers.
- Storage
- Windows
- Macintosh
- Linux/Unix
- Mobile devices
- Unclassified: Forescout 8.1 does not know which category the endpoint fits, for example, a new network device.

To create the groups:
1. In the Primary Classification section, select Classify devices.
2. Select the range of IP addresses to be classified.

Corporate/Guest Detection
The Corporate/Guest Control feature lets you detect:

- Endpoints known to be part of the corporate network
- Endpoints that may be guests, i.e., not part of the corporate network

Endpoints are sorted into Corporate Hosts, Signed-in Guests and Guest Hosts groups. If Forescout 8.1 cannot evaluate the status of an endpoint, that endpoint is classified as a guest host.

Corporate Hosts are endpoints currently signed in as a Domain User or that have recently authenticated to an approved authentication server.

To create the groups:
1. In the Corporate/Guest Detection section, select Detect guests.
2. Select the range of IP addresses to be classified.

**Inventory**

The Asset Inventory presents a live display of network activity in the Console, for example, running processes and services, detected vulnerabilities, open ports, and logged in users.

Use the Asset Inventory to:

- Broaden your view of the network from endpoint-specific to activity-specific.
- View endpoints that have been detected with specific attributes whether or not they are policy-compliant.
- Easily track network activity.
- Incorporate inventory detections into policies. For example, if you discover that network guests are running unauthorized processes on your network, create a policy that detects and halts these processes on guest machines.

See [Working with Asset Inventory Detections](#) for details about the inventory or select **Help** in this pane.

In the Inventory pane, you select the network activities to include in the Asset Inventory.

The following network activities are selected by default:
- Users
- OS Class types running
- Switches integrated with Forescout 8.1
• Windows Applications installed
• Processes and services running
• Windows machines
• Operating system versions running
• Linux machines
• Logged-in users
• Operating systems running
• Processes running
• Macintosh machines
• Users logged-in
• Operating systems running
• Processes running
• Updates missing

* External Devices Connected and Microsoft Vulnerabilities are excluded from the default Inventory rules. Discovery of these properties may generate extensive network traffic. You can include them by updating the Inventory rules. See [How the Asset Inventory Is Learned](#) for details.

* Open ports can also be displayed in the Asset Inventory. This information can be displayed by creating a policy that includes the Open Ports property.
The Finish pane displays a summary of all the wizard definitions. If you select **Cancel**, all the information in the wizard is deleted. You can update this information from the Forescout Options window.

Select **Save** to save the configuration to an external file.

- Use the Check for Updates feature to automatically update your system with the most current version of all installed Forescout modules. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for more information about working with Check for Updates.
- After registering with an Enterprise Manager, many Appliance policy settings are automatically replaced with the Enterprise Manager settings. See CounterACT Device Management Overview for details.

**Set Up an Appliance with Enterprise Manager Settings**

You can import the settings of an Enterprise Manager to new Appliances. This saves you the trouble of redefining configuration values, and ensures uniform configuration.
In addition to the Enterprise Manager wizard settings, plugin versions are synchronized and the following Enterprise Manager definitions are imported:

- HPS Inspection Engine and Switch Plugin definitions
- Policy and Group definitions
- Virtual Firewall settings
- Policy preferences
- Host Discovery settings
- IP addresses allowed access to the Assets Portal and Console

This option also registers the Appliance with the Enterprise Manager. When Enterprise Manager settings are changed, the settings are applied to the Appliance as well. See Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles for more information about CounterACT device management.

**To set up an Appliance:**

1. Log in to the Enterprise Manager via the Console. See Log In to the Forescout Console.
2. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select CounterACT Devices.
3. Select Add.

4. Enter the IP address of the Appliance. The default port is 13000. It is recommended to not change this value.

5. Enter the Admin password created during the Appliance installation in the Data Center.

6. Select OK until Forescout 8.1 connects to the Appliance. Messages indicate that the components are connecting and that the Appliance is being registered with the Enterprise Manager. You are prompted to verify that the CounterACT Appliance public key signature is valid.
7. To verify, log in to the CounterACT Appliance through the command-line interface (CLI). Run the command: `fingerprintkey`. (In the Bash shell, run `fstool key`. Refer to the Forescout CLI Commands Reference Guide for more information.)

8. Verify that the output of the command matches the value displayed in the Forescout dialog box, and select Yes.

9. You are prompted to complete the wizard with Appliance-specific definitions. These include:
   - **Enforcement Mode** (See the description in *Set Up an Appliance from Scratch.*)
   - **Channels** (See the description in *Set Up an Appliance from Scratch.*)
   - Assign IP addresses
   - Run Appliance Script

### Assign IP Addresses

It is recommended to assign all endpoints in your Internal Network to CounterACT devices.

Define assignments so that the Appliance manages endpoints that are physically close or manages IP address ranges of the broadcast domains it is tapping in to. Unassigned endpoints can be viewed in the Detections pane by selecting **Show only Unassigned**.

Distributing the work load among various Appliances:

- Improves performance
- Improves robustness and responsiveness
- Prevents the Enterprise Manager from being a single point of failure if the Enterprise Manager temporarily disconnects

The window includes the Appliance that you are adding as well as other Appliances. Edit as required.

All endpoints in your Internal Network should be assigned to an Appliance. Assignments must be unique to each Appliance. IP address ranges or segments cannot overlap between Appliances.
Unassigned endpoints can be viewed in the Detections pane by selecting Show Only Unassigned.

Editing is only available if you are logged in to the Console via the Enterprise Manager.

You can later view and edit assignments for all Appliances and display unassigned IP addresses. See Working with Appliance Folders for details.

**Finish**

A summary of all the wizard definitions is displayed. If you select Cancel, all the information in the wizard is deleted and the Appliance is removed. You can update this information from the Forescout Options window.

1. Select Check for Updates to automatically update your system with the most current versions of all installed Forescout plugins/modules. See Checking for Updates for details.

2. Select Save to save the configuration to an external file.

**Set Up an Enterprise Manager from Scratch**

This section describes how to set up an Enterprise Manager from scratch.

To perform the initial setup:

1. Log in to the Enterprise Manager via the Console. See Log In to the Forescout Console. The Initial Setup Wizard opens.
2. Select **Setup from scratch** to run the Initial Setup Wizard for the Enterprise Manager. You are prompted to enter the following information:

- Appliance time zone and NTP Server settings
- Mail relay and admin email addresses
- User Directory account information and the server IP address
- Domain credentials including, domain administrative account name and password
- Authentication servers used to verify that endpoints have been authenticated successfully
- Internal Network
- Switch Information
- Classification and Guest Control Policies
- Inventory

See [Set Up an Appliance from Scratch](#) for information about the Initial Setup Wizard.

**Set Up an Enterprise Manager with Appliance Settings**

Use this option to replicate settings from a configured Appliance to an Enterprise Manager, and to register the Appliance with the Enterprise Manager. In addition, plugin versions are synchronized and the following definitions are imported from the Appliance.

- HPS Inspection Engine and Switch Plugin definitions
- Policy and Group definitions
- Virtual Firewall settings
- Policy preferences
- Host Discovery settings
- IP addresses allowed to connect to the Assets Portal and the CounterACT device
- Internal Network
- Legitimate Traffic rules

**To replicate settings:**

1. Log in to the Enterprise Manager via the Console. See [Log In to the Forescout Console](#). The initial setup pane opens.

2. Select **Replicate CounterACT Appliance** and then select **Next**.

3. In the Add Appliance pane, enter the Appliance IP address. The default port is 13000. It is recommended to keep this value.

4. Enter the Admin password created during the Appliance installation in the Data Center.

5. Select **Next**. Messages indicate that the components are connecting and that the Appliance is being registered with the Enterprise Manager.

6. Select **Next**. You are prompted to verify that the CounterACT Appliance public key is valid.

**Finish**

A summary of all the wizard definitions is displayed. If you select **Cancel**, all the information in the wizard is deleted and the Appliance is removed. You can update this information from the Options window.

Select **Check for Updates** to automatically update your system with the most current versions of all installed plugins/modules.
Plugins and modules significantly broaden Forescout’s capabilities. For example, the Switch Plugin lets you track the location of endpoints connected to network switches and retrieve relevant switch information, detect new endpoints on the network, assign switch ports to VLANs, or shut down switch ports completely. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for more information about this and other plugins.

Select **Save** to save the configuration to an external file.

**When You Are Done**

After completing the Initial Setup Wizard, it is recommended to perform the following:

- Review Console and Assets Portal Access Assignments
- Set Up Segments
- Set Up Segment Properties
- Set Up Ignored IP Addresses
- Review, Run and Edit Pre-Defined Template Policies
- Set Up HTTP Redirection for Policies
- Set Up a Threat Protection Policy and Define Legitimate Traffic for Threat Protection Policies
- Review Asset Inventory Items and Create Lists
- Set Up Map Locations
- Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program

**Review Console and Assets Portal Access Assignments**

By default, Console and Assets Portal access is open to all users with IP addresses in the Internal Network. To change these defaults, see:

- Define Console Access
- Accessing the Assets Portal

**Set Up Segments**

*Network segments* are used create a visual representation of your organizational structure, for example, specific departments. After you define segments, you can display endpoints in the Detections pane per segment and configure your policy scope and other Forescout features using segments.

For example, you can view vulnerable endpoints detected in your sales department, malicious endpoints detected by R&D, or network policy violations in the finance department. The segment names that you assign also appear in the Detections pane, Segment column when endpoints are detected. The segments also appear for other features. For example, when creating an accounting segment, the defined range is available when using the VA tool (that is, a user wants to scan accounting), or the Virtual Firewall Policy (that is, accounting cannot use FTP).
Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard

Forescout Administration Guide 71

See Working with Forescout Segments for details.

Set Up Segment Properties

Segment properties examine the network segment in which an endpoint resides. Use these properties to create policies that apply actions to endpoints on a particular network segment. These properties are located in the Device Information group of the Properties tree. See Device Information Properties for a description of each property.

Set Up Ignored IP Addresses

You can define endpoints that should be ignored by all policy and Discovery rules, for example, a set of servers that should not be included in policy inspection. Endpoints that you add to this group are inspected by Threat Protection and Virtual Firewall policies. See Creating an Ignored IP Address List for details.

Review, Run and Edit Pre-Defined Template Policies

Forescout templates are predefined policies that help you:

- Quickly create important, widely used policies based on predefined policy parameters.
- Automatically group network devices into categories that can be used to apply policies.
- More easily control endpoints and guide users to compliance.
- More easily and quickly implement Forescout 8.1 major capabilities.
- Roll out your policies more safely by applying conditions and actions that have been used and tested.
- Pinpoint any infractions to your security system more quickly.
Chapter 2: Working with the Initial Setup Wizard

Predefined actions – instructions regarding how to handle endpoints – are generally disabled by default. You should only enable actions after testing and fine-tuning the policy. See Chapter 5: Policy Templates.

**Set Up HTTP Redirection for Policies**

Forescout HTTP actions let you redirect endpoint web sessions and replace them with important messages or tasks. For example, redirect a user web session and replace it with a notification page, or with a page that forces the network user to authenticate. To use these features, you may need to perform preliminary redirection procedures. Note the following:

- HTTP actions require that the Appliance sees traffic going to the web.
- HTTP redirection requires proper injection setup. See Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection for details.
- If your organization uses a proxy for web connection, you must define the proxy ports to be used. See Policy Preferences for details.
- An option is available to redirect user Intranet sessions. See Defining HTTP Redirect Exceptions and Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection for details.
- To disable HTTP redirection, see Disable Web Portals.

**Set Up a Threat Protection Policy and Define Legitimate Traffic for Threat Protection Policies**

Your Threat Protection Policy lets you define how Forescout 8.1 handles malware, worms and other malicious endpoints that attempt to infect your network.

See Chapter 13: Threat Protection or more information.

You may also need to ignore legitimate scanning activity detected by Forescout 8.1, for example, when you are performing vulnerability assessments, when traffic is generated by legitimate email servers, or for any other business requirement that compels you to grant full access to specific addresses. You should do this to facilitate legitimate traffic and avoid blocking important traffic.

**Review Asset Inventory Items and Create Lists**

The Asset Inventory presents a live display of network activity at multiple levels, for example, running processes and services, detected vulnerabilities, open ports, and logged in users.

Use the Asset Inventory to:

- Broaden your view of the network from endpoint-specific to activity-specific.
- View endpoints that have been detected with specific attributes whether or not they are policy-compliant.
- Easily track network activity and elements.
Incorporate inventory detections into policies using customized authorized and unauthorized Lists. You can use the inventory to discover network guests running unauthorized processes on your network; create an unauthorized processes list and incorporate that list in a policy that detects and halts these processes on guest machines. For example, create an Unauthorized Processes Running list and use that list in a policy with the Kill Process action on endpoints that are running the process.

See Working with Asset Inventory Detections and Create Lists Based on Inventory Detections.

Set Up Map Locations

The site map, powered by Google Maps, provides at-a-glance, real-time corporate site status, compliance level, alerts and more — across offices, cities, countries and continents. Use the map to get at-a-glance, high-level status reports across sites for:

- Total number of devices per site
- Non-compliant devices per site
- Unmanaged devices per site
- Devices without policies deployed per site
- Blocked devices per site
- Malicious devices per site
- Number of online and offline devices per site
- Number of corporate and guest devices per site

You can toggle from a detail-oriented endpoint view to a broader birds-eye view to keep track of endpoints deployed at sites across the globe.

See Set Up the Map – Create Site Locations for details.
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

- About the Console
- Console Components
- Console Searches
- Working in the Site Map
- Working with Forescout Detections
- Working in the Detections Pane
- Working in the Filters Pane
- Working with Asset Inventory Detections
- Working with Forescout Segments
- Working with Organizational Units
- Working with Forescout Groups
- Creating an Ignored IP Address List
- Restricting Endpoint Inspection
- Getting More Information about Endpoints
- Working with the Forescout Compliance Center
- Exit the Console
About the Console

The Console is the management application used for viewing information about endpoints and devices, for example, NAC compliance status, malicious intrusions, vulnerable endpoints, and real-time network inventories. In addition, the Console offers an extensive range of tools to analyze and manage these endpoints.

To access the Console, see Log In to the Forescout Console.

For an explanation of the Console, see Console Components.

Console Components

The following sections describe the key components of the Console window:

- Title Bar
- Menu Bar
- Toolbar – Console Views
- Status Bar

Title Bar

The title bar displays the following information:

- CounterACT device IP address or host name.
- Login user name.
- CounterACT device connection status with the Console.
- Under certain circumstances, a user may have limited Scope access. Limited Scope access means that users cannot see or control many feature configurations in defined ranges and segments. See Access to Network Endpoints – Scope for details.
Menu Bar

The menu bar displays the Console menu options.

You can select More Space or Less Space in the Display menu to adjust the line spacing in the Console display.

Toolbar – Console Views

Toolbar items provide quick access to important information and tools. Select a toolbar tab to view the following:

- Forescout 8.1 Detections
- Asset Inventory Detections
- Threat Detection
- Policy Management
- Dashboard
- Additional Functionality

Forescout 8.1 Detections

The Home view displays:

- Extensive real-time information about endpoints detected on your network, for example, endpoint details learned by Forescout 8.1 information about endpoint policy status, and Forescout 8.1 actions applied to endpoints. See Working with Forescout Detections for details.
- The Forescout site map. The map, powered by Google, provides at-a-glance, real-time information about endpoints at across offices, cities, countries, and continents. See Working in the Site Map for details.

Open the Home view by selecting the Home tab:

Customize the Home View

Adjust the view to meet your viewing preferences by using the toggle arrow on the perimeter of the Console pane.
Asset Inventory Detections

The Asset Inventory presents a live display of network activity at multiple levels, for example, running processes and services, detected vulnerabilities, open ports, and logged in users.

Open the Asset Inventory view by selecting the Asset Inventory tab:

Use the Asset Inventory to:

- Broaden your view of the network from endpoint-specific to activity-specific.
- View endpoints that have been detected with specific attributes, whether or not they are policy-compliant.
- Easily track network activity and elements.
- Incorporate inventory detections into policies. For example, if you discover that network guests are running unauthorized processes on your network, you can create a policy that detects and halts these processes on guest machines.

For details, see Working with Asset Inventory Detections.

Threat Detection

The Threats view displays endpoints detected via Threat Protection policies. Create and edit Threat Protection Policies from this view. See Chapter 13: Threat Protection for details. The Threats tab can be displayed or hidden.
To display or hide the Threats tab:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu.

2. Select Threat Protection from the dropdown menu. The Threat Protection pane opens.

3. Select or clear Show Threats View.

4. Select Apply to save the changes.

Customize the Threats View

Adjust the view to meet your viewing preferences by using the toggle arrows on the perimeter of the Console pane.

Policy Management

Use the tools in the Policy view to create, edit and manage policies. See Chapter 4: Policy Management for details.

Open the Policy Management view by selecting the Policy Management tab:
Dashboard
Access the Dashboard – a web-based information center that delivers dynamic, at-a-glance information about:

- Device compliance
- Device classification
- Device management status
- Network overview

To access the Dashboard:
- Select the ellipsis icon ▼ on the Toolbar and select Dashboard. The Dashboard opens in a new browser window.

Additional Functionality
You can also access the Reports Portal, the Forescout Dashboard, and the Assets Portal from the toolbar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ellipsis Icon</th>
<th>Access additional options from the ellipsis drop-down menu:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▼</td>
<td>▪ <strong>Dashboard</strong>, a web-based information center that delivers dynamic at-a-glance information about network compliance, threats and guests. See Chapter 17: The Dashboard for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ <strong>Assets Portal</strong>, a web-based search and discovery tool that lets you leverage extensive network information regarding network assets. See Chapter 10: Assets Portal for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ <strong>Reports</strong>, to generate web-based reports. See Reports. For a full description of these reports, refer to the Reports Plugin Configuration Guide.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Options Icon | Use the Options window to define a wide range of system parameters and update parameters configured during the Appliance installation and initial setup. |

Status Bar
The status bar may display the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Connectivity Indicator</th>
<th>The Channel Connectivity Indicator is displayed if:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▽</td>
<td>▪ There is a connectivity problem on one of the enabled channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ No channels are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ A new channel is discovered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forescout 8.1 continually searches for traffic on channels defined in the Channel Configuration dialog box. A tooltip indicates which event occurred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm Indicator (Malicious Hosts Only)</th>
<th>The alarm indicator flashes when new endpoint activity is detected. By default, the alarm blinks for two minutes each time a high severity event is detected.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service Attack Indicator</td>
<td>The service attack indicator blinks when Forescout 8.1 detects a service attack. The indicator blinks until the service attack is viewed in the Current Service Attack dialog box. See Handling Service Attacks for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Status Indicator</td>
<td>Indicates the connection status between Appliances and the Enterprise Manager. If an Appliance is disconnected, the red checkmark is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enforcement Mode</td>
<td>If you set the system to the Partial Enforcement mode, the Enforcement indicator is displayed. The Partial Enforcement mode lets you monitor network traffic but limits your ability to respond to it. Specifically, the Threat Protection, HTTP Actions, and Virtual Firewall options are disabled. This mode is recommended for evaluation purposes only. See Set the Enforcement Mode for details. If the indicator reads High Activity Mode, Forescout 8.1 is responding to an extensive amount of traffic. See High Activity Mode for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updates</td>
<td>Indicates the availability of new updates of installed plugins and modules. Forescout 8.1 detects versions installed on your CounterACT devices and notifies you when new updates are available. Select the icon to view and install newer versions. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Availability Cluster Status</td>
<td>Indicates the status of a High Availability pair. Refer to the Forescout Resiliency Solutions User Guide for more information about High Availability. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access this guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date and Time Indicator</td>
<td>Indicates the current date and time according to your local time zone setting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Console Searches**

Use the search tool to quickly access information from Console tables in the Console, for example, in the Views pane, Detections pane, or the Modules pane. Items that match the search text appear as you type.
Where relevant, collapsed folders expand if the search item you entered is found in the folder. Some search bars can be hidden or displayed by clicking the pane header, for example, the Filters pane.

**Wildcard Searches**

You can use the following wildcard characters in searches throughout the Forescout Console:

- ***(asterisk)**. Matches any string, including an empty string, and including symbols. You can use the asterisk (*) anywhere in a string.
- **?(question mark)**. Matches one single character, including symbols.
- **\ (backslash)**. Used as an escape character to protect a subsequent special character (*, ?, \). For example, typing "\?" will search for a question mark (?) symbol.

**Working in the Site Map**

The Forescout site map, powered by Google, provides at-a-glance, real-time information about endpoints across offices, cities, countries, and continents. You can toggle between a **Satellite** view and a **Map** view.
Endpoint information is displayed in the panes below the site map.

Use the map to get high-level status information for each site, such as:

- Total number of devices
- Non-compliant devices
- Unmanaged devices
- Devices without policies deployed
- Blocked devices
- Malicious devices
- Number of online and offline devices
- Number of corporate and guest devices

**Browser Requirements:**
The map runs on Internet Explorer 8 and above.
Enable or Disable the Map

You can enable or disable the Forescout site map. This configuration is applied to all CounterACT Appliances.

To enable or disable the map:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Map**.

2. Select or clear **Show map view**.

3. Select **Apply**.

Set Up the Map – Create Site Locations

To work with the map, you must create map locations. Map locations comprise specific geographic locations that are assigned to segments. For example, create a NYC HQ location and assign segments located in the New York office network to this location.

Each location is represented on the map by a location indicator. The indicator size is based on the number of detections at the site, i.e., when there are more detections, the site indicator is larger.

After locations are created, the map displays information about detections at each site when you position your cursor over a site.

Click a location to view detailed site information. For example:
When you double-click a site, the endpoints at that site are displayed in the Detections pane below the map. A blue ring around the icon indicates that the site is selected. Clicking anywhere on the map to deselect the site.

You can also assign segments to locations from the Segment Manager.

To define locations:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu.
2. Select Map and then select Locations. The Locations pane opens.
3. Select Add. The Location Wizard opens.
4. Enter a location name and description. Select Next.
5. Define a location:
   – Define an address. If the address you enter is not maintained by Google maps, the location will not appear on the map.
   – Define the latitude and longitude.

6. Select **Next**.

7. Select **Add**. The Segment selection dialog box opens.

8. Select the segments that you want to associate with this geographical location.

9. Select **OK**. The location appears in the Locations pane.

**Customize Display Thresholds for Map Indicators**

The following options are available for customizing display thresholds for map indicators:
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

- **Customize Compliant Threshold Settings**
- **Customize Cluster Size Settings**
- **Customize Cluster Grid Size Settings**

**Customize Compliant Threshold Settings**

Customize the Compliant Thresholds (%) settings to adjust the color of location icons according to the percentage of compliant endpoints. Different colored icons are displayed on the map when the percentage of endpoints detected for a certain category is exceeded. For example, set the map to display a red, **Critical** icon for a site when between 0% and 5% of endpoints are compliant.

**To customize:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select **Thresholds** from the **Maps** folder. The Thresholds pane opens.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compliance Display Thresholds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0%  -  5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6%  -  25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26% -  50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61% -  100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Define the compliance display thresholds.

**Customize Cluster Size Settings**

Customize the Cluster Size settings to adjust the size of onsite and offsite location icons on the map. Larger icons are displayed for sites with a greater number of endpoints. For example, set the map to display a larger icon when there are between 10 and 50 endpoints at an onsite location and a smaller icon when there are less than 10 endpoints.

**To customize:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select **Thresholds** from the **Maps** folder. The Thresholds pane opens.
3. Adjust the Cluster Size ranges to define the icon sizes.

**Customize Cluster Grid Size Settings**

The **Cluster grid size** field determines how nearby offsite locations are clustered together at differing zoom levels. The Forescout site map uses grid-based clustering to divide the map into squares of a certain size. When viewing the map from a higher zoom level, Forescout 8.1 groups geographically close, offsite endpoint locations together and displays only one offsite indicator. When you zoom in, you see each distinct location.

The larger the number, the more offsite locations that are geographically close to one another will be clustered together at higher zoom levels. See [View Grid-Based Clustering of Endpoints](#) for details.

**To customize:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select **Thresholds** from the **Maps** folder. The Thresholds pane opens.
3. Adjust the **Cluster grid size** value.

**Map Tools**

Use map tools to:

- [Access the Map Legend](#)
- [View Grid-Based Clustering of Endpoints](#)
- [View Site-Specific Statistics](#)
- [Filter Map Display](#)
- [Display Information about Endpoints Not Assigned to a Location](#)

See [Enable or Disable the Map](#) to view the map.
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

Access the Map Legend

Select the Information icon \( \text{I} \) to display the map legend.

The Externally Managed Devices item in the legend serves as the groundwork for future support of offsite endpoint management.

View Grid-Based Clustering of Endpoints

The Forescout site map uses grid-based clustering to divide the map into squares of a certain size. When viewing the map from a higher zoom level, Forescout 8.1 groups geographically close endpoint locations together and displays only one indicator. When you zoom in, you see each distinct location.
The **Cluster grid size** field determines how locations are clustered. See [Customize Cluster Grid Size Settings](#) for details.

**View Site-Specific Statistics**

Select a site indicator to open a site form detailing the total number of endpoints detected and the number of endpoints detected at a site for specific categories. For example, you can view endpoints that were detected as non-compliant, malicious, or blocked.

**Filter Map Display**

A set of powerful filtering tools let you quickly view items of interest to you.

- [Filter by Online/Offline/Unassigned Endpoints](#)
- [Group, Segment and Policy Searches](#)
- [Filter by Online/Offline/Unassigned Endpoints](#)

**Group, Segment and Policy Searches**

These search options focus the map display based on location or segments and groups that you select in the Filters pane.

**Filter by Online/Offline/Unassigned Endpoints**
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

The default map filter lets you filter by online/offline or unassigned endpoints.

### Display Information about Endpoints Not Assigned to a Location

You can easily view information about endpoints that have not been assigned to a location. Site locations are defined in **Options > Maps > Locations**. Select the **No Location** indicator to learn about these endpoints.

#### Working with Forescout Detections

The Console Home tab displays important details about endpoints detected by Forescout 8.1 policies. This information can include:

- Device information, for example, IP addresses, MAC addresses, DNS host name or NetBIOS host name
- Guest and compliance status
- Switch related information, for example, the switch port to which the endpoint is connected
- Endpoint and user identity information, for example, User Directory user name, email address, department
- Information related to actions taken at the endpoint and notifications sent to network users

*If you installed plugins/modules, related information also appears. For example, if you installed the VPN Plugin, VPN user information is displayed. See [About Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products](#) for more information about plugins.*

#### Deriving Unique Endpoints from Observed Addresses

Forescout 8.1 learns the IP and MAC addresses of endpoints and network nodes in the following ways:

- By auditing network traffic
- By polling switches, controllers, domain controllers, and other network nodes
When optional plugins are installed that use additional information sources, such as flow protocols, Forescout 8.1 analyzes this information to identify unique endpoints, and to correlate IP and MAC addresses to each endpoint.

- Forescout 8.1 data correlation logic uses only IPv4 addresses to identify unique endpoints. IPv6 addresses are not used to identify endpoints.
- When no IPv4 address correlates to a unique MAC address, Forescout 8.1 lists this MAC-only endpoint with a placeholder IPv4 address in Console views. This discovery and correlation logic is unchanged when IPv6 addressable endpoints are supported.
- Dual-stack endpoints are detected and displayed by their IPv4 addresses.
- IPv6-only endpoints are detected by their MAC addresses, and displayed using a placeholder IPv4 address (as is done for MAC-only endpoints without an IPv4 address).

For Console settings to enable detection of MAC-only and IPv6-only endpoints, see Work with Hosts without IPv4 Addresses.

Two panes are available for displaying detection information from the Home tab.

- About the Detections Pane
- About the Details Pane

**About the Detections Pane**

You can use an extensive range of tools to help identify and control endpoints of interest. For example, you can:

- Control Endpoints from the Detections Pane.
- Track Endpoints Using the Detections Pane Filter.
- View Table Tooltip Information.
Filter the view in the Detections pane. See Working in the Filters Pane.

Filter the view based on policy status, for example, display only endpoints that did not match a policy, or display only endpoints that are offline.

The Hosts indicator at the top right corner of the Detections pane displays the total number of endpoints detected for the folder or sub-folder you select. When there are a large amount of endpoints and it takes a long time to load the information to the Console, this indicator is updated to Showing X of X and displays the number of endpoints currently loaded out of the total detected.

About the Details Pane

When you select an endpoint in the Detections pane, extensive details appear in the Details pane. See Details Pane.

Home Views

The information displayed in the Detections pane varies depending on the selected Home view. The following views are available:

- All Hosts View
- Policy View
- Real-Time Policy Status Summary
- Compliance View
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

- Corporate/Guests View
- History View

**All Hosts View**

The All Hosts view displays all endpoints that Forescout 8.1 detects. This includes endpoints that are not part of a particular policy.

**Policy View**

The Policy view displays endpoints detected as a result of policies created in the Policy Manager. Important detection statistics are provided. For example:

- The policy that the endpoint matched and when it was detected
- Machine information such as the IP address, MAC address, NetBIOS name and DNS name
- Actions taken at the endpoint, for example, if the endpoint was blocked or if access was prevented to the Internet
- User Directory information
- Automated notifications sent to endpoint users
- Information about endpoints that do not match the policy; endpoints that have been released from policy sanctions and endpoints that are pending inspection

**Real-Time Policy Status Summary**

You can view a real-time status summary for each policy. Policy status summaries are automatically updated in real time as the endpoint status changes.

**To review a summary:**

- Hold your cursor over a policy folder to view the summary information.
See Chapter 4: Policy Management for more information about working with policies.

**Compliance View**

The Compliance view displays endpoints that were detected in policies categorized as Compliance policies. By default, these include policies generated from Compliance templates.

Compliance categorization can also be configured in the Policy Manager. See Working with the Policy Manager for details.

Use this view to see information about the overall compliance status of endpoints included in such policies.

**Compliance Summary**

Select a specific endpoint to view a compliance summary for Compliance policies that inspected the endpoint.

The Compliance column entry in the Detections pane indicates whether the endpoint is overall compliant. If an endpoint is inspected by several compliance policies and is not compliant in one, the endpoint is not compliant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>Host IP</th>
<th>Compliance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DON01RQ83DC1</td>
<td>10.36.1.1</td>
<td>Not Compliant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DON01RQ825UCA</td>
<td>10.32.1.66</td>
<td>Compliant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DON01RQ825UCA</td>
<td>10.36.2.61</td>
<td>Not Compliant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More specific compliance information is shown in the Details pane > Compliance tab, in the ForeScout Compliance Center section. This information includes policy names, compliance issues, actions taken, remediation and last update time and the Status. If the Status indicates NA, the endpoint was not in the policy scope.

**Corporate/Guests View**

The Corporate/Guests view displays endpoints that were detected in policies categorized as Guest policies, including policies generated from the Corporate/Guest Control template. Categorization is performed in the Policy Manager. See Working with the Policy Manager for details.

This view displays information about the overall corporate or guest status of endpoints included in such policies.

**History View**

The History view displays a snapshot of detection and action information from a previous period. You can view information about malicious endpoints, Service Attacks, and policy detections.

You can perform the following from the History view:

- Use right-click action tools on selected endpoints.
- View details about the endpoint events listed in the Detections pane.
To open the history view:

1. Select the Home tab.
2. Select an entry under History in the Views pane. The policy history filters are displayed at the top of the Detections pane.
3. Select required values for the filters. The following filters are available:
   - **Date filter**: Select a search date.
   - **Time filter**: Select a search time.
   - **Policy filter**: Select a policy to view.
   - **Status filter**: Select endpoints to view based on status.
4. Select Load to load the information.

   The Detections pane is updated with new information according to the specified filters.

**Working in the Detections Pane**

You can perform a variety of tasks from the Detections pane, including:

- Track Endpoints Using the Detections Pane Filter
- Configure the Detections Pane Columns
- View Table Tooltip Information
- Control Endpoints from the Detections Pane

**Track Endpoints Using the Detections Pane Filter**

Quickly track endpoints of specific interest to you using the Detections pane filter. Endpoints that meet the filter requirements appear as you type.

*The filter applies to all endpoints, but information may not appear if it is contained in hidden columns. Be sure to display columns that may contain relevant details.*
Configure the Detections Pane Columns

Default columns appear in the Detections pane with basic endpoint property details, actions taken at endpoints, and related information. The information varies according to the selected Home view. For each view, default information is displayed.

You can set change the layout and content of the columns in several ways. You can:

- Add, Remove, and Reorganize Columns in the Detections Pane
- View the "Best Fit" for Columns
- Sort the Columns
- Export Detections Pane Data

Add, Remove, and Reorganize Columns in the Detections Pane

Default columns appear in the Detections pane with basic endpoint property information. Additional information can be displayed by adding other columns. You can also remove columns if your screen becomes cluttered.

The Host and Host IP columns are based on IPv4 and MAC information. When IPv6 addressable endpoints are supported in your environment, use the procedure described here to add columns for IPv6-related properties. See Device Information Properties. For Console settings to enable detection of MAC-only and IPv6-only endpoints, see Work with Hosts without IPv4 Addresses.

To add, remove, and reorganize columns:

1. In the Detections pane, right-click a header and select Add/Remove Columns.
2. In the **Available Columns** list, select the columns that you want to add and then select **Add**.

3. In the **Selected Columns** list, select the columns that you want to remove and then select **Remove**.

4. The first column in the **Selected Columns** list is displayed in the leftmost position in the Detections pane. Use the **Move Down** and **Move Up** options to reorder the columns.

5. Select **OK**.

   **To remove columns directly from the Detections pane:**
   - Right-click a column and select **Remove Column**.

**View the “Best Fit” for Columns**

You can improve the readability of the Detections pane by working with the Best Fit Column option. This feature automatically adjusts the selected column width to display the column text in its “best fit.”

**To work with the Best Fit Column option:**

- In the Detections pane, right-click a column title and select **Best Fit Column**, or double-click the separator line in between columns.

**Sort the Columns**

The columns can be sorted in ascending or descending alphabetical, chronological, or numerical order, as appropriate for each column.
To sort the content:
- Click a column header to sort the table content according to its values. A triangle at the top of the column indicates the sorting order (downward for descending, upward for ascending).

Export Detections Pane Data
You can export Detections pane data or sections of it to a CSV file.

To export data:
1. Select Export Current Table from the Reports menu or right-click an endpoint and select Export Table.
2. Browse to the location where you want to save the file.
3. Configure an export option:
   - Export all information for all current detections.
   - Export displayed information for all current detections (not including information in hidden columns.)
   - Export all information but from selected rows only.
   - Export displayed information from selected rows only (not including information in hidden columns.)

4. Select OK.

View Table Tooltip Information
When you hover over an item in the table, a tooltip displays information regarding that item. For example, if you hold your cursor over the Action field, a tooltip displays detailed information regarding the action. Important troubleshooting information may be included. For example, an entry indicating that the endpoint has not been assigned to an Appliance and as a result is not monitored. For easier reading, select F2 to freeze the tooltip.
Control Endpoints from the Detections Pane

Various options are available for controlling endpoints from the Detections pane. For example, you can:

- Start and cancel Forescout 8.1 actions on selected endpoints
- Create endpoint exceptions
- Recheck endpoint status
- Clear property detections
- Add a customized comment about the endpoint
- Add the endpoint properties to a policy list

This section describes the tools available for controlling endpoints from the Detections pane.
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

Start Actions on Selected Endpoints
You can perform actions on endpoints displayed in the Detections pane. For example:

- Send email, balloon messages or HTTP messages to operators, administrators and network users
- Block or quarantine endpoints to a VLAN
- Prevent access to the Internet
- Kill a process, peer-to-peer application, or instant messaging application
- Force authentication to the network

See [Chapter 7: Working with Actions](#) for details about all actions.

To start an action:
1. Right-click an endpoint in the Detections pane.
2. Select an action category and sub-category, and then select an action.

   *If you installed plugins or modules, related actions are available. For example, if you installed the VPN Plugin, VPN related actions are included.*
Cancel Actions on Selected Endpoints

You can manually cancel actions currently carried out on detected endpoints. The action remains cancelled until it is unmatched from a policy and then re-matched, or until it is removed from a policy definition or stopped. You can select several endpoints and cancel actions simultaneously.

**Can all action types be cancelled?**

Only continuous actions can be manually cancelled. Continuous actions have continued impact on the endpoint. For example, the Assign to VLAN action keeps endpoints in a specific VLAN.

- An exception to this is the Add to Group action.

One-time actions have temporary impact on the endpoint until they are carried out again, for example, the Send Email action or the HTTP redirection action. One-time actions cannot be manually canceled once they are carried out. If you incorporated an action in an Action Schedule, you can perform the manual cancel on a one-time action.

**How do you know if an action can be cancelled?**

Right-click the endpoint in the Detections pane and check to see if the action appears when you select Cancel Actions.
How do I know how an action was applied?
The Action tooltip displays information about how the action was applied or stopped.

To cancel actions:
- Right-click the endpoint in the Detections pane and select **Cancel Actions**.

Add Endpoint Properties to a List
You can select an endpoint and add the properties detected on it to a property List. For example, a list of services or MAC addresses.

Use Lists to create powerful policies. For example, add a prohibited service to a service blacklist and then create a policy that uses the list to detect the service at endpoints.

To add endpoint properties:
1. Right-click an endpoint in the Detections pane and select **Add to List**.
2. Select the properties that you want to add to the list.
3. Select a list in which to add the properties or create a new list.
4. Select **OK**.

**Additional Controls**

Additional controls are also available from the Detections pane.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Exception</strong></th>
<th>Excludes selected endpoints from policy inspection. See Create Policy Endpoint Exceptions for details.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Delete</strong></td>
<td>Releases the endpoint from any action taken. If the endpoint is detected and at the next recheck matches the policy, the action is applied again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recheck</strong></td>
<td>Rechecks the endpoint for policy detections. Options are available to recheck a single endpoint for a particular policy or recheck the endpoint for all policies. You can also recheck multiple endpoints simultaneously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Clear Detection

Clear Event property detections, for example, admission or authentication login events.
This action cancels any actions assigned to the endpoint as a result of the detection. You may need to clear event detections for troubleshooting purposes.

Two options are available for clearing detections:

- Clear a single event from the Console Details pane > Profile tab.

- Clear several events by right-clicking an endpoint, selecting Clear Detection, and then selecting the events that you want to clear.

The dialog box displays all endpoint events, regardless of whether they were detected on the endpoint.

The Event Viewer and Audit Trail maintain information about cleared events. See Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs for details.

Events can also be cleared from the Assets Portal. See Chapter 10: Assets Portal for details.
Comment

Makes endpoint management easier with user-defined comments. Create a comment by right-clicking an endpoint or group of endpoints, and then use the search box to look for endpoints with the comment text or create a policy that detects endpoints based on your comment. Special characters such as `~!@#$%^&=*()+\[\]‘;’/{}|:"? are not allowed in the comment field and are removed if entered. The comment is retained for the life of the endpoint in Forescout 8.1. Use the Device Information > Comment property to create a policy that detects endpoints with a comment. See Device Information Properties for details.

Malicious Host Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Set State/Time</th>
<th>Changes the malicious host state and expiration time. See Changing the Host State for details.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add to Legitimate Email Servers</td>
<td>Defines the endpoint as a legitimate email host. Forescout 8.1 then ignores email traffic detected at this endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add to Legitimate Traffic</td>
<td>Defines the endpoint as a Legitimate Traffic host. Endpoints that perform legitimate scans are ignored; they are not counted in the scan count by Forescout 8.1 when attempting to access defined services and endpoints. See View Legitimate Traffic for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create Policy Endpoint Exceptions

You can select endpoints in the Detections pane and exempt them from further inspection for the policy that detected them. The exceptions that you create here are added to the policy’s Exceptions parameters.

If you add an endpoint as an exception while it is blocked or redirected, that endpoint is immediately released.

To create exceptions:

1. In the Detections pane, right-click an endpoint or group of endpoints and select Exceptions > Add Policy Exception. The selected endpoints are listed in the Add Policy Exception dialog box.

![Add Policy Exception](image)
2. Select a policy or sub-rule from which to exclude the endpoint and define the exception type.

3. From the **Except these** drop-down menu, select the type of identifier to use in applying the exception. Options may include the IP address, host name, and MAC address or user name of the endpoint. Select the identifier that is least likely to change.

4. Select **OK**.

The specified endpoints are exempt from further inspection for this policy. Blocking actions taken are released. Non-blocking actions, such as Add to Group, Send email, and one-time HTTP actions are not stopped.

### Working in the Filters Pane

The Filters pane provides tools that let you organize endpoints into logical categories, and then view them in the Detections pane per category.

This is important, for example, when managing networks with extensive detections.

Several filter categories can be created:

- **Segments**: Segments lets you organize your endpoints into logical categories for example, Sales or Finance departments. Sub-segments can also be created. For example, create a Sales category and, under that, a Local Sales and International Sales category. Define segments to create a visual representation of your network that closely represents your organizational structure. See [Working with Forescout Segments](#) for details.

- **Organizational Units**: An organizational unit reflects a group of Forescout segments that have something in common, for example, the *East*, *West*, and *Central Management* segments can be organized into the *Management Organizational Unit*. See [Working with Organizational Units](#) for details.
  
  - **Properties – Passive Learning**: Define endpoints that Forescout 8.1 does not actively inspect. See [Restricting Endpoint Inspection](#) for details.
  
  - **Groups**: A group is a collection of endpoints with something in common, such as endpoints that run Windows systems or guest endpoints. Groups help you view and manage Forescout 8.1 detections, make it easier to define policies, and make policy implementation easier to track. See [Working with Forescout Groups](#) for details.
Use the Filters pane search option to display segments, organizational units, ignored IPs, or groups of interest to you. Items that meet the filter string appear as you type. Collapsed folders expand if the search item you entered is found in the folder. The search bar can be hidden or displayed by clicking on the Filters pane header.

Select an item from the Filters pane and view related endpoint detection in the Detections pane. For example, view endpoint detections from the Sales or Finance segment.

**Working with Asset Inventory Detections**

The Asset Inventory presents a live display of network activity at multiple levels, for example, running processes and services, detected vulnerabilities, open ports, and logged in users.

Use the Asset Inventory to:

- Broaden your view of the network from endpoint-specific to activity-specific.
- View endpoints that have been detected with specific attributes whether or not they are policy-compliant.
- Easily track network activity and elements.
- Incorporate inventory detections into policies (black and white lists). For example, if you discover that network guests are running unauthorized processes on your network, create a policy that detects and halts these processes on guest machines.

The Asset Inventory is organized according to the following categories of network activity:

- Classification
- Classification (Advanced)
- Microsoft Vulnerabilities detected
- External Devices connected
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

- Users
- Guest Registration
- User Directory
- Open Ports
- Geolocation
- Applications Installed
- Switches integrated with Forescout 8.1
- Switch
- Certain Windows, Linux and Macintosh activity and elements

You can maximize smooth tracking of this activity by customizing the inventory categories into sub-categories. For example, you may discover via the Asset Inventory that your network is working with a variety of authorized and unauthorized processes. If this is the case, you could create lists of authorized and unauthorized processes under the Process Running property folder or lists of Switch IP addresses per VLAN under the Switch folder.

Inventories only show endpoints that are currently online.

Asset Inventory activities are queried and refreshed every 23 hours. The refresh frequency can be modified from the Inventory Discovery rule. See Define Endpoint Discovery Rules for details.

**To access the Asset Inventory:**

- Select the Asset Inventory tab.

![Forescout Console Appliance](image)

*On a managed Appliance (connected to the Enterprise Manager), the Asset Inventory information is read-only, i.e., you cannot create, edit or remove lists.*

**Inventory Discoveries vs. Policy Discoveries**

Working with policies lets you query specific endpoints to discover what network activities they are carrying out, and to control them. The Asset Inventory provides an additional view of your network by presenting an overall cross-section of key network activities. This means, for example, instead of running a policy to verify that certain processes are or are not running on your network, you can instantly view all processes running in the Asset Inventory view.

**How the Asset Inventory Is Learned**

The properties listed in the Asset Inventory view are learned using the following Forescout tools:

- Inventory Discovery Rules
- Detection Policies
Certain inventory items may be learned passively by Forescout 8.1. This happens when the Appliance is installed and starts monitoring your network. However, this information may only be gathered from part of your network. It is recommended not to rely solely on this information when working with the Asset Inventory.

Inventory Discovery Rules

Inventory Discovery, defined in the Discovery manager, instructs Forescout 8.1 to discover the properties that you see in the Asset Inventory.

To ensure that these properties are discovered and displayed, you must enable Inventory Discovery.

To enable Inventory Discovery:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Discovery**.

2. Enable the rules by selecting the **Inventory** checkbox.

3. Select **Apply** and then select **Close**.

External Devices Connected and Microsoft Vulnerabilities are excluded from the Inventory rules by default. Discovery of these properties may generate extensive network traffic. You can include them, however, by updating the Inventory Discovery rules.

Open Ports can also be displayed in the inventory. This information is displayed by creating a policy that includes the Open Ports property. It is not learned from Inventory Discovery.

View and Update Discovered Inventory

You can update inventory properties discovered, as well as IP address ranges included in the discovery, and the discovery activation frequency.

The policy name cannot be edited.
To update the discovered inventory:

1. Select the Inventory entry from the Discovery manager and then select **Edit**.
2. The Discovery Wizard opens. See [Define Endpoint Discovery Rules](#) for details about working with the wizard.

The user Audit Trails log displays changes made to the Inventory Discovery rule. See [Monitoring User Activity](#) for details about this log.

If you clear a property in the Inventory Discovery rule but select it in another discovery rule, that property is included in the Asset Inventory. For example, if you clear the **Windows Applications Installed** option in the Inventory Discovery rule but select it in another discovery rule, installed applications are displayed in the Asset Inventory view.

**Detection Policies**

Inventory properties can also be discovered via your policies. For example, if you run a policy that detects running processes, the detected processes will appear in the Asset Inventory. Specifically, if you want to discover and display open ports in the Asset Inventory, you should create a policy that detects these ports.

**Filtering the View**

The following options are available for filtering the Asset Inventory view.

**Quick Search for Asset Inventory Data**

Use the Search tool to filter the Asset Inventory display. The filter is applied automatically as you type, with the matching Asset Inventory items immediately shown in the Asset Inventory view. For example, display all open UDP ports by typing in UDP in the filter field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Open Ports</th>
<th>UDP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Ports</td>
<td>Lists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161/UDP</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137/UDP</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123/UDP</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57/UDP</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>389/UDP</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53/UDP</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can customize the Asset Inventory. For example, you may discover via the Asset Inventory that your network is working with a variety of authorized and unauthorized applications. In this case, you could create lists that itemize authorized and unauthorized applications under the Windows Applications Installed property folder or lists of Switch IP addresses per VLAN under the Switch folder. After you create lists, you can filter the Asset Inventory view according to those lists.
See [Customizing the Asset Inventory](#) for details.

**Asset Inventory Panes**

The Asset Inventory is divided into the following sections:

- The Views Pane lists inventory categories based on endpoint properties and property Lists that you create.
- The Detections Pane lists information about the inventory property category selected in the Views pane. For example, the number of endpoints running a specific process.
- The Hosts Pane displays all endpoints that are detected with the selected inventory item. For example, the endpoint IP address, MAC address, connected switch port, or User Directory name.

Inventories only show information detected at online endpoints.

**Views Pane**

The Views pane shows the Asset Inventory items that you can view.

If non-bundled plugins, plugins, or eyeExtend products (Extended Modules) are installed, items related to the following items may appear:

- Classification Properties
- Function
- Operating System
- Vendor and Model
- Network Function
- Advanced Classification Properties
- Suggested Function
- Suggested Operating System
- Users
- Guest Registration
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

- User Directory
- Open Ports
- Windows Applications Installed
- External Devices connected
- Linux machines
- Logged-in users
- Operating system versions running
- Processes Running
- Microsoft Vulnerabilities detected
- Switches integrated with Forescout 8.1
- Windows machines
- Processes Running
- Services Running
- Operating system versions running
- Macintosh machines
- Users logged-in
- Operating system versions running
- Processes Running
- Software Updates Missing
- Applications Installed

You can create *lists* for each of the property categories shown in the view. For example, create an Unauthorized Processes Running List under the **Processes Running** category, and add all unauthorized processes detected at your network to it.
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

**Detections Pane**

The Detections pane displays information about the property selected in the Views pane.

| **Inventory Property** (for example, Processes Running) | The property selected in the Views pane. Information in this column includes all the values for the related property. For example, if you select the Process Running property, this column shows all the processes currently running. |
| No. of Hosts | The number of endpoints currently detected with the selected property. For example, the number of endpoints running a process; the number of endpoints detected at switch IP address; the number of endpoints detected with vulnerabilities or the number of endpoints logged in as Windows users. |
| Last Update | The last date and time when the detection was made. |
| Last Host | The last endpoint where the activity was detected. |
| Lists | The lists to which the live inventory property was assigned. For example, the iexplore.exe process may be part of the White listed Server Processes list and the White listed Endpoint Processes list. See Customizing the Asset Inventory for more information about creating lists. |

**Hosts Pane**

The Hosts pane displays the endpoints that have been detected for the Asset Inventory item selected. Use the tools available when working with endpoint detections to handle these endpoints. For example, you can assign actions to endpoints or drill down to get more detailed endpoint information. Use the search tool at the top of the pane to filter endpoints. See Control Endpoints from the Detections Pane and Getting More Information about Endpoints for details.
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

Customizing the Asset Inventory

The Asset Inventory automatically detects a wide range of network activity that you can organize into logical categories. For example, you may discover via the Asset Inventory that your network is working with a variety of authorized and unauthorized processes. If this is the case, you can create Lists of authorized and unauthorized processes under the Process Running property folder or lists of Switch IP addresses per VLAN under the Switch folder.

Working with inventory lists enables more customized, smoother tracking of network activity.

Two methods are available for working with lists:

- **Create Lists Based on Inventory Detections**
- **Plan Lists Ahead of Time**

Create Lists Based on Inventory Detections

Create lists based on Inventory detections – for example, if you see that Forescout 8.1 detected extensive authorized and unauthorized open ports, select the authorized ports and add them to an Authorized Open Ports list and then select the unauthorized ports and add them to an Unauthorized Open Ports list. You can create new lists or add the property values to an already existing list.

To create lists:

1. Select an Asset Inventory category in the Views pane, for example, **Open Ports**.
2. Right-click one or more property values in the Detections pane.
3. Select **Add to List**.
4. Add the value to an existing list by selecting the list from the drop-down menu.

5. Select OK. Alternatively, add the value to a new list.
   a. Select Add.

   b. Enter a list name in the List Name field, for example, Authorized Open Ports.

   c. Enter a list description in the Description field. The description is displayed in the Lists dialog box, where lists are managed.

6. Select OK. The list is added to the Add to List dialog box.

7. Select OK.

   The list is displayed in the Views pane when you select the parent Asset Inventory item.
Plan Lists Ahead of Time

You can create inventory lists for items not yet detected on your network. This is useful if you know ahead of time that you want to be able to easily track specific types of activity or elements, for example, if you do not want to work with specific open ports on your network. In this case, you may want to create black lists of open ports. When endpoints start working with these ports, they will appear in the Detections pane > Lists column. Information about endpoints working with these ports is included in the Hosts Pane.
To create lists:

1. Right-click a property folder in the Views pane and select Add List.

2. In the List Name field, enter a list name, for example, Unauthorized Open Ports.

3. In the Description field, enter a description of the list. The description is displayed in the Lists pane.

4. In the Values field, enter the property values, for example, the names of the ports that are not authorized.

5. Select OK.

   The values appear in the Asset Inventory under the folder that you created when they were detected on the network.

   The list and all the values that you entered can be viewed in the Lists pane.

   You can use lists when working with policies. For example, create a policy that tracks and stops machines running unauthorized processes. See Defining and Managing Lists for details.

View Lists and Values Associated with an Asset Inventory Item

You can view all lists and values that are associated with an Asset Inventory item. This information includes items that were manually added, as well as previously detected items that are currently offline.

To view lists:

1. Right-click the Asset Inventory folder whose sub-items you want to view.

2. Select View Lists.

   The Lists pane opens with all lists related to this item.

See Defining and Managing Lists for information about working with this feature.
Edit and Remove Lists

Use the tools described here to edit and remove Lists. Changes affect both the Asset Inventory view and the Lists shown in the List pane.

You cannot remove lists that are currently used in policies. Such lists can be edited, but the changes may immediately affect the policy behavior.

To remove a list:
1. Right-click a list in an Asset Inventory folder and select Remove List.
2. Select OK.

To edit a list:
1. Right-click a list in an Asset Inventory folder and select Edit List.

The List dialog box opens, showing all the values for the list.

2. Edit as required and then select OK.

Use Inventory Detections to Create Powerful Policies

Incorporate inventory data into your policies. Specifically, use inventory items to create property lists, and incorporate lists into policy conditions by following these guidelines:

1. View activities displayed in the Asset Inventory of interest to you, for example, unauthorized services running.
2. Add the activity to a current Forescout 8.1 list or create new list. See Defining and Managing Lists for details.
3. Add the list to your policy and define the appropriate action. For example, create a policy that finds unauthorized services running and use the Send Email action to notify your IT team.

See Use Your Custom Lists for details.
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

Working with Forescout Segments

Forescout segments are named groups of IP addresses. Use segments to represent your network in Forescout 8.1 in a way that reflects your organizational structure.

The segments discussed here are related to the IP subnets that define your network environment, but may not exactly parallel your network’s IP structure. The segments discussed here are internal Forescout 8.1 definitions used to specify sub-sections of your network within Forescout 8.1.

Segments let you organize endpoints into logical categories within Forescout. For example, you can define segments for Sales or Finance departments in your organization. Sub-segments can also be created: Create a Sales category and, under that, Local Sales and International Sales categories.

The segments you create appear in the Filters pane of the Console.

After you define segments, you can use them to:

- Filter the Detections pane. For example, display endpoints in the Sales department that match a specific policy.
- Specify IP addresses for Forescout features. For example, use predefined segments to specify the scope of a policy, antivirus tool, or Virtual Firewall.
- Work with the site Map. For example, create a location called NYC-HQ, New York and then assign the respective segments in the NYC-HQ office network to this location. See Set Up the Map – Create Site Locations for details.
- Create reports based on segments, for example, Compliance trends per segment. See Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs for details.

When you work with segments:

- Modifying an existing segment changes the IP addresses that are referenced by the segment wherever it is used in Forescout 8.1. For example, the scope of policies may change, or the CounterACT Appliance that handles certain IP addresses may change.
- One set of segments is shared among all CounterACT users. If one user creates, edits, or deletes a segment all users see the change.
- You can use the Audit Trails reports to search for information about users who have modified segment definitions. See Audit Logs for details.

Work with the Segments Manager

You can view and manage segments in the Segment Manager
To view with Segments Manager:

- Do one of the following:
  - Right-click the Segment node in the Filters pane in the Console, and select Segment Manager.
  - Select Segment Manager from the Tools menu.

The Segment Manager opens.

- The left pane shows the Segments tree. Use the search tool in this pane to find existing segments.
- The right pane shows information for the selected segment. The table lists IP addresses assigned to the segment. Select Show sub-segments to show IP addresses that this segment inherits from its children. Use the search tool to look for a specific IP address in this segment's scope.

For each segment, the table lists the following information:

- The full Path to the segment
- The Segment name
- The segment Description
- The Range of IP addresses associated with this segment

You can modify the segment tree in the following ways:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✚</td>
<td>Add a segment. You are prompted to name the new segment and specify its location in the segment tree. The new segment is created as a child of the selected node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🗑</td>
<td>Delete the selected segment. ForeScout 8.1 may still manage the IP addresses associated with the segment. See Remove Segments from the Tree.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Move the selected segment and its children to another location in the tree. The selected segment is moved under the new parent node that you specify. You can also drag and drop nodes of the tree.

*Moving segments in the hierarchy can change the IP addresses they contribute to parent segments. This can change the IP addresses that are referenced by the parent segment.*

Import or export a sub-tree of segment definitions to the selected location. Segment definitions are expressed in a XML file structure. See [Importing and Exporting the Segment Tree](#).

**Edit a Segment**

**To edit a segment:**

1. Select a segment from the Segment tree.
2. In the right pane, edit the **Name** and **Description** fields.
3. If you are working with the Console map, select **Location** and enter location information. See [Set Up the Map – Create Site Locations](#) for details.
4. To assign IP addresses to the segment:
   - Select **Add**.
   
     
     ![IP Address Range](ip_address_range.png)
     
   - Enter an IP address range or subnet and select **OK**. The specified IP addresses are added to the segment.
5. In the Segment Manager, select **OK** to save your changes.

**Remove Segments from the Tree**

Removing segments from the Segment tree only deletes the segment name. If you have already assigned IP addresses to this segment, Forescout 8.1 still handles endpoints with those IP addresses.

If you remove the segment, the feature indicates that no segment name is assigned.
Conversely, if you remove IP assignments from the **Ranges** section, those IP addresses are no longer included in the segment.

If only empty segments are assigned to a failover cluster, and you want to remove one of the segments, you must first remove it from all failover cluster folder assignments before you remove it from the Segment tree. See *Working with Appliance Folders* for more information about defining Appliance folders and refer to the *Forescout Resiliency and Recovery Solutions User Guide* for more information about failover clusters.

**Importing and Exporting the Segment Tree**

You can export or import the entire segment tree or a specific segment. Segment data (segment names and address ranges) is imported or exported as an XML file.

You may want to export segments if you are doing extensive editing and additions and want to use an external tool. You can also use the exported file as a template that reflects the file format required for importing.
Export a Structure

To export a segment:

1. Select Segment Manager from the Tools menu. The Segment Manager opens.
2. Right-click the segment that you want to export from the segment tree.
3. Select Export.
4. Select XML file format.
5. Locate the file and then select Export. The data is exported.

Import a Structure

You can import your segment structure from an XML file. These files can be created using any standard editing tool.

To create a structure using CSV file format:

1. Define your segment structure using an editing tool. Use the following format:

| Segment ID | A unique ID number assigned to each segment. |
| Parent Segment ID | The parent ID of each segment. |
| Segment Name | A name assigned to the segment. This name is displayed in the Filters pane and Information table. |
| From/To | IP address range of the segment. |

2. Apply the following rules:
   - Each segment ID must be a unique number.
   - Each segment must have a parent.
   - The parent ID for the root segment must be -1.
   - If there are a number of ranges within the segment, those ranges must have the same segment ID, parent ID, and name.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Segment ID</th>
<th>Parent Segment ID</th>
<th>Segment Name</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>Source Network</td>
<td>1.0.0.0</td>
<td>223.255.255.255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Finance</td>
<td>10.0.0.0</td>
<td>10.0.2.255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>10.0.5.0</td>
<td>10.0.7.255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Development</td>
<td>10.0.5.0</td>
<td>10.0.5.255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>QA</td>
<td>10.0.6.0</td>
<td>10.0.6.255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>10.0.3.0</td>
<td>10.0.4.255</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Save as a CSV file.

To create a structure using an XML file format:

1. Define your structure using an editing tool. Use the following format:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the segment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>Ranges</td>
<td>The ranges included in the segment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The hierarchy defined in the file should represent the hierarchy of the Internal Network.

For example:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="no"?>
<NODE ID="465524609423655971">
  <SEGMENT ID="20666761871135598614" NAME="0.0.0.0-222.222.222.222">
    <RANGE FROM="0.0.0.0" TO="222.222.222.222"/>
  </SEGMENT>
  <RESERVED FROM="224.0.0.0" TO="224.1.134.160"/>
</NODE>

<NODE ID="13967896579767066">
  <RESERVED FROM="224.3.13.66" TO="224.4.147.226"/>
</NODE>

<NODE ID="682592094625064143">
  <SEGMENT ID="809425573133093995" NAME="all ipv6">
    <SUBNET address="::" prefix="0"/>
  </SEGMENT>
  <RESERVED FROM="224.1.134.161" TO="224.3.13.65"/>
</NODE>
</NODES>
```

2. Save as an XML file.

To import the structure:

1. Select **Segment Manager** from the Tools menu. The Segment Manager opens.
2. Right-click a segment from the segment tree and select **Import**. An Import dialog box opens.
3. Select a file format and the file name.
4. Select **Import**. The structure is updated to reflect the data in the file.

**Working with Organizational Units**

An organizational unit reflects a group of Forescout segments that have something in common. For example, the **East**, **West** and **Central Management** segments can be organized within the **Management Organizational Unit**.

You can filter the view in the Detections pane according to a specific organizational unit. This makes it easier for you to locate problematic network areas.
Add an Organizational Unit

You can add organizational units to reflect the structure of your organization.

To add an organizational unit:

1. Right-click **Organizational Units** in the Filters pane.

2. Select **Organizational Units Manager**.
3. Select **Add**.

4. Enter a unit name in the **Name** field.

5. Enter a description in the **Description** field.

6. In the Segments tree, select the segments that you want to include in the unit.

7. Select **OK**.

**Add/Remove Segments from Organizational Units**

You can add and remove segments from and Organizational Unit.

**To add/remove segments:**

1. Select the Organizational Unit and select **Edit**. All defined segments appear. Segments already in the selected unit are highlighted.

2. Press the <Ctrl> key and then select the segments you want to include in the Organizational Unit. Unselected segments are not included.
3. Select **OK**, then select **Yes** to save your changes.

**Working with Forescout Groups**

A group is a collection of endpoints with something in common, for example, endpoints that run Windows operating systems or guest endpoints. Groups help you view and manage detections.

After you define groups and add endpoints to them, you can use the groups when specifying the scope of a policy. For example, if you create a Windows group, this definition is available when defining the scope or condition of a policy.

Groups are displayed in the Filters section of the Navigation pane.

Forescout 8.1 provides some default groups. For example, classification and corporate/guest groups may have been automatically created when your Console was set up. See the About the Initial Setup Wizard and Policies sections for details. In addition, optional plugins and policy templates may create groups.

Groups exist in a hierarchy, with sub-groups inside parent groups. All endpoints in the sub-groups are included in the parent group.

To add endpoints to a group:

- Specify the MAC or IP addresses in Group Manager.
- Use the **Add to Group** action in a policy, or apply it from the Console's right-click menu.

When a group is used, for example, when Forescout 8.1 evaluates a policy that uses the group in its Scope definition, endpoints that currently have addresses in these ranges or lists are included in the group. Endpoints may not be included in the group at a later time if their IP addresses change.

The Audit Trail reports provide information about users who have modified group definitions. See Audit Logs for details.

Not all users have access to the Group features. See Access to Console Tools – Permissions for details.
Work with the Group Manager

You can view and manage groups in the Group Manager.

To view the Group Manager:

- Do one of the following:
  - Right-click a group node in the Filters pane in the Console, and select Group Manager.
  - Select Group Manager from the Tools menu.

The Group Manager displays details for the selected node.

- The left pane shows the Group tree. Use the search tool in this pane to find existing groups.
- The right pane shows information for the selected group. The Permanent Members table lists IP addresses that are permanently assigned to the group. Select Show sub-group items to show MAC/IP addresses that this group inherits from its children. Use the search tool to look for a specific address in this group.

The table lists the following information for IP addresses assigned to the group:

| Key | The value by which the endpoint is associated with the group (IP address or MAC address) Forescout 8.1 detects groups association based in this value. |
| IP Address | Displays the IP address if available. In the case of an address range, this field is blank. |
| Comment | The Comment text specified when the endpoint was added. |
| Added At | The timestamp of when the endpoint was added or the last time it was edited. |
| Created | Whether the endpoint was added manually or automatically using a policy. |
**Added By**
- The name of the Forescout 8.1 user that added the member (if the was added manually).
- The name of the policy that added the member (if added by a policy).

**Expires**
This is relevant only if the endpoint was added by a policy. It indicates whether the *Expires when host no longer matches policy* option was used, which automatically removes the endpoint from the group when it no longer meets the policy condition.

You can modify the group tree in the following ways:

- **Add a group.** You are prompted to name the new group and specify its location in the tree. The new group is created as a child of the selected node.
- **Delete the selected group.** If the group is used in a policy, you are informed and the deletion is not allowed.
- **Move the selected group and its children to another location in the tree.** The selected group is moved under the new parent node that you specify. You can also drag and drop nodes of the tree.

*Moving groups in the tree can change the IP/MAC addresses they contribute to parent groups. This can change the endpoints that are referenced by the parent group.*

- **Import or export a sub-tree of group definitions to the selected location.** Group definitions are expressed in a XML file structure. See [Import and Export Group Trees](#).

**Edit a Group**

**To edit a group:**

1. Select a group from the Group tree.
2. In the right pane, edit the **Name** and **Description** fields.
3. To assign MAC/IP addresses to the group, select **Add**.

4. Do one of the following:
   - To add endpoints to the group by their IP address, enter an IP address, address range, or subnet that is included in the group.
– To add endpoints to the group by their MAC address, enter a MAC address block definition that is included in the group.

5. Select **OK**. The specified addresses appear in the table.

4. To work with groups of IP addresses, use the **Import** and **Export** options.
   See **Import and Export Group Members**.

**Import and Export Group Trees**

You can export to or import group information from external files. You may want to export groups if you are doing extensive editing and want to use an external tool.

**To export Group Trees:**

1. In the Groups Manager dialog box, right-click a group and select **Export**.
2. Choose the file location and then select **Export**. The data is exported in an XML file, including any sub-groups.

**To import Group Trees:**

3. In the Groups Manager dialog box, right-click a group and select **Import**.
4. Browse to an XML file containing group tree information and select **Import**. The group tree described in the file is a subtree at the import location.

**Import and Export Group Members**

You can use the Groups Manager to add or remove individual endpoints, or to define ranges of MAC/IP addresses that are included in the group. You can also import and export lists of group members.

**To export group member details:**

1. In the Groups Manager dialog box, right-click an entry in the table and select **Export**. An Export dialog box opens.
2. Choose the file location.
3. Choose a file format (CSV or PDF).
4. If you create a PDF file, you can set the title that appears in the file header.
5. Use the checkboxes to select the information that is exported.

**To import group member details:**

1. In the Groups Manager dialog box, select a group.
   The table shows endpoints or MAC/IP addresses assigned to the group.
2. Select Import Addresses. The Import Group Members box opens.
3. Browse to a text file listing addresses. Each address should be on a new line in the file. Select **Import**.
   The addresses are added to the group.
Creating an Ignored IP Address List

You can define endpoints that should be ignored by all Policies and Discovery rules, for example, a set of network servers that should not be included in inspection.

To ignore endpoints for specific policies, create policy exceptions or narrow the policy scope.

Endpoints added to this group are included in Threat Protection and Virtual Firewall policy inspections.

You can filter the view in the Filters pane according to ignored IP addresses.

**How do I create ignored IP addresses?**

The following options are available for creating ignored IP addresses:

- Add individual endpoints or import lists of endpoints using the Ignored IP Manager. See Import and Export Group Members.
- By using the Add to Group feature. See Add to Group for details.

Restricting Endpoint Inspection

Forescout 8.1 uses both passive and active methods to inspect and manage endpoints:

- Passive methods learn endpoint information from network devices, monitored traffic, or other data sources in your environment.
- Active methods include probing the endpoint for open ports, running Nmap against the endpoint, or any other attempt to establish a network connection to the endpoint.

Some devices, such as critical OT/IoT devices, can be adversely affected if Forescout 8.1 repeatedly connects to resolve properties or run Nmap scans. This is referred to as active scanning. Assign these endpoints to the Properties - Passive Learning group to limit Forescout 8.1 active scanning of specified endpoints or IP ranges. Forescout 8.1 never contacts endpoints in this group to resolve properties, even for policy evaluation. Properties that can be learned passively may be resolved for endpoints in this group, depending on available information.

- **When you assign an endpoint to the Properties – Passive Learning group based on its MAC address, Forescout 8.1 may apply active scan processes when it first detects the endpoint's IP address on the network, until it discovers the endpoint's MAC address.**

- **Properties that cannot be learned passively, but require active scanning, will remain Irresolvable for endpoints in this group. This can impact policy evaluation. Review how Irresolveable conditions are handled in key policies that manage these endpoints.**

- **Since SecureConnector relies on a connection maintained from the endpoint to Forescout 8.1, properties resolved using SecureConnector continue to be resolved for these endpoints.**
The following options are available for restricting inspection of endpoints:

- Add individual endpoints or import lists of endpoints using the Properties - Passive Learning group manager. See Import and Export Group Members.
- Apply the Add to Group action to endpoints that match policy conditions. See Add to Group for details.

If you are not sure which devices may be adversely impacted by active scanning, you can use the Passive Learning Mode template to discover and handle them. See Passive Learning Mode Template for details.

**Getting More Information about Endpoints**

This section describes how to access detailed information about endpoints from the Detections pane. There are a number of ways to view information:

- Details Pane
- Host Log
- Assets Portal

**Details Pane**

The Details pane displays an extensive range of information about the endpoint selected in the Detections pane.
The following categories of information are available:

- **Information about specific policies**: Review matched and unmatched details or review information about why the endpoint was not inspected by a policy. This information is available when a policy is selected in the Views pane.

- **Profile information**: Review specific details about endpoint properties, for example, device identity information, switch information, Active Directory information.

- **Compliance Information**: Review a summary of endpoints’ compliance status. The Forescout Compliance Center summarizes endpoints that comply or do not comply with policies that you have created. A single line indicates whether the endpoint is compliant. This line is followed by a table with a row for each compliance policy that includes the policy status, name, compliance issues, actions taken, original detection date, and last update time. To display the Forescout Compliance Center, you must categorize your policy as a Compliance policy in the Policy Manager. See [Categorizing Policies](#) for details.

- **All policies information**: Review matched and unmatched details for all the policies by which an endpoint was inspected, or review information about why the endpoint was not inspected in those policies. Select the **View policy flow** links to view a root cause analysis of each policy match. See [Root Cause Analysis of Endpoint Policy Match](#).
Details Pane Search Options
The Details pane provides the following powerful search options:

- Profile Tab Categories
- Details Pane Search
- Filter by Policy Match Status

Profile Tab Categories
Host attributes displayed in the Profile tab are arranged into logical categories. You can easily navigate between the different categories by selecting the category tabs at the left side of the pane.

The categories include:

- General (displays widely used host information)
- User
- Network Access
- Peripherals
- Applications
- Security
- Authentication
- More

A category tab is displayed only when there is relevant information for the selected host.
Details Pane Search

Use the search option in the Profile tab and the All Policies tab to locate specific information. You can move forward and backward through the search results.

Filter by Policy Match Status

You can filter policies by selecting one or more match statuses:

- Matched
- Unmatched
- Irresolvable
- Pending
Details Pane Tools

Options are available to:

- View troubleshooting information by selecting (Show troubleshooting messages). See Troubleshooting Messages for details.
- View all details or a summary. To toggle between details and summary, select (Show all details) from the pane.
- Add a property to a List by selecting in the Details pane.

Viewing Endpoint Details

The Host Details dialog box provides information about policy detections, endpoint properties, and details about actions carried out on detected endpoints. While you can view some of this information from the Console, the Host Details dialog box provides more details.

To view endpoint details:

- Double-click the endpoint.
Information in the Policy Actions tab can be exported. See Policy Action Log for details.

**Root Cause Analysis of Endpoint Policy Match**

Quickly troubleshoot why a policy was run on a specific endpoint. This is useful if you want to investigate why a certain action, such as Assign to VLAN, was applied to a specific endpoint. The policy flow diagram shows the flow of policies by which the endpoint was added to a group by the preceding policy and is a member of a group that is a condition for the next policy.

The policy flow diagram is accessed from the endpoint’s specific policy tab or All Policies tab. You can double-click any policy in the diagram to view its details.
Policy flows are displayed only for policies that meet at least one of the following conditions:

- The policy was run due to the endpoint's membership in a group.
- The policy resulted in endpoint membership in a group.

For your convenience, the diagram can be saved in PDF format.
Detailed Example of a Policy Flow Diagram

1. The All Policies tab indicates that host PMUTILSRV matched policy D. Windows Peer to Peer Compliance.
2. To see which group memberships triggered that policy to be run on that endpoint, select the Policy flow link.
3. A dialog box opens displaying the policies that put that endpoint into the group that triggered policy D. Windows Peer to Peer Compliance.
4. The first policy in the endpoint policy flow is A. Asset Classification – Devices.
5. This policy detected that the endpoint matched the Windows Device policy rule.
6. The resulting action added the endpoint to the group Windows.
7. Then policy E. Host Manageability Check for Windows was run because the endpoint was a member of the group named Windows.
8. This policy detected that the endpoint matched the Windows Manageable Hosts policy rule.
9. The resulting action added the endpoint to the group Manageable Hosts.
10. The final policy in the flow, D. Windows Peer to Peer Compliance, was run because the endpoint was a member of the group Manageable Hosts.
11. To view or edit the details of any of the policies in the policy flow, select the policy name link.
**Host Log**

Use the Host Log to investigate the activity of specific endpoints, and display information about how Forescout 8.1 handled those endpoints. The log displays information about endpoints as they are detected and is continuously updated.

You can display endpoints from a specific time period and IP address range. In addition, filter tools are available to limit the log display, for example, to specific policies or sub-rules. An option is also available to export the Log to an XML file.

**To access the Host Log:**

1. Right-click an endpoint from the Detections pane and select **Information > Host Log**.
2. Enter a time range and then select **OK**.

![Host Log window](image)

The following information is available for each entry:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Appliance</strong></th>
<th>The CounterACT device that detected the event.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td>The details of the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Host</strong></td>
<td>The IPv4 address of the host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IPv6 Address</strong></td>
<td>The IPv6 address of the host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MAC Address</strong></td>
<td>The MAC address of the detected endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non MAC host ID</strong></td>
<td>[Not used in this version.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Status</strong></td>
<td>The status of the operations that have taken place. For example, if a policy action is complete, the status is <strong>OK</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Time</strong></td>
<td>The time the event occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type/Name</strong></td>
<td>The type of event. Use the filter option to control which event types are displayed. The name is basic information about the type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following filter options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>All</strong></th>
<th>All log events.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malicious</strong></td>
<td>The sources detected via the Malicious Source Policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Export the Log

You can export the log data or sections of it to a CSV file.

**To export the data:**

1. Right-click an endpoint from the pane and select **Information**.
2. Select **Host Log**.
3. Enter a time range and then select **OK**.
4. Select **Export** from the **File** menu.

5. Browse to the location where you want to save the file.
6. Configure the export options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Export all information.</td>
<td>Clear all checkboxes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only export information displayed in the log.</td>
<td>Select <strong>Displayed columns only</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select <strong>Selected rows only</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select rows to export and export all related data.</td>
<td>Select <strong>Selected rows only</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select information hidden via the Hide/Display column feature.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Only Changes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New, changed, or rechecked properties regarding the selected IP address ranges.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The name of the Network Integrity policy or sub-policy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Changes to Network Integrity Policy properties, for example, when authentication changes status.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Important Forescout 8.1 system events, including Console/Enterprise Manager initialization time, Appliance status, plugin/module status (running or stopped), and changes in Appliance IP Assignments to Network Integrity Policies. Use the Event Viewer to review more detailed system event information. See <a href="#">Work with System Event Logs</a>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Select rows to export but only export data displayed. (This does not include information hidden via the Hide/Display column feature.)

7. Select **OK**.

**Assets Portal**

The Assets Portal displays information about the endpoint in a web-based search and discovery tool. For example, view information about endpoint properties, policy violations, login information, User Directory user identity details, organizational mapping details, and endpoint device connections. You can perform Google-like searches from the portal. See Chapter 10: Assets Portal for details.

**To access the portal:**

1. Right-click an endpoint from the pane and select **Information**.
2. Select **Show in Assets Portal**.

**Working with the Forescout Compliance Center**

The *Forescout Compliance Center* is an endpoint web-based compliance wizard used for the purpose of:

- Letting users log in.
- Bringing endpoints to network compliance.
- Informing users of their compliance level with respect to your corporate security policies.
- Offering users instructions for performing self-remediation by following links that you provide.

\[ \text{For the Forescout Compliance Center to be effective, the endpoint user must have SecureConnector installed on the endpoint device accessing the network. See Start SecureConnector / Stop SecureConnector for information about installing SecureConnector.} \]

\[ \text{The Forescout Compliance Center is not accessible when HTTP Redirection is disabled. For more information, see Disable Web Portals.} \]

The Forescout Compliance Center dialog box is displayed until the endpoint has successfully logged in and is compliant with selected policies.

Users can also manually open the compliance wizard from their endpoint to view their compliance status.

**Customizing Page Design**

The design of the Forescout Compliance Center may be customized. In addition to customizing the look and feel of the page (adding logos, images and text), you can also create a separate design for endpoints that are compliant and another design for endpoints that are not compliant. See Customizing HTTP Pages.
Using the Compliance Center vs. Policies

The tasks carried out via the Host Compliance Center dialog box can also be carried out using policies. When using policies, many of the activities displayed in the Security Center are hidden from the endpoint user. For example, SecureConnector can be installed remotely and antivirus updates or compliance violations can be remediated without endpoint user interaction.

You should consider using the dialog box when you want to offload the task of maintaining compliance from your IT team, educate your users regarding security requirements at your organization, and force them to bring their machines into compliance. This may be useful, for example, at universities or organizations where guests may be required to self-remediate.

What Endpoint Users See

The Forescout Compliance Center dialog box comprises two tabs:

- **Login Tab**: For entering the user name and password to gain access to the network.
- **Compliance Tab**: For viewing the user compliance status and for providing links to help self-remediate in the event of noncompliance.

Login Tab

The Login tab prompts users to enter their login credentials to sign in to your network. See the [HTTP Login](#) action for more information about when the Login tab is activated.

After users successfully sign in, the Compliance tab opens.

Compliance Tab

The Compliance tab:

- Assists you in downloading and installing SecureConnector.
- Assists you in achieving network compliance.

You can add comments to this tab by using the [HTTP Notification](#) action. Messages entered using these actions are also displayed in the tab.
Installing SecureConnector

If the endpoint is not managed by SecureConnector, the wizard prompts you to download and run SecureConnector. The following pages are displayed:

ForeScout Compliance Test

Dear User,

Your computer should be checked for compliance with the corporate security policies. Click "Confirm" to start the compliance check.

ForeScout Compliance Center

Login

Compliance

Your download should begin shortly. If you are experiencing problems with the download please use this direct link.

Once you have completed downloading the inspection tool, click on Run to have your computer inspected.

click here to continue browsing after the installation is complete.

Achieving Compliance

The Compliance tab displays the endpoint compliance status.

ForeScout Compliance Center

Login

Compliance

Status Policy | Details | Detected
---|---|---
Host is Not Compliant

If there is any noncompliance with any policy, **Host is Not Compliant** is displayed. This indication refers to all policies that you run on the endpoint which are categorized as **Compliance** in the Policy Manager, as well as default Compliance template policies. See **Working with the Policy Manager** for details.

In addition, the Compliance tab can be used to display messages and links prompting noncompliant endpoints to become compliant by taking action, for example, by clicking a link that redirects end users to a site where they can download the latest antivirus application or to install patches.

Users can select **Recheck** to verify their compliance status. All categorized policies are rechecked against the GUI Policy Editor options. Categorization is configured in the Policy Manager. See **Working with the Policy Manager** for details.

If the endpoint meets all the requirements of each of these policies, it is compliant and **Host is Compliant** is displayed.
Chapter 3: Working in the Console

**Compliance Notification at Endpoint**

If there is noncompliance at the endpoint, Forescout 8.1 notifies the user. On the Windows Notification Bar at the bottom of the window, the **ForeScout** icon is displayed as red. Placing the cursor over the icon, the endpoint details are displayed. For example:

![ForeScout Compliance Center]

**Access the Compliance Center from the Endpoint**

Users can access the Compliance Center if SecureConnector is running on their endpoints.

**To access the Compliance Center from an endpoint:**

1. Hold the cursor over the **ForeScout** icon in the system tray to view that endpoint’s compliance status.
2. Right-click the icon to open the ForeScout Compliance Center dialog box.

![ForeScout SecureConnector]

**Exit the Console**

When you exit the Console, Forescout 8.1 continues to protect your network. System and user events that occurred during logout can be viewed. See **Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs** for details.

**To exit the Console:**

- Select **Exit** from the **File** menu
Chapter 4: Policy Management

- What Is a Policy?
- Working with Policies
- The Policy Manager
- Create a Custom Policy
- Advanced Policy Options
- Policy Preferences
- Property Lists
- Categorizing Policies
- Policy Reports and Logs
- Policy Safety Features
What Is a Policy?

Most networks consist of complex topologies and architectures; a multitude of events, users, vendors and devices; continuously changing downloads and patches; new vulnerabilities; extensive compliance requirements, and more.

Forescout 8.1 policies let you automate and simplify the intricate and time-consuming tasks involved in dealing with these realities. For example, policies can be used to:

- Pinpoint and quarantine endpoints that are working without antivirus software or that are not properly patched.
- Limit the network access available to guests and consultants.
- Enable automated detection of endpoints that are missing required Microsoft Service Packs, and provide self-remediation tools.
- Verify that all mission critical servers are hardened according to the server hardening policy.
- Run scheduled vulnerability checks and automatic repair and protection mechanisms.
- Automatically discover and quarantine rogue wireless access points.
- Create admission control policies to determine who can access the network and under what conditions.
- Display important policy results in the Dashboard. The Dashboard is a web-based information center that delivers dynamic at-a-glance information about network compliance, threats and guests.

Policies let you define instructions for automatically identifying, analyzing, and responding to a broad range of network activity for the purpose of bringing endpoints into policy compliance.

Specifically, you use policies to initiate endpoint inspection, specify conditions under which Forescout 8.1 should respond to endpoints, and define actions to perform at endpoints that match or do not match the policy requirements. You can define policies as simple as identifying missing laptops or more complex policies that control network access and VLAN assignment based on the organizational structure.

In addition to creating your own policies, you can also use policy templates – Forescout 8.1-supplied templates that help you quickly create important policies based on predefined policy parameters. See Chapter 5: Policy Templates for details.

How Policies Are Structured

Policies are composed of the following elements:

- A unique policy name.
- A policy scope, for example, the endpoints that you want to inspect.
Policy Conditions: Instructions to Forescout 8.1 regarding what properties to look for on endpoints. For example, detect endpoints running Windows XP and an outdated Symantec Antivirus application. See About Policy Conditions for details.

Policy Actions: Measures to take at endpoints, if those properties or condition are either met or not met, for example, halt peer-to-peer applications, block Internet access, or notify endpoint users. See About Actions for details.

About Templates for Policy Creation
Forescout 8.1 is delivered with ready-to-use templates. Using them helps you quickly create commonly used policies. See Working with Policy Templates for details.

About Custom Policy Creation
Forescout 8.1 lets you carry out extensive, deep inspection on endpoints by creating your own customized policies. Use the custom feature to create policies not covered by templates. See Create a Custom Policy.

Working with Policies
This section describes basic information you need to know when working with policies and templates.

- When Are Policies Run?
- View Detected Endpoints
- Using Groups
- Broaden the Scope – Plugins and eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules
- Basic Policy Rollout Tips
- Policy Priorities
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Endpoint Identity Changes
- Stop the Policy from the Appliance
- View and Manage Endpoints

When Are Policies Run?
By default, endpoints are inspected by policies every eight hours and on any admission event – a network event that indicates the admission of an endpoint into the network. For example, when it physically connects to a switch port, when its IP address changes, or when it sends out a DHCP request. For more information, see Admission-Based Activation.

Scheduled Rechecks
You can define a time-based recheck schedule for a policy or for a specific sub-rule of the policy. For more information, see Update a Recheck Policy for Unmatched and Matched Endpoints and Sub-Rule Advanced Options.
**Event Driven Monitoring**

When SecureConnector is installed on an endpoint, it continuously monitors some host properties and reports changes in these properties to Forescout 8.1. This triggers re-evaluation of all policies that include the changed host property. Event driven monitoring significantly reduces network traffic, provides the most updated information without waiting for scheduled policy rechecks, and allows timely response to changes at the endpoint. For more information, refer to the *HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide*. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select this plugin, and then select **Help**.

**Working with Policy Results**

After running a policy, you can view detection information in the Home view, Detections pane. You can also manage policies from this location. See **Control Endpoints from the Detections Pane** for details.

**View Detected Endpoints in the Console**

Endpoints detected as a result of your policies and templates appear in the Home view, Detections pane. Select a policy of interest from the Policy folder to view detection information. The folder is located in the Views pane.

An extensive range of detection information can be added and hidden from the Detections pane by using the Add/Remove Columns feature. See **Add, Remove, and Reorganize Columns in the Detections Pane** for details.

Information about endpoints inspected by the policy is provided. For example:

- Endpoints that match the policy, and the detection time. You can also view information about unmatched endpoints, endpoints pending inspection, and more.
- Machine statistics such as the IP address, MAC address, NetBIOS name and DNS name.
Chapter 4: Policy Management

- Actions taken at the endpoint. For example, if the endpoint was blocked or if access was prevented to the Internet.
- User directory information.
- Switch related information.

View Detection Information per Group or Segment

You can display detections associated with a specific network segment or group.

Groups are endpoints that have something in common— for example, endpoints that run Windows. Groups are defined by users or automatically created via policies. See Working with Forescout Groups for details.

Segments are network subdivisions created by users, for example, a finance department or East coast regional office. See Working with Forescout Segments for details.

To filter the view:

- Select a Segment or Group filter from the Filters pane of the Console. Endpoints associated with the group or segment are listed in the Detections pane.

View Detection Information by Endpoint Status

In addition to viewing endpoints that match your policies, you can also view information about other endpoints detected, for example, endpoints that do not match a policy. These endpoints can be managed similarly.

To view detection information by endpoint status, select one of the following options:

| Match          | Endpoints that match the conditions defined in the policy. |
### Unmatched
Endpoints that do not match the conditions defined in the policy.

### Pending
Endpoints in queue for inspection, according to policy activation definitions:
- According to the next scheduled inspection
- When an admission event is detected
- When the policy is manually run

### Irresolvable
These endpoints were inspected, but Forescout 8.1 did not receive enough information to verify whether they matched the policy conditions. The endpoints are re-inspected according to activation definitions.

### Online\Offline
Toggle between viewing only endpoints that are online, or viewing both online and offline machines.

The Detections pane includes a **Connectivity** column, which contains icons indicating the online ☑️ or offline 🚫 status of the endpoint. A tooltip provides details about when the endpoint was last seen.

**Offline** endpoints are previously detected endpoints that are no longer connected to the network. If an endpoint is connected to a network switch that is managed by the Switch Plugin, Forescout 8.1 can discover that the endpoint is offline up to one minute after disconnection from the network. (default value)

This time period can be changed in the Switch Advanced Settings dialog box, of the Switch Plugin. Use the Read – MACs connected to switch port and port properties (MAC address table) option. For more information, refer to the Switch Plugin Configuration Guide. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select this plugin, and then select **Help**.

If an endpoint is not connected to a managed switch, Forescout 8.1 can discover that the endpoint is disconnected up to one hour after disconnection. You can change this time period. See **Inactivity Timeout** for details.

![Online Period](image)

**To view this column:**
Right-click a column header and select **Add/Remove columns**. Select **Offline Period** from the dialog box that opens.

### Show Only Unassigned
Displays endpoints that have not been assigned to a CounterACT Appliance. Each endpoint in your network must be assigned to an Appliance. See **Working with Appliance Folders** for details.

### Troubleshooting Messages
Messages about irresolvable issues, failed actions, and other errors can be displayed in the Console. You can also open linked troubleshooting pages that offer suggestions for handling these issues.
To view troubleshooting messages:

1. Select (Show troubleshooting messages), located at the top right corner of the Details pane.

2. In the Details pane, review the relevant troubleshooting information. Select the Details link that appears after the text. The link may appear in any tab. A window opens with troubleshooting tips.

Hide and Display Troubleshooting Messages

You can toggle troubleshooting messages by selecting the Show troubleshooting messages icon in the Details pane.
Quickly Access Endpoints with Troubleshooting Issues

You can easily filter the Detections pane to display only those endpoints with troubleshooting issues.

To view endpoints with troubleshooting issues:

1. Right-click a Detections pane column and select Add/Remove Columns.
2. In the Add/Remove columns dialog box, enter troubleshooting in the search field, and add the items for display.

Real-Time Policy Status Summary

You can view a real-time compliance status summary for each policy. Policy status summaries are automatically updated in real time as the endpoint status changes.

To display real-time endpoint statistics:

- In the Views pane, move your cursor over a policy or right-click a policy and select Show Summary.
Using Groups

A group is a collection of endpoints with something in common, such as endpoints that run Windows or network guests. An endpoint can belong to any number of groups.

Organizing your endpoints into groups makes it easier to manage and analyze policies. For example, there is no need for a rule to detect operating system types or user types. These groups can be defined once and reused for various policies. Fewer rules mean simpler policies that are easier to prepare, monitor, and track.

In policies, groups can be used:

- To filter the scope of endpoints inspected by the policy.
- To define endpoints excluded from the policy—exceptions.
- As a policy condition: Automatically apply policies to predefined groups. For example, define a policy with the condition that endpoints are members of both the Windows group and the Norton Antivirus Installed group. The policy can then check whether the antivirus application is running and enable it if necessary. The Member of Group property is found in the Device Information property category. See About Policy Conditions for details.
- As a policy action: Automatically add endpoints to predefined groups based on certain conditions. For example, define policies that use the Nmap-OS Class property and the Add to Group action to organize your endpoints into groups called Windows, Linux, Macintosh, and Other.

An additional option automatically removes the endpoints from the group when the condition is no longer met. This keeps the group membership constantly updated. Consider the example where a policy places all endpoints with connected USB mass storage devices into a group called USB Attached. If someone removes the USB device from the endpoint, the policy automatically removes the endpoint from the USB Attached group.

Broaden the Scope – Plugins and eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules)

Forescout 8.1 is delivered with predefined policy detection criteria and actions. You can broaden the scope of these parameters, however, by integrating items that better correspond to your organizational and networking environment. This is accomplished by utilizing plugins and eyeExtend products. For example, the Forescout eyeExtend for McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator lets you integrate with McAfee ePO, access related information, synchronize with related servers, and more.

See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products and refer to the relevant configuration guide for details.

Basic Policy Rollout Tips

- Make Good Policy Choices
- Test Your Policy
Make Good Policy Choices

Smart policies let you reliably and automatically handle an extensive range of network events and tasks. To make maximum use of a policy, you should define policies carefully. Do not create ineffective rules, for example:

- Conditions that can never occur.
  For example, when the activation mechanism is a new service and the condition for the service is 80/TCP and 139/TCP.

- Actions that are not relevant to the condition.
  For example, assigning self-remediation actions for vulnerabilities on endpoints that were not inspected for vulnerabilities.

- Policies that are difficult to maintain.
  For example, if you create a rule that blocks endpoints that are missing antivirus installations, you should include an action that notifies the system administrator when such endpoints are detected.

- Policies that are too dynamic.
  Groups, segments, and property lists may affect policies in such a way that the status of endpoints can be unintentionally changed. Verify that you do not set up overly complex policies using these features. Keep policies simple, and make sure that you have a clear idea of what kind of endpoints appear in each group, segment, and property list.

- Plan ahead when creating policies.
  Before you create a policy in the Console, decide upon general goals, reduce them to requirements, and then translate them into policies. For example, the goal control access of non-corporate users and devices to the network can be broken down into the following requirements and policies:

  - Requirement 1: Restrict visitor access in conference rooms.
    Policy 1: In conference rooms, automatically limit access to non-corporate users (visitors), allowing them limited network access only while allowing full corporate network access to corporate employees.

  - Requirement 2: Restrict visitor access to the production network.
    Policy 2: When physically attempting to connect to the production network, non-authenticated users are denied access.

  - Requirement 3: Track down and remove rogue Wireless Access Points (WAP).
    Policy 3: Wireless Access Points are prohibited across all offices, including remote branches. Any discovered WAP must be automatically disconnected from the network.

Test Your Policy

You may want to create a policy and then test it before you actually start taking any action at endpoints in your network. You can do this by creating policies but not assigning any actions or by creating actions and disabling or enabling them during the testing period.

Policy Priorities

The following hierarchies, from highest to lowest, are applied when an endpoint is detected as a result of different policies:
How Forescout 8.1 Handles Endpoint Identity Changes

Policy detection mechanisms efficiently handle endpoint identity changes to ensure proper, transparent support in instances of IP address changes.

| Assigning a new IP to a detected host | Policy detection mechanisms recognize the reassignment of IP addresses on a specific endpoint via the endpoint MAC address or VPN user name. When such detections occur, all actions for the detected endpoint are transferred to the new IP address and cancelled on the older address, thereby protecting the correct machine. The new IP address is updated in the Detections pane. The following message is displayed in the Host Log when such a change occurs:
| IP Change: IP Changed from... |

| IP transferred from one machine to another | Under certain circumstances, a specific IP address detected on one machine is later discovered on a second machine. In such cases, all actions are released from the original machine, and no actions are applied to the second machine. However, Forescout 8.1 activates Admission-based inspection for the IP address. The following message is displayed in the Host Log when such a change occurs:
| IP Change: IP Changed from... |

You can customize the mechanism by which Forescout 8.1 recognizes and handles endpoint identity changes. For example, endpoint identity change can also be calculated for changing NetBIOS host names that are associated with specific IP addresses. See Policy Preferences for details.

Stop the Policy from the Appliance

If required, you can use the `fstool nphalt` command to stop the policy. Using this tool stops the detection mechanism, releases blocked endpoints, and “undoes” other actions. You may need to use this tool if you cannot access your Console but need to stop the policy.

To stop the policy:

- Log in to the CounterACT device through the command-line interface (CLI), and run the following command:
  
  `fstool nphalt`
View and Manage Endpoints

Endpoints detected as result of your policy appear in the Home view in the Console.

**To view detected endpoints:**
1. Select the Home tab.
2. Select the Policy or Compliance folder in the Views pane.

Important detection information is displayed. For example:
- Endpoint information, such as the endpoint IP address, DNS name, and MAC address.
- User information, such as user name, email address, and phone number.
- Action information taken on the endpoint as a result of the policy, such as blocking, notification, or remediation actions.

Endpoints can be further managed from this view.

Endpoints appear in the view until:
- You release the endpoint. To do so, right-click the endpoint and select **Remove**.
- The endpoints are cleared. To do so, right-click the policy and select **Clear**.
- The endpoint is removed as a result of the automatic recheck mechanism.

Stop and Start Actions for Endpoints in Policies and Sub-Rules

You can stop and start specific actions for all endpoints detected in a policy and sub-policy.

This means:
- Actions currently affecting endpoints are stopped.
- Actions are not be applied to endpoints that are later detected and match the policy.

You may want to stop actions to test a policy before enforcing sanctions, i.e., only detect endpoints that match a policy.

When you stop or start actions for main policies, related sub-policy actions are also stopped or started.

One-time actions, such as email and HTTP redirection, can only be cancelled if they are defined in Actions schedules.

**To stop or start an action:**
1. Select a policy or sub-rule in the Views pane > Policies folder.
2. Right-click the appropriate listing.
3. Select **Stop Policy Actions** or **Start Policy Actions**. The Stop Action or Start Action dialog box opens.

4. Select the actions you want to stop or start. You can also edit the action definitions here.

**How do I know if actions have been stopped for a policy?**

You can check to see if an action is stopped by:

- **Looking at the action icon**: Action icons are grayed out if cancelled.
- **Checking the Start or Stop Rule Actions dialog box**: Select the policy or sub-policy and then select **Stop Policy Actions** or **Start Policy Actions** to see the stopped and started actions.
The Policy Manager

Your policies are defined and managed from the Policy Manager.

To open the Policy Manager:
- Select the Policy tab. The Policy Manager opens.

Policy Manager Tools

The Policy Manager provides the following tools:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tool</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Create a new policy. <em>(Flexx licensing only)</em> If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeSight (Forescout CounterACT See) license, you cannot create new policies. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information on license enforcement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Edit a policy. <em>(Flexx licensing only)</em> If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeSight (Forescout CounterACT See) license, you cannot edit policies. If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeExtend (Extended Module) or Forescout eyeControl (Forescout CounterACT Control) license, you cannot add or edit properties/actions supported by that license. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information on license enforcement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove</td>
<td>Remove a policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplicate</td>
<td>Duplicate a policy, and then edit as required. <em>(Flexx licensing only)</em> If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeSight (Forescout CounterACT See) license, you cannot duplicate policies. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information on license enforcement.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Categorize
Categorize policies to help you organize and view them in the Policy Manager. For example, display only those policies labeled as Compliance policies. In addition, a Compliance folder and Corporate/Guests folder in the Views pane of the Console displays all policies according to their category. These categories are also used by the:

- Forescout Compliance Center
- Site Map
- Compliance Status property
- Corporate/Guest Status property

See Categorizing Policies for details.

### Move to
Assign a policy to a folder. Folders are used to organize policies into logical groups for easier navigation and management in the Policy Manager. For example, create East Coast Finance and West Coast Finance folders and place the appropriate policies in those folders. These folders also appear in the Views pane in the Console. See Manage Policy Folders for details.

### Stop
Stop the policy activation. When stopped, the detection mechanism is halted. Actions carried out on endpoints previously detected are maintained.

### Start
Start the policy activation.

### Export
Export policies of interest. Policies are exported as XML files.

---

If registered with an Enterprise Manager, many Appliance policy settings are automatically replaced with the Enterprise Manager settings. See CounterACT Device Management Overview for details.

In addition, the following policy management tools are available in the Policy Manager:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Custom</th>
<th>Create custom reusable policy conditions. Select Custom from the Tools menu. See Authentication Properties for details.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
By default, policies are imported as XML files. Select the Import icon from the Policy Folders pane or right-click in the Policy Folders pane and select Import. Complete the fields in the Import Policy Folder dialog box, where:

- **Target Node** is the destination.
- **Import Mode** is the method used to import the policy folder, either as a subfolder of the folder in the original location (Add folder to the target) or as a subfolder of the target itself (Add folder content to the target).
- **File name** is the name of the policy to import.

**Import limitations**

If you import a policy that refers to groups not defined on the Appliance, these groups are automatically created however the groups will not contain any members.

If you import a policy with a segment that does not exist, you receive a warning message and the policy is imported without the segment.

*(Flexx licensing only)* If you do not have a valid Forescout CounterACT license, you cannot import policies. If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeExtend (Extended Module) or Forescout eyeControl (Forescout CounterACT Control) license, you cannot save imported policies (Apply Your Policies) that contain properties/actions supported by the invalid license. You must first remove these properties/actions. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information on license enforcement.

---

### Working with the Policy Manager

#### Policy Information

The following information can be displayed in the Policy Manager for each policy:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name assigned to the policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Indicates whether the Forescout 8.1 detection mechanism is paused or running. When paused, new detection events are ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>The category assigned to the policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The policy description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>The properties inspected on endpoints, i.e., specific OS systems, antivirus updates, registry information, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>The endpoints that are inspected for this policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions</td>
<td>Measures taken at the endpoint if it matches the policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recheck</td>
<td>The conditions under which to recheck endpoints that match the policy. Specifically, you can define:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- How often endpoints are rechecked after they match a policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Under what conditions to carry out the recheck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups</td>
<td>Forescout groups included in the policy inspection. See Working with Forescout Groups for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 4: Policy Management

#### Item | Description
--- | ---
Segments | The range of IP addresses to be inspected for the policy. See Define Policy Scope for details.
Exceptions | The range of IP addresses excluded from policy inspection.
User Scope | The range of endpoints a Forescout 8.1 operator can view and work with.
  - Complete: Indicates that the policy scope is within the user scope and the policy can be edited.
  - Partial: Partial access is available. The policy can only be viewed.
  - None: No access is available. The policy can only be viewed.
See Access to Network Endpoints – Scope.
Path | The path to the policy (in the Policy Folders pane of the Policy Manager).

**Apply Your Policies**

After creating and editing policies, you must apply them in the Policy Manager by selecting **Apply**.

**Edit Policies and Rules**

Use the Quick Edit option to easily access the policy or sub-rule parameters. Changes made to policy definitions are implemented immediately.

*(Flexx licensing only)* If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeSight (Forescout CounterACT See) license, you cannot edit any policies. If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeExtend (Extended Module) or Forescout eyeControl (Forescout CounterACT Control) license you cannot add or edit properties/actions supported by that license. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information on license enforcement.

**To edit a policy or sub-rule:**
1. Right-click a policy or sub-rule in the Policy Manager and select Quick Edit.
2. Select an editing option.
Manage Policy Folders

You can organize your policies into logical folders for easier navigation and management. For example, create East Coast Finance and West Coast Finance folders and place the appropriate policies in these folders, which also appear in the Views pane.

If you create and then delete a folder, any policies in the folder will also be deleted.

You can hide and display policies associated with a subfolder by selecting or clearing the Show subfolder policies checkbox in the Policy Manager.

To see all policies and sub-rules, select the Policy icon in the tree root and then select the checkbox.

To create folders:
1. Right-click an item in the Policy Folders pane of the Policy Manager and select New Policy Folder.
2. Enter a folder name.
3. Select a location to place the folder.
4. Select OK.
5. Use the Edit, Delete and Move buttons or right-click options to manage these folders.

Add Policies to Folders
Add your policies to the policy folders that you created. You cannot copy a policy to more than one folder.

To add a policy to a folder:
1. Select a policy from the Policy Manager.
2. Select Move to. The Move to Policy Folder dialog box opens.
3. Select a folder in which to place the policy and select OK.

Export and Import Policies
It is often convenient to copy policies to Appliances using the export/import tools of the Console.

(Flexx licensing only) If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeSight (Forescout CounterACT See) license, you cannot import policies. If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeExtend (Extended Module) or Forescout eyeControl (Forescout CounterACT Control) license, you cannot save imported policies (Apply Your Policies) that contain properties/actions supported by the invalid license. You must first remove these properties/actions. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information on license enforcement.

To export a policy or policy folder:
1. In the Policy view, do one of the following:
   - Right-click a policy in the Policy Manager pane or a folder in the Policy Folders pane, and select Export.
   - Select a policy from the Policy Manager pane, and select Export.
   - Select a folder from the Policy Folders pane, and select the Export Folder icon.

2. When policy conditions or actions include login credentials for network devices, servers, or services, Forescout 8.1 encrypts the exported policies. When you export policies, Forescout 8.1 prompts you for a password that is used to encrypt the exported file. Enter an encryption password and select OK.

   This password must be used to import the file.
3. Policies and policy folders are exported and imported as XML files. In the Export dialog box, specify the location of the exported XML file and select **OK**. The selected policy or folder is exported.

**To import a policy or policy folder:**

1. In the Policy Folders pane, do one of the following:
   - Right-click the target folder to which the policy or folder will be imported, and select **Import**. To import a policy or folder into the top level of the policy tree, right-click the Policy icon.
   - Select the target folder to which the policy or folder will be imported, and then select the Import Folder icon.

2. In the Import dialog box, specify the location of the XML file you want to import and select **OK**.

3. When policy conditions or actions include login credentials for network devices, servers, or services, Forescout 8.1 encrypts the exported policies. When you import these policies, Forescout 8.1 prompts you for the password used to encrypt the exported file.

4. Enter the password and select **OK**. The policy or folder is imported to the location you specified in the Policy Folders tree.

---

### Create a Custom Policy

This section details the procedure for creating a custom policy. You can create a custom policy to deal with issues not covered in the policy templates. Custom policy tools provide you with an extensive range of options for detecting and handling endpoints. For information about policies, see [What Is a Policy?](#)
After the policy is created, it is displayed in the Policy Manager. To run the policy, select Apply from the Policy Manager.

(Flexx licensing only) If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeSight (Forescout CounterACT See) license, you cannot create custom policies. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information on license enforcement.

To create a policy:

1. Select the Policy tab. The Policy Manager opens.

2. Select Add from the Policy Manager. The Policy Wizard opens.

3. Select Custom.

4. Select Next.
5. Define a unique policy name and useful policy description. Policy names appear in the Policy Manager, the Views pane, Reports and in other features. Precise names make working with policies and reports more efficient. See Naming Tips for guidelines about creating effective names.

6. Select Next. The Scope pane opens. Define a general range of endpoints to be inspected for this policy. See Define Policy Scope.

7. Select Next. The Main Rule pane opens. See Defining a Policy Main Rule.

8. Select Next. The Sub-Rules dialog box opens. Use this dialog box to review and update Main Rule definitions and advanced policy settings, as well as to define sub-rules. See Defining Policy Sub-Rules.

9. Review the sub-rule conditions and actions, and then select Finish.

**Naming Tips**

Make sure names are accurate and clearly reflect what the policy does. For example, do not use a generic name such as Antivirus.

In this example, use a more descriptive name that indicates that your policy is checking antivirus updates and which vendors are authorized.

You should avoid having another policy with a similar name. In addition, ensure that the name indicates whether the policy criteria must be met or not met.

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Improved Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antivirus S</td>
<td>Symantec Antivirus Not Updated at Seattle Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antivirus S/M/I</td>
<td>Symantec/McAfee Antivirus is Not Installed at Seattle Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2P</td>
<td>Inform, then Restrict Web Access on Peer-to-Peer Detections</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Define Policy Scope

Define a general range of endpoints to be inspected for this policy. You can filter this range by:

- Including only certain Forescout groups, such as endpoints that run Windows. Use this option to pinpoint endpoint inspection.
- Excluding devices or users that should be ignored when using a policy, for example, VIP users running Windows.

To define scope:

1. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

   ![IP Address Range Dialog Box]

   The following options are available:
   - **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
   - **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
   - **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

   For more information about the detection of MAC-only endpoints, see [Work with Hosts without IPv4 Addresses](#).

2. Select **OK**.

3. Select **Advanced** to fine-tune the scope. Two options are available:
   - Only include some Forescout groups in the inspection. If you select several groups, and an endpoint is detected in at least one, that endpoint is included in the policy inspection.
   - Select **Add** from the **Filter by Group** section to include only specified Forescout groups in the inspection. These groups must be part of the Internal Range.

The Groups dialog box opens.
4. Select a group.

5. Select **OK**. To create more groups, select **New Group**.

6. Exclude endpoints from inspection. For example, ignore groups of VIP users when conducting inspections.

7. Select **Add** from the **Exceptions** section, to **exclude** endpoints from inspection. For example, ignore groups of VIP users from inspections. The Exception Type dialog box opens.

8. Select an exception type and then select **OK**. An Exception dialog box opens. Exception dialog boxes vary depending on the selected exception. In general, you can define a specific exception value, for example, enter a specific user name or use a **Property Value List** (a user-defined list of property values, such as a list of user names).
9. Select OK.

10. Select the **Evaluate Irresolvable As** checkbox to define how Forescout 8.1 evaluates the endpoint if the exception value cannot be resolved, for example, if Forescout 8.1 does not know the user name. Either include the endpoint as an exception, exclude the endpoint as an exception, or mark the endpoint as Irresolvable for the policy.

11. After defining each exception, select OK.


**Defining a Policy Main Rule**

Endpoints that match the Main Rule are included in the policy inspection. *Endpoints that do not match this rule are not inspected for this policy.*

A Main Rule consists of:

- A condition: A set of properties that is queried when evaluating endpoints. For example, Windows XP machines without up-to-date Symantec Antivirus installations.

- Actions: Forescout 8.1 measures taken at endpoints. For example, provide automatic remediation at endpoints without up-to-date Symantec Antivirus installations.

In general, it is recommended to define conditions and actions in Main Rules when your policy deals with a single policy purpose or problem and solution. For example, consider a policy requiring all corporate Windows machines to run an antivirus application. In this case, the Main Rule would include:
• Condition: Operating system is Windows AND Machine is Managed AND NOT running an antivirus.
• Action: Send HTTP notifications to end users and Send email to the Help Desk.

Some policies, however, are designed to accomplish more, and contain more than one problem and solution. For example:

• Communicate with users who have installed peer-to-peer applications:
  • If users are part of the IT or Development departments, then list peer-to-peer applications detected and advise users to uninstall.
  • If users are part of any other department, then send them email asking them to contact the IT department to assist them in uninstalling, and notify IT which endpoints are not compliant.

In such cases, you should use policy sub-rules to create multiple conditions and related actions. See Defining Policy Sub-Rules for details.

To define Main Rule conditions and actions:

1. Select Add from the Condition or Actions section of the Main Rule dialog box as required.

   See Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions and Chapter 7: Working with Actions for details about conditions and actions.

2. When you are done, select Next. The Sub-Rules dialog box opens. Use the dialog box to review and update Main Rule definitions and advanced policy settings, as well as to define sub-rules.
How Often Are Policies Run?

By default, policies are run every eight hours and on any admission event — a network event that indicates the admission of an endpoint into the network, such as when it physically connects to a switch port.

You can update the default setting, for example, according to a set schedule. You can also configure several activation settings to work simultaneously, for example, when an endpoint IP address changes, and every five hours.

You can update defaults and work with advanced Main Rule settings from the Advanced Settings dialog box.

To open the Advanced dialog box:

1. Right-click a policy in the Policy Manager.
2. Select Quick Edit.
3. Select Advanced.

See Main Rule Advanced Options and Sub-Rule Advanced Options for details.

Defining Policy Sub-Rules

Sub-rules can be used to automatically follow up on endpoints after initial detection and handling. Creating sub-rules lets you streamline separate detection and actions into one automated sequence.

The order of sub-rules is important. Sub-rules are performed in the order in which they appear until a match is found. When a match is found, the corresponding action is applied to the endpoint. If the endpoint does not match the requirements of a sub-rule, the endpoint is checked against the next sub-rule.

For example:

- Assign endpoints to different VLANs based on their security compliance:
  - If non-corporate endpoints are detected, block access to the production network, but allow limited network Internet access.
  - If corporate unmatched endpoints are detected, but are VIP users, then remediate in a separate VLAN, but do not block access.
  - If corporate endpoints are unmatched, then remediate in a separate VLAN and block access to the production network until remediation is complete.

- Communicate with users who have installed peer-to-peer applications:
  - If users are part of the IT or Development departments, then list peer-to-peer applications detected and advise users to uninstall.
  - If users are part of any other department, then send them email asking them to contact the IT department to assist them in uninstalling, and notify IT which endpoints are not compliant.

Sub-rules consist of the following elements:

- Name and description
- Conditions and actions
- Exceptions
• Recheck instructions

Rearranging the Order of Sub-Rules
You can create sub-rules and then modify their hierarchy in the Sub-Rules dialog box.

To define a sub-rule name and description:
1. Select **Add** from the Sub-Rules dialog box.

2. Enter a unique policy name and description.

3. Select **OK**. The name is displayed in the New Sub-Rule dialog box that opens. Use the dialog box to define sub-rule conditions and actions. See Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions and Chapter 7: Working with Actions for details.
Advanced Policy Options

The following advanced policy options are available:

- Main Rule Advanced Options
- Sub-Rule Advanced Options

Main Rule Advanced Options

The following advanced Main Rule options are available:

- Update a Recheck Policy for Unmatched and Matched Endpoints
- Handle Dated Information – General Tab
- Ignore Dated Information
- Update the Network Admission Resolve Delay
- Set and Increment Counters

To view Main rule advanced options:

- Right-click a Main Rule in the Policy Manager and select Quick Edit > Advanced.
Update a Recheck Policy for Unmatched and Matched Endpoints

By default, both matched endpoints and unmatched endpoints are rechecked every eight hours and on any admission event. An admission event is a network event that indicates the admission of an endpoint into the network, such as when it physically connects to a switch port. A complete list of admission events is described below.

Recheck tools let you define:

- How often endpoints that match a policy are rechecked
- Under what conditions to perform recheck

You can update the default setting for matched and unmatched hosts, for example, to initiate inspection according to a set schedule. You can also configure several recheck settings to work simultaneously, for example, when a host IP address changes every five hours.

Separate settings can be defined for hosts that either match or do not match a policy.

To define rule recheck settings:

1. Right-click a Main Rule from the Policy Manager and select Quick Edit > Advanced.
2. Select the Recheck unmatch or Recheck match tab.
Chapter 4: Policy Management

**Time Based Activation**

The policy is run at a certain time and date. The default is every eight hours. The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Every</td>
<td>Select this option to run a policy at specific intervals, i.e., per seconds, minutes, hours or days. This is recommended, for example, if you want to check that a web or email service is consistently running, or if you want to verify the integrity of any other mission critical service in your network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>Define a schedule for running the policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Admission-Based Activation**

The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>Do not inspect on the basis of an admission event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Activate on any admission | Run the policy when any of the following admission events occur:  
  - New IP: By default, endpoints are considered new if not previously detected on your network within a 30-day period. For example, if an IP address was detected on the first of the month, and then detected again 31 days later, the detection will initiate the activation. The default time period can be changed. See Policy Preferences for details. 
  - IP Address Change 
  - Switch Port Change 
  - DHCP Request 
  - Authentication via the HTTP Login action 
  - Log in to an authentication server 
  - SecureConnector connection 
  - If you have installed plugins or modules, additional admission events types may be available. For example, the New Wireless Host Connected Events option is available if you installed the Wireless Plugin. |
| Customized           | Admission-based inspection. Select Define to customize the admission values. |

A delay exists between the detection of network admission events and the onset of the policy evaluation. When an endpoint boots, the IP address is assigned rather quickly, before most of its services have loaded. Waiting 30 seconds (default delay time) increases the chances that the policy evaluation starts when more details could be learned about the endpoint (after all services have loaded). You can update the delay default time. See Policy Preferences for details.

**Handle Dated Information – General Tab**

Several options are available for handling dated information.

- Ignore Dated Information
- Update the Network Admission Resolve Delay

**To define how dated information is handled:**

1. Right-click a rule from the Policy Manager and select Quick Edit > Advanced and then select the General tab.
2. Select or clear the **Default** checkboxes and/or the corresponding values as required, and click **OK**.

**Ignore Dated Information**

The **Ignore information older than** setting applies to information stored and used between activation evaluations. For example, if you defined an activation schedule that evaluates endpoints every two days, the information stored for two days are used for evaluation. You can define a value here that applies an absolute time information should be stored and used. The value set here is applied per policy. You can also set the value globally for all policies. When you use global values, the policy setting still applies. See **Policy Preferences** for details.

**Update the Network Admission Resolve Delay**

A default delay time exists between the detection of network admission events and the onset of the policy evaluation. This time is allotted because when an endpoint boots, the IP address is assigned rather quickly, before most of its services have loaded. Waiting 30 seconds (the default **Admission resolve delay** time) increases the chances that the rule evaluation will start when more details can be learned about the endpoint (after all services have loaded). You can update the delay default time.

This delay is applied only to properties reported directly from the endpoint, for example, Processes Running, Windows Applications, Windows Domain Member or File version. The delay is not applied to properties that are reported from other sources, for example, switch properties, Active Directory group membership, or properties related to eyeExtend products (Extended Modules).

The value set here is applied per policy. You can also set the value globally for all policies. When you use global values, the per-policy setting still applies.

**TIP:** If you set this value too high, your machines will not be checked immediately after admission. If you set the value too low, discovered information may not be accurate.

**Set and Increment Counters**

This section describes properties and actions that let you set and evaluate counters in policies. Policies can trigger actions based on counters assigned and incremented previously by other policies. This lets you use endpoint history in policies.

For example, if an endpoint repeatedly installs pluggable memory devices, you can invoke actions on the endpoint after this behavior is repeated a number of times. The use of counters lets you accommodate occasional use of hot-swappable memory, and identify problematic repeat users.
When using counters in policies:

- Counters are incremented each time an endpoint returns to the conditions of a policy, as follows:
  - The endpoint meets the conditions of the policy, and the counter is initialized.
  - Host properties change. The policy examines the endpoint, and finds that it no longer satisfies the policy.
  - Host properties change again. The policy examines the endpoint again, and finds that it satisfies the policy. The counter is incremented.

This is how Forescout 8.1 evaluates other policy conditions. However, counter values are retained even when the endpoint no longer satisfies the conditions of the policy.

> Counters are maintained per endpoint. The same counter can have a different value for each endpoint.

**Using Counters in Policy Rules**

Use properties and actions related to counters as follows:

- When you create a policy rule that defines a new counter, use only the Set Counter action.

- A policy rule that increments an existing counter must use both the Counter property and the Set Counter action:
  - The rule contains a condition that uses the Counter property to verify the presence of the counter for an endpoint. Enable the **Evaluate irresolvable criteria as True** option when the Counter property is used to verify the presence of a newly created counter.
  - Then the rule uses the Set Counter action to increment the counter on endpoints that match the condition.

**Sub-Rule Advanced Options**

The following advanced Sub-Rule options are available:

- **Inherit Main Rule Recheck**
- **Sub-Rule Recheck Policy**

**To view Sub-Rule advanced options:**

- Right-click a Sub-Rule from the Policy Manager and select **Quick Edit > Advanced**.

  The Advanced Sub-Rule dialog box opens for the selected sub-rule.
Inherit Main Rule Recheck Definitions

Instruct Forescout 8.1 to automatically apply main rule recheck definitions to all sub-policies, rather than defining the recheck value for each sub-rule.

To use main rule definitions:

- Select Use main rule recheck definitions.

Sub-Rule Recheck Policy

Sub-rule Recheck tools let you define:

- How often endpoints are rechecked that match a policy.
- Under what conditions to perform recheck.

By default, endpoints are rechecked every eight hours, and on any admission event.

To define the recheck policy:

1. Right-click a sub-rule from the Policy Manager and select Quick Edit > Advanced. The Advanced Sub-Rule dialog box opens for the selected sub-rule.

2. See Update a Recheck Policy for Unmatched and Matched Endpoints for details.

Define Sub-Rule Exceptions

Use exceptions to exclude specific endpoints from inspection. In a sub-rule, exceptions may be used, for example, as follows:

- Scope
- Windows hosts
- Sub-Rule 1
• Condition: Vulnerable to MS-08-xxx
• Action: Browser Notification
• Exception: Windows Servers
• Sub-Rule 2
  • Condition: Symantec AntiVirus not installed
  • Action: Browser Notification
  • Exception: none

In this case, Windows servers are not subject to the first sub-rule, but are tested for the others.

To define sub-rule exceptions:
1. Right-click a sub-rule from the Policy Manager and select Quick Edit > Advanced. The Advanced Sub-Rule dialog box opens for the selected sub-rule.

2. In the Exceptions section, select Add.
Chapter 4: Policy Management

3. Select an exception type and then select **OK**. An Exception dialog box opens. This dialog box varies depending on the selected exception. In general, you can define a specific exception value (for example, a specific user name) or use a user-defined List of property values (for example, user names). See Defining and Managing Lists for details.

4. Select **OK**.

5. Select the **Evaluate Irresolvable As** checkbox to instruct Forescout 8.1 how to evaluate the endpoint if the exception value cannot be resolved, for example, Forescout 8.1 does not know the user name. Either include the endpoint as an exception, exclude the endpoint as an exception or mark the endpoint as Irresolvable for the policy.

6. After defining each exception, select **OK**.
Policy Preferences

The following policy preferences are available:

- Defining Authentication Servers
- HTTP Preferences
- Customizing HTTP Pages
- Email Preferences
- Customizing Endpoint Identity Change Thresholds and Detection Mechanisms
- Time Settings
- HTTP Login Attempts

The preferences set here are applied to all connected Appliances. Preferences cannot be set individually for each Appliance.

To access the NAC options:

- Select Options from the Tools menu and then select NAC.

Defining Authentication Servers

Policies can be created to verify network users have been authenticated via specific authentication servers.

Forescout 8.1 supports the following authentication servers:

- HTTP (80/TCP)
- Telnet (23/TCP)
- NetBIOS (139/TCP)
- FTP (21/TCP)
- IMAP(143/TCP)
- POP3(110/TCP)
- rlogin (513/TCP)
After you configure authentication servers, they are automatically deployed. These servers are automatically opened and added as Virtual Firewall rules. These rules can be viewed in the Firewall Policy pane.

**HTTP Preferences**

Each Appliance can support up to 200 hijack actions per minute. Various preferences are available for handling HTTP traffic.

- Defining HTTP Redirect Exceptions
- Disable Redirection When Cookies Are Disabled
- Redirect Using Web Server DNS Name
- Globally Redirect via HTTPS
- Skip HTTP Redirect Confirmation Message
- Defining Proxy Ports for HTTP Notification
To access the HTTP Redirection pane:

- Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **NAC > HTTP Redirection**.

**Defining HTTP Redirect Exceptions**

You may want to refrain from redirecting business essential Internet sites or refrain from blocking access to important files on the Internet. This can be performed by creating HTTP redirect exceptions.

By default, user web sessions going to the Internet and Intranet are redirected. An option is available to only handle Internet traffic. See [Redirecting Web and Intranet Sessions](#).

You can define exceptions in two ways:

- **Global URL Exceptions**, Global URL exceptions that apply across all actions.
- **IP Address Exceptions per Action**, IP address exceptions that can be applied to individual actions.

**Global URL Exceptions**

Endpoint users who browse to URLs in this list are not redirected by Forescout 8.1 even when a Forescout 8.1 HTTP action is applied to the endpoint.
A number of URL strings are included in the list of global HTTP redirection exceptions by default. These strings are included to prevent endpoint users from receiving browser errors related to various issues, such as proxy servers, certificate revocation, and captive portals. These strings can be edited or removed, if needed.

By default, the following URLs are never redirected:

- windowsupdate.microsoft.com
- windowsupdate.com
- update.microsoft.com
- updates.microsoft.com
- exchange

This allows access to Microsoft Windows Update servers and prevents redirection of the Exchange server when used via the web interface. These URLs cannot be seen or edited by the user.

To create exceptions:

1. Select **Tools > Options** and then select **NAC > HTTP Redirection**.
2. Select **Global...** in the HTTP Redirection Exceptions section to open the Global dialog box.

3. Select **Add**.
4. Two options are available:
   - Look in URL for filename
   - Look in URL for address

5. Select **Contains** or **Exact**.

6. In the **Text** field, enter the URL address or filename to search for.

7. Select **OK**.

   - *If the address contains one string from the defined list, the user is not redirected.*

**Redirecting Web and Intranet Sessions**

By default, all user sessions are redirected regardless of whether the traffic goes to the Internet or to the Intranet. An option is available to redirect Internet traffic only.

**To redirect web sessions to the Internet only:**

- In the Global dialog box, select **Only redirect HTTP traffic going to the Internet**. User sessions to the Intranet are not redirected.

**IP Address Exceptions per Action**

Configuring HTTP Redirection Exceptions per action lets you define IP address ranges or segments that are not affected by a specific HTTP action. For example, create a policy that displays a customized message in end user web browsers using the **HTTP Notification** action unless the endpoint IP address is between 192.168.10.15 and 192.168.10.30.

Add IP address ranges or segments to a repository of HTTP exceptions that can later be applied to individual actions.

This feature applies to the following HTTP actions:

- **HTTP Localhost Login**
- **HTTP Login**
- **HTTP Notification**
- **HTTP Redirection to URL**
- **Start SecureConnector**
You can add an HTTP Redirection exception per action in the following ways:

- Add an Exception to the Repository
- Apply an Exception to an Action

If you want to apply global HTTP exceptions to all network users, you can work with Global URL Exceptions.

When multiple HTTP actions, each containing HTTP Redirection Exceptions, are simultaneously applied to an endpoint, only the exceptions of the first HTTP action received by Forescout 8.1 are applied. Additional HTTP Redirection Exceptions are only applied when there are no other HTTP actions applied to the endpoint.

Add an Exception to the Repository

Exceptions that you create in the repository can be applied in the Exceptions tab of HTTP actions.

To add an exception to the repository:

1. Select Tools > Options and then select NAC > HTTP Redirection.
2. Select Per Action... in the HTTP Redirection Exceptions section.

3. Select Add.
4. Enter a name for the exception in the Add IP Range dialog box.
5. Select Add to add an IP address range or segment and select OK.
6. Select **OK** in the Add IP Range dialog box.
7. Select **OK** in the Per Action... dialog box.

**Apply an Exception to an Action**

**To apply an exception:**

1. In the relevant HTTP action configuration, navigate to the Exceptions tab.

2. Select **Add**.
3. Select the name of an HTTP exception from the **Select IP Range** drop-down menu and select **OK**. The exception is displayed in the Exceptions table.

**Disable Redirection When Cookies Are Disabled**

By default, HTTP redirection actions also apply when cookies are disabled in the end-user browser. You can instruct Forescout 8.1 to disable these actions when cookies are disabled as an added security measure to prevent passing the session ID via the URL. Applying changes to this option will cause a web server restart.

**To disable redirection when cookies are disabled:**

1. Select **Tools > Options** and then select **NAC > HTTP Redirection**.
2. Clear the **Allow redirect when cookies are disabled** option. A warning message opens.

3. Select **Yes**. The Forescout web server restarts when you apply the changes.

**Redirect Using Web Server DNS Name**

When Forescout 8.1 redirects a browser to the captive web server, it can either use the web server IP address or its DNS name. Using the DNS name is recommended when using encrypted HTTPS transactions. The web server can have a certificate installed, avoiding the browser warning when interacting over HTTPS with an uncertified web server. For the DNS option to work properly, the endpoints must resolve this name using their defined DNS servers.

**To redirect using the web server DNS name:**

1. Select **Tools > Options** and then select **NAC > HTTP Redirection**.
2. Select **Attempt redirect using the DNS name** to redirect using the DNS name.

**Globally Redirect via HTTPS**

You can configure the connection method used for transmitting all redirected traffic to HTTP, or to HTTPS, i.e., encrypted over a secured connection (HTTP over TLS).

Redirected traffic includes information sent to network users via the HTTP actions, as well as authentication credentials sent back to the Appliance. For example, when you use the **HTTP Localhost Login** action, authentication credentials are sent back to the Appliance using the method that you defined.
If you transmit via HTTPS, network users will see a security alert in their web browser when they attempt to access the web. The alert indicates that the site’s security certificate was not signed by a known Certificate Authority (CA). (A default self-signed certificate is installed during product installation). You can generate a known CA Security Certificate to avoid this situation. See Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate and Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection for details.

**To globally redirect using HTTPS:**

1. Select **Tools > Options** and then select **NAC > HTTP Redirection**.
2. Select **Redirect via HTTPS** to redirect using HTTPS. Alternatively, you can define individual HTTP actions to transmit via HTTPS.

**Skip HTTP Redirect Confirmation Message**

You can instruct Forescout 8.1 to not display the confirmation message that appears by default at the endpoint after the HTTP action is successfully completed. When this happens, endpoint users are automatically redirected to the page they originally browsed to.

**To configure the skip option:**

1. Select **Tools > Options** and then select **NAC > HTTP Redirection**.
2. In the HTTP Redirection Settings section, select **Auto-redirect on success**.

**Defining Proxy Ports for HTTP Notification**

If your organization is configured to access the web through a proxy, you must enable the ports.

**To define:**

1. In the HTTP pane, select **Monitor Proxy Ports for HTTP Notifications**.
2. Enter the ports in the **Proxy Ports List** field. Use the following format: 80/TCP, 8080/TCP, 8888/TCP.
3. Select **Apply**.

**Customizing HTTP Pages**

Redirected web pages are generated by CounterACT users to interact with endpoints when specific actions are performed. At the endpoint, a default or customized web page replaces the page otherwise displayed. The content inside the page is configured when defining policy actions. See Chapter 7: Working with Actions for details.

Use the User Portal Builder when customizing the web pages displayed by the following Forescout 8.1 actions:

- HTTP Login
- HTTP Notification

For more information, see The Forescout 8.1 User Portal Builder.
When Forescout 8.1 is upgraded from versions earlier than 8.0.0, customizations created using the legacy Forescout Customization Tool are preserved for these interfaces and are upgraded to the User Portal Builder. However, customization files that are configured manually and then copied to the Forescout file system in versions earlier than 8.0.0 are not available after upgrade. Use the User Portal Builder to recreate these customizations.

Use the legacy Customization Tool when customizing the web pages displayed by the following Forescout actions:

- HTTP Localhost Login
- Start SecureConnector
- Start Macintosh Updates
- Start Windows Updates
- Windows Self Remediation
- Compliance Center

For more information, see The Legacy Customization Tool.

When Forescout 8.1 is upgraded from versions earlier than 8.0.0, all customizations for these interfaces are upgraded.

**Email Preferences**

The Send Email action automatically delivers email to administrators when a policy is matched. If there is extensive activity as a result of your policy, the recipients may receive an overwhelming number of emails.

The following tools are available to help you manage email deliveries:

- Define the maximum number of email alerts delivered per day (from midnight)
- Define the maximum number of events that are listed in each email

For example, you can define that you only want to deliver five emails per day, and that each email will contain up to 50 events. The limits defined apply to each email recipient, and for both the Send Email and Send email to host actions.

**Default Settings**

By default, up to 10 emails can be sent within 24 hours, and one message is displayed in each email. For example, if there is activity early in the day and 10 emails are sent by 2:00 PM, you will not receive emails about events that occurred during the rest of the day.

After the maximum number of emails has been sent, a warning email is delivered stating that the email delivery threshold has been reached and that you will receive no more email alerts until midnight. At midnight, an email is sent summarizing events that were not delivered.

**To update email delivery parameters:**

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select NAC > Email.
2. Set the **Maximum actions listed in each email**. For example, to receive an email alert each time an events occurs, enter 1 in the **Maximum actions listed in each email** field.

3. Set the **Maximum emails per day**.

4. Select **Apply**.

You can sign these emails using a digital certificate, as specified by the Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) standard. See [Signing Emails with an S/MIME Certificate](#) for details.

### Customizing Endpoint Identity Change Thresholds and Detection Mechanisms

IP addresses associated with a specific MAC address may change frequently. This may happen, for example, if several VPN users receive different IP addresses for the same MAC address. Forescout 8.1 ignores these changes for the purpose of rechecking the same endpoints and carrying out actions on them.

By default, IP address changes are ignored when up to 20 changes occur within a 5-minute period on the same MAC address.

**What happens before the threshold is passed?**

- All actions are released from the original IP address and no actions are applied to the new IP address when the change occurs.
- However, Forescout 8.1 activates the Admission based activation option for the IP address.
  
  The detection is displayed in the Detections pane with the same MAC addresses and the most current IP address detected.

**What happens to the endpoint after the threshold has passed?**

If there is an IP address change after the threshold has passed:

- The MAC address is ignored as a mechanism for identifying the endpoints in any policy.
Chapter 4: Policy Management

- The MAC is automatically added to a list of ignored addresses which can be modified manually by adding or deleting MAC addresses as needed.
- All new detections on the MAC are displayed individually per IP address.

Use the options in this pane to update the default IP address threshold. You can also apply the ignore mechanism and threshold definitions to NetBIOS host name changes detected on the same IP address.

To update the threshold:
1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **NAC > Identity**.
2. Define any of the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>The number of IP address changes that can occur before the threshold is passed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period</td>
<td>The time period during which identity changes can occur before the threshold is passed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore period</td>
<td>Endpoint identity change will be ignored for this period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignored host identities</td>
<td>The MAC addresses that are ignored during detection. The threshold for IP address changes on this MAC has been passed. The MAC is automatically added to a list of ignored addresses. You can edit and remove MAC addresses from the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetBIOS Hostname</td>
<td>Apply the ignore mechanism and threshold definitions to NetBIOS names that change on the same IP address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Time Settings**

To access the **Time Settings** pane and update values:
1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **NAC > Time Settings**.
2. Set the time settings.

![Options](image)

**Network Admission Resolve Delay**

A delay time exists between the detection of network admission events and the onset of the policy evaluation. When an endpoint boots, the IP address is assigned rather quickly, before most of its services have loaded. Waiting 30 seconds (default delay time) increases the chances that the rule evaluation will start when more details could be learned about the endpoint (after all services have loaded). You can update the delay default time.

If you set this value too high, your machines will not be checked immediately after admission. If you set the value too low, discovered information may not be accurate.

You can also set this value per policy. See Update the Network Admission Resolve Delay in Main Rule Advanced Options for details.

**Policy Ignores Information Older Than**

This value is a specific time period that Forescout 8.1 does *not* see traffic at previously detected endpoints. Endpoints listed in a policy that are inactive beyond the time set here are no longer rechecked. Inspection begins again only when the endpoint in rediscovered as a result of the activation settings defined. The default Inactivity Timeout is defined in the Policy Preferences dialog box. The value there is applied to all Appliances until changed specifically, per policy, here.

**Inactivity Timeout**

After initial detection, endpoints in your network may disconnect from the network, that is, go offline.

For endpoints that are not connected to a switch managed by the Forescout Switch Plugin, Forescout 8.1 uses the Inactivity Timeout option to resolve offline status. This is the time period that endpoints should be disconnected from the network in order for Forescout 8.1 to resolve them as offline. The minimal (and default) offline setting is one hour.
This parameter applies to policy endpoints as well as other endpoint detections. Endpoints that are offline beyond the time set here can be hidden from the Home view, Detections pane. This lets you view and work exclusively with online endpoints.

If endpoints are connected to a switch that is managed by the Switch Plugin, by default Forescout 8.1 detects offline status within one minute. Refer to the Permissions Configuration section of the Switch Plugin Configuration Guide for information about changing this one-minute default setting.

**Purge Inactivity Timeout**

After initial detection, endpoints in your network may disconnect from the network – become inactive for a lengthy period. The Purge Inactivity Timeout refers to a specific time period that Forescout 8.1 does not see traffic at endpoints that it previously discovered. This includes policy endpoints as well as other endpoint detections. Endpoints that are inactive beyond the time set here are cleared from the database. For example, those endpoints no longer appear in the Detections pane, Host Details dialog box, Policy Log, in reports, or in the History view.

**Purge IPv6 Timeout**

This setting determines how long Forescout 8.1 associates an IPv6 address with an endpoint. This timeout is measured from the time Forescout 8.1 learns the IPv6 address. If Forescout 8.1 does not detect this address or its related MAC address in the network during the time period specified:

- It no longer associates the address with the endpoint. This address no longer appears in the IPv6 Address host property for the endpoint.
- If the endpoint has no other IP or MAC address, it is purged completely from Forescout 8.1.

**Display Action Icon after Action Is Complete**

You can choose a time period to display an Action icon after a one-time action is complete. For example:

- After an email action is delivered
- After network users confirm reading redirected pages
- After users perform redirecting tasks

This feature helps you more quickly understand the endpoint status.

**HTTP Login Attempts**

Define a failed login limit for endpoint users attempting to log in via the Forescout HTTP Login page. This page is triggered via the HTTP Login action.
You can define the number of failed login attempts that occurs within a specific time frame. Users who exceed this limit can be detected using the HTTP Login Failure property. In addition, you can follow up with users who exceeded the limit by creating useful policy actions, for example, notifying the IT team or preventing user access to the production network.

**To define a limit:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **NAC > HTTP Login Attempts**.

2. Set the number of failed login attempts and the time within which failed login attempts must occur in order for a login failure attempt to be detected.

3. Select **Apply**.
Property Lists

Lists contain endpoint properties and related values, for example, a list of domain user names, or a list of DNS names, or of processes that you want to prohibit on your network. Each List is associated with a single endpoint property and can contain multiple related values.

Using lists speeds up and streamlines the policy creation process.

For example, if you discovered that network guests are running unauthorized processes on your network, create a list of these processes, and then incorporate them into a policy that will detect and halt them. You can manually create lists or create lists based on Inventory detections and policy detections. See Defining and Managing Lists for details.

Categorizing Policies

Assign policies to policy categories to:

- Help you organize and view policies in the Policy manager. For example, display only policies that have been labeled as Compliance policies. See Working with the Policy Manager.
- Include categorized policies in the Compliance folder and Corporate/Guests folder in the Views pane of the Console. See Home Views.
- Include categorized policies in the Forescout Compliance Center. See Working with the Forescout Compliance Center.
- Display categorized policies in the Site Map. See Working in the Site Map.
- The Compliance Status and Corporate/Guest Status properties. See Device Information Properties.

By default, these include policies generated from Classification, Compliance and Corporate/Guest Control templates.

This section describes how to categorize other policies as either Classification, Compliance or Corporate/Guest.

Follow these guidelines:

1. Create a policy for which you want to view results in the Dashboard.
2. Categorize the policy as either Classification, Compliance, or Corporate/Guest.
3. Label endpoints that match the policy sub-rules as follows:
   - Matched endpoints are Classifier
   - Matched endpoints are Compliant / Not Compliant / Unlabeled
   - Matched endpoints are Authorized Guest / Unauthorized Guest / Corporate / Unlabeled

When working with policies that only have a Main Rule, label endpoints that either match or do not match the policy. For example, consider a policy detecting endpoints that have installed uTorrent – an unauthorized peer-to-peer application. Endpoints that match the policy can be labeled Not Compliant and endpoints that do not match the policy can be labeled Compliant or Unlabeled.
Working with Unlabeled Rules

Endpoints that are marked *Unlabeled* are not calculated. Endpoints may be unlabeled, for example, if they are defined as a necessary part of a rule or policy but do not fall into a useful category.

Sample Categorization and Labeling – Running Vital File on Windows Endpoint Policy

To categorize and label a policy:

1. Create a policy. In this example, the policy name is *Non-Compliant Endpoints by Operating System*.
2. Select the policy in the Policy Manager.

3. Select **Categorize**.
4. Select **Compliance** from the **Categorize this policy** drop-down menu.

5. Select a sub-rule, select the **Label** field, and then select **Compliant**.

Endpoints that match this sub-rule are calculated as compliant.

6. Select **Unlabeled** if you do not want results to be calculated for endpoints that match the sub-rule.

### Policy Reports and Logs

This section describes:

- **Policies Summary**
- **Policy Logs**

In addition, you can use the Reports Portal to generate reports. See [Reports Portal](#).

#### Policies Summary

You can generate a report listing your policies and policy definitions.

**To generate a summary of your policies:**

- Select **Policies Summary Report** from the **Reports** menu.

#### Policy Logs

Use the Policy Log to investigate the activity of specific endpoints, and display information about how those endpoints are handled. The log displays information about endpoints as they are detected and is continuously updated.

You can display endpoints from a specific time period and IP address range. In addition, filter tools are available to limit the log display, for example, to specific policies or sub-rules. An option is also available to export the Log to an XML file.
To open the log:

1. Select **Policy Log** from the **Log** menu.

2. Define a time scope and address range and select **OK**. A Log dialog box opens according to the configured range.

The following information is available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Time</strong></th>
<th>The time the event occurred.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Host</strong></td>
<td>The IP address of the detected endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type/Name</strong></td>
<td>The type of event. Use the Filter option to control which event types are displayed. The name is basic information about the type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td>Event details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4: Policy Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>The status of the operations taken place. For example, if a policy action is complete, the status is OK.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Origin</td>
<td>The CounterACT device that detected the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC Address</td>
<td>The MAC address of the detected endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The status of the operations taken place. For example, if a policy action is complete, the status is OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>The CounterACT device that detected the event.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAC Address</td>
<td>The MAC address of the detected endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following filter options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>All</strong></td>
<td>Display all log events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Log</strong></td>
<td>Displays detections, action execution, and additional information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Threat Protection</strong></td>
<td>Displays endpoints detected via the Threat Protection Policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Only Changes</strong></td>
<td>Displays new, changed, or rechecked property that was learned regarding to the selected IP address ranges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System</strong></td>
<td>Important system events, including Console initialization time, Appliance status, plugin and module status, and changes in Appliance IP address assignments. Use the Event Viewer to review more detailed system event information. See Work with System Event Logs for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exporting the Log

You can export the log data or sections of it to a CSV file.

**To export the data:**

1. From the Policy Log dialog box, select **Export** from the **File** menu.

   ![Export Table](image)

   - **File name:** Enter the name of the file to save.
   - **File type:** Select **Comma Separated Values Files (csv)**.
   - **Title:** Enter a title for the file.
   - **Selected rows only**
   - **Displayed columns only**

2. Browse to the location for saving the file.
3. Configure the export options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Export all information.</th>
<th>Do not select any checkbox.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only export information displayed in the log. (This does not include information hidden via the Hide/Display column feature.)</td>
<td>Select <strong>Displayed columns only</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select rows to export and export all related data. (Including information hidden via the Hide/Display column feature.)</td>
<td>Select <strong>Selected rows only</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select rows to export but only export data displayed. (This does not include information hidden via the Hide/Display column feature.)</td>
<td>Select both checkboxes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select **OK**.

**Policy Safety Features**

Several safety features are available to help ensure that your policies efficiently handle endpoints.

- Working with Action Thresholds
- Handling Irresolvable Criteria
- Handling Criteria Defined as Empty Lists
- Misconfigured Add to Group Policy

**Working with Action Thresholds**

In some scenarios, policy enforcement requires blocking or restricting network devices and users.

*Action thresholds* are designed to automatically implement safeguards when rolling out such sanctions across your network. Consider a situation in which you defined multiple policies that utilize a blocking action, for example, the Virtual Firewall or Switch Block action. In a situation where an extensive number of endpoints match these policies, you may block more endpoints than you anticipated.

An action threshold is the maximum percentage of endpoints that can be controlled by a specific action type defined at a single device. By working with thresholds, you gain more control over how many endpoints are simultaneously restricted in one way or another.

**How It Works**

1. Forescout 8.1 sets default thresholds for an action type.
2. Forescout 8.1 puts actions on-hold for endpoints that are detected after the threshold is passed.
3. An *On-hold* indicator blinks on the Console status bar. Manual approval is required to cancel the on-hold status and carry out the actions.
4. Select the indicator to access the Action Threshold dialog box, where you can, for example, change the threshold or stop the device. Additional options are also available. See Managing Actions On-Hold on a Specific Device for details.

5. When the situation is remediated and the blocking limit falls below the threshold, you can cancel the on-hold status and continue blocking or remediating.

6. You can also manually select endpoints and cancel on-hold status.

You can also create threshold policy exceptions, i.e., policies that you want to exclude from action threshold calculations. For example, you can exclude all thresholds when working with policies that handle outside contractors.

**How On-hold Thresholds Are Calculated**

Thresholds for each action type are calculated per device, based on the number of endpoints assigned to the device.

To enforce on-hold status, the following must occur:

- A threshold percentage must be exceeded. See Actions Covered and Threshold Percentages for details.
- The number of endpoints with an action assigned to them must be equal to or more than the minimal number of endpoints Forescout 8.1 is instructed to detect before calculating the threshold. By default, this number is ten. See Controlling the Counting Mechanism for details.

Using the default, if the total number of endpoints assigned to a device is 500, and the default threshold for the Switch Block action is 2%, then the threshold limit is passed after 2% of the endpoints on the device (or 10 endpoints in this example) are blocked via the switch. At this point, the action is put on-hold for new endpoints detected.

**Actions Covered and Threshold Percentages**

The following table lists actions covered by thresholds and the default threshold values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Default Threshold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switch Block</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign to VLAN</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Firewall</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Notification</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Redirection to URL</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send Email</td>
<td>2% during one minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN Block</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless Host Block</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kill Process on Windows</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add to Blocking Exceptions list</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACL</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4: Policy Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Default Threshold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable External Device</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To change a default:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **NAC > Action Thresholds**.
2. In the Configuration tab, select **Custom** and enter a value in the field.
3. Select **Apply**.

**How Do I Know When a Threshold Violation Occurred?**

The action threshold indicator flashes if a threshold violation occurred. You can select the icon to open the Action Threshold dialog box for details. At that point the indicator will remain on the status bar, but will not flash. A tooltip gives you information about the on-hold status.

**To work with action thresholds:**

- Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **NAC > Action Thresholds**.
**Actions Section**

This section lists all the actions defined in your enterprise and provides related information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Action Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status <img src="image" alt="Green Checkmark" /></td>
<td>The on-hold status of the action. If the action is put on hold at one device, the overall status is considered On-hold. A green checkmark means that the action is not on-hold at any device. A blue icon indicates that it is On-hold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>The action being handled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># On-hold Devices</td>
<td>The number of devices that are working with an on-hold action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max % Hosts With Action</td>
<td>The highest percentage of endpoints covered by an action at a specific device, in relation to all enterprise devices. For example, 20% of all endpoints at a specific device have been assigned this action, and this is the highest percentage at all devices. Use the value to get a better understanding of how to configure your threshold for a particular action. Using this example, if 20% is the maximum value but the default threshold is at 2%, you may want to adjust the threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold</td>
<td>The current on-hold threshold for the action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policies</td>
<td>Policies that include this action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Select an action from this section and review detailed threshold information in the **Threshold Details** section.

**Threshold Details Section**

This section displays threshold information for the action you select in the **Actions** section, for example, the current number of endpoints On-hold at a specific device for the Virtual Firewall action. You can also use the tools in this section to:

- Change the default threshold.
- Create threshold policy exceptions; policies to exclude from action threshold calculations. For example, exclude all policies that handle organizational visitors.
- Configure thresholds if you are working in small environments.
- Start or stop a device.
- Cancel the On-Hold mechanism.
- Include or exclude endpoints that were manually assigned an action.

**Devices Tab**

This section describes threshold information for an action you select in the **Actions** section, for example, the current number of endpoints on hold at a specific device for the Send Email action.
Chapter 4: Policy Management

### Item | Description
--- | ---
Status | The On-hold status for the action on the selected device. A green checkmark means that the action is not On-hold at this device. A blue icon indicates that it is.
Device | The device IP address.
Threshold | The current threshold for this action. The threshold is identical on all devices, and varies by default per action.
% Hosts With Action | The percentage of endpoints on the device that are targeted for the action selected in the Actions section. Some actions may be carried out, while others may be on-hold because of a threshold violation.
# Hosts With Action | The total number of endpoints on the device to which the action applies. Endpoints detected by policies that are configured as threshold exceptions are not counted.
# On-hold Hosts | The number of endpoints on the device that are not being controlled by the action because of a threshold violation – On-hold.

**Stop Device**

When you stop a device, all Forescout 8.1 activity on endpoints is halted. You may decide to do this if the action is causing unexpected results.

**Configuration Tab**

Use the Configuration tab of the Thresholds pane to change the default configuration for the threshold and to create threshold policy exceptions – policies that you want to exclude from action threshold calculations. For example, exclude all policies that handle organizational visitors. You can exclude an entire policy or a specific rule. Threshold values that contain fractions are rounded to the nearest whole number.

*To create exceptions:*

1. In the Configuration tab, select **Add.**
2. Select the policy items to exclude from the threshold calculations.
3. Select OK.

**Controlling the Counting Mechanism**

You can define the minimum number of endpoints that should be counted for an action before enforcing a threshold. For example, wait until 20 endpoints have been detected with a certain action before calculating the threshold. The number applies to all devices. The calculation is done by each device separately. The default setting is 10 endpoints.

In small enterprises where there are very few endpoints, the default threshold may be initiated too soon. For example, if the threshold is 1% and less than 100 endpoints are assigned to the device, then the first action will bypass the threshold. Conversely, in large organizations, the threshold may be needed to be lowered.

**To change the default:**

1. At the bottom of the NAC > Actions Thresholds pane, set the minimum number of hosts in the **Minimal number of hosts** field.

2. Select **Apply**.

*Include or Exclude Endpoint Manually Assigned an Action*

By default, endpoints that have manually been assigned actions are included in the endpoint count. To exclude these endpoints, clear **Count Manual Actions** from the bottom of the Actions Thresholds pane.
Managing Actions On-Hold on a Specific Device

If too many actions are not being carried out, you can perform a procedure to release the On-hold mechanism on previously detected endpoints.

To release the On-hold mechanism:

1. Perform one or more of the following:
   - Increase the action threshold in the Configuration tab from the Options > NAC > Actions Thresholds pane.
   - Stop the relevant policies.
   - Increase the minimum number of endpoints to detect.
   - Add the relevant policies to the Policy Threshold Exceptions list in the Configuration tab from the Options > NAC > Actions Thresholds pane.

2. Select a device from the Threshold Details section of the Options > NAC > Actions Thresholds pane.

3. To cancel the On-hold mechanism for the action on the device, select Manage Held Action. A dialog box opens letting you instruct Forescout 8.1 to handle the action on previously detected endpoints. Three options are available:
   - Perform the action.
   - Cancel the action. The action remains cancelled until it is either deleted or unmatched to a policy and then matched.
   - Leave the action on-hold.

After releasing the on-hold mechanism, you can continue blocking or restricting newly detected endpoints.

Approve Actions on Specific Endpoints

You can release the On-hold status for specific endpoints and approve the action.

To approve:

1. In the Detections pane, click the Actions column header and look for the hourglass icon. This icon indicates endpoints that are On-hold or Pending. The first set of endpoints is On-hold.

2. Right-click the endpoint and select Approve Actions. Select the action that you want to release from On-hold.
Handling Irresolvable Criteria

In some situations, Forescout 8.1 cannot properly resolve endpoint property criteria. Such criteria are considered *irresolvable criteria*.

What Causes Criteria to Be Irresolvable?

Property criteria can have a status of Irresolvable for one of two reasons:

- Forescout 8.1 failed to resolve the criteria.
- A system error caused Forescout 8.1 not to respond to the resolve request (for example, a plugin is not running or experienced a timeout).

How Are Irresolvable Criteria Handled?

Many properties provide an option for handling *irresolvable criteria*. If Forescout 8.1 cannot verify a property, you can choose how to resolve that endpoint.

You can instruct Forescout 8.1 to handle irresolvable criteria as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>True</th>
<th>The endpoint matches the criteria defined for the property.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>False</td>
<td>The endpoint does not match the criteria defined for the property.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*If you do not select the *Evaluate irresolvable criteria as* option, the criteria is handled as irresolvable and the endpoint does not undergo further analysis. The endpoint is not checked to see if it matches additional condition criteria.*

Irresolvable Criteria: System Errors

By default, all irresolvable criteria are evaluated according to the user-defined settings configured in the property (*Evaluate irresolvable criteria as True/False*).
However, when criteria are irresolvable due to a system error, you can change this default setting. Because this status did not stem from an actual failure to resolve, but rather from an error, this resolution can be considered imprecise. As a result, you can override any user-defined settings and continue to evaluate such criteria as irresolvable. The endpoint does not undergo further analysis and is not checked against additional condition criteria.

**To evaluate criteria that is irresolvable due to a system error:**

1. Select **Options > Advanced > Policy**.

   ![Advanced Policy Options](image)

   2. Select **Always as Irresolvable** to continue to evaluate Irresolvable criteria as such when the evaluation was caused by a system error.

   By default, **According to user-defined settings per property** is selected and all irresolvable criteria are evaluated according to the user-defined settings configured in the property.

**Handling Criteria Defined as Empty Lists**

Properties are used to evaluate specific information on an endpoint. If a property must evaluate information that is not contained on the endpoint, Forescout 8.1 evaluates the property as an *empty list*. You can choose to evaluate properties with empty list values as either true or false.

For example, the **Microsoft Vulnerabilities Fine-tuned** property detects all the Microsoft vulnerabilities on an endpoint and evaluates them. If the endpoint has no Microsoft vulnerabilities, the property has nothing to evaluate. This situation, known as an empty list, returns an evaluation of False by default. You can change the **Evaluate empty list value as** option to True.
Chapter 4: Policy Management

Misconfigured Add to Group Policy

Users may unknowingly create invalid policies. For example, when the Not a Member of Group condition and the Add to Group action are configured in the same policy. A policy error message is displayed in the Details pane when Forescout 8.1 detects this kind of misconfiguration.
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

✓ Working with Policy Templates
✓ Primary Classification Template
✓ Mobile Classification Template
✓ External Device Classification Template
✓ Virtual Machine Classification Template
✓ Passive Learning Mode Template
✓ Corporate/Guest Control Template
✓ External Disk Drive Compliance Template
✓ Overall Endpoint Compliance Template
✓ Individual Compliance Templates
✓ Windows Update Compliance Template
✓ Macintosh Update Compliance Template
✓ Threats Templates
✓ Track Changes Templates
✓ New TCP/IP Port Template
Working with Policy Templates

Policy templates are predefined policies. Templates help you:

- Quickly create important, widely used policies based on predefined policy parameters.
- Automatically group network devices into categories that can be used to apply policies.
- More easily control endpoints and guide users to compliance.
- More easily and quickly implement Forescout 8.1 major capabilities.
- Roll out your policies more safely by applying conditions and actions that have been used and tested.
- Pinpoint any infractions to your security system more quickly.

Predefined actions – instructions regarding how to handle endpoints – are generally disabled by default. You should only enable actions after testing and fine-tuning the policy.

Creating Policies Using Templates – Basics

The following table provides a brief description of available Forescout 8.1 templates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Policies</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Classification</td>
<td><strong>Primary Classification Template</strong></td>
<td>Create policies that detect network devices according to these categories. Discovered endpoints are placed in Forescout groups that are displayed in the Console, Filters pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Mobile Classification Template</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>External Device Classification Template</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Virtual Machine Classification Template</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Passive Learning Mode Template</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate/ Guest Control</td>
<td><strong>Corporate/Guest Control Template</strong></td>
<td>Create a policy that detects and classifies your network into the following Forescout groups:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Corporate endpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Signed-in guests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Guest Hosts (unauthorized endpoints)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You can define the policy so that unauthorized endpoints are prompted to sign in with valid credentials or register to the network as guests by providing identity information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Options are also available to allow unauthorized endpoints to skip the registration process and enter the network with limited access.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 5: Policy Templates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Policies</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compliance</td>
<td>Individual Compliance Templates</td>
<td>Generate compliance policies, understand the compliance level at your network, guide users to compliance and remediate endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• External Disk Drive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Antivirus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Peer-to-Peer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Personal Firewall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Instant Messaging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Windows Update</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Macintosh Update</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Overall Endpoint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threats</td>
<td>Malicious Hosts Template</td>
<td>Detect and remediate threats to your network by enforcing policies against a range of widely used techniques.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ARP Spoofing Template</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Impersonation Template</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dual Homed Template</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track Changes</td>
<td>Track Changes Templates</td>
<td>Track changes within your network to identify unauthorized changes and remediate possible threats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Application</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Hostname</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Operating System</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Shared Folder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Switch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• User</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Windows Service</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• New TCP/IP Port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCI Compliance</td>
<td>Selected PCI policies</td>
<td>Implements over 20 PCI policies and generates related report to help you during a PCI audit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(available after the</td>
<td></td>
<td>The template includes predefined actions for automatic remediation of endpoints that do not comply with the PCI specification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCI Kit Plugin is</td>
<td></td>
<td>Refer to the Forescout PCI Guide for more information about this template and about PCI compliance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installed)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*If you installed plugins or modules, related templates may also be available. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for details.*

**To create policies from templates:**

1. Select the Policy tab. The Policy Manager opens.
2. Select **Add**. The Policy Wizard opens.
3. Select a policy template. The Primary Classification and Corporate/Guest Control policies may have been run during the initial Console setup. If not, run the Primary Classification policy wizard to create device classification groups, and then the Corporate/Guest Control policy wizard, before defining other policies.

4. Select **Next**.

5. In the Scope pane, enter the IP address ranges or segments to inspect. Some templates are predefined with specific endpoints that should be either included or excluded from the range. Select (Advanced) to view these endpoints.
6. Review the remaining template pages to understand how the template is defined, and provide any undefined parameters.

7. The policy is displayed in the Policy Manager. Select Apply to run it. (Predefined actions are disabled by default.)

8. Verify that the policy results are reasonable for your network. If not reasonable, fine-tune the policy as needed. See Tips for Rolling Out Templates and Edit Policies and Rules.

9. When you are satisfied with the policy results, run the policy again and, if necessary, enable predefined actions. See Start Actions on Selected Endpoints.

**How Often Are Endpoints Rechecked?**
By default, policies are rechecked:

- Every eight hours.
- On all admission events. For example, when an endpoint physically connects to a switch port, when its IP address changes or when it sends out a DHCP request. For more information, see Update a Recheck Policy for Unmatched and Matched Endpoints.
- When new information is learned about an endpoint inspected by the policy.

**Tips for Rolling Out Templates**
To create policies that classify the network into Forescout groups, use the Primary Classification template to create device classification groups, and then the Corporate/Guest Control template. The groups created by these policies are prerequisites for other policies. As a result, it is important to run and fine-tune these policies first. If you installed Forescout 8.1 from scratch, then the Primary Classification and the Corporate/Guest Control policies may have been run during initial setup. The created groups should appear in the Console, Filters pane. If you have not run these policies and are working with other templates, you are prompted to create the relevant groups before continuing.
Consider the following when rolling out any policy template or custom policy:

- Do not enable policy actions when first running policies. First, verify that the policy pinpoints the right users and devices, and verify that there were a reasonable number of discoveries.

- Rather than rolling out several policies at the same time, consider working as follows:
  - Deploy one policy.
  - Review and fine-tune the policy. See Edit Policies and Rules for details.
  - Roll out another policy.

- Initially, avoid rolling out a policy across all enterprise sites. Consider rolling out policies one site at a time, even if the policies will eventually be deployed across the enterprise. The rollout should be handled this way because many sites operate under unique work procedures with site-specific requirements.

**Template Structure**

Templates are predefined to streamline the process of creating policies. Policy templates are built as follows:

- Policy name (there is a predefined default name) and an optional description.
- Policy scope, for example, the endpoints that you want to inspect (filtered for certain templates).
- Instructions regarding what endpoint properties to look for—conditions. For example, find Windows endpoints that are running peer-to-peer applications (predefined when using templates).
Instructions regarding measures to take at endpoints, if conditions are met—actions. For example, send email to the IT department when non-corporate installations are found (predefined when using templates). Template actions are disabled by default.

For more information about these policy elements, see Create a Custom Policy.

Detections and actions resulting from the template policies appear in the Home view, and can be managed from there.

**Primary Classification Template**

The section covers:

- About Classification
- Replacing Asset Classification Policies
- Template Classification Groups
- Properties Resolved by a Primary Classification Policy
- Prerequisites
- Create a Primary Classification Policy
- How Devices Are Inspected – Policy Scope
- How Devices Are Classified – Policy Conditions
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions
- Use an Action to Assign a Classification
- Fine-Tune the Classification Mechanism

**About Classification**

*Classification* is an objective assessment of what a device is, from a functionality, operating system, manufacturer, and model point of view. Forescout 8.1 uses all the data discovered about each device to intelligently figure out what the device is.

The Primary Classification policy template, a feature of the Device Classification Engine, uses a vast array of information provided by various Forescout components to determine the function, operating system, vendor, and model of each endpoint. The policy template then uses this classification information as conditions for sub-rules to broadly classify the endpoints.

**Replacing Asset Classification Policies**

Upgraded versions of Forescout might include legacy Asset Classification policies that provide limited information about endpoints. To take advantage of more precise classification profiles, it is recommended to create and run Primary Classification policies.
The Primary Classification policy provides more comprehensive classification in your environment than legacy Asset Classification policies. To use it as your primary classification policy, ensure that the Add to Group actions are enabled in the Primary Classification policy, and use the Policy Manager to stop your Asset Classification policies.

**Template Classification Groups**

Policies created based on the Primary Classification template can create Forescout groups for the following device categories, and automatically place each endpoint in the appropriate device group.

- CounterACT Devices
- NAT devices: Devices that may hide other devices
- Printers
- VoIP devices
- Network devices: Networking equipment, such as WLAN controllers, routers, switches, and wireless controllers
- Storage
- Windows
- Macintosh
- Linux/Unix
- Mobile devices
- Unclassified: Forescout 8.1 does not know in which category an endpoint belongs, for example, a new network device

> Legacy Asset Classification policies include all CounterACT devices and network storage devices in the Network devices group.

If a device does not meet the criteria for any group or if Forescout 8.1 cannot evaluate the endpoint, it is placed in an Unclassified group. The operator may then choose to manually classify the device. See Use an Action to Assign a Classification.

> The Primary Classification template includes a sub-rule that indicates if a member of the Exempt-Approved Misc Devices group does not meet the criteria for a classification category. It is recommended to add to this group all the endpoints that Forescout 8.1 does not classify, but that you know about and specifically do not want to fall into the Unclassified group.

Groups created by this policy are used when running policies created by other templates. Organizing your endpoints into groups makes it easier to create and manage other policies and track policy results. These groups appear in the Groups tree in the Console Home tab, Filters pane. When you select a group, associated endpoints appear in the Console, Detections pane.
In addition, a sub-rule is created for each group type. You can view each policy's sub-rules under Policies in the Console Home tab, Views pane.

**Properties Resolved by a Primary Classification Policy**

When a Primary Classification policy is run, the following endpoint classification properties are resolved:

- Function
• Operating System
• Vendor and Model
• Suggested Function – Indicates all the Function property values that matched this endpoint’s profile if there were multiple matches
• Suggested Operating System – Indicates all the Operating System property values that matched this endpoint’s profile if there were multiple matches
• Function Classified By – Indicates if the Function property value was determined by the Device Classification Engine or was set by an action
• Operating System Classification Update – Indicates if the Operating System property value was determined by the Device Classification Engine or was set by an action

⚠️ These properties are not resolved by legacy Asset Classification policies.

Prerequisites

• Consider which endpoints you want to inspect. The policy does not handle endpoints outside of the Internal Network.
• Ensure that a Primary Classification policy using the Add to Group actions is run before any other policy.

Create a Primary Classification Policy

This section describes how to use the Primary Classification template to create a policy.

To create a policy:

1. Select Add from the Policy Manager, and expand the Classification folder.
2. Select Primary Classification.
3. Select **Next**. The Name pane opens.

4. Edit the name if required and add a description. See [Naming Tips](#) for guidelines about creating effective names.

5. Select **Next**. The Scope pane opens.

6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
– **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

> The Primary Classification policy template can resolve classification properties for endpoints even when their IP addresses are unknown.

7. Select **OK**. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select (Advanced).

9. Select **Next**. The Sub-Rules pane opens.

10. Review the sub-rule conditions and actions, and then select **Finish**.

**How Devices Are Inspected – Policy Scope**

Classification policies instruct Forescout 8.1 to use both passive and active methods to classify endpoints. Active methods include probing the endpoint to check for a small range of open ports, running Nmap against the endpoint, and attempting to connect using WMI, SMB and/or RRP (depending on your HPS Inspection Engine configuration). To fully benefit from classification, it is recommended to run a classification policy on your entire network. However, if there are endpoints in your network that are known to be sensitive to network probing, it is recommended to exclude these endpoints when creating Primary Classification policies. For details about excluding sensitive endpoints, see [Restricting Endpoint Inspection](#).
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

How Devices Are Classified – Policy Conditions

Properties used by these classification policies can be resolved on all endpoints within the policy range.

Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for more information about classification methods. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select this plugin, and then select Help.

Device Classification Using a Primary Classification Policy

A Primary Classification policy includes sub-rules for devices found in most environments. It is recommended to enhance the policy by adding additional sub-rules above the Approved Misc Devices sub-rule for devices that are particular to your environment.

A Primary Classification policy attempts to resolve the following classification properties for each connected endpoint:

- Function
- Operating System
- Vendor and Model

When a classification policy cannot match the endpoint to a specific profile in the Device Profile Library:

- If multiple profiles match the endpoint, the property is resolved as the most specific value in the Device Profile Library that is common to all the matching profiles. For example, if Windows Server 2008 Enterprise RTM and Windows Server 2008 Enterprise SP2 operating system profiles both match the endpoint, the Operating System property is resolved as Windows Server 2008 Enterprise.

- If there is no common value among all the matching profiles, the property is resolved as Multiple Suggestions.

- If no profiles in the Device Profile Library match the endpoint, the property is resolved as Unknown.

View Policy Conditions

You can learn more about how the detection mechanism is defined by viewing policy conditions.

To view policy conditions:

1. Select an item from the Sub-Rules pane.
2. Select Edit.
   The Sub-Rules dialog box opens for the selected condition.
3. Select a criterion from the Condition section and select Edit.
   The Condition dialog box opens, displaying the parameters.
How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions

Policy actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to device detections. This policy adds each endpoint to a Forescout group according to the device category. These Add to Group actions are enabled by default.

To avoid possible conflicts with legacy Asset Classification policies, it is recommended to use the Policy Manager to stop all Asset Classification policies used in earlier versions of CounterACT, and to run only Primary Classification policies.

When Are Endpoints Removed from Groups?

When the Add to Group actions are enabled, endpoints are removed from groups if Forescout 8.1 discovers, during policy recheck, that the device function or type has changed, or if the policy has been stopped.

Use an Action to Assign a Classification

You can use the Classify actions to override an endpoint classification property set by a Primary Classification policy. Changing a property value may cause the endpoint to match a different policy sub-rule when your classification policy is run again. If the Add to Group actions are enabled in your classification policy, the endpoint is added to the appropriate group.

It is useful to manually assign a classification in the following situations:

- The classification resolved by Forescout 8.1 is not correct or Forescout 8.1 was not able to resolve a classification.
- You are able to refine the device’s classification. For example, Forescout 8.1 resolved the device Function property as a Healthcare, but you know it’s actually an X-Ray device.
- The endpoint was excluded from the range of endpoints to be classified due to its sensitivity to probing.

You can use the Cancel Actions action to easily revert your manual classification assignments to those set by your classification policy.

After a Set Function Classification or Set OS Classification action is used to change a property value, the new value causes the endpoint to match a different sub-rule in the Primary Classification policy. If the Add to Group policy actions are enabled, the endpoint is added to the appropriate group.

To use Forescout actions to classify devices:

1. Do one of the following:
   - To manually classify one or more endpoints, select the endpoints that you want to classify from the Console, Detections pane and right-click.
   - To reclassify endpoints using a policy, set the policy conditions to detect the endpoints that you want to reclassify, and navigate to the Actions tree from the Policy Actions dialog box.
2. Expand the Classify folder, and select the classification property to be set:
   - Set Function Classification
   - Set Network Function
   - Set OS Classification

3. Select the appropriate property value.

4. If you have opted in to data sharing, the classification change is uploaded to Forescout. If you agree to also provide Forescout with additional information regarding the change, select the checkbox, and enter:
   - The reason why the selected classification is appropriate for this endpoint
   - The ideal classification for this endpoint, if it is not in the classification list
Your feedback is sent to Forescout to help provide better classification services.

- **This feature is enabled for Function and OS Classifications only. To ensure that your changes are shared with Forescout, first go to Tools > Options > Advanced > Data Sharing, and select the option Share selected endpoint properties and plugin configuration and usage information with Forescout. See The Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program.**

5. Select OK.

**Fine-Tune the Classification Mechanism**

Several methods are used for retrieving classification information, for example, Nmap tools, domain credentials, information resolved on devices managed by SecureConnector, or switches configured to work with Forescout 8.1. Nmap tools are used if other mechanisms are unable to resolve the endpoint classification.

You can fine-tune the Nmap classification, if required.

- **You can prevent Nmap fingerprinting of endpoints that are sensitive to network traffic. See Restricting Endpoint Inspection.**

**To fine-tune Nmap classification:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **HPS Inspection Engine**.
2. Select the Classification tab.
3. Update Nmap settings as required.
4. Select **Apply**.
5. Refer to the **HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide** for details about these options. In the HPS Inspection Engine pane, select **Help**.

**Troubleshooting Tip**

To view the classification method used by Forescout 8.1 to resolve the Network Function properties, select the **Show troubleshooting messages** icon in the Profile tab of the Details pane.
Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis Template

This template is only relevant to Forescout users who have upgraded to this release from an earlier CounterACT release.

If HPS Inspection Engine in your environment is currently configured to use Classification version 2, it is strongly recommended to upgrade to version 3. Version 3 uses a newer version of Nmap to improve the underlying classification capabilities of CounterACT. This upgrade changes how the Network Function property is resolved during endpoint classification.

The Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis policy template lets you examine the possible impact of upgrading CounterACT Classification tools, including changes in how endpoints are handled by Asset Classification policies.

When Should You Use This Template

When you change the set of classification methods used by CounterACT, there may be significant changes in the results of the plugin’s classification processes. These changes are evident when some endpoints receive new values for the Network Function and OS Fingerprint properties, and can strongly influence how classification policies evaluate endpoints.

The Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis template lets you examine the impact of changing CounterACT from Classification version 2 to Classification version 3.

Before you change the Classification version, it is highly recommended to follow this procedure:

1. Create and run a policy based on this template. This policy detects endpoints for which the new and old classification methods yield different results.
2. Carefully analyze the endpoints which are classified differently by the two classification versions, especially these cases:
   - Endpoints classified correctly by classification version 2, but not classified at all under version 3
   - Endpoints classified correctly by classification version 2, but classified incorrectly under classification version 3
3. Decide how to handle changes in classification results. If necessary, adjust existing classification policies to ensure that all endpoints are correctly classified by classification version 3. You may need to create rules that use the Classify action to apply a desired classification to some endpoints.
   
   You may also find that many endpoints which were not accurately classified by classification version 2 are now handled correctly by the improved capabilities of classification version 3. In these cases, you may be able to remove sub-rules that you inserted to correct automatic classification, simplifying classification policies.

How to Proceed

To compare the classification results and perform the upgrade, perform the following in the order specified:

1. How Devices Are Classified and Compared – Policy Condition
2. **Compare Classification Results**
3. **Use an Action to Assign a Classification**
4. **Stop the Migration Classification Policy**
5. **Upgrade the Classification Version**

**Prerequisites**
- Classification version 2 is currently configured.
- Consider which endpoints you want to inspect. The policy does not handle endpoints outside of the Internal Network.

**Using the Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis Template**

This template is only relevant to Forescout users who have upgraded to this release from an earlier CounterACT release.

This section describes how to use the template to create a policy.

1. Select **Add** from the Policy Manager.
2. Open the Classification folder.
3. Select **Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis**.

![Policy Wizard - Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis](image)

4. Select **Next**. The Name page opens.
5. Edit the default name if required and add a description. See [Naming Tips](#) for guidelines about creating effective names.
6. Select **Next**. The Scope page opens. Define which endpoints are inspected.
Which Devices Are Inspected – Policy Scope

1. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

![IP Address Range dialog box]

The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

The **Unknown IP addresses** option is not applicable to this template. This policy is applicable only to endpoints with IP addresses.

2. Select **OK**. The added range appears in the Scope list, and is inspected by the policy.

3. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select ![Advanced](Advanced)

4. Select **Next**. The Sub-Rules page opens. This page lets you review the sub-rules predefined with this policy.
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis, Sub-Rules

How Devices Are Classified and Compared – Policy Condition

You can learn more about how the classification comparison is carried out by viewing policy conditions.

To view policy conditions:

1. Select an item from the Sub-Rules page.
2. Select Edit.

The Sub-Rules dialog box opens for the condition that you selected.

3. Select a criterion from the Condition section and select Edit. The dialog box for the condition opens, displaying the parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-Rule Result</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Versions 2 and 3 Differently Classified</td>
<td>The results for classification version 2 and 3 are different. Review the differences and manually assign a classification, if required. See Use an Action to Assign a Classification. This is optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version 2 Classified and Version 3 Unclassified</td>
<td>CounterACT did not classify the asset using classification version 3. These assets were previously classified using version 2. Manually assign a classification if the number of unclassified devices is minimal. See Use an Action to Assign a Classification. This is optional. If there are an extensive number of unclassified devices, contact your ForeScout representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version 2 Unclassified and Version 3 Classified</td>
<td>CounterACT classified the asset using classification version 3. These assets were previously unclassified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Rule Result</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versions Identically Classified</td>
<td>The results for classification version 2 and 3 are identical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both Versions are Unclassified</td>
<td>CounterACT did not classify the asset in either version. Manually assign a classification if the number of unclassified devices is minimal. See Use an Action to Assign a Classification. This is optional. If you there are an extensive number of unclassified devices, contact your ForeScout representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version 2 Unclassified – Offline Hosts</td>
<td>CounterACT classified the assets in version 2. In version 3, they are unclassified because the assets are offline.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Close the Sub-Rule dialog boxes and return to the wizard.

5. Select Finish.

**Compare Classification Results**

After running the Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis policy from the Policy Manager, you can compare classification results between versions 1 and 2. Classification version 2 delivers more accurate results. Migration from version 1 to version 2, however, may change some classifications.

To compare results:

1. Select the Console Home tab.
2. From the Views pane, navigate to the Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis policy.
3. Select a sub-rule from the Migration Classification policy in the Views pane. Information about endpoints inspected in the sub-rule appears in the Detections pane.
5. Select the tab with the related sub-rule.
6. Expand the folder with the rule. Details about the comparison appear.
7. Review the details.
8. Use an action to manually classify the device, if required. See Use an Action to Assign a Classification.

**Stop the Migration Classification Policy**

The Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis policy utilizes system resources that are not needed after you have reviewed results and made manual assignments where required. When you have completed these tasks, stop the migration policy.

To stop the policy:

1. Select the Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis policy from the Policy Manager.
2. Select Stop.
Upgrade the Classification Version

You are ready to upgrade the Classification tools used by CounterACT after completing the following:

1. Run the Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis template.
2. Compare results and, where required, use an action to manually classify the device. See Use an Action to Assign a Classification.
3. Stop the Classification Upgrade Impact Analysis policy.

The upgrade affects your Asset Classification policy and any other policy that uses classified assets.

Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details. In the HPS Inspection Engine pane, select Help.

Mobile Classification Template

This section covers:

- About the Mobile Classification Template
- Prerequisites
- Create a Mobile Classification Policy
- How Forescout 8.1 Detects Mobile Devices – Policy Condition
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions
- Manually Assigning a Classification

About the Mobile Classification Template

This template creates a policy that classifies devices in the Mobile asset group into the following mobile device type sub-groups:

- iOS
- Kindle Fire
- Android
- Kindle
- Windows Mobile
- Blackberry
- Symbian
- Palm
- Other

These sub-groups automatically appear under the Mobile devices group in the Filters pane. When you select a sub-group, its members appear in the Detections pane, where you can view information about them.
Prerequisites

It is recommended to use the Mobile Classification policy template in environments running an Asset Classification policy.

- When using Primary Classification policies, the Function property identifies mobile devices, and Mobile Classification policies are not needed. To act on specific types of mobile devices, it is recommended to use the Operating System and Function property conditions in compliance and control policies.

- Run an Asset Classification policy or Primary Classification policy with the Add to Group actions enabled before running this policy template. This is required because the classification policies create device groups, including the Mobile devices group, on which the Mobile Classification template is based.

- Consider which endpoints you want to inspect. The policy does not handle endpoints outside of the Internal Network.

Create a Mobile Classification Policy

This section describes how to use the Mobile Classification template to create a policy.

To create a policy:

1. Select Add from the Policy Manager.
2. Open the Classification folder and select Mobile Classification.
3. Select Next. The Name pane opens.
4. A default policy name appears in the Name field. Accept the default name or create a new name and add a description. See Naming Tips for guidelines about creating effective names.
5. Select Next. The Scope pane opens.
6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.
The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

7. Select **OK**. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select **[ ]** (Advanced).


10. Review/configure the conditions and actions used to classify mobile devices.

11. Select **Finish**. The policy is listed in the Policy Manager.

12. Select the policy and select **Apply**. Forescout 8.1 now detects mobile assets in the specified scope, and adds them to the appropriate group in the Home view, Filters pane.

**How Forescout 8.1 Detects Mobile Devices – Policy Condition**

The conditions and actions used to classify mobile devices are configured on the Sub-Rules pane.
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

Forescout 8.1 classifies mobile devices by using the classification techniques described below. If none of the techniques are successful the device is classified as Unclassified:

- HTTP User Agent: Requires channel configuration for Packet Engine use, and Forescout version 2 classification.
- Passive banners: Requires engine server banner traffic and Forescout Classification version 2.
- Active banners: Requires server banner traffic and Forescout Classification version 2.
- Passive TCP/IP fingerprint: Requires a unique device fingerprint
- Nmap banners: Requires that endpoint to have accessible services with unique banners (not available in Android devices)
- Active TCP/IP fingerprint (Nmap): Requires that the device replies to network traffic requests, and requires a unique Nmap fingerprint
- Open ports: Only available for iPhone, iPad and iPod

To ensure that all mobile devices are identified, you may need to refine the conditions in the Mobile Classification template or the Asset Classification template as follows:

- By default, Forescout 8.1 must detect HTTP traffic (browsing) on the device to classify it. Alternatively, you can add the NIC Vendor condition to device sub-rules, with the names of mobile NIC vendors. The devices are detected based on the vendor name, without the need to wait for browsing.
- Mobile devices are detected when the access point is configured as a bridge. By default, the template does not detect mobile devices when their access point is configured as a gateway or router. You can use the Device is NAT condition to detect mobile devices that use gateway or router access points.
How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions

Policy actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to device detections.
By default, the policy creates Forescout 8.1 sub-groups according to the mobile
device categories. This action is enabled by default.

When Are Endpoints Removed from Groups?
Endpoints are removed from groups if Forescout 8.1 discovers, during policy recheck,
that the device function or type has changed.

Manually Assigning a Classification
You can use the Classify actions to classify network devices manually. You may need
to do this if devices were not properly classified by the Mobile Classification template
or if you would like to reclassify them.

External Device Classification Template
This section covers:

- About the External Device Classification Template
- Prerequisites
- Create an External Device Classification Policy
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions

About the External Device Classification Template
This template creates a policy that detects external devices connected to Windows
endpoints. The policy creates a CounterACT External Devices group that includes a
sub-group for each external device class that you instruct Forescout 8.1 to detect.
The following device classes can be detected:

- Wireless communication devices
- Windows portable devices
- Windows CE USB devices
- Printers
- PCMIA and flash memory devices
- Other devices
- Network adapters
- Modems
- Infrared devices
- Imaging devices
- Disk drives
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

- DVD/CD-ROM drives
- Bluetooth radios

These sub-groups automatically appear under the Groups tree in the Console, Filters pane. When you select a sub-group, associated endpoints appear in the Detections pane, where you can view information about endpoints that have connected to these devices.

In addition, a policy is created for each group type. You can view these policies in the Policies > External Devices folder in the Views pane.

Prerequisites

- Consider which endpoints you want to inspect. The policy does not handle endpoints outside of the Internal Network.
- Run a policy created by this template before running most other policies:
  - External Device groups are used when working with the other templates. The External Device template was most likely run during initial Forescout 8.1 setup. Check the Filters pane to verify that your endpoints have been classified.
  - Organizing your endpoints into groups makes it easier to create and manage other policies and easier to track policy results.

Create an External Device Classification Policy

This section describes how to use the External Device Classification template to create a policy.

To create a policy:
1. Select Add from the Policy Manager.
2. Open the Classification folder and select External Device Classification.
3. Select **Next**. The Scope pane opens.
4. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

![IP Address Range dialog box]

The following options are available:

− **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
− **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
− **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

5. Select **OK**. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

6. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select ![Advanced](Advanced).

7. Select **Next**. The External Device Classification pane opens. This pane lets you select the types of external devices for which you want to create policies.

![Filters pane]

- Corporate Hosts
- External Devices
  - Hosts with connected Bluetooth/Bluetooth
  - Hosts with connected Disk Drives
  - Hosts with connected DVD/CD-ROM drives
  - Hosts with connected Imaging devices
  - Hosts with connected Infrared devices
  - Hosts with connected Modems
  - Hosts with connected Network adapters
  - Hosts with connected Other devices
  - Hosts with connected PCMCIA and Flash memory devices
  - Hosts with connected Printers
  - Hosts with connected Windows CE USB Devices
  - Hosts with connected Windows portable devices
  - Hosts with connected Wireless Communication Devices
8. Select Next and then select Finish.

**How Forescout 8.1 Handles Discovered Devices – Policy Actions**

Policy actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to device detections. By default, devices that are discovered are added to a sub-group named by device types. This action is enabled by default.

**When Are Endpoints Removed from Groups?**

Endpoints are removed from groups if Forescout 8.1 discovers, during policy recheck, that the device function or type has changed. See [Update a Recheck Policy for Unmatched and Matched Endpoints](#).

---

**Virtual Machine Classification Template**

This section covers:

- About the Virtual Machine Template
- Create a Virtual Machine Policy
- How Forescout 8.1 Detects Virtual Machines – Policy Condition
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Virtual Machines – Policy Actions

**About the Virtual Machine Template**

This template creates a policy that detects virtual machines (VMs) in your network. The policy organizes virtual machines into VMware Guests, VMware Hosts, Microsoft Virtual Clients, Microsoft Virtual Servers and Others groups. These groups are displayed in the Console, Filters pane.
Create a Virtual Machine Policy

This section describes how to use the Virtual Machine template to create a policy.

**To create a policy:**

1. Select **Add** from the Policy Manager.
2. Open the Classification folder and select **Virtual Machine Classification**.
3. Select **Next**. The Name pane opens.
4. Edit the folder name that is used for saving policies for virtual machines that you select, and add a description. See **Naming Tips** for guidelines about creating effective names.
5. Select **Next**. The Scope pane opens.
6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select OK or Cancel to close this dialog box, and select Segments from the Scope pane.

- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

7. Select OK. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select ![Advanced](Advanced).


10. Review the sub-rule conditions and actions, and then select Finish.

### How Forescout 8.1 Detects Virtual Machines – Policy Condition

VM activity is detected by Forescout 8.1 in a number of ways:

- If a VMware guest or host machine is found. VMware guests are detected if the value of device interfaces starts with VMware Accelerated and if the NIC vendor uses VM in their name. VMware host machines are detected if the device interfaces are identified as a VMware Virtual Ethernet adapter for vmnet.

- If a Microsoft virtual client or server is found. Virtual clients are detected if the NIC vendor is Microsoft Corp. Virtual servers are found if the service running is displayed in the list of Microsoft’s virtual services.

To view and edit conditions:

1. Select a sub-rule in the Sub-Rules pane.

2. Select **Edit** to view the condition and default actions.
3. Select **OK**. The Sub-Rules pane reopens.

4. Select **Finish**.

### How Forescout 8.1 Handles Virtual Machines – Policy Actions

Policy **actions** instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints on which virtual machines have been detected. One action is available by default:

- Detected virtual machines are added to the appropriate Virtual Machine group. This action is enabled by default. Clear the checkbox to disable it.

**To view this action:**

1. Select it from the Sub-Rules pane.
2. Select **Edit**. The action definition is displayed.
3. Select the checkbox to enable it and then select **OK**. The Main Rule pane opens.
4. Select **Finish**.
Passive Learning Mode Template

This section covers:

- About the Passive Learning Mode Template
- Create a Passive Learning Mode Policy
- Passive Learning Sub-Rules

About the Passive Learning Mode Template

Passive Learning mode restricts Forescout 8.1 from probing endpoints in order to learn information about them. Use this mode in environments that may contain sensitive endpoints controlling real-time operational processes where active probing may harm or cause shutdowns in the system. This kind of probing is referred to as active probing.

If you know which devices on your network may be adversely impacted by active probing, assign these endpoints to the Properties - Passive Learning group to limit Forescout 8.1 active inspection of them. Forescout 8.1 never contacts endpoints in this group to resolve properties, even for policy evaluation. See Restricting Endpoint Inspection for details.

Deploying a policy based on this template significantly changes Forescout 8.1 behavior. When you create and activate a policy based on this template:

- Endpoints are placed by default in the Properties - Passive Learning group.
- Forescout 8.1 uses only passive methods to classify endpoints and resolve host properties. For example, Nmap fingerprinting is not used to classify endpoints.

In addition to deploying a policy based on this template and scoped to network segments that contain sensitive devices, you can create policies which add non-sensitive devices to the Active Probing - OK group as they are detected (or add them to the group manually). This lets you focus Passive Learning on sensitive devices only. The Active Probing - OK group is created and added to the list of Forescout Groups when you create a new policy using the Passive Learning Mode template.

Create a Passive Learning Mode Policy

This section describes how to use the Passive Learning Mode template to create a policy.

To create a policy:

1. Select Add from the Policy Manager, and expand the Classification folder.
2. Select Passive Learning Mode.
3. The **Passive Learning Mode** template opens.
4. Select **Next**. The Name pane opens.
5. Edit the name if required and add a description. See **Naming Tips**.
6. Select **Next**. The Scope pane opens. Use this pane define which endpoints are inspected.
7. Select **Next**. The Sub-Rules pane opens. See **Passive Learning Sub-Rules**.
8. Review the sub-rule conditions and actions, and then select **Finish**.

**Passive Learning Sub-Rules**

This section describes Passive Learning sub-rules.
Passive Learning by Default
This rule ensures that all endpoints that are not specifically added to the Active Probing - OK group by other policies, are added to the Properties - Passive Learning group. The effect of this rule is to make Passive Learning the default behavior in Forescout 8.1.

Active Probing - OK Endpoints
Endpoints that are added to the Active Probing - OK group by other policies match this sub-rule and are therefore removed from the Properties - Passive Learning group.

Corporate/Guest Control Template
This section covers:
- About the Corporate/Guest Control Template
- Deploying a Corporate/Guest Control Policy
- Prerequisites
- About Corporate/Guest Classification
- Create a Corporate/Guest Control Policy
- How Guests Are Handled
- Working with Guest Registration Options
- What If Authentication Values Change?

About the Corporate/Guest Control Template
Use this template to create a policy that:
- Organizes endpoints into Corporate Hosts, Signed-in Guests and Guest Hosts groups
- Allows users at unauthorized endpoints to register as guests
- Enforces network restrictions on users at unauthorized endpoints

Deploying a Corporate/Guest Control Policy
Deploy the policy created by this template as follows:

Stage 1
Use the template to create a policy that classifies your network into Corporate Hosts, Signed-in Guests and Guest Hosts groups, and set up options for handling guests. Options for handling guests are disabled by default. You should set these up when working with the template, but only activate them after completing stages 2 to 4. See About Corporate/Guest Classification.
Stage 2
Review the groups generated by the policy to verify that they accurately reflect your network. These groups appear in the Filters pane>Groups folder in the Console.

Stage 3
Enable the policy action used to register guests. See Activate the Registration Process.

Stage 4
Enable the policy action used to restrict guest access. See Define Network Access Restrictions to Guest Hosts.

Prerequisites
- Consider which endpoints you want to inspect, specifically segments in which guests may connect to the network. The template does not handle endpoints outside of the Internal Network.
- The Corporate/Guest Control policy does not apply to printers and network devices, which are detected and classified by a Primary Classification policy. Verify that you have run and fine-tuned a Primary Classification policy.
- Verify that the Primary Classification policy is applied to the network segment or IP address range on which you want to apply the Corporate/Guest Control policy.

About Corporate/Guest Classification
After a policy based on this template is run, endpoints are automatically classified into Corporate Hosts, Signed-in Guests, and Guest Hosts groups. The groups appear in the Filters pane in the Console, under the Groups node.

Guest Groups
When you select a group, associated endpoints appear in the Console, Detections pane.
Criteria for Corporate Hosts
If at least one of the following criteria is met, the endpoint is added to the Corporate Hosts group. Hosts that do not meet any of these criteria are added to the Signed-in Guests group or the Guest Hosts group.

The Endpoint Recently Authenticated to an Approved Authentication Server
This criterion instructs Forescout 8.1 to verify that the endpoint authenticated with an approved authentication server within the last four weeks.

Authentication servers should have been defined during the initial setup. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select NAC > Authentication. The authentication servers defined during the initial setup appear.

For information about working with the policy when these parameters change, see What If Authentication Values Change?

The Endpoint Is Currently Signed In as a Domain User
This criterion instructs Forescout 8.1 to verify that the endpoint is signed in as a domain user.

Signed-In Guests
Hosts not categorized as Corporate Hosts are evaluated to see if they are Signed-in Guests.

This sub-rule instructs Forescout 8.1 to evaluate if the endpoint meets one of the following criteria:

- the user is currently signed-in to your network as a Signed-in Guest
- the user successfully logged in as a Signed-in Guest via the HTTP Login action within the last 12 hours
- the user is approved based on their Guest Registration status

A Signed-in Guest is a user who was not authorized to enter the network as a corporate user but later received a valid user name and password. These credentials were successfully used in a Login page when the Signed-in Guest attempted to access the Internet.

Criteria for Guest Hosts
Hosts that do not meet the criteria as Signed-in Guests are categorized as Guest Hosts.

Create a Corporate/Guest Control Policy
This section describes how to use the Corporate/Guest Control template to create a policy.

To create a policy:
1. Select Add from the Policy Manager.
2. Select Corporate/Guest Control.
3. Select Next. The Name pane opens.
4. Edit the name if required and add a description. See Naming Tips.

5. Select Next. The Scope pane opens.

6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

![IP Address Range dialog box]

The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select OK or Cancel to close this dialog box, and select Segments from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

7. Select OK. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select ![Advanced](Advanced).

9. Select OK and then select Next.

10. On the Guests pane, set the policy for handling guests. See Handling Guests – Guests Pane, for details.

11. Select Next.

The template is designed so that the Add to Group actions are the only actions enabled. This enables you to run the policy once to get a sense of how your endpoints are classified, fine-tune the policy, and then activate the corporate login and guest registration process after you confirm that the groups are correct.

12. Select Finish to save the policy.

### How Guests Are Handled

Endpoints that do not meet the criteria for Corporate Hosts or Signed-in Guests are classified as Guest Hosts, and users at these endpoints are called guests. These may include, for example, visiting professionals, contractors or university students, or corporate members using personal devices that are not currently known to Forescout 8.1.
Use the options here to define how you want to handle guests. These options are disabled by default. The template is set up this way so that you can first review endpoint classification, perform fine-tuning, and then enable sub-rule actions to easily activate a registration process that meets your corporate needs.

Select **Show a Login page link where guests can register for full network access as Signed-in Guests** to require unauthorized users not yet registered as guests to request network access using the Guest Registration form in a web browser. If the checkbox is cleared, guest registration must be initiated by a sponsor in the Guest Management Portal or by a Forescout 8.1 operator in the Guest Registration Pane. See Pre-Registration and Guest Registration Management.

Select **Guests must be approved by the sponsor...** to instruct Forescout 8.1 to share the registration information submitted by the guest with designated corporate contacts, called sponsors, who can be designated by the guest. A sponsor must approve the guest before the guest is granted network access.

- Sponsor email addresses must be included in the Guest Registration, Sponsors tab. For more information about sponsors, see Define Sponsors.

![Guest Registration Options](image)

**Corporate/Guest Control, Guests**

The following are examples of ways to handle unauthorized users:

- **Require guests to submit their contact information before being automatically approved**

  Allow users to enter identity information on a Guest Registration form in a web browser and then receive login credentials. To use this option, select Network access requests are automatically approved, and clear Allow guests to skip login and have limited access only. See Working with Guest Registration Options for details.

- **Require guests to be approved by a sponsor**
Users designated as sponsors can approve guests in the Guest Management Portal, and Forescout 8.1 sends network access credentials to these guests. To use this option, select **Guests must be approved by the sponsor...**, and clear **Allow guests to skip login and have limited access only**. Refer to the Guest Management Portal for Sponsors How-to Guide for information about adding guests. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access this guide.

- **Allow network access to pre-approved guests only**
  - Sponsors can add pre-approved guests to the Guest Management Portal. Forescout 8.1 generates and sends login credentials to these guests.
  - Operators can define identity information and login credentials for pre-approved guests at the Console. It is the responsibility of your organization to forward the credentials to the guests.

  No other guests are authorized to log in to your network. To use this option, clear **Show a Login page link where guests can register for full network access as Signed-in Guests**, and clear **Allow guests to skip login and have limited access only**. See Add Guests Using the Console for information about manually adding guests.

- **Always allow guests limited access only**

  There are no login requirements for limited access, and all unauthenticated users enter the network with limited access only. Unauthorized guests cannot request full network access. To use this option, clear **Show a Login page link where guests can register for full network access as Signed-in Guests**, and select **Allow guests to skip login and have limited access only**.

- **Let users enter the network with limited access or request full access**

  Allow unauthorized users to either register to receive login credentials, or skip login and enter the network with limited network access. To use this option, select **Show a Login page link where guests can register for full network access as Signed-in Guests** and select **Allow guests to skip login and have limited access only**. See Define Network Access Restrictions to Guest Hosts.

### Working with Guest Registration Options

This section provides information about the guest registration options and about activating the guest registration process. The process should be activated after you have run the policy template and approved the groups generated by the Corporate/Guest Control policy.

When guest registration is enabled, unauthorized users are prompted to either sign in or complete a registration form with identity information. This provides you with registration information for each guest, such as contact details and the name of the individual who invited the guest to the network. Users are presented with a Login page where they can choose how to proceed. The page appears when the user attempts to access the corporate network and remains until login succeeds, is skipped or if the endpoint is released via the Console or the Assets Portal.
Automatically approve guest registrations

For guests to be automatically approved after completing the Guest Registration form, select **Network access requests are automatically approved** in the Guests pane of the Policy Wizard. You may want to do this if you anticipate many guests and do not have the resources to accept or reject each one, but do want to keep track of who registered. Guests fill out a registration form with identity information, including an email address. Identity information is stored on a guest server (the Appliance) and can be viewed by a sponsor in the **Guest Management Portal** or by a Forescout 8.1 operator in the **Guest Registration Pane**. See **Pre-Registration and Guest Registration Management**. Guests log in using their email address as their user name, together with a password that they defined during registration.

Require email approval by an authorized corporate sponsor

For guests to be approved by authorized individuals, called sponsors, in your organization, select **Guests must be approved by the sponsor...** field. In addition to the sponsor named by each guest, you can define additional pre-defined sponsors for guests by typing the email addresses of these sponsors in the field. Email addresses must be comma-separated. There is no limit to the number of sponsors that you can list, and only one must grant approval. After approval, guests are sent a password that is automatically generated by Forescout 8.1. When guests log in to the network, their credentials are checked against the approved credentials. Identity information is stored on a guest server (the Appliance) and can be viewed by a sponsor in the **Guest Management Portal** or by a Forescout 8.1 operator in the **Guest Registration Pane**. See **Pre-Registration and Guest Registration Management**.

Activate the Registration Process

By default, the HTTP Login policy action is disabled. The action can be used to activate the Guest Registration form and other web pages or emails used for the guest registration process. If you enable guest registration from the policy template, you still must activate the registration process from the policy sub-rule.
The template is designed this way so that you can run the policy once to get a sense of how your endpoints are classified, fine-tune the policy, and then activate the corporate login and guest registration process.

**To activate this process:**

1. Right-click the **Guest Hosts** sub-rule for this policy from the Policy Manager.
2. Select **Quick Edit**.
3. Select **Actions** and enable the HTTP Login action.
4. Select **OK** and then **Apply**.

**Define Network Access Restrictions to Guest Hosts**

After you have run the policy, classified your endpoints and registered them, you can assign access restrictions to unauthorized endpoints. Two options are available to restrict guest access from this template. These options are disabled by default.

- **Assign to VLAN action:** Move guest hosts to a predefined VLAN from which network access can be restricted. A Guest VLAN must be included in the IP address range defined for this policy. The VLAN must be defined on all switches on which guest hosts can be found.
- **Virtual Firewall action:** Block guests from your network.

**What If Authentication Values Change?**

If authentication values are changed after running the template, the policy values must be updated manually. Specifically, parameters defined in the template are not linked to authentication settings. You can update policy credentials via a property list – an editable list of these credentials, which is automatically generated with the template.

**External Disk Drive Compliance Template**

This section covers:

- [About the External Disk Drive Compliance Template](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Create an External Disk Drive Compliance Policy](#)
- [Detect Authorized External Disk Drives](#)
- [Detect External Disk Drives – Policy Sub-Rules](#)
- [How Forescout 8.1 Handles Noncompliant External Disk Drives – Policy Actions](#)
**About the External Disk Drive Compliance Template**

This template lets you analyze your network’s compliance level for external disk drives connected to Windows endpoints. The policy categorizes endpoints with connected drives into compliant and noncompliant Forescout groups that can be viewed in the Home view, Compliance folder.

Compliant external disk drives should be authorized disk drives, i.e., drives that you allow on your network. Disk drives are identified by their ID.

In addition, policy actions can be used to guide endpoint users to compliance, to automatically disable external disk drives that are not compliant, or shut down endpoints with unauthorized disk drives.

**Prerequisites**

- Consider which endpoints you want to inspect. Forescout 8.1 does not handle endpoints outside the Internal Network.
- Verify that you have run and fine-tuned policies created from a Primary Classification template and a Corporate/Guest Control template. The External Disk Drive Compliance template applies only to corporate, Windows endpoints. These groups are automatically included in the scope.
- Verify that the HPS Inspection Engine is configured with credentials that allow it to remotely inspect corporate Windows endpoints. This may require using the Windows Group Policy to allow access from all CounterACT Appliances to port 445/TCP on domain endpoint devices.

**Create an External Disk Drive Compliance Policy**

This section describes how to use the External Disk Drive Compliance template to create a policy.

**To create a policy:**

1. Select the Policy tab. The Policy Manager opens.
2. Select **Add**.
3. Select the Compliance folder.
4. Select the **External Disk Drive Compliance** template.
5. Select **Next**. The Name pane opens.
6. Edit the name, and if required add a description. See Naming Tips for guidelines about creating effective names.

7. Select Next. The Scope pane opens. Use this pane to determine which endpoints are inspected by the policy.

8. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select OK or Cancel to close this dialog box, and select Segments from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

9. Select OK. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

10. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select (Advanced).
11. Select Next. The External Disk Drive pane opens. This pane lets you define which external disk drives are acceptable. See Detect Authorized External Disk Drives for details.

Detect Authorized External Disk Drives

You instruct Forescout 8.1 which external disk drives are authorized by applying a user-defined whitelist of authorized external disk drives to the policy. Endpoints using these drives are placed in the Hosts with compliant Disk Drives group.

Endpoints not using these drives are placed in the Hosts with noncompliant Disk Drives group.

The list is based on external device disk IDs group.

Lists are created from the Asset Inventory or by using the List option. See Working with Asset Inventory Detections and Defining and Managing Lists for details.

If no list exists, the wizard lets you create one here. The device ID name entered must exactly match the actual name of the device ID, including character spacing, and is case-sensitive.

You can create an empty list and add compliant ID numbers later.

To select or create a whitelist:

1. If you are using an existing whitelist, select it from the drop-down menu.

2. To create a new List, select Add.
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

3. The property displayed is **External Devices > ID**. This instructs Forescout 8.1 to look for external disk drives based in their ID number. Enter a list name, for example, Authorized External Disk Drives.

4. Select **Add**. The Add Value dialog box opens.

5. Enter the authorized external disk drive ID. It is important to type the exact device ID. This ID is what Forescout 8.1 detects when an external device is connected to an endpoint.

6. Select **OK**. The added value is displayed on the New List dialog box.


8. Review the sub-rule conditions and actions, and then select **Finish**.

**Detect External Disk Drives – Policy Sub-Rules**

The policy finds endpoints that have external disk drives connected whether compliant or noncompliant. You can view the sub-rules used by the policy.
To view sub-rules:
1. Select a sub-rule and then select **Edit**.
2. View the sub-rule details and select **OK**.

How Forescout 8.1 Handles Noncompliant External Disk Drives – Policy Actions

Policy actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints that have noncompliant disk drives connected.

- **Add to Group**: Noncompliant disk drives are added to a group called **Hosts with noncompliant Disk Drives**, a subgroup of the **Hosts with connected Disk Drives** group under **External Devices**. This action is enabled by default.
- **HTTP Notification**: Notify users that a noncompliant disk drive has been detected on their endpoints through their browsers, and to prompt them to disconnect such a drive. This action is disabled by default.
- **Set Registry Key on Windows**: Set the registry key to disable endpoints with noncompliant disk drives. This is disabled by default.
- **Disable External Device**: Automatically disable noncompliant disk drives. This is disabled by default.

To view these actions:
1. Select Sub-Rule 3, **Hosts with Noncompliant Disk Drives**, from the Sub-Rules dialog box.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. Review the actions in the **Actions** section.
4. Select **OK**. The Sub-Rules pane opens.
5. Select **Finish**.
When an external device is detected by Forescout 8.1, it may not automatically appear in your whitelist. If this happens it is recommended to add it to the list. For more information about how to add newly detected external devices to the list, see Defining and Managing Lists and Working with Asset Inventory Detections.

**Overall Endpoint Compliance Template**

This section covers:

- About the Overall Endpoint Compliance Template
- Prerequisites
- Create an Overall Endpoint Compliance Policy
- Required and Restricted Applications Panes
- Detect Compliance Status – Policy Condition
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Noncompliant Devices – Policy Actions
- Compliance Notification at Endpoint

**About the Overall Endpoint Compliance Template**

This template lets you analyze the compliance level at your network for commonly used Windows compliance policies, for example, users who have installed peer-to-peer applications or endpoints having out-of-date antivirus applications. The policy categorizes noncompliant endpoints into noncompliant Forescout groups that can be viewed in the Home view > Compliance folder. In addition, policy actions can be used to let you guide endpoint users to compliance without disrupting their productivity.

*Macintosh Update Compliance is not handled by the Overall Endpoint Compliance template since it is not a Windows policy. Use the Macintosh Update Compliance template to create an individual policy.*

**Prerequisites**

- Consider which endpoints you want to inspect. Forescout 8.1 does not handle endpoints outside the Internal Network.
- Verify that you have run and fine-tuned policies created from a Primary Classification template and a Corporate/Guest Control template. The Overall Endpoint Compliance template applies only to corporate, Windows endpoints. These groups are automatically included in the scope. To view them, run the policy and then use the edit tools to view the policy Main Rule.
- Verify that the HPS Inspection Engine is configured with credentials that allow it to remotely inspect corporate Windows endpoints. This may require using Windows Group Policy to allow access from all CounterACT Appliances to port 445/TCP on domain endpoint devices.
Create an Overall Endpoint Compliance Policy

This section describes how to use the Overall Endpoint Compliance template to create a policy.

**To create a policy:**

1. Select **Add** from the Policy Manager.
2. Select the Compliance folder.
3. Select the **Overall Endpoint Compliance** template.
4. Select **Next**. The Scope pane opens. Use the pane to define which endpoints are inspected.
5. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

![IP Address Range Dialog Box]

The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

6. Select **OK**. The added range appears in the Scope pane.
7. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select **(Advanced)**.
8. Select **Next**. The Required Applications pane opens. See **Required and Restricted Applications Panes**, for details.

**Required and Restricted Applications Panes**

The Required/Restricted Applications panes display the compliance tests that you can perform.

**Required Applications**

Define which applications must be installed at endpoints.
• Verify that a personal firewall is running.
• Verify that at least one antivirus application is running and has been updated within the past two weeks. Select the antivirus vendors that you want the policy to find.
• Verify that the endpoint is patched with the most current Microsoft published vulnerability updates.

**Restricted Applications**

Define which applications should not be allowed at endpoints.

• Verify that no peer-to-peer application is installed on the endpoint.
• Verify that no instant messaging application is installed on the endpoint.
Define Compliance Tests

Define the compliance tests to be performed on the endpoints.

**To define the tests:**

1. Select the tests that you want to perform.
2. Select **Next**. The Summary pane lists the policies set using the Overall Endpoint Compliance template.

Detect Compliance Status – Policy Condition

Inspection Sequence

Endpoints are inspected in the order shown in the dialog box. Select the compliance tests that you want to perform. When the policy verifies that an endpoint meets a compliance requirement, that endpoint is moved to the next compliance test. For example, if Forescout 8.1 discovers that the antivirus installed is compliant, the endpoint is next checked for personal firewall compliance. If compliance is not met, inspection is halted and the endpoint is placed in a noncompliant group.

**To change the order:**

1. Select a compliance test and then select **Edit**. The Compliance dialog box opens for the selected test.
2. Use the **Up** and **Down** buttons to change the endpoint inspection order.

**Before Inspection**

Before inspecting endpoints defined on the Scope pane, the policy verifies that Forescout 8.1 can perform deep inspection. This means one of the following:

- Forescout 8.1 can access the endpoint via TCP ports 139/445 and is able to inspect it using domain credentials. When this happens, the endpoint is **manageable (domain)**. Unmanageable endpoints are usually foreign to the domain.

- The endpoint is accessible to Forescout 8.1 via **SecureConnector**. SecureConnector is a lightweight, small-footprint executable that runs at the endpoint so that Forescout 8.1 can inspect it. SecureConnector opens an encrypted tunnel to Forescout 8.1, allowing remote endpoint inspection; similar to how a domain member endpoint would be inspected. Endpoint users at unmanageable endpoints can be prompted via a template action to run SecureConnector and allow deep inspection, i.e., become manageable.

Corporate Windows endpoints that cannot be managed are displayed as **matched for the Not manageable** sub-rule.

**To view this condition:**

1. Select the **Not Manageable** sub-rule from the Sub-Rules pane.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. Select the **NOT Manageable (Domain)** or the **NOT Windows Manageable (SecureConnector)** criterion from the **Condition** section of the Sub-Rules dialog box that opens.
4. Select **Edit**. The condition values appear.
To view or enable the SecureConnector action:

1. Select the **Not Manageable** sub-rule from the Sub-Rules pane.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. From the **Actions** section, select **Start SecureConnector**.
4. Select **Edit**. The action definition is displayed. Review the information about SecureConnector if needed.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Enable** from the **Actions** section to run SecureConnector on unmanageable endpoints.

**Inspection Details**

Sub-rule *conditions* criteria define how Forescout 8.1 detects endpoint compliance status.

- The policy finds endpoints that are not running one of the personal firewalls listed in the page. For example:
  - ZoneAlarm
  - Windows Firewall
  - Symantec Firewall
  - Sygate
  - Sophos Firewall
  - McAfee Personal Firewall
  - Internet Connection Firewall (ICF)

See the **Personal Firewall** property for details.

Additional applications may become recognizable in between version updates. These changes are documented in the *Windows Applications Content Module Release Notes*. Refer to the *Windows Applications Configuration Guide* for more information. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu. Select **Modules**, select **Windows Applications**, and then select **Help**.

- The policy finds endpoints that have NOT installed any of the antivirus applications selected in the Compliance page. See the **Antivirus Installed** property for details.

- The policy finds endpoints that have installed the required antivirus applications, but are NOT running them. See the **Antivirus Running** property for more information about the detection mechanism.

- The policy finds endpoints that are running out-of-date antivirus applications. By default, antivirus applications should be updated every two weeks. If the update is older than this period, the endpoint is considered noncompliant. You can change the update period if required. See the **Antivirus Update Date** property for more information about the detection mechanism.

- The policy finds endpoints that have not updated with the most current Microsoft published vulnerability patches. See **Microsoft Vulnerabilities** for more information about the detection mechanism.
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

- The policy finds endpoints that have installed at least one of the peer-to-peer applications listed on the page. For example:

  Shareaza  Twister  LimeWire  FolderShare
  iMesh  TrustyFiles  Warez  BitComet
  gnutella  Soulseek  Kazaa  BitTorrent
  eMule  Morpheus  Jubber  BearShare
  FrostWire  MP3 Rocket

  Additional applications may become recognizable in between version updates. These changes are documented in the *Windows Applications Content Module Release Notes*. Refer to the *Windows Applications Configuration Guide* for more information about the module. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu. Select **Modules**, select **Windows Applications**, and then select **Help**.

- The policy finds endpoints that have installed at least one of the instant messaging applications listed in the page. For example:

  Yahoo! Messenger  MSN Messenger  AOL Instant Messenger
  Trillian  ICQ  Camfrog
  Skype  Google Talk  PaltalkScene

  Additional applications may become recognizable in between version updates. These changes are documented in the *Windows Applications Content Module Release Notes*. Refer to the *Windows Applications Configuration Guide* for more information about the module. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu. Select **Modules**, select **Windows Applications**, and then select **Help**.

**How Forescout 8.1 Handles Irresolvable Endpoints**

If Forescout 8.1 cannot resolve the status of the endpoint, it is not placed in a relevant compliance group, i.e., **Personal FW Inactive** group. Irresolvable endpoints can be displayed by selecting the policy and selecting **Irresolvable** in the Detections pane. An exception is the Antivirus Update rule, which, if irresolvable, is evaluated by Forescout 8.1 as compliant.

**How Forescout 8.1 Handles Noncompliant Devices – Policy Actions**

Template actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints that are not compliant. This template creates separate policies for each endpoint, which are listed one by one in the Policy pane.
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

Antivirus Applications Not Installed, Running, or Updated

- The endpoint is added to the appropriate group: Antivirus Not Installed, Antivirus Not Running or Antivirus Not Updated. The action is enabled by default.
- Email notification is sent to the Forescout 8.1 operator. The generic messages can be modified from the template Sub-Rule dialog box. The action is disabled by default.
- Email and web notification is sent to noncompliant users, indicating that their computers are not running a corporate antivirus application. Users are asked to contact IT and the Helpdesk for instructions. The generic messages can be modified from the template Sub-Rule dialog box. The action is disabled by default.
- Stopped antivirus applications are automatically restarted. The action is disabled by default.

Personal Firewall Not Active

- The endpoint is added to the Personal FW Inactive group. The action is enabled by default.
- Email notification is sent to the Forescout 8.1 operator. The action is disabled by default.
- Email and web notification are sent to noncompliant users, indicating that their computers are not running the authorized applications. The action is disabled by default.

Peer-to-Peer or Instant Messaging Applications Running

- The endpoint is added to the appropriate group: P2P Installed, P2P Running, IM Installed or IM Running. The action is enabled by default.
• Email notification is sent to the Forescout 8.1 operator. The action is disabled by default.

• Email and web notifications are sent to the noncompliant users, indicating that their computers are not running the authorized applications. Users are asked to contact IT and the Help desk for instructions. The action is disabled by default.

Endpoints with Microsoft Vulnerabilities

• The endpoint is added to the **Windows Not Updated** group. This action is enabled by default.

• Two remediation actions are available. These actions are disabled by default. The two are related and should be enabled simultaneously.
  
  – **Automatic Remediation**: This action uses the standard Microsoft system for vulnerability remediation. It causes Microsoft software to assess the endpoint’s vulnerabilities, decide which patches are required, and download and install the patches. See [Start Windows Updates](#) for details.
  
  – **Self-Remediation**: This action prompts the user to perform remediation. It is scheduled to start one hour after the Automatic Remediation action. Self-remediation occurs only if automatic remediation fails or is taking too long. When using this action, Forescout 8.1 delivers web notification to network users indicating that specific vulnerabilities were detected on their machines. The notification includes a list of links that should be accessed in order to patch vulnerabilities. The endpoint cannot access the web until it is patched. The process for verifying this is automated when the endpoint is rechecked. An option is also available for the user to run the recheck directly from the web page. See [Windows Self Remediation](#) for details.

**To view, customize and enable these actions:**

1. Select an action from the **Sub-Rules** section of the Compliance pane.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. From the **Actions** section, select an action and select **Edit**. The action definition is displayed.

4. Select **OK**. The Compliance pane reopens.

5. From the **Actions** section, select an action and then select **Enable** to run it.

6. Select **OK**. The Main Rule pane reopens.

7. Select **Finish**.

**Compliance Notification at Endpoint**

If there is noncompliance at the endpoint, the **Forescout** icon is displayed in red on the Windows Notification Bar at the bottom of the window. Hold your cursor over the icon to display the endpoint details.

**Individual Compliance Templates**

You can create individual compliance templates for any of the entries listed in the **Overall Endpoint Compliance** template – including Instant Messaging, Antivirus, Peer-to-Peer and Windows Updates – instead of running the policies together. Refer to the templates located under the Compliance folder for details about each option.

> The policies created using the individual compliance templates inspect only Windows machines. To inspect Macintosh machines, use the **Macintosh Update Compliance template**.
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

Windows Update Compliance Template

- **About the Windows Update Compliance Template**
- **Prerequisites**
- **Create the Windows Update Compliance Policy**
- **Detect Noncompliant Windows Endpoints – Policy Condition**
- **How Forescout 8.1 Handles Windows Hosts – Policy Actions**

About the Windows Update Compliance Template

This policy detects hosts that are not updated with the latest Microsoft-published vulnerability patches, and creates a *Windows Not Updated* group. In addition, optional remediation actions, disabled by default, can be used to:

- Install SecureConnector to manage Windows machines.
- Allow endpoint users to remediate from the desktop.
- Allow automatic remediation.

Prerequisites

- Verify that you have run and fine-tuned policies created from a Primary Classification template and a Corporate/Guest Control template. Detected endpoints must already be categorized into Windows, Macintosh, and Corporate Hosts groups.

- Endpoints must be manageable. The template verifies which endpoints are manageable and which are not. See [Start SecureConnector / Stop SecureConnector](#) for details.

Create the Windows Update Compliance Policy

This section describes how to use the Windows Update Compliance template to create a policy.

**To create a policy:**

1. Select **Add** from the Policy Manager.
2. Select the Compliance folder and then select **Windows Update Compliance**.
3. Select **Next**.
4. Edit the name if required and add a description. See **Naming Tips** for guidelines about creating effective names.
5. Select **Next**. The Scope pane opens. Use the pane to define which endpoints are inspected.
6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.
The following options are available:
- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

7. Select **OK**. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select **(Advanced)**.

9. Select **Next**. The Sub-Rules pane opens.

10. Review the sub-rule conditions and actions, and then select **Finish**.

### Detect Noncompliant Windows Endpoints – Policy Condition

The policy finds endpoints that have not been updated with the most current Windows updates. This requires that the endpoint is managed by Forescout 8.1, either via SecureConnector or remotely. Endpoints waiting for a reboot following the installation of a previous patch updated until after the reboot.

**To view this condition:**

1. Select the **Windows Updates Required** sub-rule on the Sub-Rules pane.
2. Select **Edit**.

3. From the **Condition** section of the Sub-Rules dialog box, select **Microsoft Vulnerabilities** and select **Edit** to view the criteria.

**How Forescout 8.1 Handles Windows Hosts – Policy Actions**

Policy actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints that meet certain conditions. You can add additional policy actions as required.

The policy template provides four sub-rules.

- **Not Manageable**: The provided action installs the SecureConnector tool, making the Windows machine manageable by Forescout 8.1. This action is disabled by default.

- **Waiting for Reboot**: The updates have been successfully downloaded and installed on the Windows machine. Forescout 8.1 is waiting for the endpoint to reboot to complete the update process. There are no actions provided by default.

- **Windows Updates Required**: The sub-rule provides three actions.
  - The endpoint is added to the **Windows Not Updated** group for processing. This action is enabled by default.
  - You can Start Windows Updates to update the endpoints. Using this action, you have the option of informing the user that a reboot is required, or forcing the endpoint to reboot automatically. This action is disabled by default.
  - You can run Windows Self Remediation. This action sends the user links to the updates and patches that must be downloaded and installed to correct the discovered vulnerabilities. This action is disabled by default.

- **Compliant**: The endpoint does not require any security or vulnerability update. It is not added to any additional group and no actions are performed.
To view or enable these actions:
1. Select a rule from the Sub-Rules pane.
2. Select Edit.
3. In the Actions section, select the action entry, and select Edit. The action definition is displayed.
4. Select OK. The Sub-Rules pane opens.
5. In the Actions section, select the action and select Enable to run it.
6. Select OK.

Macintosh Update Compliance Template
This section covers the following:
- About the Macintosh Update Compliance Template
- Prerequisites
- Create a Macintosh Update Compliance Policy
- Detect Noncompliant Macintosh Endpoints – Policy Condition
- How Forescout 8.1 Handles Macintosh Hosts – Policy Actions

About the Macintosh Update Compliance Template
This template lets you verify that endpoints have installed the most current Macintosh software updates.

Prerequisites
- Verify that you have run and fine-tuned policies created from a Primary Classification template and a Corporate/Guest Control template. Detected endpoints must be categorized into Windows, Macintosh, and Corporate Hosts groups.
- Endpoints must be manageable. The template verifies which endpoints are manageable and which are not. See Start SecureConnector / Stop SecureConnector for details.

Create a Macintosh Update Compliance Policy
This section describes how to use the Macintosh Update Compliance template to create a policy.

To create a policy:
1. Select Add from the Policy Manager.
2. Select the Compliance folder and then select Macintosh Update Compliance.
3. Select Next.
4. Edit the name if required and add a description. See Naming Tips for guidelines about creating effective names.

5. Select Next. The Scope pane opens. Use the pane to define which endpoints are inspected.

6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

   The following options are available:
   - **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
   - **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select OK or Cancel to close this dialog box, and select Segments from the Scope pane.
   - **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

7. Select OK. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select (Advanced).


10. Review the sub-rule conditions and actions, and then select Finish.

**Detect Noncompliant Macintosh Endpoints – Policy Condition**

The policy finds endpoints that have not updated with the most current Macintosh updates. This requires that the endpoint be managed by Forescout 8.1, either via SecureConnector or remotely.

**To view this condition:**

1. Select rule 2, Vulnerable Mac Hosts, from the Sub-Rules pane.
2. Select **Edit**.

3. From the **Condition** section of the Sub-Rules dialog box, select **Macintosh Software Updates Missing** and select **Edit** to view the criteria.

### How Forescout 8.1 Handles Macintosh Hosts – Policy Actions

Policy **actions** instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints that are not updated.

- **Send Email**: You can deliver email notification to network users indicating that specific security and other updates are missing on their machines. This action is disabled by default.

- **Start Macintosh Update**: You can automatically send an update link to the endpoint. This action is disabled by default.

**To view or enable these actions:**

2. Select **Edit**.
3. In the **Actions** section, select the **Start Macintosh Updates** entry and select **Edit**. The action definition is displayed.
4. Select **OK**. The Sub-Rules pane opens.
5. In the **Actions** section, select the action and select **Enable** to run it.
6. Select **OK**.

### Threats Templates

This section describes general guidelines for using all of the Threats templates. This section covers:
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

- About the Threats Templates
- Prerequisites
- Create a Threats Policy
- Malicious Hosts Template
- ARP Spoofing Template
- Impersonation Template
- Dual Homed Template

**About the Threats Templates**

Threats templates let you detect an extensive range of malicious threats that can compromise the security of your network. You can decide which endpoints to inspect, and apply policy conditions and actions through the templates to neutralize malicious threats.

The following Threats templates are available:

- Malicious Hosts Template
- ARP Spoofing Template
- Impersonation Template
- Dual Homed Template

**Prerequisites**

There are no prerequisites for any of the Threats templates.

**Create a Threats Policy**

This section describes how to use the various threat templates to create a policy.

**To create a policy:**

1. Select **Add** from the Policy Manager.
2. Select the Threats folder.
3. Select the appropriate template for the policy that you want to create.
4. Edit the name, if required, and add a description. See **Naming Tips** for guidelines about creating effective names.
5. Select **Next**. The Scope pane opens.
6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.
The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

7. Select **OK**. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select **Advanced**.

9. Select **Next**. Either the Main Rule or Sub-Rules pane opens. These panes let you review policy conditions and actions.

## Malicious Hosts Template

This section covers:

- [About the Malicious Hosts Template](#)
- [How Malicious Hosts Are Detected – Policy Condition](#)
- [How Malicious Hosts Are Handled – Policy Actions](#)

### About the Malicious Hosts Template

Use this template to create a policy that tracks malicious network activity, for example, worm infections or malware propagation attempts. It can be used to enhance automatic Threat Protection Policy actions, which are limited to blocking traffic.

### How Malicious Hosts Are Detected – Policy Condition

Malicious endpoint activity is detected using the Forescout platform’s Active Response technology, an innovative, patented technology created by Forescout Technologies that effectively mitigates human attackers, worms and other self-propagating malware. Active Response technology accurately pinpoints and halts threats at the earliest stages of the infection process. See [Chapter 13: Threat Protection](#) for details.
Chapter 5: Policy Templates

The policy conditions instruct Forescout 8.1 to detect a wide range of scan, bite and email anomaly events. If an endpoint has triggered one of these events, Forescout 8.1 evaluates it as malicious.

**What are these events?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scan event</td>
<td>A Threat Protection event indicating that an endpoint performed a configurable number of network probes within a certain time period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bite event</td>
<td>An event in which a malicious endpoint tries to gain access to the protected network using Forescout 8.1 bait.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email anomaly event</td>
<td>Unusual email activity, for example, endpoints that send more than a certain number of emails within a specified time period. The default is 10 mails within one minute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about these events, see About Threat Protection and Basic Terminology.

**To view conditions:**

1. Select the **Malicious Event** entry from the **Condition** section on the Main Rule pane.

2. Select **Edit** to review details about the condition.
3. Select **OK**. The Main Rule pane reopens.

4. Select **Finish**.

**How Malicious Hosts Are Handled – Policy Actions**

Template actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints that are malicious.

- **Send Email**: A predefined action lets you send email to the Forescout 8.1 administrator indicating that a malicious event was detected at an endpoint. The email provides information about the endpoint, for example, the IP address, the logged in user, and User Directory information. You must provide an email address recipient. This action is disabled by default.

- **HTTP Notification**: A predefined action lets you deliver browser notification to the end user, indicating that malicious activity has been detected. This action is disabled by default.

**To view or enable actions:**

1. Select an entry from the **Actions** section of the Main Rule pane.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. Review the action details.
4. Select **OK**. The Main Rule pane reopens.
5. Select an action and then select the associated checkbox to enable it.
6. Select **Finish**.

**ARP Spoofing Template**

This section covers:

- **About the ARP Spoofing Template**
- **How ARP Spoofing Is Detected – Policy Condition**
• **How ARP Spoofing Is Handled – Policy Actions**

Refer to the *Port Mirroring in Forescout Technical Note* for more information about configuring your environment to detect ARP spoofing. See *Additional Forescout Documentation* for information on how to access this guide.

**About the ARP Spoofing Template**

Use this template to create a policy that tracks and remediates attempts to maliciously direct network traffic. ARP spoofing is a technique used to attack an Ethernet network that may allow an attacker to sniff data frames on a Local Area Network (LAN), modify the traffic, or completely halt it. The aim is to associate the attacker’s MAC address with the IP address of another node so that any traffic meant for that IP address is mistakenly sent to the attacker instead. The attacker could then choose to forward the traffic to the actual default gateway (passive sniffing) or modify the data before forwarding it.

**How ARP Spoofing Is Detected – Policy Condition**

ARP spoofing activity is detected by tracking whether the number of different MAC addresses for a specific IP address exceeds the number specified in the criterion. Generally, this number is one. The template conditions instruct Forescout 8.1 to indicate if the number of MAC addresses reported for an IP address over a specific time period exceeds a certain limit. You can define the number of MAC addresses and the time period.

**To view conditions:**

1. Select the **ARP Spoofing** entry from the **Condition** section of the Main Rule pane.

2. Select **Edit** to view the criteria.
3. Select **OK**. The Main Rule pane reopens.

4. Select **Finish**.

**How ARP Spoofing Is Handled – Policy Actions**

Template actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints on which ARP Spoofing activities have been detected.

- **Send Email**: A predefined action lets you send email to the Forescout 8.1 administrator indicating that an ARP Spoofing activity was detected at an endpoint. The email provides information about the endpoint, for example, the IP address, the logged in user, and User Directory information. You must provide an email address recipient. This action is disabled by default.

**To view or enable this action:**

1. Select it from the **Actions** section of the Main Rule pane.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. Review action details.
4. Select **OK**. The Main Rule pane reopens.
5. Select the checkbox to enable it and then select **Finish**.

**Impersonation Template**

This section covers:

- **About the Impersonation Policy Template**
- **How Impersonation Is Detected – Policy Condition**
- **How Impersonation Is Handled – Policy Actions**
About the Impersonation Policy Template

This policy template lets you track impersonation activity on your network. Impersonation is a technique used by an unauthorized individual masquerading as someone who is authorized, for the purpose of gaining access to data on your network.

How Impersonation Is Detected – Policy Condition

Impersonation activity is detected by tracking a change in the Nmap-Network Function of the endpoint.

The policy template conditions instruct Forescout 8.1 to detect a change in the Nmap-Network Function of the endpoint as indication of impersonation attempts.

To view and edit the condition:

1. Select the entry in the Condition section of the Main Rule pane.

2. Select Edit to view the criteria.

3. Select OK. The Main Rule pane reopens.

4. Select Finish.

How Impersonation Is Handled – Policy Actions

Template actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints on which impersonation activities have been detected.

- Send Email: A predefined action lets you send email to the Forescout 8.1 administrator indicating that an impersonation activity was detected at an endpoint. The email provides information about the endpoint, for example, the IP address, the logged in user, and User Directory information. You must provide an email address recipient. This action is disabled by default.
To view or enable this action:
1. Select the action from the Actions section of the Main Rule pane.
2. Select Edit.
3. Review action details.
4. Select OK. The Main Rule pane reopens.
5. Select the checkbox to enable it, and then select Finish.

Dual Homed Template

This section covers:

- About the Dual Homed Template
- How Dual-Homed Threats Are Detected – Policy Condition
- How Threats to Dual-Homed Hosts Are Handled – Policy Actions

About the Dual Homed Template

Use this template to create a policy that tracks threats from dual-homed Windows endpoints – endpoints that are assigned more than one IP address or use network adapters that act as a bridge between trusted and untrusted networks on endpoints.

In such cases, a separate address can be used to connect to different networks. This information may be important because endpoints connected to more than one network can be used as routers to transmit malicious traffic. Endpoints connected to both wireless and land networks can also create back doors for hackers and worms.

The policy template actions let you notify security teams when dual-homed endpoints are detected.

If endpoints are managed by SecureConnector, you can disable network adapters that act as a bridge between trusted and untrusted networks. All connections are disabled, except for the connection used by SecureConnector. Disabled adapters are re-enabled when SecureConnector disconnects from the trusted network. The actions are disabled by default.

How Dual-Homed Threats Are Detected – Policy Condition

Threats from dual-homed endpoints are detected in the following ways:

- SecureConnector Manageable Sub-Rule
- Detect Windows endpoints managed by SecureConnector. These endpoints have at least one network adapter connected to the host, used for the SecureConnector connection to the Appliance.
- Detect one or more additional enabled network adapters.
- Verify that the additional adapter is not already disabled by SecureConnector or used by SecureConnector to connect to the Appliance.

Hosts that meet these criteria are considered dual-homed. You can manage these endpoints by notifying your IT or Security team or disabling the network adapter not used by SecureConnector. See How Threats to Dual-Homed Hosts Are Handled – Policy Actions for details.
Domain Manageable Sub-Rule

Detect Windows endpoints managed remotely, i.e., if Forescout 8.1 has access to the endpoint remote registry and file system, and is not managed by SecureConnector as well.

Detect endpoints with more than one IP address. Endpoints associated with more than one IP address are considered dual-homed.

You can fine-tune the template policy by defining the IP addresses that are to be ignored when calculating using the Number of IP Addresses property. For details see "Tuning" in the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide.

If endpoints meet these criteria they are considered dual-homed. You can manage these endpoints by notifying your IT or Security team. See How Threats to Dual-Homed Hosts Are Handled – Policy Actions for details.

To further control these endpoints, you can disable the network adapter and use the Start SecureConnector action to manage the endpoints with SecureConnector. When this happens, the endpoints are automatically detected by the SecureConnector Manageable Sub-Rule.

To view and edit conditions:

1. Select a Dual Homed entry from the Sub-Rules pane.

2. Select Edit to view the sub-rule and its criteria.

4. If required, repeat the previous steps for another Dual Homed entry.

5. Select **Finish**.

**How Threats to Dual-Homed Hosts Are Handled – Policy Actions**

Template actions instruct Forescout 8.1 how to respond to endpoints on which threats to a dual-homed network have been detected. Dual-homed endpoints can be handled in two ways; depending on how the dual-homed endpoint is managed.

- **Send Email**: A predefined action lets you send email to the Forescout 8.1 administrator indicating that a threat to a dual-homed network was detected at an endpoint. The email provides information about the endpoint, for example, the IP address, the logged in user, and User Directory information. You must provide an email address recipient. This action is disabled by default.

- **Disable Dual Homed**: A predefined action lets you disable network adapters that act as a bridge between trusted and untrusted networks on endpoints managed by SecureConnector. All connections are disabled, except for the connection used by SecureConnector. Disabled adapters are re-enabled when SecureConnector disconnects from the trusted network. This action is disabled by default.

**To view or enable these actions:**

1. Select an action from the **Actions** section of a Sub-Rule pane.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. Review action details.
4. Select **OK**. The Sub-Rule pane reopens.
5. Select the checkbox to enable it and then select **Finish**.
Track Changes Templates

This section describes the guidelines for using all of the templates except the New TCP/IP Port template. This section covers:

- About the Track Changes Templates
- Prerequisites
- Create a Track Changes Policy
- How a Change Is Detected – Policy Condition
- How a Change Is Handled – Policy Actions
- How to Modify a Condition – Advanced Settings

For details about using the New TCP/IP Port template, see About the New TCP/IP Port Template.

About the Track Changes Templates

Track Changes templates help you create policies for monitoring the following changes in your network:

- Application Change
- Hostname Change
- Operating System Change
- Shared Folder Change
- Switch Change
- User Change
- Windows Service Change
- New TCP/IP Port

Under certain circumstances, such changes may be indicative of malicious activity or security breaches. These policies can be used, for example, to alert you if an application version has been altered or a new application has been introduced into your network.

Prerequisites

There are no prerequisites for any of the Track Changes templates.

Create a Track Changes Policy

This section describes how to use the various track changes templates to create a policy.

To create a policy:

1. Select Add from the Policy Manager.
2. Select the Track Changes folder.
3. Select the appropriate template for the policy that you want to create.

4. Edit the name, if required, and add a description. See Naming Tips for guidelines about creating effective names.

5. Select Next. The Scope pane opens.

6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select OK or Cancel to close this dialog box, and select Segments from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

7. Select OK. The added range appears in the Scope pane.

8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select (Advanced).

9. Select Next.

10. Set the detection interval and time period and then select Next. The Main Rule or Sub-Rules pane opens.
11. Review the policy conditions and actions, and select **Finish**.

**How a Change Is Detected – Policy Condition**

The template condition instructs Forescout 8.1 to detect the addition or removal of any element that you are tracking.

**To view and edit conditions:**

1. Select the tracked element in the Main Rule or Sub-Rules pane.

2. Select a sub-rule.

3. Select **Edit** to review the entry. The Sub-Rules Condition dialog box opens.

4. Select an entry in the **Condition** section of the Sub-Rules Condition dialog box.

5. Select **Edit** to review the entry. The Condition dialog box opens.
6. Select OK.

**How a Change Is Handled – Policy Actions**
There are no default actions for any of the Track Changes templates.

**How to Modify a Condition – Advanced Settings**
The bottom section in the Sub-Rules dialog box lets you view and edit the conditions you select, and apply any exceptions.

**To view or modify a condition:**
1. Select **Edit** in the **Advanced** section of the Sub-Rules pane.
2. Select **OK**.

**New TCP/IP Port Template**
- About the New TCP/IP Port Template
- Prerequisites
- Create a New TCP/IP Port Policy
- How Endpoints with New TCP/IP Ports Are Handled – Policy Actions
About the New TCP/IP Port Template

The New TCP/IP Port template lets you track the addition of new TCP/IP ports to your network. The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) is one of the core protocols of the Internet Protocol suite, and is often referred to as TCP/IP. A new TCP/IP port can be particularly threatening to the security of your network because TCP provides a communication service between an application program and the Internet Protocol (IP) when an application sends a large chunk of data across the Internet using IP.

Prerequisites

There are no prerequisites for using this template.

Create a New TCP/IP Port Policy

This section describes how to use the New TCP/IP Port template to create a policy.

To create a policy:

1. Select Add from the Policy Manager.
2. Select the Track Changes folder and then select New TCP/IP Port.
3. Select Next.
4. Edit the name if required and add a description. See Naming Tips for guidelines about creating effective names.
5. Select Next. The Scope pane opens.
6. Use the IP Address Range dialog box to define which endpoints are inspected.

The following options are available:

- **All IPs**: Include all IP addresses in the Internal Network.
- **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network. To specify multiple segments, select **OK** or **Cancel** to close this dialog box, and select **Segments** from the Scope pane.
- **Unknown IP addresses**: Apply the policy to endpoints whose IP addresses are not known. Endpoint detection is based on the endpoint MAC address.

7. Select **OK**. The added range appears in the Scope pane.
8. To filter the specified ranges or add exceptions, select (Advanced).


![Policy Wizard]

10. Set the time period and interval for new TCP/IP port detection, and select Next. The Main Rule pane opens.

11. Set conditions for new TCP/IP port detection.

12. Review the policy conditions and actions, and select Finish.

**Detect Endpoints with New TCP/IP Ports – Policy Condition**

Forescout 8.1 detects endpoints with new TCP/IP ports when their status changes between opened and closed. This section describes how to view the condition for detecting new TCP/IP ports.
To view the condition:

1. Select the criterion from the **Condition** section of the Main Rule pane.

2. Select **Edit**.

3. After reviewing the criteria and timeframe for new TCP/IP port detection, select **OK**.

**How Endpoints with New TCP/IP Ports Are Handled – Policy Actions**

There are no default actions for the New TCP/IP Port template.
Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

- About Policy Conditions
- Working with Properties
- Detect New Vulnerabilities and Newly Supported Vendor Applications
- Define Custom Conditions
- Comparing Property Results
- Defining and Managing Lists
About Policy Conditions

This section describes what policy conditions are and how to work with them. The following subjects are covered:

- What Is a Policy Condition
- Meeting Condition Criteria
- Condition Shortcuts
- Irresolvable Criteria
- Case Sensitivity
- Properties
- Property Expression Types
- Properties and Scripts
- Windows Endpoint Applications Vendor Support

What Is a Policy Condition?

A policy condition is a predefined set of endpoint properties and Boolean logic (AND, OR, NOT) connecting them, for example, endpoints running Windows XP with outdated Symantec AntiVirus applications. You can instruct Forescout 8.1 to apply a policy action to endpoints that match (or do not match) criteria that you choose for the condition. If the Boolean expression that you create is too complex, Forescout 8.1 issues a warning and does not follow through with it.

To control the condition statement logic, select (Advanced) in the policy rule Condition area. You can click the column immediately before or after a criterion to add parentheses, and you can select the And/Or column to change the default Boolean logic.
Meeting Condition Criteria

Conditions may include several criteria, i.e., several sets of Boolean endpoint properties. Each condition provides an option to specify which criteria must be met in order for the endpoint to match the policy. You may decide that a match is acceptable:

- If all criteria are true.
- If one criterion is true.
- If all criteria are false.
- If one criterion is false.

Condition Shortcuts

- Create and reuse Custom conditions in any of your policies. Using Custom conditions saves you time when you create policies and prevents you from making mistakes when defining the condition. See Authentication Properties for details.

- Create and use Lists of property values in any of your policies. These are user-defined lists of property values, for example, a list of user names or a list of domain names. Using Lists saves you time when you create policies and prevents you from making mistakes when entering values. For example, a list of switch IP addresses that you may need to use repeatedly when defining different policies. See Defining and Managing Lists for details.

Irresolvable Criteria

In some situations, Forescout 8.1 cannot properly resolve endpoint property criteria. Many properties provide an option for handling such irresolvable criteria. If Forescout 8.1 cannot verify a property, you can choose how to treat that endpoint. See Handling Irresolvable Criteria for details.

Case Sensitivity

You can select Match case if you want the property value to be case sensitive.

Properties

A property is an attribute detected on the endpoint, for example, device and operating system information or information about switch connections or user directly information. Forescout 8.1 supports an extensive range of endpoint and network device properties. If you have installed a Module (including Content Modules and eyeExtend products [Extended Modules]), related properties are also available. For example, if you installed the Forescout eyeExtend for McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator, related properties and actions are available.

Using properties lets you quickly and efficiently pinpoint endpoint and network devices.

See Working with Properties for a complete list of properties.
Property Expression Types
You may want to detect certain properties on endpoints, but may not be certain of the precise property values, for example, the exact spelling of a vendor or precise version information. To help you deal with these situations, several property expression options are available.

- Contains
- Starts or Ends with
- Greater than
- Matches
- Matches expression
- In List (See Defining and Managing Lists)
- Any Value

Properties and Scripts
The following properties use scripts:

- Windows Expected Script Result
- Device Interfaces
- Number of IP Addresses
- External Devices
- Windows File MD5 Signature
- Windows Is Behind NAT
- Microsoft Vulnerabilities

 Scripts are not required if the endpoint is managed by SecureConnector.

Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about working with scripts. Select Select Tools > Options > HPS Inspection Engine > Help.

Windows Endpoint Applications Vendor Support
In addition to general endpoint discovery capabilities, Forescout 8.1 provides specialized tools for in-depth discovery and management of the following Windows application types:

- Windows Antivirus vendors
- Windows Peer-to-Peer vendors
- Windows Instant Messaging vendors
- Windows Anti-Spyware vendors
- Windows Personal Firewall vendors

Use Forescout 8.1 policies to discover endpoints running these applications, and to apply remediation actions.
Refer to the *Windows Applications Configuration Guide* for more information about the module. Select **Tools > Options > Modules > Windows Applications > Help.** Vendor application support may be updated with new Windows Applications releases. See [Detect New Vulnerabilities and Newly Supported Vendor Applications](#) for details.

## Working with Properties

Conditions include one or more *properties*. A property is an attribute detected on the endpoint. The following categories of properties are available by default with Forescout 8.1:

- Authentication Properties
- Classification Properties
- Advanced Classification Properties
- Device Information Properties
- Event Properties
- External Devices Properties
- Guest Registration Properties
- Linux Properties
- Macintosh Properties
- Remote Inspection Properties
- SNMP Properties
- Switch Properties
- Track Changes Properties
- User Directory Properties
- Windows Properties
- Windows Application Properties
- Windows Security Properties

### Properties Delivered with Plugins and eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules)

In addition to the properties delivered with your Forescout 8.1 system, other properties may become available when you install modules and eyeExtend products. For example, if you are working with the Forescout Wireless Plugin or the Forescout eyeExtend for FireEye HX, properties delivered with these components are available. Refer to the related plugin or eyeExtend product Configuration Guide for details about these properties. See [Additional Forescout Documentation](#) for information on how to access these guides.

See [Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products](#) for information about working with plugins and eyeExtend products.
How Forescout 8.1 Queries Property Values

CounterACT Appliances must regularly query endpoints to keep property values up to date. This can generate significant network traffic. The following methods are provided to minimize traffic:

- In general, endpoints are polled for property values only when a policy that includes the property is evaluated. Defining the time interval at which policies are evaluated and rechecked influences the frequency at which endpoints are queried.

- When SecureConnector is used on endpoints, event driven monitoring can be enabled. SecureConnector proactively sends updates to the HPS Inspection Engine only when it detects a change in an endpoint property. This eliminates blind polling by Forescout 8.1, and significantly reduces redundant network traffic.

Define Properties

You can define the properties to be detected on an endpoint as part of a condition definition. To define properties:

1. Select Add from the Condition section of the Sub-Rules dialog box.

2. Select a property type in the Select Property section and define the property value. When defining properties, indicate if the endpoint meets the criteria defined or does not meet the criteria. The properties are detailed below.

## Authentication Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authenticated by Certificate</td>
<td>Indicates whether a certificate-based authentication process for the endpoint was successful. If a certificate for this feature is not found on the endpoint, this property returns the value <strong>No</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Certificate Expiration</td>
<td>Indicates the value of the Valid To field of the certificate installed on the endpoint for certificate-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Certificate Issuer</td>
<td>Indicates the value of the Issuer field of the certificate installed on the endpoint for certificate-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Certificate Root CA Subject</td>
<td>Indicates the value of the Subject field of the certificate installed on the endpoint for certificate-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Certificate Serial Number</td>
<td>Indicates the value of the Serial Number field of the certificate installed on the endpoint for certificate-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Certificate Status</td>
<td>Indicates the state of the certificate installed on the endpoint for certificate-based authentication, and any verification errors for the certificate. For example, you can use this property to identify endpoints with revoked certificates. If a certificate for this feature is not found on the endpoint, this property returns the value <strong>No certificate</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Certificate Subject</td>
<td>Indicates the value of the Subject field of the certificate installed on the endpoint for certificate-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Certificate Subject Alternate Name</td>
<td>Indicates the value of the Subject Alternate Name field of the certificate installed on the endpoint for certificate-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Login</td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint performed any of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- A successful login to an authentication server. To use this feature you must configure your authentication servers. Forescout 8.1 supports the following authentication services: HTTP(80/TCP), Telnet(23/TCP), NetBIOS(139/TCP), FTP(21/TCP) IMAP (143/TCP), POP3(110/TCP), rlogin(513/TCP).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The user authenticated via the User Directory server as a result of a HTTP Login action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The user authenticated as a guest as a result of a HTTP Login action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See <a href="#">Defining Authentication Servers</a> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Login (Advanced)</td>
<td>Indicates endpoints that logged in to the network using a specific protocol or against a specific server. Enter the protocol name or the server IP address. Servers referenced here must be defined in the Authentication pane. See <a href="#">Defining Authentication Servers</a> for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

#### Property Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Confirmation Events</td>
<td>Indicates whether the end user confirmed an HTTP notification message generated by Forescout 8.1. Confirmation is discovered via the Confirmation Identifier name, defined in the HTTP Notification action. Enter the name of the identifier. If discovered, the user confirmed the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Login Failure</td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint exceeded the HTTP login failure threshold defined in <strong>Options &gt; NAC &gt; HTTP Login Attempts</strong>. The User Directory Plugin must be installed to work with this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Login User</td>
<td>Indicates the name of the last user that performed successful HTTP Login authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Signed In Status                | Indicates endpoints that are:  
  - Signed-in to the network using a valid domain name. See [HTTP Login](#) action for details.  
  - Signed-in as guests.  
  - Signed-out or never signed in.                                                                                                                  |

#### Classification Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Function | Indicates the most specific function in the CounterACT Device Profile Library that matches the endpoint. For example, Information Technology > Accessory > VoIP > IP Phone.  
  - If multiple functions match the endpoint, the property is resolved as the most specific value in the Device Profile Library that is common to all the matching functions. For example, if Gaming Console and SmartTV profiles both match the endpoint, the property is resolved as Multimedia & Entertainment.  
  - If there is no common value among all the matching functions, the property is resolved as Multiple Suggestions.  
  - If no function profiles in the Device Profile Library match the endpoint, the property is resolved as Unknown. Select one or more endpoint functions. To detect all sub-classifications of the selected functions, select the Include sub-classifications checkbox. |
| Network Function | Indicates the type and function of an endpoint, as determined by various passive and active means, including Nmap. Due to the activation of Nmap, this information may take longer to resolve.  
  Use of this property requires that you configure the HPS Inspection Engine. Refer to the *Network Function Property Algorithm Technical Notes* for details. |
# Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

## Forescout Administration Guide 300

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>Indicates the most specific operating system in the CounterACT Device Profile Library that matches the endpoint. For example, Macintosh &gt; OS X 10.11 - El Capitan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If multiple operating systems match the endpoint, the property is resolved as the most specific value in the Device Profile Library that is common to all the matching operating systems. For example, if Windows Server 2008 Enterprise RTM and Windows Server 2008 Enterprise SP2 profiles both match the endpoint, the property is resolved as Windows Server 2008 Enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there is no common value among all the matching operating systems, the property is resolved as Multiple Suggestions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If no operating system profiles in the Device Profile Library match the endpoint, the property is resolved as Unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select one or more operating systems. To detect all sub-classifications of the selected operating systems, select the <strong>Include sub-classifications</strong> checkbox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor and Model</td>
<td>Indicates the most specific vendor and model in the CounterACT Device Profile Library that matches the endpoint. For example, Samsung &gt; Samsung Galaxy Tablet &gt; Samsung Galaxy Tablet 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select one or more vendors or models. To detect all sub-classifications of the selected vendors and models, select the <strong>Include sub-classifications</strong> checkbox.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Advanced Classification Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service Banner</td>
<td>Indicates the service and version information, as determined by Nmap. Due to the activation of Nmap, this information may take longer to retrieve. Use of this property requires that you configure the HPS Inspection Engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Function Resolution Method</td>
<td>Indicates the method used to classify the device's Network Function property. The following options are available:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Active Banner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Active Fingerprint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Managed (Network Device or Endpoint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Manual Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Passive Banner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Passive Fingerprint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP User Agent</td>
<td>Indicates Learned HTTP User Agent Banner (from portal and Packet Engine).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function Classified By</td>
<td>Indicates whether the Function classification property was determined by the Device Classification Engine, or was set by an action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating System Classified By</td>
<td>Indicates whether the Operating System classification property was determined by the Device Classification Engine, or was set by an action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function Classification Update</td>
<td>Indicates whether a Function classification change is pending for this device due to a Device Profile Library upgrade. You can apply all pending classification changes in the Options &gt; Device Profile Library window.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table: Property Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operating System Classification Update</td>
<td>Indicates whether an Operating System classification change is pending for this device due to a Device Profile Library upgrade. You can apply all pending classification changes in the Options &gt; Device Profile Library window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor and Model Classification Update</td>
<td>Indicates whether a Vendor and Model classification change is pending for this device due to a Device Profile Library upgrade. You can apply all pending classification changes in the Options &gt; Device Profile Library window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested Function</td>
<td>If there are multiple candidates for the endpoint’s Function classification, this property indicates all the profiles in the CounterACT Device Profile Library that match this endpoint. These values are considered less accurate than the resolved Function property value, possibly due to conflicting choices. If the Function property has been changed by a policy or manual action, this property indicates the endpoint’s Function classification set by the Device Classification Engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested Operating System</td>
<td>If there are multiple candidates for the endpoint’s Operating System classification, this property indicates all the profiles in the CounterACT Device Profile Library that match this endpoint. These values are considered less accurate than the resolved Operating System property value, possibly due to conflicting choices. If the Operating System property has been changed by a policy or manual action, this property indicates the endpoint’s Operating System classification set by the Device Classification Engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS Fingerprint</td>
<td>Indicates the type of the operating system running on the endpoint, as determined by Nmap. Use this property instead of OS Class for classification of unlisted and unknown OS names. Due to the activation of Nmap, this information may take longer to retrieve. Use of this property requires that you configure the HPS Inspection Engine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Compare OS Fingerprint to (Classification Version 2) | Indicates the difference between current OS Fingerprint and OS Fingerprint Classification Version 2. The following options are available:  
  - Both failed  
  - OS Fingerprint resolution failure  
  - OS Fingerprint (Classification Version 2) resolution failure  
  - Values are identical  
  - Values differ |
| Compare OS Fingerprint to (Classification Version 3) | Indicates the difference between current OS Fingerprint and OS Fingerprint Classification Version 3. The following options are available:  
  - Both failed  
  - OS Fingerprint resolution failure  
  - OS Fingerprint (Classification Version 3) resolution failure  
  - Values are identical  
  - Values differ |
### Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

#### Property |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compare Network Function To (Classification Version 2)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicates the difference between current Network Function and Network Classification Version 2. The following options are available:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Both failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Network Function resolution failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Network Function (Classification Version 2) resolution failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Values are identical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Values differ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compare Network Function To (Classification Version 3)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicates the difference between current Network Function and Network Classification Version 3. The following options are available:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Both failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Network Function resolution failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Network Function (Classification Version 3) resolution failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Values are identical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Values differ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Device Information Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Access IP</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicates the endpoint IP address that Forescout 8.1 used the last time it connected successfully to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assigned Label</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labels mark and group endpoints based on properties or other evaluated values. Policies can apply further management logic based on labels assigned by a previous policy. This lets you construct complex policy behaviors that track endpoint history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This condition compares a text string to the labels assigned to the endpoint. The text string you specify is compared to each of the labels assigned to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can specify various matching logic options, such as partial string matching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can apply time constraints to the condition. Forescout 8.1 matches only endpoints that satisfy the matching condition during the specified time period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Comment</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicates devices that contain device Comment text defined by the Forescout 8.1 user. (Right-click an endpoint in the Detections pane to add a comment. The comment is retained for the life of the endpoint in Forescout 8.1.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special characters such as `~!@#$%^&amp;=*()+[];'/{}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compliance Status</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicates the endpoint status based on policies categorized as Compliance policies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Corporate / Guest Status</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicates the endpoint status based on policies categorized as Corporate/Guest Control policies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Counter</td>
<td>Compares the value of a counter to a numerical value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Name: The name of an existing counter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Counter: Value(s) that the condition compares to the current value of the counter. You can specify a single value, a list of values, or a range of values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Note: Enable the <strong>Evaluate irresolvable criteria as True</strong> option when the Counter property is used to verify the presence of a newly created counter.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forescout Script Result</td>
<td>Runs a script or command on the CounterACT appliance, and examines the result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forescout 8.1 evaluates the script or command for each endpoint that matches previous conditions of the policy. This result is compared to the specified values and matching logic of the condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ignore Failed Script Result – Enter true to ignore any partial output received by Forescout 8.1 before the session failed. The property is evaluated as Irresolvable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter <em>false</em> to preserve output from the failed session in the property, and use that output to evaluate the condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Note: If you are running a script to retrieve a value that includes the endpoint’s IP address, the script should not include the {IP} tag, as Forescout 8.1 automatically appends the IP address to the list of arguments passed to the script.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Interfaces</td>
<td>Detects endpoints with specific device interface information. This information may be part of the interface name, vendor and MAC address. Use of this property requires the proper configuration and activation of the HPS Inspection Engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device is DHCP Relay</td>
<td>Indicates whether endpoints are running DHCP Relay services. Use of this property requires the proper configuration and activation of the HPS Inspection Engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device is DHCP Server</td>
<td>Indicates whether endpoints are DHCP servers. Use of this property requires the proper configuration and activation of the HPS Inspection Engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device is NAT</td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint performs a Network Address Translation, potentially hiding other devices behind it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you have set Forescout 8.1 to the Partial Enforcement mode, this condition will not work. See <em>Set the Enforcement Mode</em> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP Server Address</td>
<td>Indicates whether the device IP address was received from a DHCP server. If so the value of the property is the IP address of the DHCP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In addition to DHCP server properties, such as this one, which are discovered by Forescout 8.1, additional DHCP host properties are discovered by the DHCP Classifier Plugin. This plugin extracts host information from DHCP messages and uses DHCP fingerprinting to determine the operating system and other host configuration information. For more information, refer to the <em>DHCP Classifier Plugin Configuration Guide</em>. Select <em>Tools &gt; Options &gt; Modules</em>, select the plugin, and then select <em>Help.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS Name</td>
<td>Indicates the endpoint’s DNS name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host is online</td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint is connected to the network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>IPv4 Address</strong></td>
<td>Indicates one or more IP addresses of an endpoint. Matching criteria include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Any IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Addresses in a named Forescout Internal Network segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Addresses in a specific IP range or subnet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IP addresses that start with, end or match a certain numerical expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Endpoints without a known IPv4 address (endpoints will be detected when Forescout 8.1 discovers their MAC address).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For details about working with IPv6 addresses, refer to the Work with IPv6 Addressable Endpoints How-to Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IPv6 Address</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Known IPv4 Address</strong></td>
<td>Indicates an IPv4 Address that once referred to this endpoint, but was assigned to another endpoint. See Work with Hosts Whose IPv4 Address Is Used by Another Host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MAC Address</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the MAC address of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Member of Group</strong></td>
<td>Lets you investigate endpoints that are part of a group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NetBIOS Domain</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the NetBIOS Domain to which the endpoint is logged on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NetBIOS Hostname</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the NetBIOS host name of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Network Adapters</strong></td>
<td>Indicates specific types of network adapters, for example, adapters having a specific device name, MAC address or connection status. Endpoints must be managed by SecureConnector to resolve this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NIC Vendor</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the vendor of the NIC, as detected by Forescout 8.1 based on the MAC prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The HPS NIC Vendor DB updates vendor information used to resolve this property. Forescout 8.1 can automatically add newly supported vendors to a policy condition that you create with this property. For more information about this plugin, select Tools &gt; Options &gt; Modules, select the plugin, and then select Help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NIC Vendor Value</strong></td>
<td>Indicates a string value associated with the NIC Vendor. You can create conditions that match several variants of a vendor name, or look for a specific substring in a name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The HPS NIC Vendor DB updates vendor information used to resolve this property. Forescout 8.1 can automatically add newly supported vendors to a policy condition that you create with this property. For more information about this plugin, select Tools &gt; Options &gt; Modules, select the plugin, and then select Help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of IPv4 Addresses</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the number of IP addresses of each type that Forescout 8.1 detected for an endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of IPv6 Addresses</strong></td>
<td>You can specify IPv4 addresses to ignore when calculating the Number of IPv4 Addresses property. Refer to &quot;Tuning&quot; in the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The count of IPv6 addresses depends on the Purge IPv6 Timeout defined for inactive IPv6 addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There are parallel Track Changes properties.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property | Description
--- | ---
Open Ports | Indicates the availability of open ports on the endpoint. This is determined by inspecting real-time traffic as well as using Nmap. The condition is considered "true" if any of the listed ports are detected.

OS CPE Format | Indicates the operating system running on the endpoint, in Common Platform Enumeration format. This property is reported by the Windows Applications, Linux, OS X and ARF Reports Plugins. The property contains the CPE 2.3 representation of the operating system bound to a formatted string.
You can use Forescout 8.1 property expression types (For example, Contains, In List, or Matches) to create policy conditions that identify logical parts or substrings of the CPE name string.

Segment Name | Retrieves the leaf node name of the network segment on which the endpoint resides. Condition options let you apply string matching criteria to this value.

Segment Path | Retrieves the full pathname of the network segment on which the endpoint resides. Condition options let you apply various string matching criteria to this value.

SMB Relay | Indicates the endpoint may be spoofing session-layer SMB authentication. Forescout 8.1 compares the IP address of the SMB session used by the endpoint to the IP addresses it discovers on the endpoint. If the IP address of the SMB session is not included in the addresses discovered on the endpoint, Forescout 8.1 assigns this property the value True and reports a NAT detection event using the Device Is NAT host property. Use this property to improve detection of man-in-the-middle attacks.
There is a parallel Track Changes property.

#### snmpwalk Command Output
- ** OID: Enter the ID.**
- **SNMP version: Enter the SNMP version.**
- **Community: Enter the community for versions 1/2c.**
- **User (V3): Enter the user and password (version 3).**
- **Password (V3): Enter the user and password (version 3).**
- **Extra snmpwalk options: Include additional snmpwalk options. If you include -x for SNMPv3 privacy, the same password used for authentication is used for privacy.**
- **Filter: Include only specific information in the output by piping into a Linux command.**
- **Ignore Failed Script Result: Enter true to ignore any partial output received by Forescout 8.1 before the session failed. The property is evaluated as Irresolvable. Enter false to preserve output from the failed session in the property, and use that output to evaluate the condition.**

*Note: Enter *UNUSED* in a field if you want Forescout 8.1 to ignore the parameter.*
## Property: SSH Command Output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>SSH Username/SSH Password</strong>: Specify credentials used to log in and establish an SSH session on the endpoint. These credentials are not encrypted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>SSH Connection Flags (optional)</strong>: (Optional) Specify additional Open SSH option flags that are applied when the SSH session is established.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>Command</strong>: Enter the command submitted on the endpoint.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>Pipe session through AWK filter (optional)</strong>: (Optional) Specify a Linux filter command to filter output before evaluating the condition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>When command/session fails, evaluate condition</strong>: Select as Irresolvable to ignore any partial output when the session fails. The property is evaluated as Irresolvable. Select Based on data received to preserve output from the failed session in the property, and use that output to evaluate the condition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Enter *UNUSED* in a field if you want Forescout 8.1 to ignore the parameter*
## Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

### Property | Description
--- | ---
**SSH Command Output (interactive)** | - SSH Username/SSH Password: Specify credentials used to log in and establish an SSH session on the endpoint. These credentials are not encrypted.
- SSH Connection Flags (optional): (Optional) Specify additional Open SSH option flags that are applied when the SSH session is established.
- Interactive Session Script: Enter an alternating series of commands and expected responses, beginning with a command. Each command is on an odd numbered line, each expected response is on an even line. Expected response lines contain regular expressions used to match actual output.
- Response timeout: The maximum interval, in seconds, that Forescout 8.1 waits after submission of each command for an output response.
- Login timeout: The maximum interval, in seconds, that Forescout 8.1 waits when it logs in to establish the SSH session.
- Pipe session through AWK filter (optional): (Optional) Specify a Linux filter command to filter output before evaluating the condition.
- When command/session fails, evaluate condition -
  - Select *as Irresolvable* to ignore any partial output when the session fails. The property is evaluated as Irresolvable.
  - Select *based on data received* to preserve output from the failed session in the property, and use that output to evaluate the condition.

After Forescout 8.1 establishes an SSH session on the endpoint, it submits the first command listed in the **Interactive Session Script** field. Forescout 8.1 waits for a response, and tests the response output against the expected response in the next line of the script.

- If the actual response output does not match the expected response, or if the session times out without a response, Forescout 8.1 ends the interactive session.
- If the output matches the expected response, Forescout 8.1 submits the next command in the session script.

Forescout 8.1 ends the session after a response is received for the last command, or after the session times out.

The property contains a log of all submitted commands and complete actual responses.

*Note: Enter *UNUSED* in a field if you want Forescout 8.1 to ignore the parameter*

| Traffic seen | Indicates when network traffic was last seen. |
### Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

#### Property Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| URL Content | - URL: Enter the path of the URL from which you want to retrieve information. You can use the `{ip}` tag to specify the endpoint IP address, for example, `http://{ip}/info.html`
- User/Password: Enter user credentials if access to the pane requires authentication.
- Kerberos Domain: Specify a Kerberos (Active Directory) domain if the user is part of a domain.
- Extra curl options: Set additional curl options (check out 'man curl' on Linux)
- Filter: Include only specific information in the output by piping into a Linux command. For example, to exclude the text XYZ use "grep –v "XYZ""
- Ignore Failed Script Result: Enter true to ignore any partial output received by Forescout 8.1 before the session failed. The property is evaluated as Irresolvable.
  Enter false to preserve output from the failed session in the property, and use that output to evaluate the condition.  
  Note: Enter "*UNUSED* in a field if you want Forescout 8.1 to ignore the parameter.

| User | Indicates the domain user name currently logged on to the endpoint. This property is reported by the HPS Inspection Engine and OS X Plugins. |

### Event Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ARP Spoofing | Indicates whether the number of different MAC address reported for an IP address exceeds the number specified here. This lets you keep track of the different MAC addresses used by an IP address as advertised by ARP responses. Normally, there should be only one MAC address per IP address.
  
  This property lets you detect attempts to maliciously direct network traffic.

  To work with this condition, the Appliance must monitor ARP traffic, i.e., the broadcast domain where ARP requests are transmitted. Refer to the Port Mirroring in Forescout Technical Note for more information about configuring your environment for detecting ARP spoofing. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access this guide. |
### Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Admission</td>
<td>Indicates whether one or more admission events were detected. Admission event types include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- New IP: By default, endpoints are considered new if they were not detected at your network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>within a 30-day period. For example, if an IP was detected on the first of the month,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and then detected again 31 days later, the detection initiates the activation. The default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>time period can be changed. See <a href="#">Policy Preferences</a> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- IP Address Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Switch Port Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- DHCP Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Authentication via the HTTP Login action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Log in to an authentication server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- SecureConnector connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you have installed plugins/modules, additional admission events types may be available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example, the New Wireless Host Connected Events option is available if you installed the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wireless Plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malicious Event</td>
<td>Indicates the type of threat protection event to respond to. Parameters selected here are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>applied in addition to parameters defined in the Threat Protection Policy. See [Chapter 13:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Threat Protection](#) for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>Indicates endpoints whose IP address was used by a newly connecting endpoint. This may</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events</td>
<td>happen, for example, if the original endpoint was offline for a certain period and the newly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>connecting endpoint received its IP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When this happens, the original endpoint is displayed in the Console without an IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>until it reconnects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sessions as Client/Server</td>
<td><em>Sessions</em> let you run policies based on real-time identification of network traffic patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>between servers and clients, helping you pinpoint:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- When session are initiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Which protocols are used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example, use this property to ensure compliance of data flow security for audit usage or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to track down network users trying to access sensitive protected data, such as credit card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information or financial accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates which endpoints generated sessions to specific servers using a defined protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Sessions as Client</strong>: Indicates which endpoints generated sessions to specific servers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>using a defined protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Sessions as Server</strong>: Indicates which servers received sessions from specified endpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>using a defined protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traps Received</td>
<td>Indicates that an SNMP trap was received on the port where the endpoint is connected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# External Devices Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External Devices</td>
<td>Refers to external devices connected to an endpoint by cross-referencing all the device attributes listed below. In order for an endpoint to match the defined condition, all attributes in this list must match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Detects endpoints connected to an external device with a specific device name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Detects endpoints connected to an external device with a specific device ID number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Detects endpoints that are connected to specific external device classes, including:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Wireless communication devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Portable devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Windows CE USB devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Printers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- PCMCIA and Flash memory devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Other devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Network adapters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Modems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Infrared devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Imaging devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Disk Drives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- DVD/CD-ROM drives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Bluetooth Radios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus Type</td>
<td>Detects the bus on which the external device is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Detects the connection status.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Guest Registration Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guest Account Approve Date</td>
<td>Indicates when the guest network access was approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Approved By</td>
<td>For users allowed network access as guests via the HTTP Login action, this field indicates the email address of the sponsor who approved the network access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Registration Status</td>
<td>Indicates the status of a guest network access request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Tags</td>
<td>Indicates the value of the tags assigned by the sponsor to the guest. See <a href="#">Manage Guest Tags</a> for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

#### Property | Description
--- | ---
Guest Registration Information | For users allowed network access as guests via the HTTP Login action, this field indicates the information that was provided when the guest self-registered or was registered by a sponsor or operator:
- Guest Account Approve Date
- Guest Comment
- Guest Company
- Guest Contact Person
- Guest Contact Person Email
- Guest Custom[1-5] form fields
- Guest Email Address
- Guest Full Name
- Guest Location
- Guest Phone Number
- Guest Registration browser user agent
- Guest Registration Date
- Guest Title
- User Name
You can use any of this information to enforce actions on guests.

### Linux Properties

#### Property | Description
--- | ---
Linux Expected Script Result | Use this property to run a command or file that detects certain endpoint attributes, statuses or any other information defined in the script or command. Commands and file can also be used to carry out actions on endpoints.

Enter a command or browse to a file that you want to run. The commands and scripts that you create are automatically saved on all Appliances. All file extensions are supported and can be run.

A Run Script Action is also available.

Linux File Date | Indicates the last modification date and time of a defined file on an endpoint.

Linux File Exists | Indicates the existence of a defined file on an endpoint.

Linux File Size | Indicates the size (in bytes) of a defined file on a Linux device. Define a single file size or a range of sizes, for example, 1-100. Use a dash when defining a range.

Linux Hostname | Indicates the Linux host name.

Linux Manageable (SSH Direct Access) | Indicates whether the endpoint is connected to Forescout 8.1 via SSH.

Linux Manageable (SecureConnector) | Indicates whether the endpoint is connected to Forescout 8.1 via SecureConnector.

Linux Processes Running | Indicates whether a process is currently running on detected endpoints.

Linux User | Indicates whether the user is directly logged in to the Linux console.
### Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Linux Version</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the specific version of the Linux OS running on the endpoint. Use of this property requires that the endpoint be managed via SecureConnector.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Macintosh Properties

The OS X Plugin supports the following properties for Mac OS X endpoints.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh Applications Installed</strong></td>
<td>Indicates whether a specified application is installed on an OS X endpoint. It parallels the Windows Applications Installed host property for Windows endpoints. This property is only reported for Mac OS X endpoints managed by the OS X Plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh Expected Script Result</strong></td>
<td>Runs a command or file that detects certain endpoint attributes, statuses or any other information defined in the script or command. Commands and file can also be used to carry out actions on endpoints. Enter a command or browse to a file that you want to run. The commands and scripts that you create are automatically saved on all Appliances. All file extensions are supported and can be run. A Run Script action is also available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh File Date</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the last modification date and time of a defined file on an endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh File Exists</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the existence of a defined file on an endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh File Size</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the size (in bytes) of a defined file on a Macintosh device. Type a single file size or a range of sizes, for example, 1-100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh Hostname</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the Macintosh host name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh Manageable (SSH Direct Access)</strong></td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint is connected to Forescout 8.1 via SSH.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh Manageable (SecureConnector)</strong></td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint is connected to Forescout 8.1 via SecureConnector.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh Processes Running</strong></td>
<td>Indicates whether a process is currently running on the detected endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh SecureConnector Version</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the version of the SecureConnector package that is running on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh Software Updates Missing</strong></td>
<td>Indicates Macintosh security and other updates that are missing on the detected endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh User</strong></td>
<td>Indicates whether the user is directly logged in to the Macintosh console.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macintosh Version</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the specific version of the Macintosh OS running on the endpoint. Use of this property requires that the endpoint be managed via SecureConnector.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Remote Inspection Properties

The following properties indicate which management services are available on the endpoint that Forescout 8.1 can use to perform Remote Inspection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MS-RRP Reachable</td>
<td>Indicates whether Forescout 8.1 can use the Remote Registry Protocol for Remote Inspection tasks on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS-SMB Reachable</td>
<td>Indicates whether Forescout 8.1 can use the SAMBA protocol for Remote Inspection tasks on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS-WMI Reachable</td>
<td>Indicates whether Forescout 8.1 can use the Windows Management Interface for Remote Inspection tasks on the endpoint. In previous releases, this property was named Windows Manageable Domain by WMI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These properties do not have an Irresolvable state. When the plugin or module cannot establish connection with the service, the property value is False. Do not use the Evaluate Irresolvable Criteria as option with these properties.

The following corresponding Track Changes policies are listed under the Track Changes folder:

- MS-RRP reachability changed
- MS-SMB reachability changed
- MS-WMI reachability changed

SNMP Properties

Use of SNMP properties requires the proper configuration and activation of the HPS Inspection Engine. When entering the following values, use these guidelines:

- For SNMP V1, use: `-v 1 -c <community>
- For SNMP V2, use: `-v 2 -c <community>
- For SNMP V3, use: `-v 3 -u <user> -A <password>

Use the SNMP Parameters field to enter optional SNMP connection parameters. The following parameters are supported:

- `-p <port>` Specify the port used for SNMP messaging on the server.
- `-r <retries>` Specify the number of times to retry the request.
- `-t <seconds>` Specify the timeout period before retrying the request.
- `-E <engine_ID>` Specify the Context Engine ID for REQUEST messages (SNMP v3 only).
- `-n <cont_name>` Specify the Context Name (SNMP v3 only).
Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| SNMP-MIB-II ifNumber | Indicates the number of network interfaces (regardless of their current state) present on this system. The collection of this information depends on access parameters (SNMP Parameters) specific to the SNMP version of the inspected endpoint.  
In the **SNMP-MIB-II ifNumber** field, enter the number of interfaces to be detected on the SNMP agent. |
| SNMP-MIB-II sysDescription | Indicates a textual description of the entity. This value should include the full name and version identification of the system’s hardware type, software operating-system, and networking software. It is mandatory that this only contain printable ASCII characters. The collection of this information depends on access parameters (SNMP Parameters) specific to the SNMP version of the inspected endpoint.  
In the **SNMP-MIB-II sysDescription** field, enter the description that should match the SNMP agent system description. If you are not sure of the name, you can use the regular expression option, and enter wildcard text – for example, ci.* if you want to detect a Cisco switch. |
| SNMP-MIB-II sysLocation | Indicates the physical location of this node (for example, telephone closet, third floor). The collection of this information depends on access parameters (SNMP Parameters) specific to the SNMP version of the inspected endpoint.  
In the **SNMP-MIB-II sysLocation** field, enter the location that should match the SNMP agent. If you are not sure of the name, you can use the regular expression option, and enter wildcard text (.*). |
| SNMP-MIB-II sysName | Indicates an administratively assigned name for this managed endpoint. By convention, this is the endpoint’s fully qualified domain name. The collection of this information depends on access parameters (SNMP Parameters) specific to the SNMP version of the inspected endpoint.  
In the **SNMP-MIB-II sysName** field, enter the requested system name to match. |
| SNMP-MIB-II sysUpTime | Indicates the time since the network management portion of the system was last re-initialized. The collection of this information depends on access parameters (SNMP Parameters) specific to the SNMP version of the inspected endpoint.  
Use the **Older than** or **Before** options to create a condition based on the time the SNMP agent was last turned on. |
| SNMP-OID | Indicates an OID value, on the SNMP agent. The collection of this information depends on access parameters (SNMP Parameters) specific to the SNMP version of the inspected endpoint.  
In the **SNMP OID** field, enter the requested OID value on the endpoint. If the OID query and the SNMP-OID Value match, then the condition is registered. |

**Switch Properties**

An extensive range of properties are resolved for Switches that are configured to work with Forescout 8.1. The section provides an overview of the Switch properties.

Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Switch** to configure the Switch Plugin. Select **Help** for information about configuration and for more information about working with switch properties.
Basic Managed Switch Information

The following properties resolve basic information about a managed switch:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Hosts on Port</td>
<td>The number of endpoints connected to a specific port. You can write a condition for this number to instruct the Switch Plugin to detect ports with more than one endpoint (MAC address) if, for example, a hub and a guest computer have been connected together with a company endpoint on a company switch port. Ports connecting between switches are excluded from this calculation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGT</td>
<td>The Security Group Tag (SGT) assigned to an endpoint. An SGT is a number in the range of 1–65,535. Endpoints with an assigned SGT are connected to a managed Cisco switch in a Cisco TrustSec domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Hostname</td>
<td>The switch name as defined in the managed switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch IP/FQDN</td>
<td>Either the IP address or the fully qualified domain name of the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch IP/FQDN and Port Name</td>
<td>Either the IP address or the fully qualified domain name of the switch and the port name (the physical Ethernet interface information of the port). The format is <code>&lt;IP address/FQDN&gt;:&lt;port&gt;</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Location</td>
<td>The switch location based on the switch MIB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch OS</td>
<td>The operating system on the switch device to which the endpoint is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Port ACL</td>
<td>The name of the ACL applied to the switch port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Port Action</td>
<td>The actions (<code>Blocked</code> or <code>Assign to VLAN</code>) that are assigned to the switch port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Port Alias</td>
<td>The description of the port as defined in the switch configuration and modified by the Switch Plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Port Configurations</td>
<td><em>For use with Cisco and Arista devices only.</em> The configuration detail of the switch interface to which an endpoint is connected. For this property to be resolvable, the Switch Plugin must be configured to use the command-line interface (CLI) to learn which endpoints are connected to the managed switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Port Connect</td>
<td>The physical connectivity between the endpoint and the switch port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Port PoE Connected Device</td>
<td><em>For use with Cisco devices only.</em> Description of the PoE device that is connected to the PoE-enabled switch port, as provided by the managed Cisco switch. For example, Cisco IP Phone 6921.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property | Description
--- | ---
**Switch Port PoE Power Consumption** | *For use with Cisco devices only.*
Power consumption of the PoE device that is connected to the PoE-enabled switch port, as provided by the managed Cisco switch. The power consumption value provided is in milliwatts (mW). For example, 750.
When either a non-PoE device or no device is connected to the PoE-enabled switch port, the property value is zero (0).
For switch vendors that the plugin does not support switch port PoE, the Console displays the following information for this property: *Vendor is currently not supported for this property.*
**Switch Port Name** | The hard-coded port name.
**Switch Port VLAN** | The VLAN associated with the switch port.
**Switch Port VLAN Name** | The name of the VLAN associated with the switch port.
**Switch Port Voice Device** | Whether the endpoint connected to the switch port is a VoIP device.
**Switch Port Voice VLAN** | The switch port VLAN to which the VoIP endpoint is connected.
**Switch Vendor** | The switch vendor name.
**Switch Virtual Interface** | Identifies whether the switch interface is a Switch Virtual Interface. The property is supported for managed switches only.
**Switch VoIP Port** | Whether the switch port is a VoIP port.
**System Description** | Detects the system description information provided by the managed device. System description information is as specified by the network device SNMPv2-MIB property `sysDescr (1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1)`.

**Network Device Compliance Properties**

For any Cisco network device managed by the Switch Plugin, use the following policy properties to create policies that determine network device compliance:

### Property | Description
--- | ---
**Running Config** | *For use with Cisco devices only.*
Detects running config information of switches managed by Forescout 8.1, as generated by the `show running-config` command.
The Switch Plugin resolves this property for information in the following instances: (a) After plugin start and initially detecting the switch and (b) Whenever running config information changes.
Before working with this property, several configuration tasks must be performed.
As the amount of information provided by the resolved Running Config property can be very extensive, you can filter this information.
### Property Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Running Config Time</strong></td>
<td><em>For use with Cisco devices only.</em> Contains the timestamp, MM/DD/YY HH:MM:SS AM/PM, of the plugin’s running config information query of the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interface Table</strong></td>
<td><em>For use with Cisco devices only.</em> Detects the specific interface configuration provided in a device running config for the interface. Per interface, the resolved property provides the following information:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Interface Name: The interface name and when available the interface location information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Interface Configuration (raw): The specific, interface configuration, as provided in a device running config.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Track Changes Properties

Items in this category check whether a property value has changed, for example, if a user name changed. Detecting changes in endpoints is a powerful method of identifying possible attacks or noncompliance.

All these properties exist under other categories, but here these properties check whether the value has *changed*. For example, the **Windows File Size** property in the Windows folder detects the size of a file at a specific location. In the Track Changes folder, Forescout 8.1 detects if the file size at that location changed.

Some of the Track Changes properties require the proper configuration and activation of the HPS Inspection Engine.

### User Directory Properties

The following user attributes indicate if the user’s account in the User Directory is disabled or expired:

- Account is Disabled
- Account is Expired

The following user attributes may vary depending on the User Directory configuration:

- Common Name
- Company
- Department
- Display Name
- Distinguished Name
- Email
- Employee Number
- Initials
- Last Name
- LDAP User Name
- Member Of


- Mobile Phone
- Password Last Set
- Phone
- Street Address
- Title
- User Given Name

### Windows Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NetBIOS Membership Type</td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint is a domain or workgroup member.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMB Signing</td>
<td>Indicates support for SMB Signing on the Windows endpoint. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Required: the endpoint requires that all SMB communication is signed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enabled: the endpoint supports SMB signing but does not require it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disabled: the endpoint does not support SMB signing, even when it is requested by the communicating entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Active Users</td>
<td>Indicates the username/domain of one or more users currently logged in to a Windows endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Domain Member</td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint is a member of any of the domains defined in the HPS Inspection Engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Expected Script Result</td>
<td><em>For use on managed Windows machines only.</em> Use this property to run a command or file to detect certain endpoint attributes, statuses, or any other information defined in the script or command. Commands and file can also be used to carry out actions on endpoints. (If you use a file that exists on the endpoint, enter its absolute path). You can also enter output text that should be matched on the endpoint against the output of the script. Use this property, for example, to find users sharing the My Music folder. A script is run by starting a service called <em>fsprocsvc</em>. The service does not open any new network connection or generate traffic. Communication is carried out over Microsoft’s SMB/RPC (139/TCP or 445/TCP) and authentication is carried out using domain credentials. If there is no request to run a new command within two hours, the service dissolves automatically. Refer to the <em>HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide</em> for more information about this service. Select <strong>Tools &gt; Options &gt; Modules</strong>, select the plugin, and then select <strong>Help</strong>. You can reference the result of the script using a property tag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows File Date</td>
<td>Indicates the date that a specific file was last modified. Use this property, for example, to check that endpoints on the network have a specific file, from a specific date. Examples would be a security configuration file or an antivirus signature file. By using this condition, you can create a policy that enforces existence of the specific file, from a specific date, on every endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows File Exists</td>
<td>Indicates a file name. Use this property, for example, to check that endpoints on the network have a specific file. You can use the following Windows environment variables when you specify a pathname in a condition: %COMMONPROGRAMFILES% %PROGRAMFILES% %TEMP% %HOMEDRIVE% %SYSTEMDRIVE% %USERPROFILE% %HOMEPATH% %SYSTEMROOT% %WINDIR%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows File MD5 Signature</td>
<td>Indicates endpoints with specific MD5 signatures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows File Size</td>
<td>Indicates a file name and size (in bytes). Use this property to check that endpoints on the network have a specific file of a specific file size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows File Version</td>
<td>Indicates the version of a defined file on an endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows File Version Comparison</td>
<td>Indicates the existence of a defined file with a version higher than specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Is Behind NAT</td>
<td>Indicates whether the endpoint was detected behind a NAT device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Windows Last Login Event | Indicates the last detected login event on Windows endpoints that are managed by SecureConnector installed as a service. The property is resolved to one of the following values:  
  • None: No Login or Logout events have been detected, or the endpoint is not managed by SecureConnector as a service.  
  • Login: The most recent Windows Login/Logout Event received by SecureConnector was Login.  
  • Logout: The most recent Windows Login/Logout Event received by SecureConnector was Logout. |
| Windows Logged On        | Indicates whether a user is logged in to the endpoint.                                                                                   |
| Windows Manageable Domain | Indicates whether Forescout 8.1 has access to the endpoint’s remote registry and file system. If either criterion is not met, the endpoint is unmanageable. This is typical of endpoints that are foreign to the domain.  
  Irresolvable endpoints are resolved based on their previous recheck status. |
| Windows Manageable Domain (Current) | Similar to the Windows Manageable Domain property, except that if irresolvable, the status not manageable is applied until the next recheck.  
  This property differs from the Windows Manageable Domain property, which resolves irresolvable endpoints based on their previous recheck status. |
| Windows Manageable Local | Indicates that Forescout 8.1 either has or does not have access to localhost credentials on the detected machine. These credentials include the local user name, password and domain. When this information is available, the endpoint is manageable and can be inspected. |
### Property | Description
--- | ---
Windows Manageable SecureConnector | Indicates whether Forescout 8.1 SecureConnector is running on the endpoint. See [Start SecureConnector / Stop SecureConnector](#) for details.
When an endpoint with multiple interfaces connects to Forescout 8.1 through one NIC, only that host (NIC) is reported by this property.
When Forescout 8.1 policies apply an action to a dual-homed endpoint, the action is applied to all interfaces of the endpoint, even if another host (NIC) on the same endpoint is managed by SecureConnector. If a blocking action is applied to the endpoint, it may lose access to network services it uses.
The Advanced Tools Plugin provides an additional host property that can be used to detect and manage dual-homed endpoints using SecureConnector.

Windows Processes Running | Indicates Windows processes running on inspected endpoints.

Windows Processes Running and User | Indicates a currently active process on a Windows endpoint, and the username/domain of the user that owns the process.

Windows Registry Key Exists | Indicates the existence of a specified Windows registry key. Only the following key roots are available: HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT, HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE and HKEY_USERS.

Windows Registry Value | Indicates the value of a specified Windows-registry key. Only the following key roots are available: HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT, HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE and HKEY_USERS.
To retrieve the default value of a registry key, end the pathname with a backslash as in this example:
```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\HW\DESCRIPTION\System\BIOS\n```

Windows Registry Value Exists | Indicates the existence of a value for a specified Windows registry key.

Windows SecureConnector Connection Encryption | Indicates the TLS version used in communications with SecureConnector on Windows.

Windows SecureConnector Deployment Type | Indicates the SecureConnector deployment mode installed on the endpoint.

Windows SecureConnector Systray Display | Indicates the SecureConnector visible mode installed on the endpoint.

Windows Services Installed | Indicates whether a specific Windows service is installed on a Windows endpoint. This property resolves the name of the service.

Windows Services Running | Indicates whether a specific service is currently running on a Windows endpoint. This property returns the name of the service. This property relates to Windows services, not regular processes.
## Property | Description
---|---
Windows Shared Folders | Indicates whether a specific folder is currently shared on a Windows endpoint. Use this property, for example, to find network users sharing music folders. The ability to detect shared directories increases network security by helping CounterACT users stop unwanted data from propagating across the network. This property returns the name of the directory.

Windows Version | Indicates to specific Windows versions detected or missing on the endpoint.

Windows Version CPE Format | Indicates the Windows version running on an endpoint in Common Platform Enumeration format. The property contains the full CPE 2.3 name string, bound to a URI, as follows:
```
<language>:<sw_edition>:<target_sw>:<target_hw>:<other>
```
Use text matching tools to create policy conditions that match substrings of the CPE name string. The value of this property is duplicated in the more general OS CPE Format host property.

Windows Version Fine-tuned | Indicates the specific version of Windows running on the host.

### Windows Application Properties

The Windows Applications Plugin is used to resolve several properties.

To create policy conditions based on these properties, choose from the list of supported third-party applications. Forescout 8.1 has analyzed the structure, footprint, and related processes of these applications, so the plugin detects them more accurately and inspects them more deeply. New releases of the Windows Applications Plugin add supported applications, or enhance support for known applications.

You can configure Forescout 8.1 to automatically add newly supported vendor applications to a policy condition that you create with these properties. See [Detect New Vulnerabilities and Newly Supported Vendor Applications](#) for details.

When you define policy rules to handle detected endpoints, remember that the scope of these properties is limited to supported applications—they do not detect or inspect unsupported applications.

For example:

- The **Instant Messaging Installed** property detects endpoints on which at least one supported messaging application is installed. It does not detect other applications that may be present on the endpoint. When no supported applications are detected on the endpoint, the property resolves to the value **None**, but unsupported messaging applications may be present.

- Similarly, the **Hard Drive Encryption State** property detects drives/partitions encrypted by supported applications. When no drives are encrypted by supported applications, the property resolves to the value **Not Encrypted** for each partition on the endpoint, but partitions may be encrypted by unsupported applications.
Use other host properties to create conditions that inspect endpoints and detect files or processes of unsupported applications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows Applications Installed</td>
<td>Indicates which applications are installed on the Windows endpoint via Add/Remove Programs. This property resolves the name of the applications, and their version number if available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Storage Installed</td>
<td>Indicates that at least one of the following cloud storage applications is installed on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Storage Running</td>
<td>Indicates that at least one of the following cloud storage applications is running on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard Drive Encryption Installed</td>
<td>Indicates the hard drive encryption applications(s) installed on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard Drive Encryption State</td>
<td>Indicates whether hard drives on the endpoint are encrypted, and which application, if any, was used to encrypt each drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instant Messaging Installed</td>
<td>Indicates that an instant messaging application is installed on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instant Messaging Running</td>
<td>Indicates that an instant messaging application is running on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Applications installed</td>
<td>Indicates the existence of Microsoft products on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer-to-peer Installed</td>
<td>Indicates endpoints that have installed peer-to-peer applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer-to-peer Running</td>
<td>Indicates endpoints that are running peer-to-peer applications.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Windows Security Properties**

The Windows Applications Plugin updates vendor information used to resolve several of these properties. You can configure Forescout 8.1 to automatically add newly supported vendors to a policy condition that you create with these properties. See [Detect New Vulnerabilities and Newly Supported Vendor Applications](#) for details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anti-Spyware Installed</td>
<td>Indicates whether Anti-Spyware is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antivirus Installed</td>
<td>Indicates whether an antivirus service is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antivirus Running</td>
<td>Indicates whether an antivirus service is currently running on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antivirus Update Date</td>
<td>Indicates the date of the last antivirus signature update performed on the endpoint. The antivirus application must be running to be detected. This means an update is installed on any antivirus vendor running on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Hotfix Installed</td>
<td>Indicates the existence of a security update on the endpoint, based on Hotfix ID and caption.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 6: Working with Policy Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intranet WSUS Server</strong></td>
<td>Indicates the host name or IP address of the intranet WSUS server on the endpoint. Use this property when working with the Microsoft Vulnerability properties and the Start Windows Updates action. The server version on the endpoint and the server version installed on the network must match in order for endpoints to be remediated by a WSUS server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Microsoft Vulnerabilities** | Indicates the existence of published Microsoft operating system and application vulnerabilities on the endpoint. To use this property:  
  - The Windows Update Agent must be available on the endpoint.  
  - The endpoint must be managed by either Remote Inspection or SecureConnector.  
  Refer to the [HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide](#) for details.  
  Forescout 8.1 can automatically add newly supported vulnerabilities to a policy condition that you create with this property. See [Detect New Vulnerabilities and Newly Supported Vendor Applications](#).  
  Use the [Windows Self Remediation](#) action to download missing patches to endpoints. |
| **Microsoft Vulnerabilities Fine-tuned** | Indicates the existence of Microsoft published OS and Office vulnerabilities detected on the endpoint. Fine-tune inspection according to specific criteria.  
  The following criteria can be searched:  
    - Label  
    - Update Time  
    - Severity  
    - Product  
    - CVE  
  An advanced option for the Microsoft Vulnerabilities property lets you improve performance and reduce network bandwidth. Use the option to define the rate to recheck endpoint vulnerabilities on machines where vulnerabilities were already checked and not found.  
  These endpoints will not be rechecked at a rate higher than the rate that you define. If the rate that you define is more frequent than the rate in the Recheck policy, the Recheck policy rate is applied. If you disable this option, the Recheck policy rate is applied. |
| **Personal Firewall** | Indicates if a personal firewall has been detected on the endpoint. |
| **Windows Updates Installed – Reboot Required** | Indicates if Windows updates were installed, and if the endpoint is waiting for a reboot.  
  Use this property in conjunction with Microsoft Vulnerability Updates to indicate if a reboot of the endpoint is needed to complete the installation of a security update. |
| **Windows Security Center Antivirus Status** | Indicates antivirus applications detected on the endpoint by the Windows Security Center, as well as endpoint status. |
| **Windows Update Agent Installed** | Indicates whether the Windows Update Agent (WUA) is installed on network endpoints. The agent is required to resolve the Microsoft Vulnerabilities and Microsoft Vulnerabilities Fine-tuned properties, as well as carry out the Start Windows Updates action. |
Detect New Vulnerabilities and Newly Supported Vendor Applications

You can instruct Forescout 8.1 to automatically detect new Microsoft vulnerabilities and newly supported vendor applications on your network endpoints.

For example:

- When working with the **Windows Applications > Cloud Storage Installed** property in your policies, Forescout 8.1 automatically detects any Cloud storage applications of newly supported vendors.

- When working with the **Windows Security > Microsoft Vulnerabilities** property in your policies, Forescout 8.1 automatically detects new Microsoft published OS and Office vulnerabilities.

**To detect new vulnerabilities and supported application vendors:**

1. Verify that you have installed the most current Windows Applications Plugin and the Windows Vulnerability DB. Refer to the relevant Forescout portal for information about new application and vulnerability detection support. See [Additional Forescout Documentation](#) for information on how to access this guide.

2. Select the Microsoft Vulnerabilities property or a Windows application property that includes the **Check new...** option. For example:

3. Select **Check new vulnerabilities automatically**.

4. Select **OK**.

*Windows Applications Content Module Release Notes*. Refer to the *Windows Applications Configuration Guide* for a complete list of supported vendors. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select **Windows Applications**, and then select **Help**.

Define Custom Conditions

Customized, user-defined conditions are sets of conditions that you create and can reuse in any of your policies. This saves you the trouble of redefining complex conditions.
They can be created and used in any of your policies. Conditions can be imported and exported as XML files.

- Defining customized conditions cannot be used in the middle of other wizard actions.

**To create custom conditions:**

1. Select **Custom** in the Policy Manager.

2. Select **Add**. The User defined condition editor opens.

3. Select **Add**.
4. Define properties as required and select **OK**.

5. Define a name and description for the condition and select **OK**.

The Condition is displayed in the Custom Condition dialog box. Use this dialog box to manage your created conditions.

**Use Custom Conditions**

You can use the conditions that you create for any policy.

**To use conditions:**

1. Select the Custom folder from the Select Property section of the Condition dialog box.
2. Work with the custom condition as you would any other.

Comparing Property Results

You can create a property that indicates differences, if any, between two property values. For example, create a new property called Compare User Directory Names, and compare User Directory > LDAP User Name with User Directory > Display Name. The comparison results will indicate whether the values are identical, differ or if either of the values is unknown. Results appear in the Profiles tab for the policy where the property was used.

To create a comparison property:

1. Select **Comparison** in the Policy Manager.

2. Select **Add** to open the Comparison Property Editor.

3. Define the Property:
a. In the Property 1 field, select the first property for comparison.
b. In the Property 2 field, select the second property for comparison.
c. In the Name field, enter the name of the new property.
d. In the Description field, enter a description of the property.

4. Define the Comparison labels.

Use the labels to customize the names of the property comparison results, for example, to change the Values Identical result label to User Directory Names Identical.

5. Select OK. The new property appears in the Comparison Properties dialog box.

6. Select OK.

To use a comparison property:
1. Edit or create a policy.
2. Navigate to the Condition > Properties list and select the Comparison properties folder.
3. Incorporate your comparison property into your policy.

**Defining and Managing Lists**

Lists contain endpoint properties and related values, for example, a list of domain user names or a list of DNS names, or of processes that you want to prohibit on your network. Each List is associated with a single endpoint property and can contain multiple related values. Manually create lists here or create lists based on Inventory detections and policy detections. You can use Lists of property values when defining policies.

Using lists speeds up and streamlines the policy creation and endpoint management process.

For example, create an Unauthorized Processes Running list and use that list in a policy with the Kill Process action on endpoints that are running the process.

You can use this option for any property that consists of free text and for the Device Information > Open Ports property. Other properties, for example, installed software, peer-to-peer applications or properties indicating endpoint manageability, cannot be included in lists.

- The Corporate/Guest Control template automatically generates a list of corporate domains.

The following options are available for creating property lists:

- Use a Wizard to Create Lists.
- Create Lists Based on Endpoint Detections.
- Create lists from properties discovered via the Asset Inventory and policies. See Create Lists Based on Inventory Detections and Add Endpoint Properties to a List for details.
Use a Wizard to Create Lists

Use the Property Value List wizard to generate lists.

**To generate a list:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu, and then select **Lists**.

2. Select **Add**. The wizard opens in the List Name pane.

3. Enter a name for your list and add a description.

4. Select **Next**.
5. Select the property for which you want to make a list. See Working with Properties for information about the properties shown. You can use this option for any property that consists of free text and for the Device Information > Open Ports property. Other properties, for example, installed software, peer-to-peer applications or properties indicating endpoint manageability, cannot be included in lists.

6. Select Next.

![Create New List - Step 3 of 3](image)

7. Select Add and enter a value.

8. Add additional values as required.

9. Edit a value:
   - Select the value. The name is displayed in the free text field.
   - Edit the value. The new value is added to the list.
   - Delete the previous value.

10. Import values from external programs. Type one value per line. A value can contain spaces. Files should be imported in TXT format.
   - Select Import.
   - Navigate to your file and import.

11. Select Finish. Your value list is displayed Lists pane.
12. Select **Apply** and then select **Close**.

- Lists added here will appear in the Asset Inventory view if the list includes properties detected in the network.

**Edit and Remove Lists**

You can edit and remove lists from the Lists pane.

You cannot remove lists that are used in policies.

**To edit a list:**

1. Select an entry from the Lists pane and select **Edit**. The required dialog box opens.
2. Edit the value and select **Apply**.

**To remove a list:**

1. Select an entry from the Lists pane and select **Remove**.
2. Select **Apply**.

**View Only Lists Generated from the Asset Inventory View**

You may have generated lists based on Inventory detections. You can filter the view in the Lists pane to display only those lists. See [Working with Asset Inventory Detections](#) for details.

**To filter the view:**

- Select **Only Show Inventory Lists** in the Lists pane.

**Create Lists Based on Endpoint Detections**

The Home view, Details pane provides information about endpoint properties detected as a result of Forescout 8.1 detections. You can navigate to these properties and automatically assign them to lists or add them to new lists.
To create a list:

1. Select an endpoint from the Home view, Detections pane.
2. In the Console, navigate to the Details pane, and select the Profile tab.

3. Select adjacent to the properties shown in the Details pane, Info tab.

4. Select a list from the drop-down menu or select Add to add the property to a new list.
5. Select OK.

Use Your Custom Lists

You can use property value Lists when defining policies. Using lists speeds up and streamlines the policy creation process, and minimizes mistakes that can be made when defining policy property values.

To use a list:

1. In the Policy manager, select a policy and select Edit. The Policy Properties dialog box opens.
2. Next to the Main Rule section, select Edit.
3. Select Add or Edit in the Condition section.
4. Select the property for which you created a list.
5. Select Edit. The Condition dialog box opens.
6. From the Properties tree in the left pane select the condition to add. The condition properties are displayed in the right pane.
7. Select the In List option from the drop-down menu and select the list. You can create a new list or edit a list from this location.

8. Select OK.
The list is displayed as part of your policy condition. You cannot remove lists that are used in policies.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

- About Actions
- Working with Actions
- Audit Actions
- Authenticate Actions
- Classify Actions
- Manage Actions
- Notify Actions
- Remediate Actions
- Restrict Actions
- Action Tools
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

About Actions

Actions are measures taken at endpoints, ranging from notices, warnings and alerts to remediation, network and web access restrictions, and complete blocking.

Actions Delivered with Plugins and eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules)

In addition to the actions delivered with your Forescout system, other actions may become available when you install modules and eyeExtend products. For example, if you are working with the Forescout Wireless Plugin or the Forescout eyeExtend for FireEye HX, actions delivered with these components are available.

To read about plugin-specific actions:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu.
2. Select Modules and select the plugin you are working with.

Refer to the related plugin or eyeExtend product Configuration Guide for details about these actions. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access this guide.

See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for information about working with plugins and eyeExtend products.
Gradual Action Enforcement

Forescout actions enable gradual policy enforcement. For example, Forescout 8.1 can be configured to initially only notify endpoint users or IT regarding noncompliance and later, if required, take more severe measures, such as preventing endpoint users from accessing the Internet or blocking access to the production network.

Action Tools

This section provides information about Action tools, including:

- Enabling and Disabling Actions
- Action Schedules
- Property Tags in Actions
- Action Thresholds
- Scripts and Interactive Actions
- Accessing Console Actions

Enabling and Disabling Actions

You can create actions for all your policies, and enable and disable them as required. You may need to disable actions, for example, to test your policies and get a sense of network compliance before communicating with network users or taking actions on network devices. Policies can be enabled or disabled from:

- Home view, Detections pane.
- A policy. See Enabling and Disabling Actions for details.

Action Schedules

Action schedules can be assigned to each policy action. This lets you control when actions are carried out and for what duration. For example, you can create a policy that warns users not to run peer-to-peer applications and then blocks their Internet access if applications are detected after the warning period. See Action Schedules for details.

Property Tags in Actions

Property tags can be incorporated in email and HTTP actions. For example, the User Directory mail tag {ad_mail} can be added to an Action notification. This tag is translated to the actual email address of the user logged in to the detected machine. See Property Tags for details.

Action Thresholds

Action thresholds automatically implement safeguards when rolling out blocking and restrictive actions.
Action thresholds are designed to automatically implement safeguards when rolling out such sanctions across your network. Consider a situation in which you defined multiple policies that utilize a blocking action, for example, the Virtual Firewall or Switch Block action. In a situation where an extensive number of endpoints match these policies, you may block more endpoints than you anticipated.

An action threshold is the maximum percentage of endpoints that can be controlled by a specific action type defined at a single Appliance. Working with thresholds gives you greater control over how many endpoints are simultaneously restricted in one way or another.

See Working with Action Thresholds for details.

**Scripts and Interactive Actions**

Several actions require that Forescout 8.1 run scripts on the endpoint. Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about how scripts are run using Remote Inspection or SecureConnector. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select the plugin, and then select Help.

Typically, scripts are run in the background, but actions such as the HTTP Notification and HTTP Login actions initiate end user interaction. Forescout 8.1 can run interactive scripts on Macintosh endpoints running the following shell types:

- sh
- bash
- csh
- tcsh

**Evaluate Commands and Scripts**

Unlike other script actions, these properties and actions run scripts and commands on the CounterACT appliance itself, and not on endpoints. In addition, you can use the script result as a policy condition.

To specify a script or command for these properties and actions, do one of the following:

- Enter a script name or command directly in the Command or Script field. To include host properties in the command statement, select Add Tags to insert data tags that resolve to host property values.
- Select the Command or Script drop-down menu to view recently selected scripts and commands.
- Select the ellipsis icon to build a library of scripts for this action. Scripts that you add appear in the command or script drop-down menu.

**Accessing Console Actions**

Actions can be incorporated into policies and carried out when certain conditions are met. For example, you can create a policy that detects users working with unauthorized instant messaging applications, and use a Forescout actions that kills those applications.
Alternatively, you can manually apply an action on selected endpoints. For each installed module, additional actions may be available. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for details.

Access actions:
- From the Home view, Detections pane.
- When creating and editing a policy. See Defining a Policy Main Rule.
- When editing a policy as described here.

To access actions from a policy:
1. Right-click a policy Main Rule or Sub-Rule from the Policy Manager.
2. Select Quick Edit and then select Actions. The Policy Action dialog box opens.
3. Enable or disable the action.
4. Select OK.

Working with Actions

This section describes how to define Forescout actions. Actions are organized into the following categories:
- Audit Actions
- Authenticate Actions
- Classify Actions
- Manage Actions
- Notify Actions
- Remediate Actions
- Restrict Actions
In addition to the actions delivered with your Forescout system, plugin and module-specific actions may appear. For example, if you are working with the Forescout Wireless Plugin or the Forescout eyeExtend for McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator, related actions will be available. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for information about working with plugins and eyeExtend products.

**Audit Actions**

The Send Message to Syslog action is included by default as an Audit action.

The Send Message to Syslog action is used by the Syslog Plugin to send a message to the Syslog server. This message overrides Syslog Plugin configuration options.

**To configure the Send Message to Syslog action:**

1. In the Action dialog box, expand the Audit folder, and select Send Message to Syslog.

2. Specify the following or use Default where applicable to apply the default configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Message to Syslog</strong></th>
<th>The message to send to the Syslog server when the policy is triggered.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Message Identity</strong></td>
<td>Free-text field for identifying the Syslog message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syslog Server Address</strong></td>
<td>Syslog server IP address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Authenticate Actions

This section describes actions that control the access of corporate and guest users to a corporate network. These actions are provided by the User Directory Plugin.

- **HTTP Login**
- **HTTP Sign Out**

If you are using Flexx licensing, ensure that you have a valid Forescout eyeControl license to use these actions. Refer to the *Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide* for more information about managing licenses.

#### HTTP Login

Use the HTTP Login action to:

- Prompt endpoint users to authenticate or self-register before accessing your network. Users attempting to access the network are presented with a Login pane and must enter valid credentials.
The action can be configured to handle guest and corporate users. For details, see Handling Guests and Handling Corporate Users.

Configurable HTTP Login action options let you:

- Define the servers against which the user will authenticate.
- Enable and define a registration process by which unauthorized users can request network access via a web registration form. You may want to enable this if your organization allows visitors to access the network.
- Define login requirements so that users can skip authentication and registration, and enter the network with limited access.
This action can be used with other policy actions. For example, you can define a policy quarantining all unauthenticated users to an isolated VLAN. If the user logs in properly, the policy’s actions are cancelled, removing all limitations imposed. In this example, the user is removed from the isolated VLAN and can join the network and browse.

- **Web messages and emails used in this action can be changed and localized.** See [Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages](#) for details.

- **Login failures can be easily tracked.** See [HTTP Login Attempts](#) for details.

- **You can customize the text that the HTTP Login action displays at the user’s endpoint.** See [Customize HTTP Login Action Text](#) for details.

- **HTTP Login is disabled whenever HTTP Redirection is disabled.** See [Disable Web Portals](#) for details.

Depending on the endpoint operating system and how the endpoint is managed, this action is implemented by the HPS Inspection Engine, the Linux Plugin, or the OS X Plugin.

### Handling Guests

This section describes how to work with the HTTP Login action when handling network guests. For example, you can create policies that deal with visiting professionals or contractors.

Guests are authenticated against the CounterACT Appliance.
You can define the action so users who do not have authentication credentials can register as guests using a Guest Registration form that is displayed in the user's web browser. In the Login page, guests select **Request access** to open a Guest Registration page.

Configure the HTTP Login action for guest login on the following tabs:

- **Guests Tab**: Defines how authentication and registration is performed.
- **Registration Page Tab**: Defines which information guests must provide in the Guest Registration form.
- **Login Page Tab**: Defines the text that appears on the Login page.
- **Miscellaneous Tab**: Defines additional configuration options, such as encryption and compliance.

### Handling Corporate Users

Use the Corporate options to enable corporate authentication.

To configure the action for corporate users, use the following tabs:

- **Corporate Tab**: Defines which servers are used for authentication.
- **Login Page Tab**: Specifies the text that is to appear on the Login page.
- **Miscellaneous Tab**: Specifies additional configuration options such as encryption and compliance.

### Login Page Tab

The Login Page tab is used to define the content of the Login page that is displayed to both guest and corporate users.
After the user successfully logs in, the Authentication, Signed In Status property is resolved by Forescout 8.1 as either **Signed In as a Guest**, if the user's status is network *guest*, or **Signed In as a Domain User**, if the user's status is *corporate* user.

The User Name entered is used when resolving the **Device Information > User Name** property. If necessary, you can instruct Forescout 8.1 to use the machine name instead of this name or to use this name when the machine name is not available. Refer to the *HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide* for details. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select the plugin, and then select **Help**.

The following options are available on the Login Page tab:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Login Instructions</strong></th>
<th>Define the Login page message that is presented to both guests and corporate users.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Guests Tab**

Use the Guests tab to define guest login session options, as well as a registration strategy.
Guest Login Session Options

These options let you control the guest login experience.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enable HTTP login for approved guests</th>
<th>Select this option to enable login for approved guests. Authentication is validated against a Forescout 8.1 server database after the guest is approved.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

Keep open a 'Login Session' window after guest login

Select this option to display a Forescout Login Session window for guests. To browse as a registered guest, the user selects **Continue browsing in a new window** and then **OK**.

![Network Login Session window](image)

The user must keep the Login Session window open to maintain a network to Internet connection, provided this access was granted in the policy. During this time, Forescout 8.1 resolves the **Authentication, Signed In Status** property for the endpoint as **Signed In as a Guest**.

To leave the network, the user selects **Log Out** and then **Leave**.

![Do you want to leave the network?](image)

If the **Keep open a 'Login Session' window after guest login** option is not selected, the Forescout Login Session window is not displayed. Instead, a User Notification window is displayed. To browse as a registered guest, the user selects **Continue** and then **OK**. Forescout 8.1 resolves the Authentication, Signed In Status property for the endpoint as **Not Signed In**.
### Allow each guest to be logged in concurrently on multiple endpoints
You can control the number of devices a single guest can log in to concurrently. Select this option to allow multiple logins. If this option is not selected, a second login by the same user closes the first session on the original computer.

### Provide a system-generated password to self-registering guests
Select this option to instruct Forescout 8.1 to generate a password for the guest to use to log in. This option is relevant only when a guest registers for network access using a Guest Registration form.

When this option is selected:
- Guests are not prompted to define their own passwords in the Guest Registration form.
- When the guest is approved, Forescout 8.1 generates a password for the guest to use in the Password field of the Login page.
- A system-generated password is provided in an email that is sent to the guest.

System-generated passwords adhere to the password policy rules that are defined in the Guest Registration pane's Password Policy tab.

### Enable guests to edit their profiles
Select this option to instruct Forescout 8.1 to display the Edit Profile link on the Login page that is presented to guest users. Selecting this link displays the Edit Profile page, where guests can edit information that they initially provided when registering using the Guest Registration form.

### Enable guests to request replacement passwords
Select this option to instruct Forescout 8.1 to display the Forgot Password link in the Login page that is presented to guest users. Selecting this link displays the Forgot Password page, where approved guests can request a new password for login.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

**Guest Registration Options**

The following guest registration options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Show a Login page link where guests can register for full network access as Signed-in Guests</td>
<td>Enables not-yet-approved guests to self-register. If all guests must be pre-approved for network access, clear this checkbox. For details, see Enable Guest Registration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set the Guest Registration page as the landing page for unregistered guests</td>
<td>Prompts the unregistered guest to complete the Guest Registration form. For details, see Enable Guest Registration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit guest accounts to 8 hours</td>
<td>To set a maximum time for guests to request network access, select <strong>Limit guest accounts to</strong> and enter a time limit. When unspecified, the maximum network access approval period defaults to 8 hours. In the Guest Management Portal, sponsors can set a specific limit to the network access of their self-registering guests. When the time period elapses, the guest account expires, and the guest is required to register again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network access requests are automatically approved</td>
<td>Allows guests to be automatically approved after submitting a Guest Registration form. For details, see Allow Automatic Approval of Registered Guests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guests must be approved by the sponsor they provide or by</td>
<td>Requires that guests be explicitly approved by an individual in your organization. This can be a named corporate sponsor or predefined sponsors can be used for all guests. If you select this option, select one or more of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Pre-defined sponsors for all guests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Sponsors must be in these domains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Enable sponsor approval without authentication via email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For details, see Sponsor Approval of Guests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

| Require Verification Code | If selected, Forescout 8.1 sends a one-time verification code to the guest email address or mobile phone number entered in the registration form, and then requires the guest to enter the code before logging in. For details, see Work with Verification Codes. |

**Enable Guest Registration**

To enable not-yet-approved guests to self-register, select **Show a Login page link where guests can register for full network access as Signed-in Guests**. This prompts new guests to complete a Guest Registration form on which they provide identity details and the name of the individual who invited the guest to the network. A link to the Guest Registration form is provided on the corporate login page.

**Allow Only Pre-approved Guests**

If all guests must be pre-approved for network access, clear the **Show a Login page link where guests can register for full network access as Signed-in Guests** checkbox. Information about pre-approved guests is saved on the CounterACT Appliance. When pre-approved guests log in to your network, their credentials are checked against this information. Pre-approved guests can be added by:

- A sponsor in the [Guest Management Portal](#).
- A Forescout 8.1 operator in the [Guest Registration Pane](#). It is the responsibility of your organization to forward login credentials to these pre-approved guests. Forescout 8.1 does not do this.

**Allow Automatic Approval of Registered Guests**

For guests to be automatically approved after submitting a Guest Registration form, select the **Network access requests are automatically approved** option. You may want to do this if you anticipate many guests and do not have the resources to accept or reject each one, but do want to keep track of who is registered. Approved guests are displayed in the following locations:

- In the [Guest Management Portal](#) where sponsors can view the registered guests that specified them as their corporate contact.
- In the [Guest Registration Pane](#). Select Options from the Tools menu and then navigate to and select Guest Registration to display the Registered Guests tab and view the registered guest entries.

**Sponsor Approval of Guests**

If you require that guests be explicitly approved by an individual in your organization – a corporate *sponsor* – select the **Guests must be approved by the sponsor...** option. The sponsor specified by the guest on the Guest Registration form receives a notification email that includes a link to the corporate [Guest Management Portal](#). After logging in to the portal, sponsors can approve or decline network access to guests awaiting approval.

Before sponsor approval is completed, a notification page indicates that a network access request has been sent to the contact. The guest receives an email notification once access is approved.
Enable Sponsor Approval without Authentication via Emailed link

The guest registration request notification email that is sent to sponsors always includes a link to the corporate Guest Management Portal. Select Enable Sponsor Approval without Authentication via Emailed link to include an additional link in the notification email to a Network Access Request page containing the specific guest registration request.

- The first link opens the Login page of the Guest Management Portal, where a sponsor can log in and administer all their guest registration requests.
If the Forescout 8.1 user selected the Enable sponsor approval without authentication via emailed link option in the Guests tab of the HTTP Login action, then a second link is included. This link opens a Network Access Request page, where the sponsor can approve or decline the network access request of the specific guest.

This option is useful if:

- You do not want to require sponsors to log in to the Guest Management Portal to approve guest registration requests.
- Sponsors are temporarily unable to access the Guest Management Portal.
- Your organization does not employ an Active Directory server to verify the credentials of its personnel. (Logging in to the Guest Management Portal requires Active Directory verification of user domain credentials).

Use of this option maintains backward compatibility with HTTP Login action functionality of previous versions.

If Enable sponsor approval without authentication via emailed link is selected, it is recommended to select Sponsors must be in these domains to ensure that only corporate employees receive the emailed link.

Pre-defined sponsors for all guests

Select this option to provide a comma-separated list of emails of corporate sponsors. In addition to the primary sponsor named by each guest in the Contact Person and the Contact Person Email fields of the Guest Registration form, these sponsors will also receive guest registration notifications.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

**Sponsors must be in these domains**

To make the approval process more scalable, your network guests can be approved by individuals in your organization, based on the domain address of the Contact Person Email specified in the Guest Registration form.

Select this option to provide a comma-separated list of corporate domains. The entries specified in this field limit the allowed domain(s) in the Contact Person Email field of the Guest Registration form submitted by a registering guest. For example, if the field contains the entries `finance.my-company.com`, `marketing.my-company.com`, `sample.com`, then only an email address that ends with one of these domains, such as `jane@marketing.my-company.com`, is valid for use in the Contact Person Email field.

**Work with Verification Codes**

Verification codes are used when working with the HTTP Login action that requires guests to register before the Guest Registration request is processed. Use this feature to verify that the email address or phone number entered by the guest in the registration form is valid. Forescout 8.1 sends a one-time verification code to the guest email address or mobile phone number that they entered in their registration form, and then requires the guest to enter the code before logging in.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

Verification codes are automatically generated and validated by Forescout 8.1.

**To work with verification codes:**


2. From the drop-down menu, select whether the verification code is to be sent via email only, via mobile phone only, or via both email and mobile phone. The email messages includes a customized message. The mobile text message includes only the verification code.

To send a verification code to a mobile device, you must define how Forescout 8.1 submits the message to the mobile carrier.

**To define text messaging through a mobile carrier:**

3. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **General > Mobile Text Message**.

4. Select **Add**.
5. Select **Mail Carrier** to send text message requests to a carrier in email format or select **URL Carrier** to send text message requests to a carrier in a URL string.

6. Select **OK**.

7. In the Add Carrier dialog box, enter a name that identifies this carrier in the **Name** field. In the other fields of the dialog box, enter string patterns that define the format used to submit message requests.

   - For message requests in email format, the fields correspond to the Address, Subject, and Message fields of an email message.

   - For message requests in URL format, a single URL field is used to submit the message request. In addition, an optional Proxy URL field lets you specify an alternative URL.
In these fields, use the following parameters as placeholders for values that are inserted into the request:

- \_PHONE\_NUMBER\_ is the target phone number for the text message. For example, for guest registration this is the phone number submitted by the guest.
- \_MESSAGE\_ is message text inserted in the request. For example, for guest registration this is the registration code.

8. Select Test to send a sample message request using the defined format. Enter values for the \_PHONE\_NUMBER\_ and \_MESSAGE\_ parameters, and select OK to submit the message request. Confirm receipt of the test message on the target mobile device.

9. In the Add Carrier dialog box, select OK. The carrier is added to the list in the Mobile Text Message pane.

**Viewing Registered Guests**

Approved guests can be viewed in the Guest Management Portal and in the Guest Registration Pane.

**Working with Guest Tags**

Use guest tags to categorize guests into groups, for example, Limited Access guests and Full Access guests or Building A guests and Building B guests.

You can create policies that evaluate guests for their guest tag assignments. For example, create a policy that detects Building A-tagged guests and assigns them to a specific VLAN or allows them minimum network access.

See Manage Guest Tags for details.

**Registration Page Tab**

The information in the Registration Page tab is only used if guest registration is enabled in the Guests tab.

Use the Registration Page options to design the Guest Registration form.
- Define the title and message that appears in the Guest Registration form.
- Define the form fields that you want guests to use.
- (Optional) Require guests to enter a registration code to begin the registration process.
To design the Guest Registration form:

1. In the **Header** field define a Guest Registration form title.

2. In the Registration Instructions text box, define the message to appear on the page.

3. Select **Use registration code** to require guests to enter a registration code before beginning the registration process. This ensures that only guests with whom you've shared a registration code can apply for network access. These codes are automatically generated by Forescout 8.1, but they must be shared with endpoint users manually. See Retrieve Registration Codes.

4. Select **Enable automatic login without a password** if you want to allow users to log in without a password. When this option is selected, there is no authentication.

5. The **Email** field is always mandatory, and guests are identified by its contents.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

- Clear the **Allow invalid email addresses** checkbox to ensure that this field contains a valid email address.
- In environments where users are identified by information other than their email address, select **Allow invalid email addresses** so that any value is accepted in the **Email** field.

To ensure that only one guest identification field is displayed in the Guest Registration form, it is recommended to set the **Full Name** dropdown menu to **Hide** whenever **Allow invalid email addresses** is selected. For each field in the list, select one of the following:

- **Hide**: The field is not displayed in the registration form.
- **Show**: The field is displayed in the registration form and is optional.
- **Mandatory**: The field is displayed in the registration form, and the user must enter a value.

6. If tags are defined in your environment, you can add tags to the registration form.

The available fields include five custom fields that you can configure. For example, **Custom1** might be renamed **Building Name** to indicate the name of the building where the guest will be located.

**To assign custom names:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Advanced > Language Localization > Endpoint Messages**.
2. Enter "**Custom**" in the search field.

3. Edit the fields as required, select **Close**, and then select **Apply**.

**Corporate Tab**

Use the Corporate tab to define which servers are used for domain authentication, as well as other authentication settings.

Before configuring corporate users, you must have already configured User Directory servers. Typically, this configuration is performed when setting up the Console using the Initial Setup Wizard.
To see which servers are defined, select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **User Directory**. See **User Directory** for details.

To enable corporate user authentication against an authentication server, select **Enable HTTP login for corporate users**.

To allow authentication against any of the authentication servers defined in the User Directory Plugin, select **Use any authentication server**.

To authenticate users against specific servers, select **Use specific authentication server** and then browse to and select those servers.

To allow the endpoint user to select a server against which to authenticate, select **Prompt users to select an authentication server**. When this option is selected, the Login page displays a Domain drop-down menu, from which the endpoint user can select a domain.
To display a Forescout Login Session window for corporate users, select the **Keep open a 'Login Session' window after guest login** option. The user must keep this window open to maintain a network to Internet connection, provided this access was granted in the policy. During this time, Forescout 8.1 resolves the Authentication, Signed In Status property for the endpoint as **Signed In as a Domain User**.

Control the number of machines a single user can log in to concurrently. Select **Allow each guest to be logged in concurrently on multiple devices** to allow multiple logins. If this option is not selected, a second login by the same user closes the first session on the original computer.

Select **Require the User Name to include the domain** to require corporate users to include the domain in the login page User Name field.

**Miscellaneous Tab**

Use the Miscellaneous tab to configure additional user login parameters.
**Use encrypted protocol (HTTPS)**

It is recommended to select **Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS)** to send the Login page via HTTPS. To send it via the non-encrypted HTTP protocol, clear the **Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS)** checkbox. See [Transmitting Actions via HTTPS](#) for details.

**Direct user to a predestinated site after successful login**

To force the user to begin browsing at a specific website, such as your corporate home page, select **After a successful login continue to this URL** and enter the URL.

**Allow user to skip login**

If you think login credentials may not be available to users, and you want them to have browsing access, select **Allow the user to skip login**. When selected, the Login page includes a guest link option.

**Attempt to open a browser at the endpoint**

You can define the action to automatically open a browser at the endpoint, instead of waiting for the user to browse. This ensures that the HTTP message gets to the network user faster. Select **Attempt to open the endpoint browser**. (This option is for managed machines only, and is not available for Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 Server machines.) Forescout 8.1 uses a script when this option is selected.

Refer to the *HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide* for details about how scripts work.

**Customize HTTP Login Action Text**

You can customize text that the HTTP Login action generates at the user endpoint. These texts appear in re-directed HTML pages that are generated at endpoints of users who attempt to access the corporate network.

In the **Endpoint Messages** pane, customize any of the HTTP Login action texts. In the pane, identify HTTP Login action texts by any one of the following Action column entries:

- Guest verification code...
- HTTP Login (with or without other values)
HTTP Login mobile

For details about customizing texts that Forescout 8.1 processing generates in a user's endpoint, see [Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages](#).

### HTTP Sign Out

The HTTP Sign Out action signs out detected endpoints that meet the following criteria:

- The endpoint user is currently signed in to the network via the HTTP Login action.
- The endpoint displays a Forescout Login Session window.
- The Signed In Status condition is tested to resolve the endpoint's login status.

The HTTP Sign Out action can be used when running policies created using the Corporate/Guest Control policy template in Forescout/CounterACT versions earlier than 8.0. These policies test the Signed In Status condition to determine if the user is currently signed in.

Corporate/Guest Control policies created using the template provided in version 8.0 and above do not test the Signed In Status condition. If the HTTP Sign Out action is run, it has no effect on the endpoint's HTTP Login status. To sign out these endpoints, go to the endpoint's Profile tab, and select the eraser icon before the Authentication Login property.

Use the action, for example, in a policy that requires users to re-authenticate following a specific event, such as a Link Down Trap (Trap Received property).
The HTTP Sign Out action updates the Authentication, Signed In Status property of the detected endpoint to Not Signed In.

Depending on the endpoint operating system, and how the endpoint is managed, this action can be implemented by the HPS Inspection Engine, the Linux Plugin, or the OS X Plugin.

**Classify Actions**

This section describes actions that classify endpoints:

- Set Function Classification
- Set OS Classification
- Set Network Function

**Set Function Classification**

This action lets you override a Function property value set by Primary Classification policies.
This is useful in the following situations:

- The classification resolved by Forescout 8.1 is not correct or Forescout 8.1 was not able to classify the endpoint based on its function.

- You are able to refine the device's classification. For example, Forescout 8.1 classified the device function as Healthcare, but you know it is actually an X-Ray device.

- The endpoint was excluded from the range of endpoints to be classified due to its sensitivity to probing.

If the Primary Classification template was deployed with the Add to Group actions enabled, the classified device is added to the related classification group. See Primary Classification Template for details.

If you agree to upload classification changes from your environment to Forescout, select the checkbox, and enter:

- The reason why the selected classification is appropriate for this endpoint
- The ideal classification for this endpoint, if it is not in the classification list

The feedback you enter in the field will be sent to Forescout to help provide better classification services.

To ensure that your changes are shared with Forescout, first go to Tools > Options > Advanced > Data Sharing, and select the option Share selected endpoint properties and plugin configuration and usage information with Forescout. See The Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program.

You can easily reset a manual classification assignment to that set by the Device Classification Engine by selecting Revert to Suggested Function Classification from the Cancel Actions drop-down menu.
Set OS Classification

This action lets you override an Operating System property value set by Primary Classification policies.

This is useful in the following situations:

- The classification resolved by Forescout 8.1 is not correct or Forescout 8.1 was not able to classify the endpoint based on its operating system.
- You are able to refine the device's classification. For example, Forescout 8.1 classified the operating system as Macintosh, but you know it is actually macOS 10.12 - Sierra.
- The endpoint was excluded from the range of endpoints to be classified due to its sensitivity to probing.

If the Primary Classification template was deployed with the Add to Group actions enabled, the classified device is added to the related classification group. See Primary Classification Template for details.

If you agree to upload classification changes from your environment to Forescout, select the checkbox, and enter:

- The reason why the selected classification is appropriate for this endpoint
- The ideal classification for this endpoint, if it is not in the classification list

The feedback you enter in the field will be sent to Forescout to help provide better classification services.
To ensure that your changes are shared with Forescout, first go to Tools > Options > Advanced > Data Sharing, and select the option Share selected endpoint properties and plugin configuration and usage information with Forescout. See The Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program.

You can easily reset a manual classification assignment to that set by the Device Classification Engine by selecting Revert to Suggested Operating System Classification from the Cancel Actions drop-down menu.

Set Network Function

This action lets you manually set a Network Function property value.

After a device is classified, it is added to the related Asset Classification group, provided that the Asset Classification template was deployed.

Primary Classification policies do not use the Network Function property.

You can easily reset a manual classification assignment to that set by the Device Classification Engine by selecting Cancel Manual Network Function Classification from the Cancel Actions drop-down menu.

Manage Actions

This section describes actions that manage endpoints:

- Add to Group
- Add Label
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

- Add Value to List
- Delete Label
- Delete Host
- Delete Properties
- Disable Remote Inspection
- HTTP Localhost Login
- Recheck Host
- Start SecureConnector / Stop SecureConnector
- Upgrade OS X SecureConnector
- Set Counter

Add to Group

A group is a collection of IP addresses that has something in common. For example, a group may contain endpoints that are printers. Use the Add to Group action to place endpoints that match a policy condition into a group.

Specify the group to which endpoints are added:

- To add endpoints to an existing group, select the first option and do one of the following:
  - Type the group name in the search field to locate it in the group tree.
  - Drop-down the group tree and navigate to the group.
- To create a new group and add the endpoint to it, select New Group. Specify a Name and Description, and indicate the new group's location in the tree.
- Select Ignored IPs to add endpoints to the Ignored IPs group; endpoints in this group are ignored by NAC and Discovery policies. See Creating an Ignored IP Address List.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

- Select **Properties - Passive Learning** to add endpoints to the Properties - Passive Learning group; Forescout 8.1 never contacts endpoints in this group to resolve properties, even for policy evaluation. See [Restricting Endpoint Inspection](#) for details.

Specify additional action options:

- Select **Expires when host no longer matches policy** if you want the endpoint to be removed from the group when it no longer matches the policy condition. When this option is cleared, you must manually remove endpoints from the group using Groups Manager. See [Working with Forescout Groups](#).

When the action adds endpoints to the Ignored IPs group, policies ignore members of this group, and **Expires when host no longer matches policy** is unavailable. When the action adds endpoints to the Properties-Passive Learning group, policies are evaluated for the endpoint based on passively learned information or third-party data sources.

- Specify the **Key** – the value by which each endpoint is associated with the group. Forescout 8.1 detects group association based on this value.

Although you can use an IPv6 address as the Key value when you use Group Manager, the Add to Group action only supports IPv4 addresses. To support IPv6-only endpoints, specify the MAC address as the Key.

**View Member-of-group Assignments to Troubleshoot Policy Matches**

You can quickly troubleshoot an endpoint policy match by viewing member-of-group assignments per policy. This information is graphically displayed in a Policy flow diagram accessed from the All Policies tab for each endpoint detected. This is useful if you want to investigate why a certain action, such as **Assign to VLAN**, was applied to an endpoint. See [Root Cause Analysis of Endpoint Policy Match](#) for details.

**Add Label**

Labels mark and group endpoints based on properties or other evaluated values. Policies can apply further management logic based on labels assigned by a previous policy. This lets you construct complex policy behaviors that track endpoint history.

The Add Label action assigns a text label to endpoints that match the conditions of the policy. This action is located in the Manage group of the Actions tree.
In the **Label** field, define the label text. The label can combine static text strings and endpoint-specific information. Select **Add Tags** to insert data tags that resolve to host property values. Labels are listed with other endpoint details in Home and Asset Inventory views.

### Add Value to List

Use the Add Value to List action to place property values that match a policy condition into a list. For example, place all logged-in users of hosts at which a malicious event was detected by Forescout eyeSight into a ‘Malicious Users’ list. You can then use this list to define a policy that performs a restrict action on other hosts where the user logged-in to.

![Add Value to List action interface](image)

In the **List name** field, enter the name of the list that you want to add the property value to. The list name you enter must match the name of a previously defined list.

In the **Property value** field, use tags to define endpoint-specific property values. Select **Add Tags** to insert data tags that resolve to host property values.

Select the **Remove value when action is cancelled** option to remove the value from the list when the action is cancelled (i.e. when the host no longer matches the policy rule).

See [Defining and Managing Lists](#) for more information about lists.
Delete Label

Labels mark and group endpoints based on properties or other evaluated values. The Delete Label action removes a text label from endpoints that match the conditions of the policy. This action is located in the Manage group of the Actions tree.

In the Label field, define the label text. The label can combine static text strings and endpoint-specific information. Select Add Tags to insert data tags that resolve to host property values.

To delete several labels, enter a string using wildcard characters and then select Regular expression. All partially matched labels are deleted.

Select Ignore case to match label strings regardless of the use of uppercase or lowercase letters.

Delete Host

This action lets you instruct Forescout 8.1 to delete endpoints detected in a policy. Select Generate admission event to rediscover endpoints immediately after they are deleted. When you clear the checkbox, endpoints are rediscovered after they generate traffic.
Delete Properties

This action lets you instruct Forescout 8.1 to clear all detections made on endpoints. Clearing cancels any actions assigned to the endpoints as a result of the detection. Select **Generate admission event** to reevaluate the endpoint immediately after the detections are cleared. When you clear the checkbox, properties are evaluated after an endpoint generates traffic.

 Disable Remote Inspection

This action instructs Forescout 8.1 not to resolve host properties for the endpoint using Remote Inspection. Actions are still applied to the endpoint. This action is maintained as long as the endpoint matches the conditions of the policy rule, or until the action is manually cancelled for the endpoint.

This action may be useful in situations where administrators want to minimize traffic to and deep inspection of sensitive computers at sensitive times. For example, Forescout 8.1 administrators can use this action to support end users on trading floors or in process control environments that require minimal endpoint traffic and CPU overhead during periods of peak activity. Deep endpoint inspection can be performed using remote inspection during downtime periods.

Endpoints managed using SecureConnector are not affected by this action.
HTTP Localhost Login

You may need to inspect guest machines that are not part of the network domain, ensure that they comply with corporate policies, and enforce network restrictions that are not in compliance. These endpoints are referred to as unmanageable hosts and can be included in your policy.

Use the HTTP Localhost Login action to detect unmanageable guest endpoints, and allow users at the endpoints to authenticate. After the endpoints are authenticated, they can be included in all policy inspections.

If you are using Flexx licensing, ensure that you have a valid Forescout eyeControl license to use this action. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information about managing licenses.

HTTP Localhost Login is disabled whenever HTTP Redirection is disabled. For more information, see Disable Web Portals.
Users at unmanageable endpoints are presented with an HTTP Login page when they attempt to access the web, and must provide their local login credentials to gain web access. If you have assigned other actions to the policy and the authentication is successful, all the policy’s actions are cancelled, removing all the limitations imposed.

If you think login credentials might not be available to users and do not want to limit their access, you can allow guest login to the web by selecting Allow Guest Login. When selected, the Login page includes a guest link option. You may want to do this, for example, when the guest user does not authenticate and as such is blocked from your network, but allowed web access.

The network user is prompted with a Login page on each attempt to access the web, until:

- The user successfully logs in.
- The endpoint is released via the Home view, Detections pane or Assets Portal.
- The guest login option is selected (when enabled).

It is recommended to select Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS) to send the redirected page via HTTPS. To send it via the non-encrypted HTTP protocol, clear the Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS) option. See Transmitting Actions via HTTPS for details.

**Recommended Conditions**

When using this action, you should configure the following condition properties. Use the **AND** value between both properties:

- Windows>Manageable Domain>Does not meet the following criteria
Windows>Manageable Local>Does not meet the following criteria

Depending on the endpoint operating system and how the endpoint is managed, this action is implemented by the HPS Inspection Engine, the Linux Plugin, or the OS X Plugin.

**Recheck Host**

Use this action to instruct Forescout 8.1 to recheck endpoints against conditions defined in a policy.

**Start SecureConnector / Stop SecureConnector**

The Start SecureConnector and Stop SecureConnector actions let you install or stop Forescout’s SecureConnector, a light footprint executable that runs on the endpoint. SecureConnector makes endpoints manageable and performs or optimizes certain actions.
Making Endpoints Manageable

Use SecureConnector to access unmanageable endpoints and make them manageable for deep inspection.

In general, Windows endpoints are unmanageable if their remote registry and file system cannot be accessed by Forescout 8.1. Similarly, Linux and OS X endpoints are unmanageable if they cannot be accessed using SSH direct access.

Typically this occurs when:

- Endpoints are not part of the domain, or are guests on the network
- Domain credentials do not work or are not available
- Endpoints browse to VPNs or wireless networks

Use the following properties to detect endpoints that cannot be managed without SecureConnector:

- For Windows endpoints (supported by the HPS Inspection Engine):
  - Windows Manageable Domain
  - Windows Manageable Domain (Current)
  - Windows Manageable Local

- For Linux endpoints (supported by the Linux Plugin):
  - Linux Manageable (SSH Direct Access)

- For OSX endpoints (supported by the OSX Plugin):
  - Macintosh Manageable (SSH Direct Access)

After you install SecureConnector, use the following properties to confirm that Forescout 8.1 accesses and manages an endpoint using SecureConnector:

- For Windows endpoints (supported by the HPS Inspection Engine):
  - Windows Manageable SecureConnector
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

- Windows Manageable SecureConnector (via any interface)
  - For Linux endpoints (supported by the Linux Plugin):
    - Linux Manageable (SecureConnector)
  - For OSX endpoints (supported by the OSX Plugin):
    - Macintosh Manageable (SecureConnector)

Performing or Optimizing Certain Actions

When Windows endpoints are managed by SecureConnector, the local SecureConnector instance optimizes implementation of the following actions:

- Assign to VLAN action 🔐 (required)
- Disable External Device action 🚦 (required)
- Send Balloon Notification action 🌈 (required)
- Disable Dual Homed action 🔩 (required)

For example, some of these actions detect and halt specific Windows processes. On Windows endpoints that have SecureConnector installed, the process is killed more frequently.

To use the local SecureConnector instance for some of these actions, optional configuration settings must be enabled when you configure the HPS Inspection Engine. For details, see the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide.

Interactive vs. Background Installation Methods

The Start SecureConnector action directs unmanaged endpoints to a web page at which end users interactively install SecureConnector. This web page is disabled whenever HTTP Redirection is disabled. For more information see Disable Web Portals.

Alternatively, there are non-interactive ways to download and install SecureConnector on endpoints in the background. For example:

- On endpoints that are manageable using Remote Inspection, you can use the Remote Installation option of the action to install SecureConnector using a background script.
- To support automated deployment independent of Forescout 8.1 policies, you can generate SecureConnector installer packages. Use your environment’s endpoint management/utility tools to distribute and run these installers.

More about SecureConnector

For details about how SecureConnector works, supported operating systems, and installation methods other than the ones described here, refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide, the Linux Plugin Configuration Guide, and the OS X Plugin Configuration Guide. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select the plugin, and then select Help.
Working with the Action

This section describes how to run SecureConnector via the Start SecureConnector action.

Message Tab

Use this tab to customize the notification page that is displayed to the end user. The message is displayed when the installation method chosen from the Parameters Tab is either HTTP Installation at the endpoint or Both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SecureConnector User Message</th>
<th>Text displayed as the page header.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SecureConnector Installation Instructions</td>
<td>Body text of the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm</td>
<td>Text displayed on the Confirm button. When users select this button, SecureConnector installation proceeds immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Later</td>
<td>Text displayed on the Check Later button. When users select this button, SecureConnector installation is deferred. This button is only displayed when the Allow endpoint to refuse SecureConnector installation option in the Parameters tab is enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

Parameters Tab

Use this tab to define Start SecureConnector installation and deployment parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Exceptions</th>
<th>Schedule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow endpoint to refuse SecureConnector installation</td>
<td>Install Method: HTTP Installation at the endpoint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deployment Type</td>
<td>Install Permanent As Service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show SysTray Icon</td>
<td>Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Allow endpoint to refuse SecureConnector installation

Allow users to the skip the installation by selecting the Check Later button. This option is only applicable if Install Method is set to HTTP Installation at the endpoint or Both.

Install Method

The following installation methods are available:

- **HTTP Installation at the endpoint**: Install at the endpoint via the end user’s web browser. When endpoint users browse the Internet they are redirected to a page that prompts them to download SecureConnector. The page can be customized. See Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages for details.

- **Remote installation**: Perform remote installation on manageable endpoints using domain credentials. ForeScout 8.1 uses a script when this option is selected.

- **Both**: Both methods are activated simultaneously. If an remote installation succeeds, HTTP installation is halted.

Deployment Type

The following deployments types are available:

- **Install Dissolvable**: Configure SecureConnector to close at reboot or disconnection from the network, leaving no footprints. If SecureConnector is not installed via the Dissolvable mode, it can be removed using the uninstall option on the endpoint.

- **Install Permanent as Service**
  - Install Permanent as Application (Windows only)
  - Install SecureConnector permanently on the endpoint as a user application or a root-level service.

Installing SecureConnector as a Service provides the following advantages:

- Enhanced SecureConnector performance, especially when working with interactive actions such as Run Script on Windows.

- SecureConnector can be run before login and after logout. Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details.

On Windows endpoints, the Install as Application option installs SecureConnector as an application under the currently logged in user. When no user is logged in, SecureConnector is not installed.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Show Systray icon</strong></th>
<th>Show the <strong>Forescout</strong> icon on the endpoint after SecureConnector is installed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS)</strong></td>
<td>Send the redirection page via HTTPS. See <strong>Transmitting Actions via HTTPS</strong> for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exceptions Tab**

Use this tab to specify exceptions to this action. The segments you specify here are not redirected to the SecureConnector download page.

**Schedule Tab**

Use this tab to define an action schedule. See **Action Schedules** for details.

**Upgrade OS X SecureConnector**

Unlike other plugins that support SecureConnector for Windows and Linux endpoints, the OS X plugin does not automatically update SecureConnector on endpoints when you install a new release of the plugin. Use this action to update SecureConnector on Mac OS X endpoints after you upgrade the OS X Plugin.

This action updates the SecureConnector package running on a Mac OS X endpoint. Deployment type (permanent/dissolvable) and menu bar visibility options are preserved during upgrade.

In the Installer package URL field, specify a valid network path to the update.tgz archive that is used to update endpoints. By default, this field points to the file that the OS X Plugin places on each CounterACT Appliance. If you copy this archive to a content distribution network or server, specify the full network path to this new location. For details, refer to the **OS X Plugin Configuration Guide**.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

Set Counter

This action creates or increments a counter. This action is located in the Manage group of the Actions tree.

Use the following fields to define an action that creates a new counter or increments an existing counter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>A text label for the counter. Because counters are maintained for each endpoint, this label can combine static text strings and endpoint-specific information to yield an endpoint-specific label. Select Add Tags to insert data tags that resolve to host property values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment</td>
<td>The numerical value added to the existing value of the counter. The counter is incremented for an endpoint each time that endpoint matches the conditions of the rule. To reset an existing counter to zero, specify 0 in this field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you create a policy that defines a new counter, use only the Set Counter action. A policy that increments an existing counter must use both the Counter property and the Set Counter action. See Set and Increment Counters for details.

Notify Actions

This section describes actions used for communicating with endpoint users:

- HTTP Notification
- HTTP Redirection to URL
- Send Balloon Notification
- Send Email
- Send Email to User
HTTP Notification

The user’s web session is redirected when attempting to access the web. The user is presented with a message that you compose.

- HTTP Notification is disabled whenever HTTP Redirection is disabled. For more information, see Disable Web Portals.

Web sessions are redirected until:

- The user confirms reading the message. See Parameters Tab for information about how to do this. After confirmation, a pop-up message informs users that they are being redirected to an external website.

- The endpoint is released via the Home view, Detections pane or Assets Portal.
**Message Tab**

Enter the message that you want the user to read.

You can receive information regarding end user confirmation of browser notification messages. To discover which users have confirmed, add a confirmation string to the **Button text** field and create a policy with the new HTTP Confirmation Events Property.

By default, the user’s session is redirected when the user attempts to access the web. However, you can define the action to automatically open a browser at the endpoint, instead of waiting for the user to browse. This ensures that the message gets to the user faster. Select **Attempt to open a browser at the detected endpoint**. (This option is not available for Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 server machines, and only works on managed machines.) Forescout 8.1 uses a script when this option is selected. Refer to the *HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide* for details about how scripts work.

You can also customize the height and width of the notification page and open the notification page as an Explorer dialog box, rather than displaying it using the default web browser. For details, see "Tuning" in the *HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide*.

**Parameters Tab**

- To allow the endpoint user to only confirm the message once, select **Show message only until user confirms**.
- To send the redirected page via HTTPS, select **Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS)**. See *Transmitting Actions via HTTPS* for details.
- Endpoints users can run a policy recheck directly from the notification page by selecting **Allow immediate recheck**. This allows endpoints to verify compliance status in between Forescout 8.1 defined rechecks. On-demand rechecks at the endpoint enable faster overall network compliance and increase productivity. You can hide this option by clearing **Allow immediate recheck**.
- Select **Open single page** to only redirect the first web browser tab, allowing the user to continue browsing in other tabs. Verify that **Attempt to open a browser at the detected endpoint** is selected on the Message tab.
HTTP Redirection to URL

The user’s web session is redirected to a specific web page. You can combine this action with the HTTP Notification action, redirect the endpoint web session to a specific site and add a customized message.

If you are using Flexx licensing, ensure that you have a valid Forescout eyeControl license to use this action. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for more information about managing licenses.

HTTP Redirection to URL is disabled whenever HTTP Redirection is disabled. For more information, see Disable Web Portals.

HTTP Redirection to URL

By default, the user’s session is redirected when the user attempts to access the web. However, you can define the action to automatically open a browser at the endpoint, instead of waiting for the user to browse. This ensures that the message gets to the user faster. Select Attempt to open a browser at the detected endpoint. (This option is not available for Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 server machines, and only works on managed machines.) Forescout 8.1 uses a script when this option is selected. Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about how scripts work. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select this plugin, and then select Help.

By default, the action is only applied one time during the match period. The first time the end user enters a URL in the web browser, the endpoint is redirected to the URL configured in the action. You can configure this action to continuously apply to endpoints that match the policy rule by clearing the Redirect endpoint only once checkbox. As a result, the endpoint is always redirected to the URL configured in the action within the match period.

Send Balloon Notification

Use this action to send a balloon message to the detected endpoint. Use of this feature requires that the endpoint be connected via SecureConnector.

Users can type messages of up to 200 characters and indicate whether the message should appear with an Error, Warning or Information icon.
The character limit may vary slightly in certain languages.

Balloon messages are displayed in the endpoint system tray.

**Send Email**

Send an email notification to the administrator or to other addresses. Basic information about the endpoint is displayed by default in the email message. Add additional text as required. When composing the message, you can insert any number of property tags. For example, if you enter `{ip}`, the IP address at which the events were detected is automatically inserted into the message. See Property Tags for details.

Select Aggregate messages to help you manage email deliveries. When selected, the values set for Policy Email Preferences are applied to this action. Specifically these preferences define:

- The maximum number of email alerts delivered per day (from midnight)
- The maximum number of events that are listed in each email

See Policy Preferences for details.
You can sign these emails using a digital certificate, as specified by the Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) standard. See Signing Emails with an S/MIME Certificate for details.

**Send Email to User**

This action sends an email message to the User Directory, User Mail Address that is registered with the detected endpoint.

Basic information about the endpoint is displayed by default in the email message. Add additional text as required. When composing the message, you can insert any number of property tags. For example, if you enter \{ip\}, the IP address at which the event was detected is automatically inserted into the message. See Property Tags for details.

You can sign these emails using a digital certificate, as specified by the Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) standard. See Signing Emails with an S/MIME Certificate for details.
Send Notification (OS X) Action

This action sends an alert or banner notification message to an OS X endpoint managed by SecureConnector. The Notification Center of the user currently logged in to the endpoint handles the message. This action parallels the Send Balloon Notification action for Windows endpoints. You can use property tags to include endpoint-specific property values in the notification. See Property Tags for details.

Banner notifications appear briefly on screen. Alerts persist on screen until the user interacts with them.

Remediate Actions

This section describes actions that help you remediate endpoint vulnerabilities:

- Disable Adapters on Dual Homed Devices
- Disable External Devices
- Expedite IP Discovery
- Kill Instant Messaging
- Kill Cloud Storage
- Kill Peer-to-Peer
- Kill Process on Linux and Kill Process on Macintosh
- Kill Process on Windows
- Run Script on Forescout 8.1
- Run Script on Linux and Run Script on Macintosh
- Run Script on Windows
- Set Registry Key on Windows
- Start Antivirus
- Start Macintosh Updates
- Start Windows Updates
- Update Antivirus
- Windows Self Remediation
If you are using Flexx licensing, ensure that you have a valid Forescout eyeControl license to use these actions. Refer to the *Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide* for more information about managing licenses.

The Expedite IP Discovery action is an exception, and does not require an eyeControl license.

**Disable Adapters on Dual Homed Devices**

The action disables network adapters that act as a bridge between trusted and untrusted networks on endpoints managed by SecureConnector. All connections are disabled, except for the connection used by SecureConnector. Disabled adapters are re-enabled when SecureConnector disconnects from the trusted network.

This action applies only to endpoints managed by SecureConnector.

**Disable External Devices**

This action disables external devices connected to Windows endpoints, for example, USB mass storage devices, modems, printers, cameras, NIC cards, PCMCIA, CD/DVD, gaming, and smartphones. The devices remain blocked until the action is cancelled, even if the device is inserted, removed and later reinserted. This action requires that endpoints be managed with SecureConnector, and requires the proper configuration and activation of the HPS Inspection Engine. Use the External Devices property when working with the action.

This action requires that endpoints be managed with SecureConnector. You can automatically install SecureConnector when deploying this action. Select Options from the Tools menu, select HPS Inspection Engine and then select the SecureConnector tab.
Expedite IP Discovery

The Expedite IP Discovery action is a remediate action provided by the Switch Plugin. Use this action to address situations of delayed endpoint IP discovery. The action expedites the resolution of endpoint IP addresses (IP discovery resolve requests) by the Switch Plugin querying the ARP table of designated, adjacent, L3-enabled network devices.

Expedite endpoint IP discovery using adjacent network device. Intended for situations where endpoint IP discovery is limited (for example, L2 only switch) or not permitted (for example, no SPAN port). This action will query L3-enabled devices assigned to the same Connectivity Groups as is the endpoint’s connecting network device.

For details about this action, including the symptoms and root causes of delayed endpoint IP discovery, refer to the Forescout Switch Plugin Configuration Guide. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select the Switch Plugin, and then select Help.


**Kill Instant Messaging**

This action halts specific instant messaging applications that are running on Windows endpoints.

The Windows Applications Plugin provides updates to the applications supported by this action. Refer to the *Windows Applications Configuration Guide* for more information about the module. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select **Windows Applications**, and then select **Help**.

By default, the application is killed once a minute. If the endpoint has SecureConnector installed it is killed once a second. You can automatically install SecureConnector on endpoints when this action is applied.

**To install SecureConnector:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **HPS - Inspection Engine**.
2. Select the **SecureConnector** tab.
3. Select **SecureConnector**.
4. Select **Automatically run SecureConnector on Windows endpoints**.
5. Select **Apply** and select **Close**.
Forescout 8.1 uses a script on the endpoint to apply this action if the endpoint is managed via domain credentials (*Windows Manageable (Domain)* is True). See the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about scripts. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select this plugin, and then select **Help**.

**Kill Cloud Storage**

This action halts specified cloud storage applications that are running on Windows endpoints.

By default, the application is killed once a minute. If the endpoint has SecureConnector installed it is killed once a second.

To increase the kill frequency, Forescout 8.1 can automatically install SecureConnector on endpoints when this action is applied to them. When you configure the HPS Inspection Engine, select the **Automatically run SecureConnector on Windows endpoints to increase frequency of Kill Process, Kill IM and P2P actions** checkbox.

See the *HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide* for details about SecureConnector configuration. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select the plugin, and then select **Help**.

Forescout 8.1 uses a script on the endpoint to apply this action if the endpoint is managed via domain credentials (*Windows Manageable (Domain)* is True). Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about scripts.

The Windows Applications Plugin provides updates to the applications supported by this action. Refer to the *Windows Applications Configuration Guide* for more information about the module. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select **Windows Applications**, and then select **Help**.
Kill Peer-to-Peer

This action halts specific peer-to-peer applications installed on Windows endpoints.

By default, the application is killed once a minute. If the endpoint has SecureConnector installed it is killed once a second. You can automatically install SecureConnector on endpoints when this action is applied.

To install SecureConnector:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select HPS - Inspection Engine.
2. Select the SecureConnector tab.
4. Select Apply and then select Close.

Forescout 8.1 uses a script on the endpoint to apply this action if the endpoint is managed via domain credentials (Windows Manageable (Domain) is True). Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about scripts. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select this plugin, and then select Help.

The Windows Applications Plugin provides updates to the applications supported by this action. Refer to the Windows Applications Configuration Guide for more information about the module. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select Windows Applications, and then select Help.
Kill Process on Linux and Kill Process on Macintosh

These actions halt specific Linux and Macintosh processes. The process is killed once per second. To carry out this action, the endpoint must be connected to via SecureConnector.

If the process name includes endpoint-specific or user-specific data such as the user name, you can add it as a variable by inserting a tag. For example, if you enter the \{user\} tag, the user name of the endpoint is automatically inserted into the process name. See Property Tags for details. Depending on the endpoint operating system, and how the endpoint is managed, this action is implemented by the Linux Plugin, or the OS X Plugin.

Kill Process on Windows

This action halts specific Windows processes.

If the process name includes endpoint-specific or user-specific data such as the user name, you can add it as a variable by inserting a tag. For example, if you enter the \{user\} tag, the user name of the endpoint is automatically inserted into the process name. See Property Tags for details.
By default, the process is killed once a minute. If the endpoint has SecureConnector installed, it is killed once a second.

You can automatically install SecureConnector on endpoints when this action is applied.

Quickly find the endpoints with the process you are looking for by using the Windows Processes Running property.

**To install SecureConnector when using this action:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **HPS - Inspection Engine**.
2. Select the SecureConnector tab.
3. Select **Automatically run SecureConnector on Windows endpoints**.
4. Select **Apply** and then select **Close**.

```
Forescout 8.1 uses a script on the endpoint to apply this action if the endpoint is managed via domain credentials (**Windows Manageable (Domain)** is True). Refer to the **HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide** for details about scripts. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select this plugin, and then select **Help**.
```

**Run Script on Forescout 8.1**

This action runs a script or command for endpoints that match the conditions of the policy. This action is located in the Remediate group of the Actions tree.

Forescout 8.1 evaluates the script or command for each endpoint that matches previous conditions of the policy.

```
If you are running a script in an action, the **{IP}** tag should be added to the script by the Administrator if it is required as an argument.
```

Select the Schedule tab to apply scheduling options to this action.
Run Script on Linux and Run Script on Macintosh

You can leverage scripts to:

- Automatically run Macintosh and Linux updates.
- Automatically deploy vulnerability patches.
- Automatically delete files.
- Create customized scripts to perform any action that you want.

For example, to prevent music sharing, use these actions to run the following command on endpoints:

`net share "my music"/delete`

On Linux:

```
[Image of Linux plugin configuration]
```

On Macintosh:

```
[Image of Macintosh plugin configuration]
```

Depending on the endpoint operating system, and how the endpoint is managed, this action is implemented by the Linux Plugin or the OS X Plugin.
To use these actions:

1. Specify a command or script to run on endpoints. Do one of the following:
   - Enter a command in the **Command or Script** field. To run a file that already exists on the endpoint, enter its absolute path. You can use property tags to include endpoint-specific or user-specific values in this field.
   - Select **Continue** to select from the repository of user-defined scripts and commands.

2. Specify the following optional behaviors, if required.

   **Run interactive (Macintosh endpoints)**
   - Select this option to run the specified command or script interactively on Mac OS X endpoints.
   - On endpoints managed by the OS X Plugin using SecureConnector, prompts are displayed to the currently logged in user in a terminal window. Refer to the OS X Plugin Configuration Guide for details.

   **Run script as root user on endpoint (Linux endpoints)**
   - Select this option to run the specified script using root user privileges on Linux endpoints. Select this option when a script requires root privileges, but Forescout 8.1 does not use root credentials to access the endpoint.
   - To use this option the **sudo** utility must be enabled on Linux endpoints. When sudo mode is password protected, you must configure a password that lets Forescout 8.1 enter sudo mode. Refer to the Linux Plugin Configuration Guide.

3. Use the options on the Schedule tab to specify when the action is applied, to delay application of the action, or to specify repeat application of the action.

**Run Script on Windows**

This action is used to achieve automated, centrally managed remediation across the network. Leverage scripts, for example, to:

- Automatically run Windows updates.
- Automatically deploy vulnerability patches.
- Automatically delete files.
- Automatically deploy antivirus updates.
Create customized scripts to perform any action that you want.

This action may only be used on managed Windows machines.

To run script on Windows:

1. Select Yes from the Run Interactive drop-down menu if the script launches a process or dialog box at the endpoint.

The Terminal Services service must be running if interactive scripts are used. If you use this action and it fails, the service may have been stopped.

2. Enter a command or browse to a file that you want to run. If you use a file that exists on the endpoint, enter its absolute path. The commands and scripts that you create are automatically saved on all Appliances. All file extensions are supported and can be run. However, VBS file extensions are prefixed with cscript.

3. You can create a repository of scripts and apply them as needed. Select the browse button from the Parameters tab to manage the scripts you created.
4. Quickly recheck endpoints after they are remediated by the script. Select **Recheck policies after script is run (seconds)** and indicate how many seconds to wait before carrying out the recheck.

Forescout 8.1 uses a script on the endpoint to apply this action if the endpoint is managed via domain credentials (**Windows Manageable (Domain)** is True). Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about scripts. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select this plugin, and then select **Help.**

**Set Registry Key on Windows**

Create registry keys and add or update registry key values and data. The following data types are supported:

- **REG_SZ**
- **REG_BINARY**
- **REG_DWORD**
- **REG_EXPAND_SZ**
- **REG_MULTI_SZ**

Forescout 8.1 cannot set the registry key under "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE" unless permissions on the relevant registry key are set to everyone/full control.

Forescout 8.1 uses a script on the endpoint to apply this action if the endpoint is managed via domain credentials (**Windows Manageable (Domain)** is True). Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about scripts. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select this plugin, and then select **Help.**
For most supported data types, enter a single value in the **Registry Value Data** field.

The REG_MULTI_SZ data type accepts multiple values. To define a list of values, press **Enter** so that each value occupies its own line in the **Registry Value Data** field.

To concatenate two lines, add the string **__fsln__** before you press **Enter**. For example, when the following text is entered in the **Registry Value Data** field, three key values are added:

```
  aaa
  bbb__fsln__
  ccc
  ddd
```

When the action implements this text, it defines the following Registry key values:

```
  aaa
  bbbccc
  ddd
```

The strings **bbb** and **ccc** are separated by an end-of-line character.

> The string **__fsln__** begins and ends with two underscore characters.

### Start Antivirus
Launch antivirus applications that have been halted at Windows endpoints.
An extensive range of applications are supported. For example,

- Symantec
- McAfee
- Kaspersky
- AVG
- avast
- and more

The Windows Applications Plugin provides updates to the applications supported by this action. Refer to the Windows Applications Configuration Guide for more information about the module. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select Windows Applications, and then select Help.

**Suppress Splash Screens for Background Installation**

As an option, you can configure Forescout 8.1 to suppress the splash screen that is presented to end users by some vendors’ installation/upgrade packages. This allows the action to implement silent, background installation of selected Antivirus packages on the endpoint.

- This option is available for users working with Symantec, McAfee, and Trend Micro.

**To suppress splash screens for the Update Antivirus action:**

1. Log in to an Appliance command-line interface (CLI).
2. Run the following command:
   ```
fstool set_property config.av_non_interactive_mode.value <vendor>
   ```
   Where `<vendor>` may be Symantec, McAfee or Trend Micro.

**Recommended Usage – Conditions**

When using this action, you should configure the following condition properties:

- Windows Security>Windows Antivirus Installed>Meets the following criteria
- Windows Security>Windows Antivirus Running>Does not meet the following criteria

**Start Macintosh Updates**

This action lets you provide the endpoint with patches for missing Macintosh updates. It displays a notification to end users indicating that specific security and other updates are missing on their machines. The notification includes a list of links that should be accessed in order to install the updates.

Use the action in policies that have incorporated the Macintosh > Macintosh Software Updates Missing property. This indicates which software updates are missing on the endpoint.

Depending on the endpoint operating system, and how the endpoint is managed, this action is implemented by the Linux Plugin or the OS X Plugin.
The Software Update page continues to display at the endpoint after all the patches have been installed. The page, however, is empty. You can stop or disable the action if you do not want an empty Software Update page to appear.

**Start Windows Updates**

This action uses the standard Microsoft system for vulnerability remediation. It causes Microsoft software to assess the endpoint’s vulnerabilities, decide which patches are required, and download and install the patches.

This action removes the need to manage the vulnerabilities of new endpoints before they connect to the network. It can automatically bring all new endpoints into vulnerability compliance when they connect to the network and keep them compliant.

You can also minimize bandwidth usage during Microsoft vulnerability patch download. See Minimize Bandwidth Usage During Microsoft Vulnerability Patch Download.
Use this action in policies that have incorporated the Windows Security > Microsoft Vulnerabilities property and the Windows Security > Windows Update Agent Installed property.

To work with this feature, you must define:

- A remediation server to work with
- An update method

**Remediation Server**

Microsoft remediation can be done via the Microsoft website or via a Microsoft WSUS server.

**Microsoft Website**

Remediation via the website requires connectivity to the Internet. For more information about these methods, refer to the Microsoft website.

**WSUS Server**

Remediation via WSUS requires connectivity to the WSUS server. You can also enter a WSUS Target Group name. This enhances update performance.

When using WSUS, consider the following:

- In addition to setting up the WSUS server, you must define the WSUS environment parameters in the HPS Inspection Engine (see below).
- When the Start Windows Updates action is performed on an endpoint, the WSUS parameters are permanently defined in the endpoint registry.
- You can clear the **Apply WSUS settings** parameter to avoid having the WSUS parameters defined in the endpoint registry. If you do this, be aware that if the endpoint’s WSUS settings are not defined correctly, the endpoint will not be remediated.
To define WSUS environment parameters:
1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **HPS Inspection Engine**.
2. Select the Windows Update tab.
3. Enter the URL of the WSUS server and the reports server.
   You can test connection with the server by selecting **Test**.
4. Select **Apply** and then select **Close**.

**Configuration in the WSUS Server**

You can configure WSUS target groups to enhance update performance. To work with this feature, you must perform the following configuration in the WSUS server console.

1. Open the WSUS server console.
2. Select **Options**.
3. Select **Computer**.
4. Select **Use Group Policy or registry settings on computer**.

**Update Methods**

Three methods are available. Changes made at the endpoint as a result of the method selected here are kept permanently on the endpoint.

**Automatically Download and Install**

The patches are downloaded without user notification or interaction.

**Automatically Download and Notify of Installation**

The endpoint user is notified that updates are available. The endpoint user can either update immediately or wait till later. Some patches may require machine reboot; in this case, Forescout 8.1 reboots the machine according to endpoint settings.

The Windows Automatic update may have been defined to let the user decide which patches to install.
Use Windows Automatic Update Settings

The Windows Automatic Update settings are used to determine how the update is performed.

In a scenario where Turn off Automatic Updates is configured on the Windows Endpoint and the update method is defined as Use Windows “Automatic Updates” Settings, the action will not be carried out. To force the update, see How to Handle Updates when Windows Automatic Updates Are Turned Off.

How to Handle Updates when Windows Automatic Updates Are Turned Off

If Turn off Automatic Updates is configured on the Windows endpoint, the Use Windows “Automatic Updates” Settings action is not carried out. Nonetheless, you can force the update by implementing the following configurations.

To force Windows automatic updates:

1. In the Windows Updates Dialog Box, select When ‘Windows Update’ is disabled. If the checkbox is cleared, and this scenario exists, the action is not carried out.
2. In the HPS Inspection Engine configuration pane:
   a. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **HPS Inspection Engine**.
   b. Select the Windows Updates tab.
   c. In the **Windows Update Default Settings** section, select the Update Method to use. The following options are available:
      - Automatically Download and Install
      - Automatically Download and Notify of Installation

**Minimize Bandwidth Usage During Microsoft Vulnerability Patch Download**

The Windows Vulnerability DB provides Microsoft vulnerability updates to CounterACT Appliances. The plugin works by pushing Microsoft vulnerability update information to the HPS Inspection Engine installed on CounterACT Appliances. These updates are used when working with vulnerability policies and are downloaded at the endpoint. Users can reduce network bandwidth during this process by limiting the number of concurrent HTTP downloads to endpoints. By default, the maximum is 20.
**Update Antivirus**

Update outdated antivirus applications at Windows endpoints.

You may need to select more than one vendor if you think different antivirus vendors are installed on the same endpoints in the policy scope. This setup is not recommended. If more than one vendor is installed on the same endpoint, the update will only be run on one.

Forescout 8.1 uses a script on the endpoint when carrying out this action if the endpoint is managed via domain credentials Manageable (Domain). Refer to the HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide for details about how scripts work. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select this plugin, and then select Help.

The Windows Applications Plugin provides updates to the vendor applications supported by this action. Refer to the Windows Applications Configuration Guide for a detailed list of supported applications. Select Tools > Options > Modules, select Windows Applications, and then select Help.

**Recommended Usage – Conditions**

When using this action, you should configure the following condition properties:

- Windows Security>Windows Antivirus Installed>Meets the following criteria
- Windows Security>Windows Antivirus Running>Meets the following criteria
- Windows Security>Windows Antivirus Update Date>Meets the following criteria
Windows Self Remediation

This action delivers web notification to network users indicating that specific vulnerabilities were detected on their machines. The notification includes a list of links that should be selected by the endpoint users in order to patch vulnerabilities. Users cannot access the web until their endpoint is patched. The process for verifying this is automated when the endpoint is rechecked. An option is also available for the user to run the recheck directly from the web page.

Remediation patches are automatically be downloaded in the language supported by the endpoint operating system. Messages that appear during the remediation process are displayed in the local language as well.

- Automated remediation is also available. See Start Windows Updates.
- Use the manual option if you want endpoint users to have more control over patching vulnerabilities on their machines.
- Windows Self Remediation is not accessible when HTTP Redirection is disabled. For details, see Disable Web Portals.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

It is recommended to select **Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS)** to send the redirected page via HTTPS. To send it via the non-encrypted HTTP protocol, clear the **Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS)** checkbox. See [Transmitting Actions via HTTPS](#) for details.

You can define the action to automatically open a browser at the endpoint instead of waiting for the user to browse. This ensures that the message gets to the user faster. Select **Attempt to open a browser at the detected endpoint**. (This option is unavailable for Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 server machines, and for unmanaged machines.) Forescout 8.1 uses a script when this option is selected and the endpoint is managed via domain credentials. Refer to the [HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide](#) for details about scripts. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select this plugin, and then select **Help**.

Network users can select the **More Info** link to review details about the vulnerability detected.
Network users can select the **Recheck my Computer** link to immediately recheck the status of their computer. If the required files are not downloaded and rechecked, redirection continues.

**Recommended Conditions**

When using this action, you should configure the following condition property:

- Windows Security>Microsoft Vulnerabilities>Meets the following criteria

The required patches are automatically listed for the vulnerabilities selected here.

Users cannot access the web until one of the following happens:

- Remediation is complete.
- The endpoint is released via the Home view, Detections pane or Assets Portal.

By default, Forescout 8.1 continuously displays patch links that reside on the Microsoft website. An option is available, however, to define a local server from which to centrally manage your patch updates. You may want to do this if you are using customized patch packages. If necessary, you can also restore to the original Microsoft path.

**To change the path:**

1. Define a location on a local server from which to download the patches.
2. Log in and run the following command:
   ```bash
   fstool convert_patch_path
   ```
3. The following prompt is displayed:

   ![This fstool replaces vulnerabilities patches from %root%/patch to %user_root%/patch.
   If necessary, it can also restore original patches.](image)

   Example: `fstool convert_patch_path replace http://server1/patches`
Restrict Actions

This section describes actions that are used to restrict endpoint access to the network and Internet:

- **Switch Restrict Actions**
- **Virtual Firewall**

If you are using Flexx licensing, ensure that you have a valid Forescout eyeControl license to use these actions. Refer to the *Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide* for more information about managing licenses.

Switch Restrict Actions

The Switch Plugin provides the following restrict actions:

- **Access Port ACL**
- **Assign Security Group Tag**
- **Assign to VLAN**
- **Endpoint Address ACL**
- **Switch Block**

For details about these actions, refer to the Forescout Switch Plugin Configuration Guide. Select **Tools > Options > Modules**, select the Switch Plugin, and then select **Help**.

Access Port ACL

Use the Access Port ACL action to define an ACL that addresses one or more than one access control scenario, which is then applied to an endpoint’s switch access port. Access control scenarios are typically role or classification driven, for example, registered guest or compliance, and not endpoint IP specific. For example, implement an ACL action that denies corporate network access to guests but permits Internet access, regardless of endpoint IP address (no IP address dependency). The Switch Plugin only supports applying the Access Port ACL action on Cisco switches.
In the ACL configuration, take advantage of the full set of switch capabilities. Forescout 8.1 does not inspect and does not alter the provided content; the plugin’s role is one of delivery vehicle to provision a network switch.

**Assign Security Group Tag**

Use the Assign Security Group Tag action to assign a Security Group Tag (SGT) to Forescout 8.1-detected endpoints. For this action to be available in the Console, you must enable the advanced configuration flag `assign_sgt`, which is disabled by default. Endpoints with an assigned SGT are connected to a managed Cisco switch in a Cisco TrustSec domain. An SGT is a number in the range of 1–65,535.
Assign to VLAN

Use the Assign to VLAN action to assign endpoints to a VLAN, rather than turning off their switch ports.

This enables secured remote connection to endpoints for the purpose of deploying patches, but prevents the propagation of unwanted traffic to other sections of the network.

The Assign to VLAN action is not supported for the VoIP device if there is a VoIP device between the switch and the endpoint (a VoIP port with a connected VoIP phone and a connected PC behind the phone).

In this scenario, the Assign to VLAN action is supported for the endpoint, when specific Forescout 8.1/Switch Plugin requirements are fulfilled.

Endpoint Address ACL

Use the Endpoint Address ACL action to define and apply any of the following, connected endpoint handling:

- **IP ACL**: Instruct a switch to close (ACL rule) or to open (ACL exception) network zones, services or protocols to traffic to or from specific, endpoint IP addresses connected to the switch.
- **MAC ACL**: Instruct a switch to block all traffic sent from the affected, endpoint MAC address.

The Switch Plugin only supports applying the Endpoint Address ACL action on the switches of the following switch vendors:

- Brocade/Foundry
- Cisco
- Enterasys Matrix N-Series

**Switch Block**

Use the Switch Block action to completely isolate endpoints from your network by turning off their switch port and preventing endpoints from communicating with the network. This is an extreme action that should be used with care.
If there is a VoIP device between the switch and the endpoint, that is, a VoIP port with a connected VoIP phone and a connected PC behind the phone, the Switch Block action is supported for the endpoint, when the blocking of VoIP ports is globally enabled in the Switch Plugin for all managed switches.

**Virtual Firewall**

The Virtual Firewall action lets you block access to and from detected Windows endpoints. The action also provides an option to define blocking exceptions. For example, when you define a range of addresses to block, but want to allow traffic to and from IT administrator endpoints or VIP endpoints.

You can configure your system to use the Virtual Firewall action to block endpoints connecting through a proxy server from accessing HTTPS pages when a redirect action is also used. See [Blocking HTTPS via Proxy Server](#).

[Image of Virtual Firewall interface]

[Image of Virtual Firewall interface with example rules and exceptions]
Endpoints detected via a policy and blocked with the Virtual Firewall, appear in the Virtual Firewall pane, but for display purposes only. Manage these endpoints via the Home view, Detections pane.

Rules created directly via the Virtual Firewall pane take precedence over policies created here.

**Creating a Blocking Rule**

This rule lets you block traffic to or from the detected endpoint.

**To block traffic:**

1. In the Blocking Rules section, select Add.

2. Select The FW will block traffic to the detected host to block inbound traffic to detected endpoints on specified services.

3. In the Source IP section, define the endpoints that are prevented from communicating with the detected endpoint.

4. In the Target Port section, define the services on the detected endpoint that are blocked.

5. Select OK.

   The new rule appears in the Blocking Rules list. You can edit or remove rules by selecting Edit or Remove, as required.

**To block traffic from the detected endpoint:**

1. In the Blocking Rules section, select Add.
2. Select The FW will block traffic from the detected host. This lets you block outbound traffic from detected endpoints to specific services on other endpoints.

3. In the Target Port section, define the endpoints that are prevented from receiving traffic.

4. Select OK.

The new rule appears in the Blocking Rules list. You can edit or remove rules by selecting Edit or Remove, as required.

Creating Exceptions

You can define exceptions to the blocking rules created. This enables the continuous flow of traffic to or from detected endpoints. For example, when you define a range of addresses to block, but want to allow traffic to and from IT administrator endpoints or VIP endpoints.

To create rule exceptions:

1. In the Blocking Exceptions section, select Add.

2. Select The FW will allow traffic to the detected host to allow inbound traffic to detected endpoints.

3. In the Source IP section, define the endpoints that are allowed to communicate with the detected endpoints.

4. In the Target Port section, define the services on the detected endpoints that are allowed.

5. Select OK.
The new rule appears in the Blocking Exceptions list. You can edit or remove rules by selecting Edit or Remove as required.

6. To allow traffic from the detected endpoint:

7. In the Blocking Exceptions section, select Add.

8. Select The FW will allow traffic from the detected host to allow outbound traffic from the detected endpoints.

9. In the Target IP section, define the endpoints that are allowed to receive traffic from the detected endpoint.

10. In the Target Port section, define the services on the endpoints that are allowed.

11. Select OK.

The new rule appears in the Blocking Exceptions list. You can edit or remove rules by selecting Edit or Remove as required.

Blocking HTTPS via Proxy Server

By default, the Virtual Firewall action does not block endpoints connecting through a proxy server from accessing HTTPS pages when a redirect action is also used.

To allow this action to block such endpoints, you must modify the system setup and settings as described below.

Setup

To set up your system to block endpoints connected via proxy servers:

1. Select Options > NAC > HTTP Redirection > Monitor Proxy Ports for HTTP Notifications and configure the proxy port.

2. Verify that the IP address of the proxy server is within the range of the Internal Network (Options > Internal Network).

3. If you want to apply the HTTP Notification action to HTTP traffic, clear the Show message only until user confirms option in the Parameters tab of the action. HTTPS traffic will not be redirected by this action.

4. Verify that the defined proxy service is not configured as an Authentication Server (Options > NAC > Authentication).

Enable/Disable

After your system is set up properly, perform the following to block endpoints connecting through a proxy server from accessing HTTPS pages when a redirect action is also used.

To enable the Virtual Firewall action:

1. Run the following commands:

   fstool set_property engine.conf.params.blockOutgoingSessionInHijack 8
   fstool service restart
2. Configure and run the relevant policy/policies, including the Virtual Firewall action and any relevant HTTP action/s.

**To disable the Virtual Firewall action:**
- Run the following commands:
  
  ```bash
  fstool set_property engine.conf.params.blockOutgoingSessionInHijack 0
  fstool service restart
  ```

**Enabling and Disabling Actions**

You can create actions for all your policies, and enable and disable them as required. You may need to disable actions, for example, to test your policies and get a sense of network compliance before communicating with network users or taking actions on network devices. Policies can be enabled or disabled from:

- The Home view, Detections pane.

In addition, you can enable and disable the action from the policy.

**To enable or disable an action:**

1. Right-click a policy Main Rule or Sub-Rule from the Policy Manager.
2. Select Quick Edit and then select Actions.
3. Select or clear the Enable checkbox in the Actions section.

**Action Tools**

This section discusses the following tools and action-related functionality:

- Action Schedules
- Property Tags
- Action Icon Display Tool
- Policy Action Log
- HTTP Actions
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

- Transmitting Actions via HTTPS
- Captive Portal Detection Exceptions
- Action Thresholds

**Action Schedules**

By default, actions are carried out when Forescout 8.1 detects that the endpoint matches the policy. Alternatively action schedules can be assigned to each action. This lets you to control when actions are carried out and for what duration. For example, you can create a policy with an action that sends email to noncompliant users three times a week or for two weeks. When the endpoint complies with the policy, the email will no longer be sent.

Schedules are especially useful when you need to escalate sanctions on noncompliant endpoints. For example, create a policy that warns users not to run peer-to-peer applications and then blocks their Internet access if applications are detected after the warning period.

**To create an action schedule:**

1. Create or edit a policy.
2. Navigate to the Actions dialog box and select an action.
3. Select the Schedule tab.

4. Select **Customize action start time**.
5. Create an Action schedule.

**Property Tags**

Property tags can be used to insert endpoint property values in condition or action definition fields. For example, important endpoint or User Directory information can be added to email messages, and endpoint identifiers can be added to comments and labels.

![User Notification]

*If the information cannot be resolved, the message displays the tag code rather than the resolved information.*

**To insert a property tag:**

1. In a Condition or Action dialog box, select a text field.
2. Select **Add Tags**.
3. Select the tag and select **OK**.

When the text field is evaluated, the tag is replaced by the actual property value of the endpoint.

**Property Tags for Script-Based Host Properties**

One special type of property tag references the value of host properties that are resolved by running a script or command on an endpoint. When you create a policy condition using one of the following properties, Forescout 8.1 generates a property tag that lets you include the host property value in action definition fields:

- Windows Expected Script Result
- Linux Expected Script Result
- Macintosh Expected Script Result
- Windows Registry Key Exists
- Windows Registry Key Value

In the following example, two different policies use the Expected Script Result host property to evaluate three scripts on an endpoint.
When Forescout 8.1 evaluates these conditions, it generates and maintains a separate value for each instance of the host property.

Forescout 8.1 automatically generates property tags that let you reference these values. This tag is retained as long as the related condition is present in active policies.

**Action Icon Display Tool**

You can choose a time-period in which to display an Action icon after a one-time action is complete. For example:

- After an email action is performed.
- After network users confirm reading redirected pages.
- After users perform redirecting tasks.

See [Display Action Icon after Action Is Complete](#) for details.
Policy Action Log

The Host Details dialog box provides specific information about actions carried out on detected endpoints. You can view this information from the Console as soon as the endpoint has been detected via the policy. The information displayed provides more details than presented in the Home view, Detections pane. The dialog box lists the current actions and important related information, such as:

- Details entered in notification actions
- The Appliance that carried out the action
- The time the actions were carried out
- Information indicating the action status

An option is also available to export the log.

**To view the Actions log:**

1. Double-click an endpoint from the Home view, Detections pane. The Host Details dialog box opens.
2. Select the Policy Actions tab.

The dialog box lists basic information about the action that you defined and its details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Indicates whether the action was successful.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Indicates the time the action was carried out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliance</td>
<td>Indicates the Appliance at which the actions were carried out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

### Status Details
Indicates whether the action failed.

You can also export information in this table.

**To export a table in the Policy Actions tab:**
1. Right-click the table and select Export. A Save As (Export) dialog box opens.
2. Browse to the location where you want to save the file.
3. Configure an export option.
4. Select OK.

### HTTP Actions
HTTP actions let you redirect network user web sessions and replace them with a customized HTTP page. For example, redirect the user’s web page and instead display a notification indicating that specific vulnerabilities were detected on their machines. The notification includes a list of links that should be accessed in order to patch vulnerabilities. Users cannot access the web until their endpoint is patched.

Before using the HTTP actions, review the following:

- HTTP actions require that the Appliance sees traffic going to the web.
- HTTP redirection requires proper injection setup. See Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection for details.
- If your organization uses a proxy for web connection, you must define the proxy ports to be used. See Policy Preferences for details.
• You can redirect user Intranet sessions. See Defining HTTP Redirect Exceptions for details.
• You can redirect via HTTPS. See Transmitting Actions via HTTPS.
• You can customize the default look and feel of the HTTP pages delivered to the endpoint. For example, you can add your company logo, and define background colors or background images to these pages. See Customizing HTTP Pages for details.
• Messages that appear in the redirected pages can be changed to the language defined at your operating system. See Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages for details.
• You can customize HTTP preferences to include redirect exceptions that will not be affected by HTTP actions. These exceptions can be configured either globally or per action. See Defining HTTP Redirect Exceptions for details.
• The DNS Enforce Plugin lets Forescout 8.1 implement HTTP actions in cases where stateful traffic inspection is not possible. This is relevant, for example, with a remote site or an unmanaged network segment. For more information, refer to the Forescout DNS Enforce Plugin Configuration Guide. To open this guide, select Options from the Tools menu and then select Modules. Select DNS Enforce and then select Help.

Transmitting Actions via HTTPS

You can configure the connection method used for transmitting redirected traffic. Traffic can be transmitted via HTTPS, i.e., encrypted over a secured connection (TLS) or via HTTP.

If you transmit via HTTPS, network users will see a security alert in their web browsers when they attempt to access the web. The alert indicates that the site’s security certificate was not signed by a known Certificate Authority (CA). (A default self-signed certificate is installed during product installation.) You can generate a known CA Security Certificate to avoid this situation. See Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate and Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection for details.

Two options are available for working with HTTPS:

• Use HTTPS per Action
• Use HTTPS for All Actions

Use HTTPS per Action

To send a redirected page via HTTPS, select Use Encrypted protocol (HTTPS) in the HTTP action definition. To send it via the non-encrypted HTTP protocol, clear the checkbox.
End user redirect pages may include several messages that are the result of different actions. The title bar on the redirected page represents the most secured state. Specifically, if several messages appear on one redirect page, and one of them is the result of a secured action, the title bar shows **HTTPS**.

**Use HTTPS for All Actions**

Redirected traffic includes information sent to network users via the HTTP actions, as well as authentication credentials sent back to the Appliance. For example, when you use the HTTP Login action, authentication credentials are sent back to the Appliance using the method that you defined.

See [Globally Redirect via HTTPS](#) for details. If you configure Forescout 8.1 to work globally with HTTPS but defined specific actions to be HTTP, redirected traffic is transmitted only via HTTPS.

**Captive Portal Detection Exceptions**

You can allow endpoints running Mac OS/iOS or Android to remain connected to the Internet without being automatically redirected by HTTP actions due to Apple or Android captive portal detection.

When endpoints connect to the network, the endpoint sends periodic requests to determine whether a captive portal is present. The motivation for this is that when using an application other than a web browser (for example, email), endpoint users may not be presented with the portal page, and will fail to connect to the Internet. If the periodic request is redirected, the system recognizes that a captive portal is present.

If you want endpoints to not be periodically redirected by HTTP actions to a web page that requires user interaction, you can enable the **Do not redirect captive portal detections** option.

This configuration is applied to individual HTTP actions, in the Exceptions tab of each HTTP action.
Chapter 7: Working with Actions

This feature supports Apple WISPr and Android captive portal detections and is relevant for the following HTTP actions:

- **HTTP Redirection to URL**
- **HTTP Login**
- **HTTP Notification**
- **HTTP Localhost Login**
- **Start SecureConnector**
- **Windows Self Remediation**

**Action Thresholds**

In some scenarios, policy enforcement requires blocking or restricting network devices and users. *Action thresholds* are designed to automatically implement safeguards when rolling out such sanctions across your network. Consider a situation in which you defined multiple policies that utilize a blocking action, for example, the Virtual Firewall or Switch Block actions. In a situation where an extensive number of endpoints match these policies, you may block more endpoints than you anticipated.

An action threshold is the maximum percentage of endpoints that can be controlled by a specific action type defined at a single Appliance. By working with thresholds, you gain more control over how many endpoints are simultaneously restricted in one way or another. See [Working with Action Thresholds](#) for details.
Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products

- About Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products
- Centralized Module Management
- Checking for Updates
- Designing Customized Plugins
About Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products

Base Modules, Content Modules and eyeExtend products significantly expand the scope of Forescout 8.1 network inspection, data exchange, remediation and control. Information gleaned from these modules is incorporated into Forescout tools used for creating policy properties and actions, generating reports and inventory items, and more.

The Check-for-Updates feature automatically checks if the most recently released module versions are installed on your CounterACT devices. This saves you the trouble of checking for updates manually.

Three categories of modules are available:
- **Base Modules**
- **Content Modules**
- **eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules)**

## Base Modules

Base Modules enhance Forescout visibility, network connectivity, detection, and control capabilities.

- **Authentication Module**
- **Core Extensions Module**
- **Endpoint Module**
- **Hybrid Cloud Module**
- **Network Module**

### Authentication Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS</td>
<td>Ensures seamless, comprehensive 802.1X <em>pre-connect</em> security and <em>post-connect</em> control for wired and wireless devices, and both corporate and guest users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Directory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|               | ▪ Resolves endpoint user details via a User Directory server.  
|               | ▪ Enables a variety of other features for handling network guests and the sponsors who approve guest access to the network. |
## Core Extensions Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advanced Tools Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Provides host properties and actions in Forescout 8.1 that enhance and extend existing functionality. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• More detailed endpoint detection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enhanced use of commands and scripts to retrieve endpoint information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use of labels and counters to implement complex policy logic, and to retain endpoint status across policy rechecks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CEF Plugin</strong></td>
<td>• Sends policy compliance and other host information detected by Forescout 8.1 to SIEM systems using the CEF messaging format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SIEM servers can trigger remediation actions by sending alert messages to Forescout 8.1. This functionality uses the alert messaging function common to most SIEM servers, and non-CEF-standard text messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device Classification Engine</strong></td>
<td>By comparing the values of endpoint properties with the profiles in the Device Profile Library, this engine can resolve classification-related properties for comprehensive endpoint classification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DHCP Classifier Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Extracts host information from DHCP messages. This information complements information sources used by Forescout 8.1, such as the HPS Inspection Engine and Nmap queries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DNS Client Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Resolves the DNS host name of a given IP address. The DNS Name property stores the name returned by the DNS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DNS Enforce Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Implements HTTP-based policy actions, such as <em>HTTP Notification</em> and <em>HTTP Redirection to URL</em>, in cases where stateful traffic inspection is not possible. This is relevant, for example, with a remote site or an unmanaged network segment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DNS Query Extension Plugin</strong></td>
<td>• Views traffic via the monitor interface (SPAN port), and detects and parses DNS messages in the network that reference specific host names.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Determines whether a given endpoint in the network is a DNS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Checks DNS lookups of specific domain names by endpoints in the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>External Classifier Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Accesses a set of MAC addresses maintained in an FTP server or an LDAP server to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Assigns a configured text label to any host whose MAC address matches a MAC address in the retrieved set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Uses the assigned text label in a policy to follow up with required actions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flow Analyzer</strong></td>
<td>Detects flow information regarding the endpoints in your environment. It collects a statistical sampling of data about network traffic in your environment, such as average packet size, average packet rate per second, inbound and outbound bandwidth usage, and DNS resolutions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flow Collector</strong></td>
<td>Analyzes the traffic flows exported by network devices, and reports flow session data that is used to resolve endpoint properties. The flow session data can also be used by other Forescout modules.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>IOC Scanner Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Leverages the threat detection and threat prevention mechanisms of third-party systems with the network visibility and enforcement capabilities of Forescout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IoT Posture Assessment Engine</strong></td>
<td>Assesses the security risk associated with IoT devices based on their use of weak login credentials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NBT Scanner Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Obtains the user that is logged on to a given endpoint and the MAC address of that endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Packet Engine</strong></td>
<td>Provides network visibility by deploying real-time port mirroring in the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reports</strong></td>
<td>Generates reports with real-time and trend information about policies, host compliance status, vulnerabilities, device details, assets, and network guests. Reports help keep network administrators, executives, the Help Desk, IT teams, security teams, or other enterprise teams well-informed about network activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syslog Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Sends, receives, and formats messages to and from external Syslog servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Technical Support Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Automatically analyzes an extensive range of log files on your system and send them to the Forescout support team for further investigation. Analysis of log files is carried out on a wide range of issues, for example, service restarts, database issues, plugin errors, issues dealing with policies, internal processes, reports, or any other issue occurring on your Forescout system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Web GUI (Dashboard)</strong></td>
<td>Displays dynamic at-a-glance web-based information about:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Device compliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Device classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Device management status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Network overview</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Endpoint Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>HPS Inspection Engine</strong></td>
<td>• Access Microsoft Windows endpoints. • Perform comprehensive, deep inspection for the purpose of resolving an extensive range of endpoint information. • Activate a variety of Forescout actions to manage, remediate or control endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OS X Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Manages endpoints running Mac/OS X operating systems. The plugin supports properties, actions, and other management functionality for Linux endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hardware Inventory Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Extends the host properties discovered by the HPS Inspection Engine to include physical hardware devices, endpoint configuration settings, and related information such as serial numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Linux Plugin</strong></td>
<td>Manages endpoints running Linux operating systems. The plugin supports properties, actions, and other management functionality for Linux endpoints.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Hybrid Cloud Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| AWS | - Provides visibility of endpoints in Amazon’s public cloud  
- Lets you create and apply Forescout 8.1 policies  
- Maintains security of cloud endpoints  
- Enforces compliance on endpoints |
| VMware NSX | Allows control functionality for virtual endpoints that are part of the data center managed by VMware vCenter® and VMware NSX. Using the capabilities offered by this integration, you can apply micro-segmentation on virtual machines (VM) based on user-defined security policies. |
| VMware vSphere | Supports detailed discovery and management of endpoints that are Virtual Machines in vSphere environments. |

### Network Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Centralized Network Controller</td>
<td>Lets you monitor Cisco Meraki, cloud-managed networks. The integration enables real-time discovery of endpoints connected to Meraki Switches (MS) and Wireless Access Points (MR).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Switch Plugin | - Tracks the location of endpoints connected to network switches and retrieve relevant switch information.  
- Quickly detects new endpoints on the network.  
- Assigns switch ports to VLANs; you can set up dynamic, role-based VLAN assignment policies and quarantine VLANs.  
- Uses ACLs to open or close network zones, services, or protocols for specific endpoints at a switch and handle scenarios that address broader access control. |
| Wireless Plugin | Provides NAC capabilities to wireless network controllers and access points for the purpose of controlling wireless endpoints connected to them. |
| VPN Plugin | Track VPN users, disconnect them from the VPN and prevent them from reconnecting. Blocking is carried out by communicating with multiple VPN devices and an authentication server. |

Additional Base modules are available to legacy customers who had them installed in earlier version, such as the Router Blocking Module, Cisco PIX/ASA Firewall Integration Module, and NetFlow Plugin.
Content Modules

Content Modules deliver data that is used by other Modules for classification, inspection, and control. For example, the Windows Applications Module delivers host properties and actions used by the HPS Inspection Engine to support in-depth discovery and management of software and applications on Windows endpoints.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device Profile Library</td>
<td>A library of pre-defined device classification profiles, each composed of properties and corresponding values that match a specific device type. Each profile maps to a combination of values for function, operating system, and/or vendor and model. The Device Classification Engine uses this information to provide the best possible classification for the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Vulnerability DB</td>
<td>Makes vulnerability updates available to Forescout 8.1 soon after they are released from Microsoft. These updates are used when working with vulnerability policies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IoT Posture Assessment Library</td>
<td>Delivers a library of pre-defined login credentials that are used by the IoT Posture Assessment Engine to aid in determining the security risk of devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIC Vendor DB</td>
<td>Works with the HPS Inspection Engine to map Network Interface Controllers to their vendors based on their MAC address. Delivers host properties that let you detect and manage endpoints based on this information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Applications</td>
<td>Delivers host properties and actions used by the HPS Inspection Engine to support in-depth discovery and management of software and applications on Windows endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Policy Template</td>
<td>Security policy templates use existing Forescout 8.1 functionality to detect, evaluate, and respond to vulnerabilities and threats – speeding and simplifying your network response. When you install this plugin, templates are available in the Policy view of the Console.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules)

In Per-Appliance Licensing mode, eyeExtend products are referred to as Extended Modules in the user interface.

Forescout eyeExtend products expand Forescout 8.1 capabilities by sharing contextual device data with third-party systems and by automating policy enforcement across those disparate systems. Organizations can bridge previously siloed security solutions to accelerate system-wide response and more rapidly mitigate risks.

eyeExtend products require valid licenses. License requirements for eyeExtend products differ depending on the licensing mode your Forescout deployment is using. See Chapter 18: License Management for the relevant licensing requirements and to learn more about licensing modes.

The various eyeExtend products relate to an extensive range of integration categories. For example:

- Advanced Threat Detection (ATD)
Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products

- Endpoint Protection Platform (EPP)
- Mobile Device Management (MDM)
- Open Integration
- Security Information and Event Management (SIEM)
- Vulnerability Management (VM)
- Privileged Access Management (PAM)
- IT Service Management (ITSM)
- Next Generation Firewall (NGFW)
- Client Management Tools (CMT)

Accessing eyeExtend Products

See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access eyeExtend product software downloads and related documentation.

Product Packaging

Modules/products can be packaged individually or as part of a larger module.

- **eyeExtend Products: Individual Products**
- **Integration Modules: Multiple Modules**

Integration Modules are not supported when using Flexx Licensing.

eyeExtend Products: Individual Products

An eyeExtend product packages an individual licensed product. For example, Forescout eyeExtend for XenMobile is packaged individually as part of the Citrix XenMobile Module.

- An exception to this is the Open Integration Module, which is an eyeExtend product even though it packages more than one product.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modules Released After Service Pack 2.3.0 (CounterACT Version 7.0.0)</th>
<th>Modules released for the first time (version 1.1.0) after Service Pack 2.3.0 are packaged individually as the sole component of an Extended Module even if you are working with a service pack version earlier than 2.3.0.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Modules Released Before Service Pack 2.3.0 (CounterACT Version 7.0.0) | Modules released for the first time before Service Pack 2.3.0 are packaged individually as the sole component of an Extended Module when all of the following are true:
  - You did not install the same module packaged as part of an integration module. See Integration Modules: Multiple Modules.
  - The Extended Module version was released after the Service Pack 2.3.0 release.
  - Service Pack 2.3.0 or above is installed. |

eyeExtend product demo licenses are valid for 90 days. See Demo Licenses.
Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products

**Integration Modules: Multiple Modules**

Prior to the release of Service Pack 2.3.0, groups of related licensed modules were packaged into Integration Modules. For example, the MDM Integration Module packaged MaaS360, XenMobile, and other MDM modules.

Integration Modules are not supported when using Flexx Licensing.

If you already installed modules (with either a demo or permanent license) as components of Integration Modules, you can continue to use them, as well as the other modules packaged in the respective module, even if you are using Service Pack 2.3.0 or above. Upgrading these modules to versions released after the Service Pack 2.3.0 release does not change the way they are packaged.

**Advanced Threat Detection (ATD)**

Modules in this category integrate Forescout 8.1 with popular Advanced Persistent Threat (APT) detection products such as FireEye, Palo Alto Networks WildFire and Invincea. Forescout ATD integrations identify advanced cyber-attacks that threaten network security, and remediate infected endpoints.

**Endpoint Protection Platform (EPP)**

Modules in this category integrate Forescout 8.1 with McAfee products, such as McAfee ePO. These integrations leverage the visibility capability of Forescout 8.1 with the security features of Intel Security products for greater coverage and control to more devices on the network. Integration lets Forescout 8.1:

- Report discovered endpoints to the ePO Detected System
- Detect endpoints and implement NAC actions based on ePO Events and attributes

**Mobile Device Management (MDM)**

Modules in this category integrate Forescout 8.1 with popular MDM service platforms, such as AirWatch, MobileIron, and XenMobile. Forescout MDM integrations yield an easy-to-use platform that includes all of the essential functionality for end-to-end management of mobile devices. You can secure and manage apps, docs, and devices for global organizations, and support both corporate and individual owned devices.

**Open Integration**

This module contains the Data Exchange Plugin, which supports bidirectional query and update interactions with external SQL, Oracle, and LDAP servers.

In addition, it contains plugins and other components that support the Forescout Web Service, which lets external entities communicate with Forescout 8.1:

- Information can be retrieved from Forescout 8.1 using simple, yet powerful web service requests based on HTTP interaction.
- Information can be submitted to Forescout 8.1 using web service requests with an XML data body. The Forescout Web Service parses the data to update Forescout host properties.
Security Information and Event Management (SIEM)
Modules in this category let Forescout 8.1 send compliance and other host information to SIEM systems, such as ArcSight, Splunk, and QRadar, and correlate this information to perform risk assessment analysis.

Vulnerability Management (VM)
Modules in this category integrate the Forescout Console with vulnerability assessment platforms such as Nessus/Tenable VM and McAfee Vulnerability Manager to support auditing, asset profiling, sensitive data discovery, and more.

Privileged Access Management (PAM)
Forescout eyeExtend for PAM (PAM Extended Modules) provide real-time agentless visibility into undiscovered local privileged accounts and automated response to threats based on holistic visibility into user activity, device security posture, incident severity, and overall threat exposure.

IT Service Management (ITSM)
Forescout eyeExtend for ITSM (ITSM Extended Modules) share up-to-date device properties, classification, configuration, and network context to help true-up assets in your CMDB, improve asset compliance and maintain a trusted, single-source-of-truth repository for better decision-making.

Next Generation Firewall (NGFW)
Forescout eyeExtend for NGFW (NGFW Extended Modules) enable you to implement dynamic network segmentation, automate controls for secure access to critical resources and create context-aware security policies within your next-generation firewalls based on endpoint context from Forescout 8.1.

Client Management Tools (CMT)
Forescout eyeExtend for CMT (CMT Extended Modules) provide visibility and control across network-connected devices, including corporate devices, while they’re off the enterprise network. They also verify device compliance with security and regulatory mandates and take remediation actions.

Centralized Module Management
Modules are centrally managed across the enterprise. If you install or update a Base Module, a Content Module, or an eyeExtend product (Extended Module) on the Enterprise Manager, it is automatically installed or updated on all registered Appliances.
You can perform the following actions on several modules simultaneously:
- Start
- Stop
- Test (When available)
- Install and Uninstall
Rollback (Can only be carried out on one module at a time)

You should carry out the above tasks from the Enterprise Manager, and not from individual Appliances.

If an Appliance on which a module is running is disconnected, it does not appear in the Modules pane. A warning message in the pane indicates that the Appliance is not connected.

Installing a Module

To install the module:

5. Navigate to one of the following Forescout download portals, depending on the licensing mode your deployment is using:
   - Product Updates Portal - Per-Appliance Licensing Mode
   - Customer Portal, Downloads Page - Flexx Licensing Mode

   To identify your licensing mode, select Help > About ForeScout from the Console.

6. Download the module .fpi file.

7. Save the file to the machine where the Console is installed.

8. Log into the Console and select Options from the Tools menu.


10. Select Install. The Open dialog box opens.

11. Browse to and select the saved module .fpi file.

12. Select Install. The Installation screen opens.

13. Select I agree to the License Agreement to confirm that you have read and agree to the terms of the License Agreement and select Install. The installation cannot proceed unless you agree to the license agreement.

   - The installation begins immediately after selecting Install and cannot be interrupted or canceled.
   - In modules that contain more than one component, the installation proceeds automatically one component at a time.

14. When the installation completes, select Close to close the window. The installed module is displayed in the Modules pane.

   - Some components are not automatically started following installation.

Plugin Configuration Management

Configurations made to certain plugins and modules via the Enterprise Manager are automatically applied to all registered Appliances. These configurations may not be updated per Appliance. See CounterACT Device Management Overview for more information about managing CounterACT Devices.


**Plugin and Module Security**

The transfer of information between Forescout 8.1 and plugins or modules is secure. All passwords defined in plugin and module configurations are:

- Kept encrypted on the hard drive
- Never printed to log files (even in their encrypted format)
- Encrypted before transfer between Forescout components

**Checking for Updates**

Forescout 8.1 automatically checks to see if updates are available for software already installed on your CounterACT devices and for software that you have purchased but have not yet installed (when using Flexx licensing). This saves you the trouble of checking for updates manually, and helps keep your system updated with the most current tools.

Updates are delivered for Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend products (Extended Modules), and notifications of Forescout updates. Occasionally, plugins may also be available as hotfixes.

The default Check for Updates frequency is once an hour. See [Configuring Check for Updates](#) for details.

**How Do You Know if a New Software Version Is Available?**

The **Check for Updates** icon 🔄 appears on the status bar of the Console when an update is available for any installed or purchased (when using Flexx Licensing) software.

> The installed Forescout Console application automatically contacts the Forescout support server periodically using HTTPS (secure connection) to check for software updates.

**To update software:**

1. Double-click the **Check for Updates** icon. The Software Updates dialog box opens. The dialog box displays new and current version information, links to Release Notes and Help files, and other release information.
2. Select the software items you want to install and select Install. The Install wizard opens.

Certain Forescout release items may appear but cannot be checked. Forescout releases are upgraded from the CounterACT Devices menu. Select Tools > Options > CounterACT Devices > Upgrade.

3. Select I agree to the License Agreement and select Install. Installation will not proceed if you do not agree to the license terms.

A progress bar indicates the progress of the installation. You can view the installation log file, which itemizes any installation failures.

**Configuring Check for Updates**

You can enable or disable the Check-for-Updates option and configure how often it is run. The default frequency is once an hour.

**To configure Check for Updates:**

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select General > Check for Updates.
2. Configure the frequency and select **Apply**.

**Roll Back to Previous Module Versions**

Under certain circumstances, you may want to roll back a module to a previously installed version, for example, if your system is not operating as expected after upgrade.

If you are working with modules on your Enterprise Manager, the modules on all Appliances are rolled back to the selected version. If the rollback occurred when the Appliance was not connected, the module is rolled back when the Enterprise Manager reconnects to the Appliance.

One or more versions may be available to which you can roll back. In some cases, it may not be possible to roll back, in which case the **Rollback** button is disabled.

- **Rollback is supported for plugin hotfixes.**

**To roll back:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and select **Modules**.

2. Select a module and then select **Rollback**. A dialog box lists all the versions to which you can roll back. Once the Rollback begins, it cannot be interrupted or cancelled.

3. Select the version you need and then select **Rollback**. A dialog box shows you the progress of the rollback.

4. Select **Close**.

**Designing Customized Plugins**

Forescout partners and customers can write software plugins to enhance the capabilities of Forescout 8.1. By preparing your own plugin you can:

- Obtain real-time information regarding endpoints
- Trigger third-party remediation and ticketing systems.
- Provide additional information to Forescout 8.1 regarding endpoints
- Create plugin-specific commands that control endpoints

To request the Forescout Plugin SDK, contact **sdk@forescout.com**
Chapter 9: Forescout Web Portals

- Web Portal User Management
- Logging In to Forescout Web Portals
- Forgot Your Password?
Web Portal User Management

Web portal users are defined in the CounterACT User Profiles table. You can assign permission levels to ensure that only certain users have access to certain types of information or activities. For example, you can grant all users the ability to access a specific web portal, but allow only selected users to access a different web portal. See Creating Users and User Groups for details.

- The "admin" user has access to all Console and web portal features.
- Web portal users must log in from an IP address within the permitted range. See Define Web Access.
- The device runs a web server to operate the portals. (Access to the portal page requires a secured HTTPS connection, because the information displayed is sensitive.) During the installation of the Appliance, a default self-signed certificate is created for this purpose. However, the certificate was not signed by a known CA, which causes the web browser to display a security warning when network users attempt to use the portal. Refer to Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate for details. You can turn off this option and communicate via HTTP.

Logging In to Forescout Web Portals

Forescout 8.1 can be configured to require users who are logged into the Console to re-enter credentials when accessing Forescout web portals from the Console. See Configure User Login to Forescout Web Portals. By default, the Forescout Console is configured to allow users to automatically access Forescout web portals from the Console without additional login requirements.

If you cannot automatically access Forescout web portals from the Console, or to log in directly from your web browser, you must provide the same login credentials you use for accessing the Console.

To access the Forescout web portals:

1. To access web portals from the Console, select the ellipsis icon from the Console Toolbar, and select a web portal from the drop-down menu. The web portal opens in a new browser window.

   When you access the portal from the Console, you might not be prompted to log in.

2. To log in to web portals from your web browser, enter the following URL:
   http://<Device_IP>/<Portal_Name>

   Where <Device_IP> is the IP address of the Enterprise Manager or an Appliance.

   Valid <Portal_Name> values are:
   - assets – Assets Portal
   - board – Legacy Dashboard
Chapter 9: Forescout Web Portals

- customization – User Portal Builder
- report – Reports Portal

*Other portals may be available depending on your license.*

If you are not already authenticated to Forescout web portals, the Forescout Login dialog box opens.

3. Select a login method.
   - Select **Password** to perform standard authentication. Then enter your user name and password.
   - Select **Smart Card** to allow authentication using a connected smart card. If the Smart Card contains more than one certificate, select the certificate for login to Forescout web portals. Then enter your smart card PIN code, and select **OK**.
Chapter 9: Forescout Web Portals

Smart Card Login

4. Select **Log In**.

5. A window may open displaying terms and conditions. To continue working, accept the terms. The login process continues.

6. If two-factor authentication is required, complete the Security Verification requirements and then select **Verify**.

**Last Login Information**

The web portal opens, displaying the following login information:

- The user name and IP address of your current login session
- The time and IP address of this user’s previous successful login
- The number of this user’s recent, consecutive login attempts that failed

If you think this information is incorrect, report it to your security officer.

**Forgot Your Password?**

If you are a Forescout 8.1 user and you forget your password, contact your System Administrator or another user authorized to change your password at the Console. See [Modify User Details](#) for information about resetting a forgotten password.
Chapter 10: Assets Portal

- About the Assets Portal
- Search Tools
- Expanding Information Discovered by the Assets Portal
- Accessing the Assets Portal
- Performing an Assets Portal Search
About the Assets Portal

The Assets Portal is a web-based search and discovery tool that lets you leverage extensive network information collected and correlated by Forescout 8.1. This includes not only endpoint information, but also policy violations, login information, User Directory details, organizational mapping details, and endpoint device connections. The information is valuable to your organization, including:

- Security teams: Use an IP address to quickly locate and shut down switch ports and eliminate a security threat.
- IT departments: Use an IP address to locate and contact users when maintenance is required at the endpoint.
- Help Desk: Effortlessly link IP addresses, computer hardware addresses, and switch ports to employees, in real time.

By using the portal, response time is shortened, translating into efficient remediation and crisis management.

In addition, you can clear event detections and stop policy actions from the portal.

The Appliance runs a web server to operate the portal. (Access to the portal page requires a secured HTTPS connection, because the information displayed is sensitive.) During the installation of the Appliance, a default self-signed certificate is created for this purpose. However, the certificate was not signed by a known CA, which causes the web browser to display a security warning when network users attempt to use the portal. Refer to Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate for details. You can turn off this option and transmit via HTTP.

Supported Browsers

The Assets Portal runs in Internet Explorer, Chrome, and Firefox version 2 and above.

Search Tools

Powerful search tools provide immediate access to an extensive range of endpoint and user information.

- Wild card searches: Search items are highlighted on the results page.
- Exact searches.
- Searches per category. For example, you can search by IP addresses, MAC addresses, Email addresses or DNS host names, and User Directory names.

From the Search Results page, you can easily pinpoint problematic endpoints, events, and users. In addition, action tools let you control endpoints directly from the portal.

Search Status

The Assets Portal search result page indicates how many Appliances have been queried and how many responded to your Assets Portal search.
Appliances disconnected at the time of the search are not queried. If you search for a specific address, the Appliance to which the IP address is assigned is queried. Other Appliances are ignored.

Expanding Information Discovered by the Assets Portal

By default, Forescout 8.1 automatically discovers the following information about endpoints and displays that information in the Assets Portal:

- Domain User names
- NetBIOS host names
- MAC addresses
- DNS names
- Basic User Directory Plugin properties (this plugin is bundled with Forescout 8.1)
- Switch Plugin properties (this plugin is bundled with Forescout 8.1)

You can update the default to include additional information, for example, properties that are only available via the policy (Nmap details). See Define Endpoint Discovery Rules for details. You can also broaden the scope and capacity of the portal when you install plugins/modules. For example, if you installed the VPN Plugin, related VPN properties are displayed in the portal. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for details.

Importing and Exporting Information

Assets Portal information can be imported and exported by using standard import and export tools from your web browser.
Accessing the Assets Portal

- You may need to verify that Assets Portal users can access the portal. By default, all users in the NAC network are granted access. If someone outside the Internal Network needs access or if, for some reason, you need to update the default, the setting can be modified. To update the setting, select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Access > Web**. If you remove a user from the default range, that user no longer has access to the portal. In addition, the user no longer receives HTTP actions defined as part of policies. Such actions include HTTP alerts, self-remediation, and login pages. For more information about Network Policy settings, see *What Is a Policy?* It is not recommended to deny portal access.

To access the Assets Portal, see [Logging In to Forescout Web Portals](#).

Add the Assets Portal to Your Web Browser

The Assets Portal link can be saved via your web browser search box.

**To add the portal:**

- Select **Add to browser search box** from the Assets Portal home page.

  ![Add to browser search box](image)

  - The browser search is supported for Internet Explorer 7 and above, and Firefox version 2 and above.

Performing an Assets Portal Search

After logging in to the Assets Portal, you can use the search features to quickly and efficiently pinpoint network information that you need.

Wildcard searches are automatically performed, meaning that the search results display all terms beginning with the characters that you enter. Alternatively, you can choose to look for only certain types of information, for example, only email addresses or DNS names.

Searches are not case sensitive.

The following options are available for performing endpoint-based searches:

- IP Address
- MAC Address
Chapter 10: Assets Portal

- DNS Name

The following options are available for performing user-based searches:

- Login Name
- User (from User Directory)
- LDAP User Name
- Email (from User Directory)

Searches are only available for previously detected endpoints. The User Directory search is only available for endpoints detected via a NAC policy or as a result of a Threats policy.

To perform the search:

1. Log in to the Assets Portal.
2. From the home page, enter a value.
3. Alternatively, select a search type from the search drop-down menu.

4. Select Search.
5. The Search Results page lists the items that match the search query.

If the search text was found in a field that is not shown by default, the value of the relevant field is shown in the More Info column.
6. Select an IP address or item of interest, or select any other linked item to continue the search. If the search produces only one result, the related ticket page opens.

The Host Ticket page displays information about the selected item.

![Host Ticket page](image)

### Host-Based Ticket Results

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host information</td>
<td>The IP address, MAC address, DNS host name, NetBIOS host name, and NetBIOS domain name for the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Details</td>
<td>Information about the logged on user where the endpoint was detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy – Status</td>
<td>A list of the policies applied to the endpoint and the current endpoint status. You can select the <strong>Undo</strong> link to reverse any action taken at the endpoint, for example, releasing an endpoint if it is blocked. The blocking action will no longer be deployed at the endpoint for this policy, even if the endpoint is detected again. If you incorrectly reversed the action, you can return to the previous state by reassigning the action from the Home view, Detections pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threat Protection Activity Detected</td>
<td>Details regarding malicious endpoints activity currently detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Actions</td>
<td>Manual policy actions currently taken at the endpoint (actions carried out from the Home view, Detections pane).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Open Service</td>
<td>Services at the endpoint that are accessible to other network users, and the time the services were last detected. Basic information about the service is also provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication Login Events</td>
<td>The most current authentication login events and the time when they were detected, for example, the last MAPI authentication or User Directory authentication. See also <a href="#">Clearing Events Detections</a>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 10: Assets Portal

#### Admission Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Admission Events</td>
<td>The most current admission events detected and the time of detection. The following events may be detected:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- New IP: By default, endpoints are considered new if they were not detected at your network within a 30-day period. For example, if an IP address was detected on the first of the month, and then detected again 31 days later, the detection initiates the activation. The default time period can be changed. See <a href="#">Policy Preferences</a> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- IP Address Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Switch Port Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- DHCP Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Authentication via the <strong>HTTP Login</strong> action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Login to an authentication server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- SecureConnector connection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you have installed plugins or modules, additional admission event types may be available. For example, the *New Wireless Host Connected Events* option is available if you installed the Wireless Plugin. See also [Clearing Events Detections](#).

#### User-Based Ticket Results

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User Information</td>
<td>Displays the user login name entered to log in to the computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machines Currently Logged On</td>
<td>Displays the last machine to which the user logged on. You can select the IP address or MAC address and view an endpoint ticket for that machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Directory Server Information</td>
<td>Displays related user information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Viewing Additional Information

An **i** icon in a row of the Host Ticket page indicates that additional information is available in a tooltip. Hold the cursor over the icon to view it.

An **x** icon in a row of the Host Ticket page indicates that additional troubleshooting information is available. Place the cursor over the icon to view details in a tooltip. Select the icon to open the matching troubleshooting page. See [On-Screen Troubleshooting](#) for details.

#### Page Display

You can display information on one page, and use scroll features to view it.

#### Clearing Events Detections

You can clear *Event* property detections, for example, admission or authentication login events. You may need to do this for troubleshooting purposes.
To clear an event:

1. Navigate to the event that you want to clear on the ticket page.

2. Select the Clear icon.

3. When prompted for confirmation, select Yes.

Events can also be cleared from the Console. See Additional Controls in View Table Tooltip Information.
Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs

- About Reports
- On-Screen Threat Protection Reporting
- Generating Scheduled Reports
- Reports Portal
- Work with System Event Logs
- View Block Events
- View a History of Monitored and Blocked Services
About Reports

Your Console is equipped with powerful report generation tools.

Report Types

On-Screen Threat Protection Reports

These reports provide you with important system information about policies and detections; the services most frequently targeted by malicious endpoints; the origin of a worm outbreak or the infected endpoints in each network segment. You can also generate detailed reports on events, such as the number of probe and infection attempts per host or service, or the number and types of marks distributed over a time period. See On-Screen Threat Protection Reporting for details.

Real-Time Reports

You can generate comprehensive real-time reports regarding policy detections and endpoint discovery information. See Reports for details.

Automated updates to these reports are available via the Modules pane.

Audit Trails Reports

You can view user audit trail reports that contain information about user activities during a specified time period. These reports can be exported. See Monitoring User Activity for details.

Report Management

Two options are available for generating on-screen reports:

- Generate reports on-screen. See Generating On-Screen Threat Protection Reports for details.
- Schedule automatically generated reports to be sent by email. See Generating Scheduled Reports for details.

By default, an Executive Summary report is sent daily, at midnight, to the email addresses defined during initial wizard setup. This report provides important information regarding detections made at your network.

Report management tools let you save, print, and export the reports.

On-Screen Threat Protection Reporting

This section details the Console reports. Two categories of reports are available:

- Executive Reports
- Operational Reports

In addition, various customization options are available for reports. See Customizing Reports for details. Report results display activity that occurred within a specified time range for the Appliances that you select. For example, you can generate a report that covers a two-day, two-week, or two-month period, for one, several, or all the Appliances in your enterprise. By default all Appliances are selected.
Reports may include information about both bites and infection attempt events. The bite event is the event in which the endpoint used a mark to try and gain access to your network. An infection attempt event is an event followed by a bite event that is detected at an open, real port on the service where the bite event was detected.

Executive Reports

The Executive Report provides a concise overview of important Forescout 8.1 and endpoint activities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Executive Summary</td>
<td>A detailed briefing of malicious endpoints activity and policy detections in your network during a specified time period. The report provides:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Information about endpoints detected via the policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Infected/Targeted Hosts per Service: Shows the number of infected endpoints that attempted to infect a service, and the number of endpoints in the network at which an infection attempt was carried out for that service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Top 10 infected endpoints. The report shows the IP address of the endpoints that have carried out the most infection attempts, and the number of infection attempts carried out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Event summary showing important Forescout 8.1 and endpoint events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Report customization options let you adjust the following for the top 10 reports:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Display only results greater than a set value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Update, for example, the top 10 value to top five or top 15.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Operational Reports

Operational reports provide extensive information about probe, scan, bite, and infection attempt events that occur at targets, endpoints and services in your network. These reports allow in-depth drill-down of security information gathered by Forescout 8.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External Blocking</td>
<td>Provides information about external blocking activity, including:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Domains targeted outside your network and blocked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Endpoints that attempted to infect domains outside your network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Infection attempts targeted at domains outside your network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By default, the top 10 infected endpoints are displayed. This value can be changed from the Report Options dialog box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infected Hosts</td>
<td>Displays information about infected endpoints in your network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worm Originator</td>
<td>Displays the origin of a worm outbreak, tracking down the worm host to where it was originally detected in your network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infected Hosts by Segment</td>
<td>Displays the infected endpoints in your network, sorted by segment. Report options let you generate a table that lists the details of all the events shown in the report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infected hosts by Service</td>
<td>Displays the infected endpoints in your network, sorted by service. Report options let you generate a table that lists the details of all the events shown in the report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Top Worm-Infected Hosts       | Displays the IP addresses of infected endpoints that carried out the most infection attempts. By default, the top 10 infected endpoints are displayed. This value can be changed from the Report Options dialog box. Report customization options also allow you to:  
  - Display only results greater than a set value. For example, show results only if infected endpoints initiated more than 10 infection attempts.  
  - Generate a table detailing report events. |

### Probing Hosts

| Probing Hosts by Segment      | Displays the probing endpoints in your network, sorted by segment.                                                                        |
| Probing Host by Service       | Displays the probing endpoints in your network, sorted by service.                                                                     |

### Email Worm Infection Attempts

| Top email Infected Hosts      | Displays the endpoints in your network that generated the most email worm infection attempts. By default, results are limited to the 10 most active endpoints. You can change the default setting. Additional report customization options let you display only results greater than a set value. For example, show the results only if the endpoints generated more than five email events. |
| Email Infected Hosts per Segment | Lists endpoints in your network that generated email worm infection attempts, sorted by segment. Important information about each endpoint is presented, including the email address from which the attempt was made, the number of senders, and the number of mails sent. |

### Related Worm Names for Hosts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Displays endpoints, and names of high profile worms that performed activities similar to that of the endpoint.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can load the most current related attack name file by selecting <strong>Load Related Attack Names</strong> from the <strong>Tools</strong> menu. This option installs new related worm names and the associated services that they attacked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updated files can be found on the support page of the Forescout website.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Targeted Hosts

Displays information about infection attempts that occurred at the endpoints in your network.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Top Infection Attempts per Host</th>
<th>Displays the most frequently targeted real endpoints in your network. The report lists the endpoint IP addresses and the number of infection attempts at each real endpoint. By default, the 10 most frequently targeted, real endpoints are displayed. This value can be changed from the Report Options dialog box. Additional report customization options let you display only results greater than a set value. For example, show the results only if the real endpoint was targeted more than 10 times.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infection Attempt Summary for a Selected Host</td>
<td>Displays all infection attempts that targeted a specific endpoint. Report options let you generate a table that lists the details of all the events shown in the report. For example, the date and time the event occurred and the endpoint IP address that initiated the event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Targeted Services

Displays information about services targeted in your network.

| Infected Hosts / Targeted Hosts per Service | Shows the number of infected endpoints that attempted to infect a service, and the number of endpoints in the network at which an infection attempt was carried out for that service. Report customization options let you adjust the following for the top 10 reports:  
- Results greater than a set value (calculated according to infected endpoints).  
- Update, for example, the top 10 value to top five or top 15 (calculated according to infected endpoints). |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Top Infection Attempts per Service</td>
<td>Displays the top infection attempts per service. The report displays the service and the number of infection attempts at each service. This lets you evaluate which services in your network are more attractive to worms, and can help in analyzing the security mechanism protecting these services. By default, the 10 most frequently targeted services are displayed. This value can be changed from the Report Options dialog box. Additional options let you display only results greater than a set value, for example, display a service only if it was attacked more than 10 times.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs

### Scan Results
Displays information about Scan policy results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Scan Results            | Displays information regarding vulnerable machines detected in your network. The report lists the name of the vulnerability, the number of machines at which it was detected, as well as the number of services closed. By default, the 10 most common vulnerabilities detected in your network are displayed. This value can be changed from the Report Options dialog box. Report customization options allow you to:  
  - Display only results greater than a set value.  
  - Generate a table detailing report events. |

### Activity Statistics

- **Infection Attempts Over Time**
  - Displays the number of infection attempt events that occurred during a specified time period.
  - Report customization options allow you to:  
    - Define the intervals at which results are displayed, i.e., hourly, daily, or weekly.  
    - Generate a table detailing report events.

- **Scan Detections Over Time**
  - Displays the numbers of scan events that occurred during a specified time period.
  - Report customization options allow you to:  
    - Define the intervals at which results are displayed, i.e., hourly, daily, or weekly.  
    - Generate a table detailing report events.

- **Top Bite Methods**
  - Displays the most common bite methods used over a specified time period, as well as the number of times each method was used. By default, the top 10 bite methods are displayed. You can update this value from the Report Options dialog box. Report customization options also allow you to:  
    - Display only results greater than a set value. For example, display results for a method only if the method was used more than 10 times.  
    - Generate a table detailing report events.

- **Top Scan Methods**
  - Displays the most common scan methods used over a specified time period as well as the number of times each method was used. By default, the top 10 scan methods are displayed. You can update this value from the Report Options dialog box. Report customization options also allow you to:  
    - Display only results greater than a set value. For example, display results for a method only if the method was used more than 10 times.  
    - Generate a table detailing report events.
### Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Top Mark Types          | Displays the top mark types distributed during a specified time period, as well as the number of times each mark type was distributed. By default, the 10 most frequently distributed mark types are displayed. You can update this value from the Report Options dialog box. Report customization options also allow you to:  
  - Display only results greater than a set value. For example, display results for a mark type only if the mark was distributed more than 10 times.  
  - Generate a table detailing report events. |
| Top Always Allowed Services | Shows the always allowed services that were most frequently accessed by blocked endpoints. Always allowed services are defined when creating exception rules from the Virtual Firewall pane.  
The results of this report help you evaluate the implications of maintaining always allowed services. By default, the 10 always allowed services that were most frequently accessed are displayed. This value can be changed from the Report Options dialog box. Report customization options also let you:  
  - Display only results greater than a set value. For example, only show services that were accessed more than 10 times.  
  - Generate a table detailing report events.  
See Chapter 12: Managing Your Virtual Firewall Policy for details. |
| Appliances              | Displays the number of endpoints handled at each Appliance in your enterprise as well as the average for all Appliances. By default, all Appliances are displayed.                                                                 |

See Customizing Reports for details about customizing the report results display.

### Generating On-Screen Threat Protection Reports

This section details how to generate reports on-screen and details the on-screen management tools, such as printing and exporting reports.

**To generate a report on screen:**

1. From the Console, select Reports > Threat Protection Reports > New.
2. Select a report.

3. In the **Time Period** section, specify a time period for results:
   - Relative time: Select **Last** and then set the required number of hours, days, weeks or months. Select a time unit from the drop-down menu.
   - A time range: Select **From / To** and then specify the beginning and end of the time range.

4. Select **Options** to customize the report. See **Customizing Reports** for details.

5. Select **Generate** to create the report.

**Customizing Reports**

Reports are generated with default customization options. These options can be modified so that you can better manage results and view information that is important to you. The following report customization options are available for reports. Not all customization options are applicable to all reports.

- Define the intervals at which results are displayed, i.e., hourly, daily, or weekly. The default is on a daily basis. See **Define Result Display Intervals**.
- Show only top-level results. The default is the top 10 highest results. See **Limit to Top Results Only**.
- Show only results for a specific endpoint in the network. See **Show Only Results for a Specific Endpoint**.
- Show only results greater than a certain value. The default minimum value is one. See **Show Only Results Greater Than a Set Value**.
- Generate a table that lists the details of each event displayed in the report. See **Generate a Detailed Event Table**.
• Generate a report of activity at specific Appliances. See Generate a Report from Activity at Selected Appliances.

If you update a default, it is only applied to the current report; after the report is generated, the default is restored.

To customize the report:

1. In the Reports dialog box, select a report and time period.
2. Select Options.

![Report Options dialog box](image)

Define Result Display Intervals

By default, report results are displayed on a daily basis. For example, if you choose to show the number of events that occurred over a two-month period, the results are displayed for each day over those two months.

You can customize the display by showing results on an hourly, per day, weekly or monthly basis. For example, you can show infection attempts that occurred over a two-month period, and display the results for each week, i.e., the number of infection events that occurred each week.

To update the intervals:

1. In the Reports dialog box, select a report and time period.
3. In the Results will be displayed at intervals of field, enter a numerical value and select a time unit.
4. Select OK.
5. Select Generate in the Reports dialog box.

Limit to Top Results Only

Reports can be customized so events are displayed for the highest level of results only, i.e., only showing the top five or top 10 results. For example, you can choose to display only the 10 endpoints with the highest number of infection events or only the five top targeted services. This option is useful when your system generates an extensive number of results, and you want to limit the report to display the most significant information.
To display top results only:
1. In the Reports dialog box, select a report and time period.
3. In the Limit result number to top field, enter a value for top results.
4. Select OK.
5. Select Generate from the Reports dialog box.

Show Only Results Greater Than a Set Value
You can customize the report to only show results that are greater than a set value, meaning that results are reported only if a specific threshold is exceeded. For example, you can generate a report of events at real endpoints, and set the "greater than" value to 20. The report then only displays the real endpoints at which more than 20 events occurred. This option is useful when your system generates an extensive number of results, and you want to limit the report to display only significant information.

To set a greater than value:
1. In the Reports dialog box, select a report and time period.
3. In the Only show results greater than field, set the minimum threshold for showing results.
4. Select OK.
5. Select Generate from the Reports dialog box.

Show Only Results for a Specific Endpoint
The Infection Attempt Summary for a selected Host report lets you generate a report displaying infection attempt events that occurred at a specific endpoint in the network.

1. In the Reports dialog box, select a report and time period.
3. Insert the endpoint address in the Show events related to host field.
4. Select OK.
5. Select Generate in the Reports dialog box.

Generate a Detailed Event Table
Most reports are presented in chart form and summarize activity. These reports can be supplemented with more detailed information. For example, if the report chart shows the number of infection attempt events that occurred over a two-week period, you can generate a list that itemizes each of the events.

1. In the Reports dialog box, select a report and time period.
3. Select Generate event detail table.
4. Select OK. The information is viewed from the report toolbar. See Working with On-Screen Report Management Tools for details.

5. Select Generate in the Reports dialog box.

**Generate a Report from Activity at Selected Appliances**

Your reports can include information collected from one or more Appliances.

**To select an Appliance:**

1. In the Report Options dialog box, select Appliance. The Appliance Selector dialog box opens.

2. Select an Appliance from the Available Appliances list.

3. Use the arrow buttons to assign the Appliances to the Selected Appliances list.

4. Select OK.

5. Select OK in the Report Options dialog box.

6. Select Generate in the Reports dialog box.

**Viewing Multiple Reports**

You can generate and view multiple reports. In addition, you can display a list of open report windows and select the report to view if that report is minimized.

**To display an open report:**

- Select Reports from the Window menu, and then select the report to open.

**Viewing Report Definitions**

You can display the report definitions for the reports that you generate on-screen, including the report name, the time period the report covers and report options. This is particularly useful when you have several reports open simultaneously.
To view report definitions:

1. Generate a report.
2. Select Report Definitions from the View menu. The report definitions for the report are displayed.

Working with On-Screen Report Management Tools

On-screen tools are available to manage and navigate your reports. These tools can be accessed from the menus and the report toolbar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First/Last Page</td>
<td>Moves to the first or last page of the report. (Only available when the report is displayed in print layout view).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous/Next Page</td>
<td>Moves to the previous or next page of report. (Only available when the report is displayed in print layout view).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print Report</td>
<td>Sends the report to the printer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save</td>
<td>Saves the current report to a file. The file is automatically saved to a default location, which you can change if required. See Modify the Report Output Location for Manually Saved Reports. You can open saved reports from the Reports menu on the Console.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print/Normal Layout View</td>
<td>Displays the report in print layout view or normal layout view. The cover page and the header and footer are visible in print layout view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the report chart or the event detail table, if you generated one.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exporting Reports and Report Event Details

You can export reports and report event detail tables in the following formats:

- PDF file, viewable in Adobe Acrobat
- CSV file, viewable in Microsoft Excel
- HTML format, viewable in your web browser

To export a report:

1. Select Export from the File menu. A standard browse (Save As) dialog box opens.
2. Select the location and format in which to export the report.

3. To export the table, use the **Save Event Table** menu option to save the table as a CSV file and the **Export Event Table** menu option to export the table as a PDF file.

**Generating Scheduled Reports**

The report scheduler lets you generate reports according to a defined schedule, and receive them by email. Generating a report schedule includes the following steps:

- Select a report.
- Define a delivery schedule.
- Define a report file format.
- Define email delivery addresses.
- Design a report cover page, and header and footer text.

Tools are also available to edit, delete and duplicate report schedules, and automatically run scheduled reports.

In addition, all reports generated by the scheduler are automatically saved to a default location on the CounterACT device. You can access and open the reports from the Console. See [Opening Saved Reports](#) for details.

Report schedules are created and managed from the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box. Not all users have access to the scheduled report features.

**To open the Scheduled Report Manager:**

1. From the Console, select **Threat Protection Reports** from the **Reports** menu and then select **Scheduler**. The Scheduled Report Manager wizard opens.

| **If the checkmark is displayed, the schedule is activated for the report. If not activated, the report is not created.** |
| **Report** | Displays the name of the report. |
| **Recurrences** | Displays the creation schedule. |
| **Last Delivery Status** | Displays the last time the report was delivered. |
To create a report schedule:

1. Select the **Reports** menu and then select **Threat Protection Reports > Scheduler**. The Scheduled Report Manager dialog box opens.
2. Select **Add**.
3. Select a report from the Available Reports tree.
4. Select the file format in which to deliver reports from the **Email using format** field. The default is PDF. If you select CSV format, you cannot use the report cover page and header/footer option. If you select HTML format, you can only use the cover page option.
5. In the **Email address** field, enter any number of email addresses to which to send the reports. Multiple addresses must be separated by commas.
6. Select **Next**.
7. In the **Generate report at** field, specify a time to generate and send the report.

8. Set the frequency for generating the reports. The report can be generated daily, weekly, or monthly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Daily</strong></td>
<td>Enter a value in the <strong>Generate every</strong> field, for example, every eight days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weekly</strong></td>
<td>Enter a value in the <strong>Generate every</strong> field, for example, every two weeks. Select the days of the week when the report is to be generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monthly</strong></td>
<td>In the <strong>Days</strong> field, enter the days of the month to generate the report. Use a hyphen to indicate day ranges. Days and ranges must be comma-separated. Enter a value in the <strong>every</strong> field. For example, you can receive reports on the 1st, 10th and 20th day of the month, every two months.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Customize the report by selecting a customization option from the Report Options pane. See [Customizing Reports](#) for details.

10. Select **Next**.
11. By default, the report name, user name, creation date, and report options that select will appear on the report cover. You can update or delete this text or add a JPG graphic file by using the standard editing tools on the toolbar.

12. Select Next.

13. If required, delete, add or edit the text using the standard editing tools located on the toolbar. Page numbers automatically appear for reports generated as PDF files, and in the print layout view.

   Tools are also available to save your cover page, header and footer text, and load them to other reports, or to create a default cover page, header, and footer. See Managing the Cover Page, Header and Footer Text for details.

14. Select Finish. The scheduled report is listed in the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box.

15. Select OK in the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box.
The report is sent to the specified email addresses, according to the configured delivery schedule and report format. If you generated an event detail table, the email also include a zipped CSV file containing the detailed event information.

**Report Scheduler Management Tools**

The following management tools are available from the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box:

- Removing a scheduled report
- Editing scheduled report
- Duplicating a scheduled report
- Running a scheduled report
- Managing the cover page, header and footer

**To remove a scheduled report from the scheduler:**

1. Select a report schedule in the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box.
2. Select **Remove**.
3. Select **OK**.

   The report is removed and will not be generated.

**To edit a scheduled report:**

1. Select a scheduled report in the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box.
3. Edit the schedule as required.
4. Select OK.
5. Select OK in the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box to save your changes.

To duplicate a scheduled report:
1. Select a scheduled report in the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box.
3. Update as required.
5. Select OK in the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box to save your changes.

To run a scheduled report:
1. Select a scheduled report in the Scheduled Report Manager dialog box.
2. Select Generate Now.
3. When prompted for confirmation, select Yes to send the report.

Managing the Cover Page, Header and Footer Text
Tools are also available to save your cover page, header and footer text, and load them to other reports, create a default cover page, header, and footer, and work with automated text.

To save the cover page, header and footer:
1. Update the cover page, header and footer as required.
3. Save the information to the required location.

To load a previously saved cover page, header and footer:
2. Locate and open the required file.

To create a default cover page, header and footer:
1. Select Set Default from the Add Scheduled Report – Header&Footer dialog box.
2. When prompted for confirmation, select Yes to save the cover page, header and footer as the default.

Working with Automated Text Tags
Your cover page, header and footer are generated by default with automated text tags.
The text is viewable in the print preview layout (on-screen reports), in reports exported or mailed as a PDF file. The cover page text is available if you export or email the report as an HTML file.

The following text tags are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REPORT_NAME</td>
<td>The name of the report generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPORT_TIME</td>
<td>The time the report is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_NAME</td>
<td>The name of the user that generated that sent the report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME_PERIOD</td>
<td>The time period that the report covers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPORT_OPTIONS</td>
<td>All parameters, except the time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Any tag can be entered on the cover page, header or footer, according to the following format requirements:

- Use all caps (upper case), i.e., REPORT_TIME and not Report_Time.
- Use the same font for each tag.
- Use up to three lines of text for each header and footer.

**To enter text tags:**

- Enter the tags according to the relevant format requirements.

  The tags are converted with the related information, and viewable in the print preview layout (on-screen reports) and in reports exported or delivered as a PDF file.

**Opening Saved Reports**

Two options are available for opening reports.

- Open a manually saved report.
- Open a scheduled report. Reports created by the report scheduler are automatically saved in the CounterACT device, and can be opened from the Console.

**Open a Manually Saved Report**

The reports you manually save are stored by default at the location where you installed the Console. This location can be changed.

**To open a saved report:**

1. Select Threat Protection Reports from the Reports menu and then select Open.
2. Select the Manually Saved Reports tab.
3. Locate and select the saved report and then select **Open**. The report opens.

*Modify the Report Output Location for Manually Saved Reports*

Manually saved reports are stored by default at the location where you installed the Console. This location can be changed.

**To set the default location for report files:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Console Preferences > Misc**.
2. In the Reports tab, enter the desired directory path or select the browse button to select the path. Files are saved to the specified path.

3. Select **OK**.
Open a Scheduled Report

Forescout 8.1 automatically saves all the reports receive through the report scheduler. These reports can be opened in the Console, printed, and exported.

Scheduled reports are automatically saved to the Appliance under the Reports directory. Reports are deleted when the directory size reaches 20 MB. The oldest reports are deleted first.

To open a scheduled report saved by Forescout 8.1:

1. Select Threat Protection Reports > Open from the Reports menu.

2. Select the Scheduled Reports tab.
   - All reports you created through the report scheduler are displayed. The dialog box displays the scheduled and actual time of delivery. Slight discrepancies may occur if you scheduled several reports for delivery at the same time or because of technical issues.

3. Select a report and then select Open. The report opens.
   - Event detail tables generated for reports saved by Forescout 8.1 are not automatically available. This information must be saved separately and then opened.

To view a related event detail table:

1. Select Open on the Open Report dialog box.
2. Select Save from the File menu. A standard Save dialog box opens.
3. Save the event detail file as required in CSV format and select Save.

Reports Portal

You can access a web-based Reports Portal to generate comprehensive real-time and trend information about policies, vulnerabilities and the network inventory. The Reports Portal is enabled by the Reports Plugin, a component of the Forescout Core Extensions Module.

To access portal, see Logging In to Forescout Web Portals.
The Reports Plugin lets you generate reports with real-time and trend information about policies, host compliance status, vulnerabilities, device details, assets and network guests.

Use reports to keep network administrators, executives, the Help Desk, IT teams, security teams or other enterprise teams well-informed about network activity. Reports can be used, for example, to help you understand:

- Long term network compliance progress/trends
- Immediate security needs
- Compliance with policies
- Status of a specific policy
- Network device statistics

You can create reports and view them immediately, save reports or generate schedules to ensure that network activity and detections are automatically and consistently reported.

In addition, you can use any language supported by your operating system to generate reports. Reports can be viewed and printed as either PDF or CSV files.

**To add a report:**

1. To access the Reports Portal, see Logging In to Forescout Web Portals.
2. Select Add from the Reports portal home page.

3. Select a report template and then select Next to define the report parameters.
To learn more about reports:
1. Select Options from the Tools menu.
2. Select Modules and then select Reports.

Work with System Event Logs

You can view logs about system activity, for example, successful and failed user login operations.

Not all users have access to this feature.

An option is also available to forward various event messages to third-party logging systems via the Syslog Plugin. For details, review the Syslog Plugin documentation. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information about how to access the documentation.

To view events:
- Select Event Viewer from the Log menu.

![Event Viewer](image)

The following information is available:
**Severity**  |  The severity level of a system event, indicated by a colored icon.
|---|---
| Emergency |  
| Alert |  
| Critical |  
| Error |  
| Warning |  
| Notice |  
| Information |  
| Debug |  

**Date**  |  The date and time when the event occurred.

**Status**  |  Whether the operation succeeded or failed.

**Element**  |  The resource or component the operation was performed upon (for example, users).

**Event**  |  The name of the event that occurred.

**To clear all data from the table:**

- Select **Clear All** from the **File** menu.
  
The data is cleared from the table. This information remains in the system. The toggle option displays as **Reload**.

  ‒ **Clear All** and **Reload** is a toggle option.

**To reload data in the table:**

- Select **Reload** from the **File** menu.
  
The latest data loads from the database. (The **Reload** option toggles to **Clear All**.)

**To find an entry in the event viewer:**

1. Select **Find** from the **Edit** menu or press <Ctrl+F>. The Find dialog box opens.

2. Use the **Text to find** field and options to make your search more efficient.

**To save the log to an external file:**

1. Select **Export** from the **File** menu. The Export Event dialog box opens.

2. Select a location and file format. You can save the file in TXT or XLS format.

**To view details for an event in the log:**

- Double-click a selected line. The Event Viewer opens with details about the selected event.
View Block Events

A Block Events log provides an at-a-glance display of the block events. For example:

- Host blocks
- Port blocks
- External Port blocks
- External Host blocks
- Services closed as a result of service attacks
- Services closed as a result of the blocking rules that you defined via the Virtual Firewall

Use the log to troubleshoot problematic network block events. You can export the information to a CSV file.

These events are sent automatically to the Syslog server. If you do not want to send them, configure the Forescout Syslog Plugin to not transfer this information. Select **Tools > Options > Modules > Core Extensions > Syslog > Configure > Events filtering**.

To view blocked events:

1. Select **Blocking Logs** from the **Log** menu.

2. Select a time period by doing one of the following:
   - Select **Relative Time** and then specify the required number of hours, days, weeks or months. Select a time unit from the drop-down menu.
   - Select **Time Range** and then specify the beginning and end of the time range.

3. Select **OK**.
Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs

The following information is available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>The endpoint that was blocked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target</td>
<td>The IP address to which the blocked endpoint attempted to connect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>The time when the endpoint was blocked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>The service at which the endpoint was detected when it was blocked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indicates whether the block event was the result of a Virtual Firewall block rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason</td>
<td>The reason the source was blocked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To export the list of block events:
- Select Export from the File menu.

To find specific text in the list of events:
- Select Find from the View menu.

Refresh the Events List

If you selected a relative time when generating the block events list, you can refresh the information to include events blocked from the indicated start time, up to and including the current time (while the dialog box is open).

To refresh the information:
- Select Refresh from the File menu.

View a History of Monitored and Blocked Services

Your system policy may be defined so that your system monitors or blocks selected services in your network. You can view a history of the services that were monitored or blocked during a specific time period. See Handling Service Attacks for more information about how to work with these policy definitions.
To view a history of monitored and blocked services:

1. Select **Service Attack History** from the **Log** menu.

2. Select a time period by doing one of the following:
   - Select **Relative Time** and then specify the required number of hours, days, weeks or months. Select a time unit from the drop-down menu.
   - Select **Time Range** and then specify the beginning and end of the time range.

3. If you have logged in to the Console via an Enterprise Manager, you can select specific Appliances for which to run a report.

4. Select **OK**. The Blocked Events dialog box opens.

The following information is available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Displays the port and protocol of service.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>Displays the state, i.e., if the service was blocked or monitored. Use your cursor to view a tooltip that lists the IP addresses of endpoints that scanned the service and the endpoint IP addresses that they probed. <em>Normal</em> indicates that the service state was removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Displays the date and time when the monitor or block state was initiated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related Worms</td>
<td>Displays the name of a related worm. A related worm is the name of a known worm that performed events similar to the events carried out by sources in your system. For example, if a source scans port 1434/UDP more than once, the worm name Slammer is displayed as a related worm name because this is the service that the Slammer worm attacked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliance</td>
<td>Displays the dedicated device that monitors traffic going through your corporate network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 12: Managing Your Virtual Firewall Policy

- Defining a Virtual Firewall Policy
- Working with Block Rules
- View Block Events
- Working with Allow Rules
Defining a Virtual Firewall Policy

Virtual Firewall protection lets you create network security zones, giving you greater control over network traffic. Specifically, by defining a Virtual Firewall policy you can:

- Create network zones or segments that you want to close off entirely as a result of new threats or newly detected vulnerabilities.
- Create network zones or segments that you want to close off to specific sources.
- Prevent the transmission of unwanted protocols within your network or between specific network segments, for example, if you know that RPC traffic should not be transmitted between various departments in your organization.
- Designate business critical services that should always remain open.

The Virtual Firewall gives you all the benefits of an inline firewall, without being located inline. This means there are no issues of latency. In addition, you can export a list of allow and blocking rules to a CSV file, and you can view a list of the block events detected as a result of the blocking rules that you defined.

If you create an exception rule via the Virtual Firewall and also create a policy rule that blocks detected endpoints, the Virtual Firewall exception rule takes precedence, i.e., the endpoints will not be blocked.

Virtual Firewall rules are centrally managed. Rules cannot be added, edited, or removed from individual Consoles that are part of your enterprise.

View Virtual Firewall Rules

The Virtual Firewall pane displays rules generated from the following locations:

- Rules defined directly from the Virtual Firewall box, as detailed in this section.
- Endpoints detected as a result of a policy Virtual Firewall action.
- System-defined rules: These are rules that support basic Forescout features, for example, Authentication servers defined at the initial Console setup or Assets Portal access.
- Virtual Firewall rules manually defined from the Console, Detections pane.

Rules that appear in the Virtual Firewall pane that were created via the policy, Authentication Servers rule or manually from the Home view, Detections pane, cannot be edited or removed directly from the pane. These rules can only be modified from the feature where they were created.

Information in the Virtual Firewall pane is automatically updated for:

- Policy items if:
  - The rule is updated and no longer includes the Virtual Firewall action.
  - The IP address range or condition is changed and no longer includes the endpoints previously defined.
- Authentication Servers, if you remove, edit or add the server. See Defining Authentication Servers.
• Manual Virtual Firewall blocking, defined in the Home view, Detections pane, if you release the endpoint from this location.

**To access the Virtual Firewall pane:**
• Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Virtual Firewall**.

---

**Policy Priorities**

Rules created directly via the Virtual Firewall pane take precedence over Virtual Firewall rules created via the policy.

The following hierarchies, from highest to lowest, are applied when an endpoint is detected as a result of different policies:

• Virtual Firewall – Allow Rule
• Threat Protection Policy – Threat Protection Blocked (source, port) and Virtual Firewall – Block Rule
• Group Definition – Authentication Servers (allow access)
• Policy – Virtual Firewall Block

**Working with Block Rules**

Define Block rules by using the Virtual Firewall to prevent outbound traffic at source IP addresses from reaching target IP addresses.

**TCP vs. UDP Blocking**

The Virtual Firewall is designed to block traffic that uses the TCP protocol, which represents over 95% of all traffic. With TCP traffic, three packets are sent before the first data packet. Each packet gives the Virtual Firewall an opportunity to terminate the session, making it very effective.

The Virtual Firewall can also block traffic using the UDP protocol, but its effectiveness depends on the nature of the service. With UDP traffic, the number of wait periods for response packets can take any value including zero.

If there is no response packet, there is no opportunity to intervene. The greater the number of packets sent, the more opportunities to terminate the session. Consider these examples:
Chapter 12: Managing Your Virtual Firewall Policy

- With syslog, there is no opportunity to terminate the session. The sender transmits the data message to the syslog server but does not wait for a reply.
- With DNS, there is a single opportunity to terminate the session. After the sender transmits a query, they wait for a reply. If the Virtual Firewall responds quickly enough with a "port unreachable" ICMP message before the server response, the session is terminated.
- With TFTP, the Virtual Firewall has multiple opportunities to terminate the session. Chunks of the files are transferred within individual packets, and each packet provides a termination opportunity.

To be sure that UDP sessions are terminated, it is recommended to block them using the Switch Port Access List or integrate Forescout 8.1 with a third-party firewall such as Cisco ASA. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products for details.

Define Block Rules

You can define Block rules to prevent outbound traffic at source IP addresses from reaching target IP addresses.

To define Block rules:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Virtual Firewall**.
2. Select **Add**.

3. In the **Action** section, select **Block**.

![Add Rule window](image-url)
4. In the **Source IP** section, define addresses that are prevented access to target IP addresses:
   - Select All to block traffic from all IP addresses.
   - Select Addresses to define a single IP address or an address range.
   - Select Network Segment to define a segment.

5. In the **Target IP** section, define the endpoints that are prevented access to the previously defined source IP addresses:
   - Select All for all IP addresses.
   - Select Addresses to define a single IP address or an address range.
   - Select Network Segment to define a segment.

6. In the **Target Service** section, define the services that are blocked on the targeted (detected) endpoints:
   - Select All for all services (at the previously defined target IP addresses) on the endpoint to remain blocked.
   - Select Single to define a service. Enter a port and select a protocol from the drop-down menu.
   - Select List to enter a comma-separated list of services.

7. Enter comments as required.
8. Select **OK**. The rule is displayed on the Virtual Firewall pane.

**Edit or Remove Block Rules**

You can edit or remove Block rules.

**To remove a rule from the blocking rule list:**
1. Select a Block rule in the Virtual Firewall pane.
2. Select **Remove**.
3. Select **Apply**.

**To edit a rule from the blocking rule list:**
1. Select a Block rule in the Virtual Firewall pane.
2. Select **Edit** and edit the rule required.
3. Select **Apply**.

**View Block Events**

You can view a list of sources and endpoints that have been blocked as the result of a blocking rule (Virtual Firewall pane) in the Block Events dialog box. This may be useful for troubleshooting.

**To view a list of events:**
1. Select the **Blocking Log** from the **Log** menu. The Time Period dialog box opens.
2. Select a time period by doing one of the following:
   - Select **Relative Time** and then specify the required number of hours, days, weeks, or months. Select a time unit from the drop-down menu.
   - Select **Time Range** and then specify the beginning and end times.
3. Select **OK**.
   The Block Events dialog box opens. The Reason column indicates which events were blocked due to a blocking rule defined in the Virtual Firewall.

### Working with Allow Rules

You can allow unconditional access at selected services in your protected and source network. This means access is permitted to and from the endpoint even when:

- The Threat Protection Policy is set to block
- The source is manually blocked or ignored
- The policy is set to block
- The policy for handling email worm infection attempts is set to block
- You have manually blocked an endpoint from the Home view, Detections pane
- You have assigned an identical blocking rule

Use Allow rules to keep mission-critical services available.

Allow rules are not applied to endpoints that are blocked by external systems, i.e., switches, router, VPNs or firewalls.

### Define Allow Rules

To define Allow rules:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Virtual Firewall**. The Virtual Firewall pane opens.
2. Select **Add**.
3. Select **Allow**.

4. In the **Source IP** section, select addresses that are always allowed to transmit traffic to specified target endpoints:
   - Select All for all addresses.
   - Select Addresses for a single address or a group of addresses.
   - Select Network Segment to define a segment.

5. In the **Target IP** section, define the endpoints that are always accessible to the previous defined Source IPs:
   - Select All for all addresses.
   - Select Addresses for a single address or a group of addresses.
   - Select Network Segment to define segments.

6. In the **Target Service** section, define the services that are accessible on the target (detected) endpoints:
   - Select **All (TCP and UDP)** for all services (at the previously defined target IP address ranges) on the endpoint to remain open.
   - Select **Single** to define a service. Define a port and select a protocol from the drop-down menu.
   - Select **List** to enter a comma-separated list of services.

7. Enter comments as required.

8. Select **OK**.

   The rule is displayed in the Virtual Firewall pane.
Removing and Editing Allow Rules

You can edit or remove Allow rules.

To remove a range:
1. Select a rule in the Virtual Firewall pane.
2. Select Remove.
3. Select OK.

To edit a range:
1. Select a rule in the Virtual Firewall pane.
2. Select Edit.
3. Edit the range as required.
4. Select OK.
Chapter 13: Threat Protection

- About Threat Protection
- About the Threat Protection Policy
- Viewing Threat Detections
- Viewing and Updating the Policy
- Customizing Basic Policy Settings
- Working with Manually Added Endpoints
- Defining the Active Response Range
- Viewing Endpoint Activity Details
- Managing Enterprise Lockdown Alerts
- Legitimate Traffic
About Threat Protection

This section details basic concepts and terminology regarding network threats. A network threat is a device from which a malicious event, for example, a NetBIOS attack, was detected via a Threat Protection policy.

- Detecting Threats – How It Works
- Basic Terminology

Detecting Threats – How It Works

This section details how infection attempts are carried out and how Forescout 8.1 protects your network.

Forescout 8.1 detects and handles email worm infections differently than network worm infections. See Email Worm Policy for details.

Infection Attempt – Network Not Protected

During an infection attempt, self-propagating malware tries to establish connections with endpoints within your network. These are called "scans." After connections are established, the malware uses these connections to learn about the endpoints' available services and resources (ports). In response, the network sends information about these available services and resources back to the worm.

With this information, the malware carries out threats using known or new attack methods. Malicious traffic quickly infects your network through various entry points, such as VPN users, trusted partner networks, or vulnerable laptops.

Infection Attempt – Network Protected

Forescout 8.1 prevents infection attempts by identifying and suppressing malware before it propagates within your network and to organizations outside your network. Forescout 8.1 monitors traffic directed toward your network for signs of scans, and then identifies the techniques used to launch port or NetBIOS scans.

In response to this activity, Forescout 8.1 generates virtual resource information sought by malware programs, and sends the information back to them. This information is referred to as a mark. For example, if Forescout 8.1 identifies a request for a service in the network, it responds by creating and returning a mark in the form of the service requested.

Malware programs cannot distinguish between a mark and a legitimate network response. When malicious traffic attempts to access the network using the mark, Forescout 8.1 immediately recognizes it. Either Forescout 8.1 continues to monitor the traffic, or Forescout 8.1 prevents the malware program from establishing communication with the network and external domains or with the service at which the infection attempt took place.

When an endpoint uses a mark, it is referred to as a bite event.

Forescout 8.1 also automatically detects heavily scanned services, and responds by either monitoring or blocking these services. When a service is monitored, Forescout 8.1 records all traffic going to the service. When a service is blocked, no communication with that service is permitted.
Forescout 8.1 also responds to:
- Service attacks
- Emails worms

**Worm Slowdown Mechanism**

A worm slowdown mechanism, part of the threat protection technology, provides two significant benefits:

| Reduces network traffic congestion, thus improving network availability and stability | The worm slowdown mechanism enables Forescout 8.1 to notably reduce the amount of traffic generated by an infected machine while it attempts to propagate within your network. Specifically, the mechanism allows Forescout 8.1 to lock the infected machine in a static TCP dialog. As a result, traffic from the infected machine is kept at a standstill. |
| Provides added protection to hosts within a cell and the remaining network | The worm slowdown mechanism keeps worm threads at a standstill, preventing them from reaching vulnerable endpoints within cells and at locations where there is no Forescout 8.1 protection. This is possible when the system locks an infected machine in a TCP dialog before the machine has a chance to infect other endpoints in the network. |

If necessary, you can disable the worm slowdown mechanism using the command `fstool wormdelay`. This option can only be carried out from the Appliance.

**To disable or enable the worm slowdown mechanism:**

1. Log in to an Appliance through the command-line interface (CLI).
2. Run the following command: `fstool wormdelay disable`
   
   The following message is displayed:
   ```
   CounterACT should be restarted for changes to take effect.
   Restart CounterACT?  
   ```
3. Type yes.
4. To enable the worm delay mechanism, use the following command:
   `fstool wormdelay enable`

**Basic Terminology**

This section details basic malicious host concepts and terminology.

**Malicious Endpoints**

A malicious endpoint is a machine from which a malicious event was detected, i.e., a worm infection or malware propagation attempt.

**Cells**

A cell is a group of endpoints that are monitored and protected by a single Appliance. Forescout 8.1 can see and intervene with traffic entering and exiting the cell. Traffic viewed is determined by:
• The network topology and the type of hardware that is placed in front of the Appliance, for example, a hub, router, or switch.
• The Active Response range handled. This is the range of IP addresses that are protected by the Threat Protection policy. This range must be included in the Internal Network.

**Forescout 8.1 does not directly protect endpoints located in a cell against attacks initiated upon each other. However, intracell protection may be achieved by the worm slowdown mechanism. This mechanism prevents an infected endpoint from reaching vulnerable endpoints even within its cell. This happens when Forescout 8.1 locks the infected endpoint in a TCP dialog before the endpoint can infect the rest of the cell.**

**Scans**

An endpoint-initiated scan is detected when an endpoint performs a specific probe a defined number of times within a defined time period. By default, when an endpoint initiates three probes within one day, Forescout 8.1 considers this activity a scan. The default probe count is five probes for port scans.

The system identifies the following scan categories:

- Finger
- HTTP
- Login
- NetBIOS (disabled by default)
- Port (Specific port scan categories, such as TCP or UDP port scans are also recognized.)
- SNMP

**Port Scan Categories**

The following port scan sub-categories are detected and displayed:

| Vertical Scan | A vertical scan is detected when a defined number of UDP or TCP probes are carried out at a single endpoint. |
| Vertical UDP/TCP Scan | A vertical UDP scan or vertical TCP scan is detected when a defined number of probes are carried out either on UDP services or TCP services at a single targeted endpoint. |
| Horizontal UDP/TCP Scan | A horizontal UDP scan or horizontal TCP scan is detected when a defined number of probes are carried out on the same service at a defined number of targeted endpoints. |
| Ping Sweep Scan (ICMP) | A Ping Sweep scan is detected when a defined number of Ping Sweep probes are carried out at any endpoint in the Active Response network. |
| TCP/UDP Scan | A TCP scan or UDP scan is detected when port scan activity does not meet the Vertical, Vertical TCP/UDP, Horizontal TCP/UDP, or ICMP scan recognition criteria. |

The default probe endpoint count and required time range for port scans is five in one day. For example, by default:
A horizontal UDP scan is detected when an endpoint probes the same UDP port on five different endpoints within one day.

A vertical scan is detected when an endpoint probes five different services on the same endpoint within one day.

Use the Scan Details dialog box to change the default setting. See Customize Scan Settings for details.

Forescout 8.1 updates the port scan category when subsequent probe activity takes place within the defined time period. For example, if an endpoint probes a single endpoint at two TCP ports and one UDP, the port scan activity is categorized as a Vertical Scan. If an additional probe is carried out at another TCP port within the defined time period, the category is changed to a TCP vertical scan.

Viewing Port Scan Categories

The detected port scan categories are indicated in the Reason column in the Detections pane and on the Activity tab of the Host Details dialog box.

Probing Endpoints

A probing endpoint is an endpoint that has probed your Internal Network.

By default, probing endpoints are monitored by the system for 12 hours. During this time, Forescout 8.1 allows the endpoint to communicate with the network and records the endpoint activity. In addition, Forescout 8.1 responds by sending marks to the endpoint – virtual resource information required to carry out the infection.

If the endpoint continues to scan your network, the monitoring period is extended. If the probing endpoint uses a mark, it has performed a bite event, and it is blocked.

An option is also available to prevent probing endpoints from establishing communication with your network before they use a mark.

Bite Event

A bite event is identified when an endpoint tries to gain access to your network using a system mark. When the endpoint uses a mark, it is referred to as a bite event.

The endpoint can be a probing endpoint or any endpoint that received and tried to use the mark. Endpoints that perform a bite are referred to as infected endpoints.

Infection Attempt Events

An infection attempt includes:

- An event followed by a bite event that is detected at an open, real port on the service where the bite event was detected. Several infection attempts may occur after the bite event.
- An email worm infection.
- An event that was received as a lockdown event from another Appliance (for Appliances that are part of an Enterprise solution).
Infected Endpoints

An endpoint is considered infected if it has used a mark to try to gain access to your network or if it has passed the email anomaly threshold.

Forescout 8.1 responds to infected endpoints by performing one of the following:

- **Monitoring the infected endpoint**: The infected endpoint is permitted to communicate with your network and domains outside your organization for a specified time period. During this period, Forescout 8.1 records the activity of the infected endpoint and distributes marks to it. These endpoints are referred to as *monitored infected endpoints*.

- **Blocking the infected endpoints**: The infected endpoint is prevented from establishing communication with the network and domains outside your organization for a specified time period. These endpoints are referred to as *host blocked endpoints*.

- **Blocking the infected endpoint in the service it attempted to infect**: The infected endpoint is prevented from establishing communication with the service it attempted to infect for a specified time period. These endpoints are referred to as *port blocked endpoints*.

The default block or monitor period for infected endpoints is 12 hours. If the infected endpoint performs another scan or uses any system mark during this time, the blocking or monitoring period is extended.

Your policy definitions determine how Forescout 8.1 responds to infected endpoints.

Manually Added Endpoints

*Manually added endpoints* are endpoints that you manually add to your system. When you add an endpoint, you enter an IP address, assign it a block or monitor or ignore state, and assign it a time for blocking or monitoring or ignoring the endpoint. Manually added endpoints cannot be blocked at ports (port block).

Lockdown Endpoints (for Appliances Registered with an Enterprise Manager)

A *lockdown endpoint* is an endpoint that is blocked or monitored at one Appliance as the result of an event detected at another Appliance.

If one Appliance in your enterprise detected a bite event, a lockdown notification is sent to the Enterprise Manager, and the Enterprise Manager alerts the other Appliances that the endpoint performed the event. If the remaining Appliances detect that the endpoint is communicating with the network they are protecting, the endpoint is automatically blocked or monitored according to the policy. For more details, see [Managing Enterprise Lockdown Alerts](#).

Diverse Endpoints

A *diverse endpoint* is an endpoint that scans for multiple services. This may indicate that the source is a human attacker rather than a worm, which typically looks for one service across multiple endpoints.
Host Block or Monitor Period

The block or monitor period for malicious endpoints is determined by your system policy. The default setting is 12 hours. If the endpoint performs another scan or uses any system mark during this time, the blocking or monitoring period is extended. For example, if the endpoint is blocked and after two hours uses a system mark, the 12-hour block period is restarted and the total block time is 14 hours. If the endpoint does not perform another event, it is released when the block or monitor time has expired.

The expiration time for each malicious endpoint can be seen in the Detections pane in the Expires In column.

Email Worms

Forescout 8.1 identifies and responds to email worms sent over email, detecting the worms when:

- More than a certain number of emails are sent within a specified time period.
- Certain attachment formats are sent within a specified time period.
- Numerous sender names are delivered from one endpoint within a specified time period.
- Multiple emails with the same subject are sent to different recipients within a specified time period.
- More than a certain number of emails are sent to several email servers within a specified time period.

This method of defense varies from the standard protection in that it does not deal with probing endpoints, but rather with email anomalies.

Service Attacks

Forescout 8.1 identifies service attacks when a service-probing criterion is met, i.e., when a service is heavily probed by multiple endpoints. Forescout 8.1 calculates this criterion based on the size of the network. Service attacks are handled by monitoring or blocking all endpoints at attacked services only. This differs from the standard response to individual infected endpoints that are monitored or blocked at any service in the network or in the service that they attempted to infect. By default, most TCP and UDP ports are monitored. TCP ports 68, 80, 113, 443, and 1080 are ignored. UDP ports 68, 113, 1080, and 33434-33524 are ignored.

About the Threat Protection Policy

Threat Protection policies let you define how Forescout 8.1 should handle endpoints that scan and attempt to infect your network. Endpoints can be blocked entirely or prevented from accessing the service that they targeted. You can also choose to monitor endpoints. When monitored, the endpoints can communicate with the network, but Forescout 8.1 continues to record their activity and sends marks to them, as required.

Not all users have access to the policy features. See Access to Console Tools – Permissions for details.
About Advanced Policy Tools

Advanced policy definition tools let you customize settings for various types of scan and infection attempts. For example, you can customize the frequency for monitoring endpoints that use specific scan methods. HTTP scans may be handled differently than NetBIOS scans.

You can also block endpoints that use specific types of infection methods. For example, a Login infection attempt may be handled differently than a Port infection attempt.

The advanced service attack options let you update the default response to service attacks, adjust the sensitivity level for identifying such attacks, and customize responses to various types of service attacks.

Advanced email options let you customize the email delivery policy for email alerts regarding scans and infection attempts.

Viewing Threat Detections

Endpoints detected by your threat detection policies are displayed in the Console, Threats view.

The Detections pane is updated with threat detection information when the Threats tab is selected. Quickly find threat detections of interest to you. Use the:

- **Filters:** See [Working in the Filters Pane](#).
- **Text search:** Endpoints that meet the search requirements appear as you type.
- **State filter:** Filter the list display endpoints that were resolved with a specific state, for example, *Blocked* or *Scanning*.

High Activity Mode

During periods of high activity, Forescout 8.1 stops displaying new endpoints scanning your network in order to give higher priority to the display of offensive endpoints. The threshold for switching to the High Activity mode is when 5000 malicious endpoints are handled simultaneously.
When this threshold is exceeded, new scanning endpoints are monitored but not displayed. If, however, the scanning endpoint performs a bite event, it is displayed in the Console. During high activity periods, the status bar in the Console reads High Activity Mode.

**Viewing and Updating the Policy**

You can view or update the currently applied policy.

**To view or update the current policy:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.

2. Update the policy definitions as required.
Threat Protection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Threat Protection | Select to activate the Threat Protection policy features in Forescout 8.1 handles hosts that attempt to attack or infect your network. Threat Protection may not be suited to all environments, such as those with asymmetric traffic. In such environments, if left enabled, these features will not work properly and endpoints may be mistakenly blocked. In such a case you may want to disable Threat Protection. Disabling Threat Protection means that the Threats policy templates and all configurations defined in Options > Threat Protection, including the following child directories, will not work:  
  - Legitimate Scan  
  - Legitimate Email Servers  
  - Manual Set State  
  - Advanced  
Although these configuration options remain accessible and configurable from the Console, they are functionally disabled. Any changes made to these options in the Console will not take effect until Threat Protection is enabled. Threat Protection is already automatically disabled when your system is working in Partial Enforcement mode. If you are working in Full Enforcement mode, you can selectively disable Threat Protection while continuing to enable all other Forescout functionality. See Set the Enforcement Mode for details. |
Network Worm Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action On Bite</td>
<td>Choose one of the following responses to a bite:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Monitor</strong>: The endpoint is permitted to communicate with your network. Forescout 8.1 records the activity of the endpoint and sends marks to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Port Block</strong>: The endpoint is prevented from establishing communication in the service it attempted to infect for a specified time period. You can escalate the Port Block policy to the Host Block policy. When escalated, the endpoint is prevented from communicating with the entire network, rather than the service it attempted to infect. By default, the Port Block policy is automatically escalated to Host Block after the endpoint attempts to infect three separate services, that is, when the third service is bitten. You can change the default setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Host Block</strong>: The endpoint is prevented from establishing communication with the network for a specified time period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default block or monitor period for infected endpoints is 12 hours. If the endpoint performs another scan or uses any system mark during this time, the blocking or monitoring period is extended. For example, if the endpoint is blocked and after two hours uses a system mark again, the 12-hour block period is restarted, and the total block time is 14 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The block or monitor expiration time for each malicious endpoint can be seen in Detections pane in the <strong>Expires In</strong> column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify Operator</td>
<td>Select to send email notification regarding bite detections. The email recipients are defined during installation, but can be changed. See Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See Manage Threat Protection Mail Alert Deliveries for information about additional email customization options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Email Worm Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Email Worm</td>
<td>Select for Forescout 8.1 to detect and respond to email worm infections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action on Email</td>
<td>Choose to either block or monitor the endpoint when an email infection is detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify Operator</td>
<td>Select to send email notification regarding the email infection detection. The email recipients are defined during installation, but can be changed. See Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles for information about updating addresses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Event Traffic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Packet Capture</td>
<td>Select for Forescout 8.1 to display the packets transferred between a malicious host and the network in the Traffic dialog box. Enabling Packet Capture may affect CounterACT device performance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Define a new name in the Policy Name field (if required) to maintain the previous policy, and save the update under a new name.
2. Enter comments in the Comments field.
3. Select Apply.
4. When prompted for confirmation, select OK to apply the policy changes.

Blocking Worms Using Plugins

When working with plugins to block worms, you must create an associated policy rule to carry out the blocking action. Examples of these plugins are the Switch, Router and VPN Plugins. Refer to the relevant plugin configuration guide for details.

You can use a policy rule to perform additional actions on the infected endpoint. For example, you can send email to the user at the infected endpoint, prevent the user from surfing the web, or check for vulnerabilities and deploy self-remediation patches.

Customizing Basic Policy Settings

Advanced policy tools let you customize how Forescout 8.1 identifies and handles scan and bite events, email worms, and more. For example, you can customize the period in which to monitor endpoints that use certain scan types and methods.

NetBIOS scans may be monitored for a certain period of time while Port scans may be handled differently. You can also customize the block or monitor response according to the types of infection methods used. For example, you might block endpoints that carried out a NetBIOS infection attempt for four hours, and monitor endpoints that carried out a Port infection attempt for one day. Options are also available to customize email notification status for various types of scan and bite events.

Advanced service attack options let you update the default response to service attacks, adjust the sensitivity level for identifying such attacks, and customize responses to various types of service attacks. You can also make mission critical services accessible to all endpoints or select specific ports that are accessible to specific endpoints.

Customize Scan Settings

Your system is installed with predefined scan values that determine:

- How to identify probing endpoints
- How to handle probing endpoints

These policy options let you customize these values for specific scan types and scan methods.

Customize Parameters for Each Scan Type

The system handles the following scan types:

- Finger
- HTTP
- Login
- NetBIOS (disabled by default)
- Port
- SNMP

You can customize the following parameters for each scan type:

- Scan method
- The monitor or block response to probing endpoints
- The period that the probing endpoint is monitored or blocked
- The system’s response to the scan event
- The email notification per event type

**To customize parameters for each scan type:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.
2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select **Customize** and then select the Scan tab.

3. Double-click an **Action** field and select **Monitor** or **Host Block** from the drop-down menu.

   *Blocking NetBIOS, Port and SNMP scans that are UDP based is strongly discouraged. If you block these scans, an endpoint can scan your network using a spoofed endpoint IP address, in which case Forescout 8.1 will block the spoofed address instead of the scanning endpoint address.*

4. Double-click the value in the **Action Period** column and update the time period.
5. Verify that the first checkbox [✓] is selected to enable system response to the event. Clear the checkbox for the system to ignore the event.

6. Select the second checkbox [operator email] to send email notification for this type of scan event.

7. Adjust the **Policy Name** and **Comments** if required. If you update the current policy and change the policy name, the new policy is automatically applied when you save the changes.

8. Select **Apply** to save your changes.

9. Select **Basic** to return to the basic policy settings.

Alternatively, you can select **Details** to customize the scan recognition criteria for each scan type. For more information, see Customize Scan Recognition Criteria.

**Customize Scan Recognition Criteria**

You can customize the scan recognition criteria for specific types of scan events. For each scan type, you can define the number of probe events that must occur within a specified period in order for the system to identify the probing endpoint. This is referred to as a **probe count**.

In addition, the system supports various scan methods for each scan type available. For example, a Login scan can be performed using the password scan or user scan method. Customization tools let you define different scan criteria for each scan method. For example, you can define that endpoints using the Login password method must perform one probe within one day to be monitored, while endpoints using the Login user method are required to perform nine probes within one day to be monitored.

**To customize scan recognition parameters:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.

2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select **Customize** and then select the Scan tab.

3. Select a Scan Parameter row and select **Details**. The relevant Details dialog box opens.
4. Double-click the **Action** field to define how Forescout 8.1 will handle this scan.

5. Double-click the **Scan Count** field to define the number of probe events that must occur within a specified period in order for the system to identify the probing endpoint activity as a scan.

6. Double-click the **During** field to adjust the time interval in which the events must occur.

7. Verify that the checkbox [✓] is selected to enable detection of a specific scan method. Clear the checkbox for the system to ignore the event.

### Scan Types and Related Methods

- **Finger**: Forward Scan, Host Name Scan and User Scan
- **HTTP**: Method Scan
- **Login**: Password Scan and User Scan
- **NetBIOS**: General Scan and Node States Scan
- **Port**: Port Scan
- **SNMP**: Community Scan and Port Scan

8. Update the **Action Duration** field to adjust the time interval in which the system blocks or monitors these endpoints. The value is applied to all methods listed. Use the drop-down menu to assign a unit of time.

9. Enable **Notify Operator** to send email notification to designated operators when the event occurs.

10. Select **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog box.

### Customizing Bite Settings

Your system is installed with predefined bite values. These parameters determine how Forescout 8.1 responds to infected endpoints.
The advanced policy options let you customize bite parameters. You can define different handling methods for various types of bite events. For example, a Login bite may be blocked for two hours, while a Port bite may be monitored only or blocked for two days. In addition, certain bite types may be handled by blocking the endpoint that performed the bite type in the service it attempted to infect, rather than blocking the endpoint from the entire network.

You can also customize the block or monitor response according to the type of mark used by the endpoint, and according to the machine that the endpoint attempted to connect to (virtual or real).

**Customize Block or Monitor Response to Each Bite Type**

You can customize the following parameters for each bite type handled by Forescout 8.1:

- The block or monitor response
- The period that the endpoint is blocked or monitored
- Email notification for specific types of bite events

**To customize bite parameters:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.
2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select **Customize** and then select the Bite tab.
3. Double-click the **Action** field for the required bite and select **Monitor**, **Port Block**, or **Host Block** from the drop-down menu. See **Viewing and Updating the Policy** for details.

   If you update the action for a bite type to **Port Block** while the endpoint is blocked from the network, the Port Block is postponed until the Host Block period expires and the endpoint performs another bite.
4. Double-click the value in the **Action Period** column and update the period during which the system blocks or monitors this bite type.

5. Select the checkbox [operator email] to send email notification for this type of event.

6. Edit the **Policy Name** and **Comments** if required. If you update the current policy and change its name, the new policy is automatically applied when you save the changes.

7. Select **Apply** to save your changes.

8. Select **Basic** to return to the basic policy settings.

Alternatively, you can select **Details** to customize the block or monitor response for each bite type, based on the kind of bite mark used. For more information, see **Customize Bite Type Values**.

**Customize Bite Type Values**

The system supports various marks for each bite type. For example, the NetBIOS bite method is an event in which a Hostname mark or Share mark was used. You can customize the block or monitor response for each type of mark, and customize the block or monitor response according to the endpoint that the infected endpoint attempted to connect to (virtual or real). For example, you can customize the policy to block NetBIOS bites only if they occur at real endpoints.

> If the action is both blocked and monitored, the **Bite Type** field is disabled on the Bite tab.

**To customize bite type values:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.

2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select **Customize** and then select the Bite tab.

3. Select a Bite Parameter row and select **Details**. The relevant Policy dialog box opens.
4. In each **Real Host** and **Virtual Host** column, select the required row, and then select **Monitor**, **Port Block** or **Host Block** from the drop-down menu. See [Viewing and Updating the Policy](#) for details.

5. Update the **Action Duration** field to adjust the time interval in which the system blocks or monitors endpoints that attempt to carry out this type of infection method. The value is applied to all mark types listed. Use the drop-down menu to assign a unit of time.

6. Enable **Notify Operator** to send email notification to designated operators when the event occurs.

7. Select **OK** to save changes and close the dialog box.

**Bite Type Details**

This section details the possible bite types.

### Port Bite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Real/Virtual Host – Mark Used</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trojan port</td>
<td>Detected when an endpoint tries to connect to a port used by Trojan horse software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Known port</td>
<td>Detected when an endpoint tries to connect to a known service, for example, FTP or telnet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other port</td>
<td>Detected when an endpoint tries to connect to ports not belonging to Trojan or known ports.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HTTP Bite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Real/Virtual Host – Mark Used</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Port 80</td>
<td>Detected when an endpoint refers an IP address URL to a Virtual HTTP service.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### NetBIOS Bite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Real/Virtual Host – Mark Used</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hostname</td>
<td>Detected when an endpoint uses a Hostname mark during a NetBIOS session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Share mark</td>
<td>Detected when an endpoint uses a Share name mark during a NetBIOS session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Finger Bite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Real/Virtual Host – Mark Used</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hostname</td>
<td>Detected when an endpoint uses a Hostname mark during a finger forward session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Real/Virtual Host – Mark Used

| Details | 
|------------------|---|
| User Mark | Detected when an endpoint uses a User mark during a finger session. |

### Login Bite

| Details | 
|------------------|---|
| User Mark | Detected when an endpoint tries to log in to a service using a user name mark. |

### Customizing Email Worm Settings

Forescout 8.1 identifies and responds to email worms by detecting email worm anomalies that are sent over email. This varies from the standard method of defense, which provides protection as a result of endpoint bites. Anomaly thresholds can be configured.

You can block or monitor endpoints that carry out any of the following email violations:

| Amount | Endpoints that send more than a set number of emails within a specified time period. The default is 10 mails within one minute. |
| Attachment | Endpoints that send email with the following attachment formats within a specified time interval: .vbs, .vbe, .vb, .scr, .com, .pif, .bat, .shs, .exe, .wsc, .wsf, .wsh, .sct, .reg, .pcd, .mst, .msp, .msi, .msc, .mde, .mdb, .jse, .isp, .ins, .hta, .crt, .cpl, .cmd, .chm, .bas, .adp, .ade, .zip, .lnk, .inf, .job, .ini, .shb, .scp, .scf, .dll, .386, .acm, .asp, .avb, .bin, .cla, .cnv, .cs, .drv, .gms, .hlp, .nta, .hlt, .mht, .mpd, .ocx, .ov, .sys, .tlb, .vxd, .wbt, .wiz |

**To edit this list:**

1. Log in to the Enterprise Manager through the command-line interface (CLI).
2. Run the command: `fstool smtp_extensions`. The file containing the list opens in a text editor utility.

Repeat these changes on all Appliances.

| Sender | Endpoints that send email from one machine using more than a certain number of sender names within a specified time period. The default three different sender names within one minute. |
| Recipient | Endpoints that send multiple emails with the same subject to different recipients within a specified time period. The default is 10 mails with the same subject within one minute. |
| Server | Endpoints that send email to a specified number of email servers within a defined time period. The default is 10 mails to 10 servers within one minute. |

See [Customize Email Anomaly Recognition Values](#) for details.
How Do I Know When an Email Worm Is Detected?

Information about email violations is displayed in the Detections pane and in the Host Details dialog box.

In addition, you can generate reports regarding email worms. See Chapter 11: Generating Reports and Logs for details.

To customize email worm settings:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Threat Protection.
2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select Customize and then select the Email Worm tab.
3. Double-click the Action field for the required email anomaly type and select Monitor, Port Block, or Host Block from the drop-down menu.
4. Double-click the value in the Action Period column and update the time period.
5. Verify that the first checkbox [✓] is selected to enable system response to the event. Clear the checkbox for the system to ignore the event.
6. Select the second checkbox [operator email] to send email notification for this type of event.
7. Edit the Policy Name and Comments if required. If you update the current policy and change the policy name, the new policy is automatically applied when you save the changes.
8. Select Apply to save your changes.
9. Select Basic to return to the basic policy settings.

Alternatively, you can select Details to customize email anomaly recognition values. For more information, see Customize Email Anomaly Recognition Values.
Customize Email Anomaly Recognition Values

Forescout 8.1 recognizes various email anomaly patterns. For example, when more than a certain number of mails are sent from one machine to several email servers within a certain time period. You can customize the anomaly recognition patterns to suit your business environment.

**To customize email anomaly recognition patterns:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.
2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select **Customize** and then select the Email Worm tab.
3. Select an Email Worm Parameter row and select **Details**.
4. Double-click the **Action** field for the anomaly and select **Monitor**, **Port Block** or **Host Block** from the drop-down menu. See [Viewing and Updating the Policy](#) for details.
5. Double-click the **Count** field to define the number of events that must occur within a specified period in order for the system to identify the anomaly.
6. Double-click the **During** field to adjust the time interval in which the endpoint must send the emails in order to be identified by the system.
7. Verify that the checkbox [✓] is selected to enable system response to the event. Clear the checkbox if you want the system to ignore the event.
8. Update the **Action Duration** setting to adjust the time interval in which the system blocks or monitors this anomaly type. Use the drop-down menu to assign a unit of time.
9. Enable **Notify Operator** to send email notification to designated operators when the event occurs.
10. Select **OK** to save the changes.
Configure the Block Method

The following options are available to help you fine-tune the Forescout 8.1 blocking mechanism:

- **Update the escalate threshold for moving from Port block to Host block**: When escalated, the endpoint is prevented from communicating with the entire network and endpoints outside the network rather than the service it attempted to infect. Port blocking is useful for letting the endpoint continue working with services that it did not attack.

- **Disable the external block mechanism**: By default, blocked endpoints are prevented from establishing communication with the network as well as with domains outside your organization. You can disable this mechanism to only block endpoints from your network.

To fine-tune the block method:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.
2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select **Customize** and then select the Block Method tab.

3. By default, the Port block policy is escalated to Host block after the endpoint attempts to infect three separate services, i.e., when the third service is bitten. Set the **Threshold to Host Block** field to change the default setting.

4. Clear **Enable External Block** to block endpoints in the network only.

5. Adjust the **Policy Name** and **Comments** if required. If you update the current policy and change the policy name, the new policy is automatically applied when you save the changes.

6. Select **Apply** to save your changes.

7. Select **Basic** to return to the basic policy settings.
Handling Service Attacks

Forescout 8.1 identifies a service attack when a certain service-probing criterion is met. This criterion is automatically calculated and is based on the size of your network. The sensitivity threshold can be adjusted to identify the attack after fewer or more service-probing events occur.

About Monitoring and Blocking Service Attacks

Forescout 8.1 handles service attacks by monitoring or blocking all endpoints at attacked services in the network. This differs from the standard response to individual endpoints that attempt to scan or attack any port in the network.

By using the monitor option, all traffic going to attacked services is recorded for a defined time period and not just the traffic of the probing endpoint. After the time period has expired, Forescout 8.1 stops recording traffic in the services. If the service attack criterion is met again, endpoints are monitored again for the time set.

By using the block option, you are blocking all traffic to the attacked services for a defined time period and not just the traffic of the infected endpoint. After the time period has expired, traffic is allowed. If the service attack criterion is met again, endpoints are blocked again for the time period set. Use the block option to prevent worm attacks from reaching the service at other endpoints in your network.

By default, both UDP and TCP are monitored for 12 hours. TCP ports 68, 80, 113, 443 and 1080 are ignored. UDP ports 68, 113, 1080 and 33434-33524 are ignored.

You can disable this feature for either service. When disabled, traffic going to the selected service is neither blocked nor monitored. The response is disabled until you enable it again.

You can also remove the current monitor or block state endpoints in the service.

In addition, users listed in the Email configuration dialog box are sent an email notification alert whenever a service attack occurs.

Advanced Service Attack Features

Advanced service attack features let you adjust the following:

- Sensitivity threshold for identifying a service attack
- System response to the service attack at specific ports

For example, you can choose to monitor all TCP services but ignore FTP ports, or you can choose to block UDP services but only monitor SNMP ports. See Customize Service Attack Criteria for details.

Recommended Usage

Blocking services should be carried out carefully. When the service is blocked, no communication to the service is allowed for any endpoint, even if the endpoint is not malicious.

As a result, it is recommended to only monitor services.
UDP Blocking Prerequisites
To block endpoints at UDP services, you must configure your system to block with Forescout 8.1 and a firewall. Not all firewall products support service blocks. If your firewall does not support service blocks, you receive an error message.

How Do I Know When a Service Has Been Attacked?
The service attack indicator on your status bar flickers when a new service is attacked.
You can view service attacks from the Threats view, the Service Attack folder.
In addition, email alerts are sent when a service attack occurs, provided that you do not disable this option. The following tools are also available:

- Viewing the currently monitored and blocked services.
- Viewing a history of monitored and blocked services. See View a History of Monitored and Blocked Services.
- Displaying a report with the number of UDP/TCP scans that occurred during a specific time period.
- Sending service attack traps to your management station. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products.

Set the Service Attack Policy
This section describes how to set a service attack policy.

**To set the service attack policy:**

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Threat Protection.
2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select Customize and then select the Service Attack tab.
3. Double-click the **Action** field for TCP or UDP. From the drop-down menu, set one of the following actions:
   - Select **Monitor** to record all traffic going to the selected service.
   - Select **Block** to prevent all traffic from communication with the service.

By default, service attacks are monitored for 12 hours. These settings can be customized on a per port basis. See TCP [Customize Service Attack Criteria](#) for details.

4. Double-click the value in the **Action Period** column and update the time period that the system blocks or monitors this type of service.

5. Verify that the first checkbox [✓] is selected to enable system response to the event. Clear the checkbox for the system to ignore the event. If the checkbox is cleared, service attacks will not be monitored or blocked.

6. Select the second checkbox [operator email] to send email notification when the attack occurs.

7. Adjust the **Policy Name** and **Comments** if required. If you update the current policy and change the policy name, the new policy is automatically applied when you save the changes.

8. Select **Apply** to save your changes.

Alternatively, you can select **Details** to customize service attack parameters. For more information, see [Customize Service Attack Criteria](#).

### Customize Service Attack Criteria

Service attack values set in the Service Attack tab can be customized. Two options are available for customization:

- Adjust sensitivity threshold for identifying an attack.
- Customizing the service attack response at specific ports.

**To customize service attack parameters:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.
2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select **Customize** and then select the Service Attack tab.
3. Select the TCP or UDP row and select **Details**. The relevant Service Attack Details dialog box opens.
4. Select **Enabled** to enable system response to the event. Clear the checkbox for the system to ignore the event. If the checkbox is cleared, service attacks are not monitored or blocked (recommended).

5. From the **Default Action** drop-down menu, select **Monitor** to record all traffic going to the selected service, or select **Block** to prevent all traffic from communication with the service for the selected protocol.

6. In the **Sensitivity** section, adjust the sensitivity threshold for identifying a service attack.

   Forescout 8.1 identifies services attacks when the default service probing criterion is met. However, the sensitivity level of the criterion can be adjusted to identify the attack after either fewer or more probing endpoints are detected at a service within a set specified time period.

   – Double-click in the **Scanning Hosts** field to specify the number of endpoints to be detected at a service.

   – Double-click in the **Duration** field to assign a unit of time.

7. In the **Exception Actions** section, select a port and an action. Double-click the relevant **Action** field and select **Monitor**, **Block** or **Ignore** from the drop-down menu. To add actions for specific ports, see **Customizing the Service Attack Response at Specific Ports**.

8. Update the **Action Duration** setting to adjust the time interval in which the system blocks or monitors the UDP or TCP services. The value is applied to all ports listed for the UDP or TCP service. Use the drop-down menu to assign a unit of time.

9. Enable **Notify Operator** to send email notification to designated operators when the event occurs.
10. Select **OK** to save changes and close the dialog box.

**Customizing the Service Attack Response at Specific Ports**

The *Exception Actions* section lets you customize the system response to service attacks at specific ports.

For example, if you choose to block all UDP services, you can customize the block by indicating specific UDP services in which communication will only be monitored. You can enter a list of ports, a range of ports or a combination of both. An option is also available to ignore activity at ports, in which case the service is neither blocked nor monitored.

**To define service exceptions:**

1. In the *Exception Actions* section of the relevant Service Attack Details dialog box, select **Add**.

   ![Port Editor](image)

2. Enter the port numbers required. Use a hyphen to indicate port ranges. Ports and ranges must be comma-separated.

3. Select **OK**. The Service Details dialog box to include the additional port numbers.

4. Click the action field for the related port and choose an action response from the drop-down menu that opens. The following options are available:

   - **Monitor**: Records all endpoint activity with the selected port.
   - **Block**: Prevents all endpoints from establishing communication with the port.
   - **Ignore**: Does not block or monitor traffic.

5. Select **OK**.

**To edit the service attack exceptions:**

1. Select the port that you want to edit from the *Exception Actions* section.

2. Select **Edit**. The Port Editor dialog box opens.

3. Edit the ports as required and select **OK**.

**To remove service attack exceptions:**

1. Select a port entry to remove from the *Exception Actions* section.

2. Select **Remove** and then select **OK**.
Remove the Monitor or Block State from a Service

You can remove the monitor or block state assigned to the services in your network; the system stops monitoring or blocking the service and the service is removed from the table.

Forescout 8.1 will respond to the service by monitoring or blocking the next time the service attack criterion is met.

To remove the monitor or block state from a service:

1. Select a service in the Detections pane.
2. Right-click and select **Remove** and then **Apply**.

Manage Threat Protection Mail Alert Deliveries

Forescout 8.1 delivers an infection alert to the operator by email notification to specified email addresses regarding bite detections in the network.

To access email deliveries:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection**.
2. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select **Customize** and then select the Notify tab.

Operator Notification

Forescout 8.1 sends email notification to specified email addresses regarding bite detections. If there is extensive activity at your network, email recipients may receive an overwhelming number of emails.

The following tools are available to help you manage email delivered to email recipients:
- Define the maximum number of email alerts delivered per day (from midnight)
- Define the maximum number of events that are listed in each email

For example, you can define that you only want to receive 50 emails per day, and that each email should contain no more than 50 events.

By default, up to 100 mails are sent within 24 hours. For example, if there is extensive activity early in the day and 100 mails are sent by 11 AM, you will not receive mails about events that occur during the rest of the day.

After the maximum number of emails is sent, a warning email is delivered; indicating that the email delivery threshold has passed and you will no longer receive email alerts again until midnight. At midnight, an email is sent summarizing events that were not delivered. The summary includes the type of events detected and the number of events for each type, for example, 25 Port Bites and 65 Login Bites.

By default, mail is delivered approximately every 15 minutes provided that at least one event has occurred; it is delivered more frequently if more than 100 events occur in less than 15 minutes.

³ Information about these events is viewable from the Console.

You can change the default parameters and receive email alerts at a frequency that is more manageable for you.

**To update operator notification parameters:**

1. At the bottom of the Threat Protection pane, select Customize and then select the Notify tab.
2. Specify the **Maximum events listed in each email** value.
3. Specify the **Maximum emails per day**. The system calculates how often you receive mail according to this value, provided an event occurs.

   To receive an email alert each time an event occurs, enter the value **1** in the **Maximum emails per day** field.

³ Emails are also sent when the system detects a service attack. You cannot customize this delivery parameter, but you can disable the email delivery feature for service attacks.

**Additional Email Options**

The following email options are also available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Update addresses that will receive email alerts</th>
<th>By default, your system sends email alerts to specified addresses when bite events occur. These addresses are defined during installation and can be changed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Receive mail only for certain event types</td>
<td>You can define that you want to receive alerts only when specific types of endpoint activity occur, for example, only when Login bites occur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Perform parsing on event information displayed in email alerts

Email alerts regarding endpoint and service events include a summary of events. This information is displayed in a format that can be easily parsed by external applications. See Parsing Event Information Displayed in Email Alerts for details.

**Working with Manually Added Endpoints**

Manual endpoints are endpoints that you manually add to your system by entering an IP address and a state for that address into the system. If the endpoint sends a packet to your network, the system handles it according to the specified state. The endpoint does not have to meet the scan criterion or use a system mark in order for the system to respond to it. You can later update the values defined for the endpoint, or instruct the system to respond to it as it would any other endpoint. You can also manually set an endpoint state or duration for endpoints detected by the system – probing or offensive.

In addition to manually adding an endpoint to the system, you can change the state of an endpoint that was automatically detected by the system. Use this feature if you want to handle a particular endpoint in a different manner than defined in the Current Policy.

You cannot manually update an endpoint to the Port Block state.

**Manually Add an Endpoint**

You can manually enter an endpoint into your system. Use this feature if you already know the IP address of an endpoint, and know that you want to either ignore, monitor, or block its activities for a specified period of time. After that period expires, the endpoint is handled according to the current system policy.

**To add an endpoint:**

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Threat Protection > Manual Set State.
2. Select Add.
3. Enter the endpoint **IP Address**.

4. From the **State** drop-down menu select the appropriate state.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Monitors endpoint activity for the length of time that you specify.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host Block</td>
<td>Blocks the endpoint from the network for the length of time that you specify.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port Block</td>
<td>Blocks the endpoint in the services that you define in the Services field. Multiple services must be comma-separated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore</td>
<td>The system ignores all endpoint activity for the length of time that you specify. After this time, the system responds to the endpoint activity according to the policy definitions. When you select this option, the Firewall block options and HTTP redirection actions are also ignored for the time specified on these endpoints. See Advanced Policy Options for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. In the **Active for** area, specify how long you would like the selected endpoint to remain in the chosen state.

6. You can use the **Comments** field as required.

7. Select **OK** to accept the entry.

**Managing Manually Added Endpoints**

You can view a list of the manually added endpoints that the system is currently handling, remove those endpoints from the list, or modify their state and how long the system maintains that state. These tasks are performed from the Current Added Hosts dialog box. The list is updated each time you open the dialog box.

**To view manually added endpoints:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection > Manual Set State**.

2. Define the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>The endpoint’s IP address.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>The endpoint’s state: Host Blocked, Port Blocked, Monitored or Ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blocked Ports</td>
<td>The ports at which the endpoint is blocked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From/Until</td>
<td>The length of time that the endpoint is in the state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issued By</td>
<td>The name of the user that manually added the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments</td>
<td>Related comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CounterACT Appliance</td>
<td>The Appliance that received the command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Select **OK**.

**To modify the manually added endpoint definitions:**

1. Select an endpoint.
2. Select **Edit**. The Set State for <IP_address> dialog box opens.
3. Update the manual endpoint parameters.
4. Select **OK**.

**To remove a manually added endpoint:**
1. Select an endpoint.
2. Select **Remove**.
3. When prompted for confirmation, select **Yes**.

   The endpoint is removed from the list of manually added endpoints. The system now responds to the endpoint activity according to the current policy definitions.

**Changing the Host State Maintenance Time**

You can change the expiration of the endpoint state, without changing the state.

**To change the expiration time:**
1. Select the Threat Protection folder from the Console.
2. Right-click an endpoint in the Detections pane, select **Threat Protection** and then **Set State Time**.
3. Specify how long you want the host to be monitored. Use the drop-down menu to assign a unit of time.
4. Select **OK**.

**Changing the Host State**

You can change the endpoint state. The endpoint expiration time remains the same.

1. Right-click an endpoint in the Detections pane and select **Set Threat Protection State**.

2. Update the endpoint parameters in the Set State dialog box.
Chapter 13: Threat Protection

3. Select OK.

Viewing a History of Manually Added Endpoints and Manual Changes

You can view a list of manually added endpoints and endpoints whose states or times were manually changed.

To view the history manual list:
1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Threat Protection > Manual Set State.
2. Select History.
3. In the Time Period dialog box, set the required time range.
4. Select OK.

The Manual Host Changes dialog box opens, showing endpoints that were entered manually during the time that you specified.

Defining the Active Response Range

By default, the entire Internal Network is protected by Forescout Active Response technology. This procedure describes how to change the Active Response range. For example, you may want to limit Active Response protection to core operational segments of your network.

- Segments you place in the Active Response range must be included in the Internal Network.
- Only endpoints with an IPv4 address are protected by Active Response technology. In dual-stack networks, only the IPv4 ranges of a segment are included in the Active Response range. IPv6 subnets are ignored.
To edit Active Response range definitions:

1. If necessary, define segments in Forescout 8.1 that support your Active Response range configuration. See Working with Forescout Segments.

2. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Threat Protection > Advanced > Active Response Range.

3. The table lists segments that are in the default Active Response range.

4. (Optional) Create a configuration for a group of Appliances, or select a configuration to modify. See Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances.

5. Do one of the following:
   - Select Segments. Then, in the Segment selection dialog box, select or clear checkboxes to include or remove segments, and select OK. The selected segments define the Active Response range.
   - Select segments in the table, and select Remove. The selected segments are deleted from the Active Response range.

Changes made to the Active Response range must be supported by your network architecture. Specifically, addresses included the Active Response range defined for an Appliance must be visible to the Appliance.

Viewing Endpoint Activity Details

You can view comprehensive details regarding activities carried out by endpoints.

To view endpoint details:

- In the Threats view, double-click a malicious endpoint from the Detections pane to open the Host Details dialog box.

The endpoint’s address is displayed in the title bar. The Events tab displays the date and time of the first event.
The Host Details dialog box displays general information and detailed information about the event. For example, you can review specifics about packets transferred during the session.

In addition, you can view information about the endpoint in the Assets Portal by selecting Show full host details. See Chapter 10: Assets Portal for details.

**Events Tab**

The Events tab displays a graphic time-line summary of the source state for the period that the source is active. In addition, the tab includes an Event table, which provides extensive, real-time information about the source events and responses to those events.

![Host State Time-Line Summary](image)

**Host State Time-Line Summary**

This section displays a graphic time-line summary of the source state for the period that the source is active. The **Bite/Scan/Email** icon will appear over the time-line summary each time the source states changes. The **Flashlight** icon indicates that the source performed a scan event. The red and white **Bite** icon indicates that the source performed a bite event. If an **Email** icon is displayed, an email anomaly was detected. A plus sign (+) indicates that the source performed more than one event. Use your cursor to view tooltip information about the scan or bite events detected.

![Event Table](image)

**Event Table**

The Event Table provides extensive, real-time information about source events and Forescout 8.1 activity that occurs while the source is active. An event is defined as any attempt to access an endpoint on the network.
For example, the table displays information about the targeted endpoint for each event, including the endpoint IP address and the targeted service. Information about the response to events is also available. For example, if Forescout 8.1 responded by sending a service mark to the source, the returned data will indicate the service sent. The information provided here should be used for in-depth analysis of source and Forescout 8.1 activity.

Additional tasks can be carried out from the Event Table, including:

- Filtering the Information Displayed in the Event Table
- Adding Legitimate Traffic Rules from the Event Table
- Viewing a Summary of Event Details
- Viewing Event Traffic

Default columns appear with basic information about sources and related source activity. Additional information can be displayed by adding other columns.

### Source Activity

The following table details source activity for the selected event.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>The time and date the event occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Verified Source" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the source address is verified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Unverified Source" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the source address is unverified (possibly spoofed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Fragmentation</td>
<td>Indicates whether the packets sent during the event were normally fragmented or abnormally fragmented. Abnormally fragmented packets may indicate that the event was carried out by a human attacker and not by a worm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host, Host IP</td>
<td>Displays the IP address at which the event took place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Virtual Address" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the targeted host was a virtual address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Unknown Address" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the targeted host is unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Real Address" /></td>
<td>Indicates that the targeted host was a real address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External</td>
<td>Indicates whether the targeted host resides outside the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Displays the name of the services accessed on the targeted host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Forescout 8.1 Activity

The following table details activity for the selected event.
## Item | Description
--- | ---
Detection | Indicates the event detected, e.g., NetBIOS scan or infection attempt.
Response | Indicates the response to the detection. Options include:
- **Block**: Forescout 8.1 does not allow packets from the source to go through to the specified destination (host + service).
- **Stall**: Forescout 8.1 simulates a virtual service for an infected source. This occurs when the policy is not set to block infected sources.
- **Mark**: Forescout 8.1 distributes a mark to the source.
Resulting State | Displays the new source state after detection and response.
Returned Data | Displays the data sent to the source from Forescout 8.1. For example, if Forescout 8.1 responded by sending a user name mark to the source, the returned data will indicate the user name sent.
Expiration | Indicates the date and time the source state will expire.

### Filtering the Information Displayed in the Event Table

The Event Table can be filtered so it only includes information of particular interest to you. For example, you can select filter settings so the table displays only events in which a real site was accessed.

You can choose to either display events that meet the filter criteria or hide the events that meet the criteria. Filter settings are automatically saved and applied to your table each time you open the Console.

The following filter options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filter Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Detections</strong></td>
<td>Events that caused Forescout 8.1 to either change the current source state or extend the source state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Detections and Marks</strong></td>
<td>Events that caused Forescout 8.1 to either distribute marks or change the current source state or extend the source state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infection Attempts</strong></td>
<td>Events in which an infection attempt was made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Real Site Accesses</strong></td>
<td>Events in which the source attempted to probe, scan or infect a real site, or in which a valid event was carried out at a real site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Same Host</strong></td>
<td>Events targeted at the same host as the endpoint selected in the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Same Service</strong></td>
<td>Events targeted in the same service as the service selected in the table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To filter the table:**

1. Select a filter type from the **Filter by** drop-down menu in the Event table.
2. Select **Hide** to hide the selected event types, or clear the checkbox to display those events only.

### Adding Legitimate Traffic Rules from the Event Table

You can add a Legitimate Traffic rule for a source or event listed in the Event table.
To create a rule:

1. Right-click an event in the Event table and select **Legitimize Traffic**. The Add Custom Rule dialog box opens.
   
   The selected source is displayed in the **Source** section. The targeted host and service selected in the Events table are also included in the Legitimate Traffic rule.

2. Edit the rule if required.

3. Select **OK**.

Viewing a Summary of Event Details

An Event Details dialog box summarizes event details for a selected event and displays related events. For example, if you select a scan event, the probes included in the scan are listed.

To view a summary:

- Double-click an entry in the Event Table or right-click an entry and select **Details**.

The following information is available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host Activity</td>
<td>Summarizes information regarding source activity for the selected event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CounterACT Appliance Activity</td>
<td>Summarizes information regarding activity for the selected event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Item | Description
--- | ---
Related Events | Lists events related to the selected event.
  - **Related Scan Details** displays all probe events related to the scan event.
  - **Related Probe Details** displays additional probe events related to the scan event.
  - **Related Mark Details** displays marks that triggered the bite event. You can review a history of related mark events.
  - **Related Bite Details** displays the bites that responded to the distributed mark.

**Scrolling to Addition Event Summaries**

The Event Details Dialog box can be automatically updated to display information about other sources in the Event table.

**To display information about additional events:**

- Click a scroll arrow from the **Host Activity** section.

**Viewing Event Traffic**

You can display information about the packets transferred between the host and the network.

**To view event traffic for the selected source:**

1. Select an event from the Event table.
2. Select **Traffic**. The Traffic dialog box opens.

An option for hiding and showing table columns is available from this tab.

**Session List Section**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="From a virtual address" /></td>
<td>: From a virtual address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="From a real address" /></td>
<td>: From a real address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Host</strong></td>
<td>The targeted host that communicated with the infected source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Service</strong></td>
<td>Name of service or port number, for example, FTP or email.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Count</strong></td>
<td>The total number of packets per session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bandwidth</strong></td>
<td>The total of all packet sizes divided by the duration of the session in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>First/Last Packet Arrival</strong></td>
<td>The date and time of the first or last packet of the session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Packet List Section**

This section provides information about each packet.
Indicates whether the packet destination or source is:

- 🌐: A virtual address
- 🌐: A real address

Indicates the direction of the activity:

- 🌐: From Threat Protection site to source
- 🌐: From source to Threat Protection site

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Size of the packet in bytes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>The date and time the packet was sent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Viewing and Saving Packet Data from the Packet Data Section

You can display and save the packet data from source sessions.

**To display packet data:**
- Select an entry from the Packet List to display the raw packet data.

**To save packet data:**
1. Select the session from the Traffic tab. To save all sessions, do not select any sessions.
2. Select **Save**. The Save Options dialog box opens.
3. Select **Save all session** or **Save selected session**, and then select **OK**. A Save As dialog box opens enabling you to save the information in a selected directory.

   If the selected source is still active, a message indicates that the source is still active and that you are not saving all the source sessions.

### Managing Enterprise Lockdown Alerts

Enterprise lockdown alerts enable malicious endpoint activity detected in one Appliance to be immediately communicated and simultaneously handled by all the Appliances in the enterprise. As a result, if one Appliance in your enterprise has detected a bite event, a lockdown alert is sent to the other Appliances, alerting them of the source that performed the event. If the other Appliances detect that a source is communicating with the network that they are protecting, the source is automatically blocked or monitored according to the policy.

For example, if Appliance 1 detects a port bite from source XYZ, an alert is sent to the other Appliances, notifying them of the source. If Appliance 2 detects source XYZ communicating with the network it is protecting, the source is either blocked or monitored according to the port bite block or monitor policy defined in the Appliance. The source is blocked or monitored for the time indicated in the policy of Appliance 2 and then released.

You can include or exclude specific Appliances that send or receive alerts, and customize the kind of bite events that are included in the lockdown alert.
To manage lockdown alerts:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection > Advanced > Enterprise Lockdown**.

2. Select **Enable Enterprise Lockdown** to activate the lockdown policy.

3. Define a lockdown policy.

   - **Enterprise Manager sends Lockdown alerts to all CounterACT Appliances**
     - When selected, the Enterprise Manager sends lockdown alerts to all Appliances in the enterprise.
     - Clear the checkbox to define specific Appliances that will receive lockdown alerts.

   - **Enterprise Manager forwards Lockdown alerts from all CounterACT Appliances**
     - When selected, the Enterprise Manager accepts all lockdown alerts from all Appliances.
     - Clear the checkbox to define specific Appliances that will send lockdown alerts to the Enterprise Manager.

   - **Forward all Lockdown events**
     - When selected, all bite event types are included in lockdown.
     - Clear the checkbox to select specific types of bite events that are included in the lockdown alert.

4. Select **Apply**.

**To send events to specific Appliances:**

1. Clear one of the first two Enterprise Policy Lockdown options.

2. Select **CounterACT Appliances**.
3. Select and move Appliances to and from the Available CounterACT Appliances list to the Selected CounterACT Appliances list as required.

4. Select OK.

To customize the Forward All Lockdown Events policy:
1. Clear Forward all Lockdown events.
2. Select Events.

3. Select and move events from Available events list to and from the Selected events list as required.

4. Select OK.

**Legitimate Traffic**

This section describes the options available when working with legitimate traffic options.

The following options are available:

- About Handling Legitimate Activity from Malicious Sources
- View Legitimate Traffic
- Define Legitimate Scanning Activity – Wizard
About Handling Legitimate Activity from Malicious Sources

You can define rules for allowing specific kinds of probes at your network. This type of activity is referred to as legitimate traffic activity. Once these rules are defined, endpoints that perform Legitimate Traffic are ignored. Specifically, they are not counted in the probe count by Forescout 8.1 when attempting to probe defined services or host.

Refer to Basic Terminology in Chapter 13: Threat Protection for more information about probing sources.

By default, the Legitimate Traffic rule is set to ignore NetBIOS and port probes by any source to any real host on any service. This allows Forescout 8.1 to ignore legitimate network activity and handle activity on virtual endpoints that it creates.

You should keep the default settings, and then use the Legitimate Traffic tools to add other Legitimate Traffic rules, as required. For example, if you are performing vulnerability assessments from specific addresses on specific ports, or for a printer that is required to scan the network to find a server to connect to, or any other business requirement that compels you to grant full access to specific addresses.

Centralized Management

Legitimate Traffic rules can be centrally managed via the Enterprise Manager for all connected Appliances. This means the rules defined in the Enterprise Manager are applied to all Appliances. Centralized management ensures consistency in Legitimate Traffic probe definitions across your enterprise. This eliminates the process of redefining the rules at each Appliance, making it easier to conclude deployment.

When registering an Appliance to the Enterprise Manager, all legitimate traffic rules configured on that Appliance are replaced by the rules on the Enterprise Manager.

Legitimizing Traffic Options

The following options are available for setting Legitimate Traffic rules:

- Define legitimate known scanning applications, for example, Exchange IM or Lotus.
- Define servers that have been removed, but are still probed by network users.
- Define specific services and endpoints at which scanning is allowed.
- Define email servers and sources that should be allowed to send email traffic.
- Use the Legitimate Scan Tuning wizard to automatically locate and allow legitimate scanning activity generated by known scanning applications or directed at unused servers.
- Create rules for detected endpoints.
- Import or export Legitimate Traffic.
**Activity at Other Services**

If a legitimate source probes the legitimate endpoints and ports assigned to it, and does not probe any other ports or endpoints, that source is *not* marked as a probing source, and thus is not a candidate for monitoring and blocking. If the same source also probes at least three endpoints or ports not marked as legitimate within the defined time period, a mark is distributed to the source. If the source uses the mark, it is considered an infected source and as such is a candidate for monitoring and blocking.

> The default settings require that the source perform three probe events within a day in order for the system to mark the source as a probing source. See Customize Scan Recognition Criteria for details about changing the probe count criteria.

After a source is detected as offensive, its attempts to access the legitimate endpoints and ports assigned to it are blocked and monitored.

**Manually Ignoring a Source or Defining a Legitimate Scan**

In addition to using the legitimate scan feature, an option is available to ignore selected sources for a specified time period. When a source is ignored, all communication from it is allowed at any port.

The difference between manually ignoring a source and using the Legitimate Traffic rule is:

- The manual ignore feature is limited to a certain time, while the Legitimate Traffic rule is enabled until you disable it.
- The manual ignore feature does not let you customize specific endpoints or ports on which to ignore the source.
- The manual ignore feature lets you ignore the source under all circumstances. If you use the Legitimate Traffic feature, and the source scans or attempts to infect endpoints or ports not specified as Legitimate Traffic, the source is blocked according to policy at all ports and endpoints, including the legitimate ones.

**View Legitimate Traffic**

Legitimate Traffic is defined and managed from the Legitimate Traffic dialog box. From the dialog box, you can add, edit, and remove rules, as well as to filter information about the rules that you have already defined. A feature is also available to import and export Legitimate Traffic rules.

**To view the legitimate traffic list:**

- Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Threat Protection > Legitimate Scan.
The following information is available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>Indicates that the rule is enabled.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rule</td>
<td>Several types of rules can be created. For example, custom design rules, known scanning application rules or removed server rules. This column details the rule type created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Change</td>
<td>The date the rule was most recently modified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>The source addresses to which the rule is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target</td>
<td>The destination addresses to which the rule is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The probe types included in the rule. For example, to allow HTTP probes only. The following options are available: Finger, HTTP, Login, NetBIOS, SNMP, and Port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>The service to which the rule applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real Hosts Only</td>
<td>Indicates that the rule was applied to real endpoints only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Displays one of several methods used for defining Legitimate Traffic rules. The methods are detailed later in this chapter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Define Legitimate Scanning Activity – Wizard**

The Legitimate Scan Tuning wizard automatically detects applications installed at your network that may be used for legitimate scanning activity, and detects servers that have been and continue to be probed by network users. Use the wizard to define these applications or servers as sources of legitimate traffic. The Legitimate Traffics wizard automatically identifies most of the rules required, however fine-tuning may be required and can be done by adding custom rules.

**To define Legitimate Traffic rules:**

1. From the Legitimate Scan pane, select **Tuning Wizard**.
2. Select a time period in one of the following ways:
   – Select **Relative Time** and then specify the required number of hours, days, weeks, or months. Select a time unit from the drop-down menu.
   – Select **Time Range** and then specify the beginning and end of the time range.

3. Select **OK**. If results are discovered, the Welcome dialog box opens.

4. Read the contents and select **Next**. The Legitimate Applications dialog box opens, containing the known scanning applications detected at your network.

5. Select the **Allowed** checkbox for each application you need to allow to scan your network.

6. Select **Next**. The Removed Servers dialog box opens, listing removed servers that continue to be probed by network sources, but cannot be reached. This may occur, for example, because the server is uninstalled or no longer in use. Forescout 8.1 may unnecessarily block sources detected at these locations. Activity should be allowed at such servers. The 10 servers most frequently probed by sources during the time period that you specified are displayed. After the wizard completes, you can run it again to see if other servers are found.

7. Select the **Allowed** checkbox for each server that should be open for scanning activity.

8. Select **Next**. The Finish dialog box opens. The applications or servers marked **Allowed** are added to the Legitimate Probes Manager.

9. Select **Finish**. The Legitimate Traffic List opens, listing the allowed applications and allowed removed servers that you defined in the wizard.

10. Select **Apply**.

### Manually Define Legitimate Scanning Applications

You can manually define specific legitimate scanning applications from which Forescout 8.1 ignores scanning activity.

**To manually define Legitimate Scan Rules:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection** > **Legitimate Scan**.
2. From the Legitimate Scan pane, select **Add**.

3. In the **New Legitimate Scan Rule** dialog box, select **Legitimate Scanning Applications** and then select **OK**.

4. Select an application from the list.

5. In the **IP Address** field, enter the address at which the application is installed.

6. Use the **Comments** field as required.

7. Select **Only apply on real hosts** for all probes on real endpoints to be permitted by the application. When this option is selected, a probe is considered legitimate only if the destination address was learned as a Real Host.

8. Select **OK**.

   If the application is installed at several locations, repeat the process for additional IP addresses.
Manually Define Removed Servers

Removed servers are servers that network users have attempted to connect to, but cannot be reached. This may occur, for example, because the server is uninstalled or because the server is no longer in use. Forescout 8.1 may unnecessarily block sources detected at these locations. Activity should be allowed at such servers.

To manually define removed servers:

1. From the Legitimate Traffic List, select **Add**.

2. In the New Legitimate Scan Rule dialog box, select **Removed Server** and then select **OK**.

3. In the Add Removed Server Rule dialog box, enter the IP address of the server in the **IP Address** field.

4. Select **Only apply on real hosts** to apply the rule to real endpoints only (and not virtual endpoints).

5. Define a service in the Service field.

6. Use the Comments field as required.

7. Select **OK**.

Create Customized Legitimate Traffic

The Legitimate Traffic wizard automatically identifies most of the legitimate scanning applications and servers at in your network. Fine-tuning may be required, for example, if a network manager performs a network scan for legitimate reasons, and can be done by adding customized rules.
To create customized Legitimate Traffic rules:

1. From the Legitimate Traffic List, select **Add**.

2. In the New Legitimate Scan Rule dialog box, select **Custom** and then select **OK**.

3. In the Source and Target sections, define the direction traffic should be legitimatized – from which source to which target endpoints.

4. In the Service section, define the services at which traffic should be ignored.
   - Select All to ignore traffic at all services.
   - Select Single to define a single service.
5. In the Scan Type section, select which probe types are considered legitimate. For example, you can create a Legitimate Traffic rule in which only HTTP probes at port 80/TCP are legitimate.

Configurable probe types include: Finger, HTTP, Login, NetBIOS, Port and SNMP.

The default is NetBIOS and Port probe types on all ports.

6. Select OK.

**Define Legitimate Email Traffic**

Certain servers and endpoints in your network may generate suspicious email traffic that is detected as an email infection. In some cases, this traffic actually qualifies as legitimate activity. Examples include traffic generated by email servers and traffic generated when several users are logged on to one endpoint and are sending large amounts of email traffic. Forescout 8.1 should allow this type of activity.

To do this, you can define a list of email servers and endpoints for which to allow email traffic. Other malicious traffic is detected at these servers and endpoints.

By default, Forescout 8.1 automatically learns and ignores real email servers on your network. In addition to automatically learning real servers, you can manually list endpoints that should be allowed to handle all email traffic.

If the email source is detected as performing other Threat Protection activity, it is handled according to the block or monitor policy.

**To define endpoints:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Threat Protection > Legitimate Email Servers**.
2. Select Add.

3. In the Add dialog box, enter the IP address of the relevant endpoint and select OK.

   The address is displayed in the IP column of the dialog box. The Defined By column indicates whether the server was automatically learned by Forescout 8.1 or entered by a user.

4. Remove or edit endpoints as required.

5. Verify that Enable Auto learn Email server is selected to enable Forescout 8.1 to automatically locate email servers and ignore email traffic generated by them. You can disable this option to detect email activity at these servers, for example, if you suspect that they may be infected with a worm (recommended).

   If there is no traffic at the server for a month, Forescout 8.1 unlearns it.

6. Select Apply.

Create Rules for Detected Endpoints

Legitimate Traffic rules can be created for sources and endpoints directly from the Source Details dialog box. Use this feature, for example, if you see that a source was blocked from a specific port, and want to ensure access in the future.

To create rules:

1. Double-click an endpoint from the Detections pane.

2. Select the Events tab, and select the event that you think is legitimate.

3. Right-click and select Add Legitimate probe. The information required is displayed in the Add Rule dialog box.

   − Source address of the probing source
   − Target address of the probe target
   − Probe type and service on which the probe was detected

When you save the rule, you are prompted to reset the source. If your Appliance is registered with an Appliance and you confirm this action, the rule is applied to all connected Appliances.

Edit and Remove Legitimate Traffic

Legitimate Traffic that is displayed in the Legitimate Traffic Manager can be removed and edited.

To remove a rule:

1. From the Legitimate Traffic List, select a rule and then select Remove.

2. Select Apply. The rule is removed from your system. Sources that were granted access are now handled according to the current policy.
To edit a rule:

1. From the Legitimate Traffic List, select a rule and then select **Edit**.
2. Edit the range as required.
3. Select **OK** and then select **Apply**.
Chapter 14: Threat Protection, Advanced Tools

- Defining Mark Naming Conventions
- Defining Virtual Site Endpoint Operating System Parameters
- Parsing Event Information Displayed in Email Alerts
Chapter 14: Threat Protection, Advanced Tools

Defining Mark Naming Conventions

Forescout 8.1 responds to reconnaissance activity by generating marks – virtual resource information expected by probing endpoints – and forwards this information back to them. For example, if the system identifies a probing endpoint that is attempting to gather information about user names in your network, the system responds by creating and returning a mark in the form of a virtual user name to that attacker.

Two types of naming options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Create mark rules</th>
<th>Create mark rules that reflect the naming conventions used for host and user names in your network.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create lists of names</td>
<td>Create lists of names similar to the host and user names used in your network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These tasks are performed from the Mark Names pane.

Access to the tools detailed in this section is limited by permissions. See Access to Console Tools – Permissions for details.

To open the Mark Names pane:

- Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Threat Protection > Advanced > Mark Names.

About Mark Rules

Endpoint and user names are often organized into logical segments, i.e., host names may always begin with a fixed text string and end with a specific number combination.

For example, computers in your network may be organized and named as follows:

- SC_WIN_123
- SC_WIN_223
- SC_LINX_123
- SC_LINX_223

In the previous examples:
- SC = the company name (Sample Company)
- WIN/LINX = the platform (Windows or Linux)
- 123/223 = a numeric sequence

You can define the naming convention rules for the host and user resource names to use as marks for your system. The mark rules can contain several segments that reflect the naming conventions used in your networking/organizational environment.

**Default Settings**

Forescout 8.1 is set up with default mark rules, which appear in the Mark Names pane. If you add mark-naming conventions, marks are sent according to the default rules and rules that you create. It is recommended that you delete the default names if your company maintains a policy that all host or user names are created according to a specific convention. This ensures that marks appear consistently and realistically to probing endpoints.

**Define Mark Rules**

To define mark rules:

1. In the Mark Names pane, select **Add Rule**.

2. Enter a rule name in the **Name** field.

3. Select **Host** or **User** to be applied to this resource type.

4. Select **Add** to create the rule segments. The **Select Segment Type** dialog box opens, allowing you to select a rule segment type.

5. Select a segment type from the drop-down menu and select **OK**. The dialog box is refreshed according to your selection.

Three types of rule segments can be created:
### Alphabetic Segment
Define the rules for random text strings segments that appear in the resource name.

To define a string:
- In the **Select case** section, select **Upper Case** or **Lower Case**.
- In the **Select size** section, specify the minimum and maximum character length.
- Select **OK**.

![Define New Segment](image)

### Numeric Segment
Define the rules for the maximum number of digits that appear in the resource name.

To define a number:
- In the **Digits** field, specify the maximum number of digits that appear in the segment. For example, if you select 3, the number can include up to three digits, such as 78, 5, 333, 999, 123.
- Select **Leading Zeros** to include leading zeros in the number. For example, 08, 003, 099, 023.
- Select **OK**.

![Define New Segment](image)

### Constant Segment
Define a fixed string segments that will appear in the resource name.

To define a fixed string:
- Type a string in the **Enter Text** field.
- Select **OK**.

![Define New Segment](image)

You can create up to five segments. The rule conventions that you build appear in the **Format** and **Size** fields of the Add Mark Rule dialog box. A sample name that matches the rule is displayed in the **Example** field.
6. Use the arrows to adjust the location of the segments, as needed.
7. Select OK. The rule is displayed in the Mark Names pane.

**Edit and Remove Mark Segments**

**To edit a segment:**
1. From the Add Mark Rule dialog box, select the segment of the rule to edit from the Format and Size fields.
2. Select **Edit**. The Edit Segment dialog box opens.
3. Edit the segment as required and select **OK**.
   The segment is updated in the Add Mark Rule dialog box.

**To remove a segment:**
1. Select the segment of the rule to remove from the Format and Size fields.
2. Select **Remove** and then select **OK**.

**Edit and Remove Mark Naming Rules**

You can edit and remove mark-naming rules that you created for your system.

**To edit a rule:**
1. Select a rule to apply from the Mark Names pane.
2. Select **Edit** to open the corresponding Rule Editing dialog box.
3. Edit as required and select **OK**.
To remove a rule:
1. Select a rule to apply from the Mark Names pane.
2. Select Remove and then select OK.

Define Lists
Endpoint and user names for your network may be designed to meet specific networking or organizational needs. For example, user names may be created to reflect specific departments in your organization or cities in which your organization is represented, or any group of names created by your security administrator. You can define a similar list of host and user names to be used when sending marks.

To define list rules:
1. Select Add List from the Mark Names pane.
2. Enter a list name in the List Name field.
3. Select a Host or User to be applied to this resource type.
4. In the Define Words section, add a word to the list.
5. Select Add.
6. Continue adding or deleting names as required. You can also import a list of names by selecting Import. A standard import dialog box opens, on which you can locate the relevant file to import.
7. Select OK. The list is displayed as an entry in the Mark Names pane and you can apply the list to your system.

Apply Mark Naming Rules
After you define your naming rules, you can apply them to your system. You must apply all the rules that appear in the Mark Names pane. If you do not want to apply a rule, remove it.
To apply naming rules to your system:

1. Add rules as previously detailed.
2. Select **Apply**.
3. Edit the list or remove an item, as required.

### Defining Virtual Site Endpoint Operating System Parameters

When responding to network scans, Forescout 8.1 generates a virtual site. The site contains virtual endpoints and resources that are visible to attackers. To more realistically reflect the endpoints in your network environment, you can define:

- The distribution of virtual host OS types that are presented on your virtual site. For example, Linux, Windows Workstations or Windows Servers.
- The density of virtual endpoints in your network. Density refers to the percentage of the virtual site, built with unused network resources (such as free IP addresses, closed ports), to be used to create marks.

> If you work with this tool incorrectly, Forescout 8.1 may not protect your network properly.

Only users with the required permission have access to this tool.

To define the virtual host OS distribution:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu then select **Threat Protection > Advanced > Virtual Site**.

2. Use the sliders to allocate a ratio. Distribution changes are built gradually. This means the changes are not implemented immediately.
3. Set the virtual site density, either:
   - Select **Set density by CounterACT Appliance**, for a value optimally calculated by Forescout 8.1.
To set the virtual host density, select **Use The Following Density** and adjust the value. The value is set in percentages, for example, utilizing 50% of the virtual site.

4. Select **Apply**.

**Parsing Event Information Displayed in Email Alerts**

Email alerts that you receive regarding host activity and service attacks include a summary of events and details of each event. Detailed event information is also displayed in the email in a format that can be easily parsed by external applications. This information is located at the bottom of the email in the **Event Details for Parsing** section. Each event is represented by a single line that begins with the word SUMMARY. Fields are separated by colons.

Example:

```
SUMMARY: 192.0.2.1:Port bite: port block: 1037871052:1037885452
```

**Details**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>192.0.2.1</strong></td>
<td>Endpoint address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Port bite</strong></td>
<td>Event type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>port block</strong></td>
<td>Forescout 8.1 action. (Monitor, Host Block or Port block)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1037871052</strong></td>
<td>Event time. Calculated in seconds from 1 Jan 1970.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1037885452</strong></td>
<td>Expiration time. Calculated in seconds from 1 Jan 1970.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 15: Managing Users

- About User Management
- Creating Users and User Groups
- Remove Users
- Password Protection
- Login Preferences
- Session Handling Preferences
- Manual User Password Change
- Monitoring User Activity
About User Management

User management features let you:

- Create user management accounts for single users or user groups
- Assign permissions to allow, limit, or prevent user access to specific Console and web portal tools
- Limit view of endpoints per user
- Lock and unlock users
- Generate reports detailing user activity
- Create user password policies
- Create Terms & Conditions to be accepted during login
- Implement advanced security login methods
- And more

Default Admin User

Forescout 8.1 is installed with an “admin” user who always has access to all Console and web portal tools and features. You do not need to create a new user to operate the system. You can create additional CounterACT users and user groups, and customize their permissions and scopes.

User Groups

Working with user groups lets you streamline and simplify user creation. Specifically, you can define CounterACT user groups based on RADIUS or user directory user groups. All users associated with a group are granted identical Forescout permissions and scope assignments.

For example, you can create one group of administrative users with full permissions and full access to all network segments, and create another group of users who can only access certain features or certain network segments.

Users in a group log in to the Forescout Console and web portals using their user directory or RADIUS server credentials. They are authenticated via the authentication server defined when the group was created.

Two methods are available for grouping CounterACT users:

- Associate CounterACT user groups with a specific RADIUS attribute and value.
- Associate CounterACT user groups with a specific user directory group membership.
Monitoring User Activity

You can view audit trail logs regarding user activity. These logs list, for example, users who updated policies, stopped or started Forescout 8.1, or updated user passwords. The logs give additional information about the user activity, such as the date of the activity and the IP address from which it was carried out.

Permissions and Scope Options

The Permissions and Scope options offer powerful user control. For example:

- Allow access to the entire network range, but never allow access to certain high security features, such as the Appliance configuration or Action Threshold features.
- Allow access to a specific network range, such as a particular building, and grant permission to all Forescout tools.

In addition, you can create users or user groups that have access to only the Console or only to web portals, or users that can access both.

Users who have no permissions cannot log in to the Console or to any of the Forescout web portals.

Creating Users and User Groups

CounterACT users and user groups are defined in the CounterACT User Profiles table and assigned the following:

- Authentication requirements: Define which authentication method is required when logging in.
- Feature permissions: Prevent or allow access to specific Console and web portal features.
Scope access: Define which network devices can be viewed and controlled.

The “admin” user always has access to all Console and web portal features throughout the network.

To create a CounterACT user or user group:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select CounterACT User Profiles.

2. Select Add. The Add User Profile wizard opens.

3. Select a user type from the User Type drop-down menu to indicate if the new user is a single user or a group, as well as the authentication method to be used. Authentication parameters vary depending on the user type selected.
Single User Options

- **Single - Password**: For users who authenticate via the Forescout server using a user name and password.
  
  Enter a user name in the **User Name** field. This is the name the user will enter when logging in to the Forescout Console and web portals. The user name cannot contain any of the following characters: `/:*?'<>|".
  
  Enter a password in the **Password** field. This is the password the user will enter when logging in to Forescout 8.1. A message is displayed if the password does not comply with the password rules. See Password Protection to view and change the password rule settings. The password must contain ASCII characters only. There is no character limit.
  
  Re-enter the password in the **Verify Password** field.

- **Single - External User Directory**: For users who authenticate via a User Directory server defined in the User Directory Plugin. This may be, for example, an Active Directory or OpenLDAP server. In the **User Name** field, enter the user name listed in your User Directory server, and select the appropriate server from the **Server Name** drop-down menu.
  
  In the User Directory Plugin, verify that the **Use for Console Login** option has been selected for this server.

- **Single - Smart Card**: For users who authenticate via a Smart Card. In the **User Name** field, enter the user name mapped to the appropriate certificate on the Smart Card. When working with Smart Card authentication, you must configure Forescout 8.1 to work with Certificate Authority (CA) files and Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs), and configure the frequency for polling the CRLs.

  - The Forescout 8.1 user name defined here must be identical to the Smart Card Common Name (CN), including case-sensitive spelling.
Chapter 15: Managing Users

Smart Card users can be required to use two-factor authentication. To require this in your environment, select the **Require two-factor authentication** checkbox, select the **Verification Method**, and complete the required fields.

4. (Optional) Associate a Forescout 8.1 user group with a specific external directory group membership. All users associated with this group receive the permissions and scope assignments defined for this group user. In the User Directory Plugin, this external directory server must be defined, and the **Use for Console Login** option must be selected.

   - **Group - External User Directory**: Associate Forescout 8.1 user groups with a specific user directory group. Select a server name from the drop-down menu and enter a group name in the **Active Directory Group Name** field. When entering the group name, use the format resolved when working with the Forescout User Directory > Member Of property. Names are case sensitive.

     Access control to the Forescout platform (lock/unlock, password expiration) for users of type **Group - External User Directory** must be configured on and is enforced by the external authentication server. Therefore, in the Console **CounterACT User Profiles** pane, the **Lock** and **Unlock** buttons are disabled for entries of this user type.

   - **Group - External RADIUS**: Associate Forescout 8.1 user groups with a specific RADIUS attribute and value. Enter the attribute and value parameters to be associated with this group. Values are case sensitive. Valid Attributes are numbers between 0 and 255.
Access control to the Forescout platform (lock/unlock, password expiration) for users of type *Group - External RADIUS* must be configured on and is enforced by the external authentication server. Therefore, in the Console CounterACT User Profiles pane, the Lock and Unlock buttons are disabled for entries of this user type.

5. (Optional) After defining the user type and authentication setting, enter a full name and description of the user or group. The full name is displayed in the Change Password dialog box whenever the user updates their password. See Manual User Password Change.

6. Select Next.

7. To allow the user to work with only the Console or only web portals, select Custom, and then Console Access or Web Access.

8. In the table, set the permission settings for the user:
   - No selection: Prevents users from viewing the feature.
   - View: Allows users to only view information.
   - Update: Allows users to view and update information.
   - When you update permissions for other users, those users must exit and then log in again for the permissions to take effect.

Users not assigned permissions cannot log in to the Console or any of the Forescout web portals.
CounterACT users must log in from an IP address within the permitted range. See Define Console Access. Web portal users must log in from an IP address within the permitted range. See Define Web Access.

Access to Console Tools – Permissions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action Thresholds</td>
<td>Implement Action Thresholds when working with blocking and restrictive actions. See Working with Action Thresholds for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assets Portal Permissions**

See Chapter 10: Assets Portal for details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assets Portal –Host State</td>
<td>View and change the host state from the Assets Portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assets Portal –Login Information</td>
<td>View user login information for a specific address, an endpoint name, a server, within a group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assets Portal –Network Services</td>
<td>View information about open network services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assets Portal –Security Information</td>
<td>View security information, such as information about antivirus installations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Console Permissions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audit Trail</td>
<td>View reports on user activities during a specified time period. See Monitoring User Activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup</td>
<td>Back up and restore system and component settings. See Backing Up System and Component Settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CounterACT Appliance Configuration</td>
<td>Configure the Appliance using a variety of configuration tools, including Channels, Organizational Units tools and more. See Appliance Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CounterACT Appliance Control</td>
<td>Start, restart, or stop CounterACT Appliances, and define mark-naming rules. The rules can be designed so that they reflect naming conventions used in your organization or network environment. This makes the CounterACT marks more realistic. See About Mark Rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CounterACT Crypto Administration</td>
<td>Import, edit, and remove trusted and system certificates in Forescout 8.1 and configure certificate-related settings, such as certificate expiration monitoring and checking for new CRLs and ongoing TLS sessions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CounterACT Device Script Management</td>
<td>Work with pre-defined scripts in Tools &gt; Options &gt; Advanced &gt; Configuration Script.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dashboard</td>
<td>View at-a-glance information about network compliance, threats, and guests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permission</td>
<td>Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enforcement Mode</td>
<td>Control the Forescout Enforcement mode. Full Enforcement mode allows complete functionality. Partial Enforcement mode lets you monitor network traffic with limited ability to respond. Partial Enforcement mode is recommended for evaluation purposes only. See <a href="#">Set the Enforcement Mode</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Manager Control</td>
<td>Start, restart, or stop Enterprise Managers. See <a href="#">Standalone Appliance Management</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Log</td>
<td>View the Event Log that displays system events. See <a href="#">Work with System Event Logs</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Management</td>
<td>Add, edit, remove, or update Forescout Groups. The Group Management permission cannot be changed (to read-only or view only) if the Policy Management permission is selected. See <a href="#">Working with Forescout Groups</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host State Override</td>
<td>Update the state of endpoints and how long the state is maintained. See <a href="#">Changing the Host State</a> and <a href="#">Changing the Host State Maintenance Time</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPS Scheduled Reports</td>
<td>Work with scheduled Threat Protection Reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legitimate Traffic</td>
<td>Define the addresses of legitimate traffic at your network. See <a href="#">View Legitimate Traffic</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License Management</td>
<td>Install and manage Forescout licenses. See <a href="#">Chapter 18: License Management</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malicious Traffic</td>
<td>View malicious traffic. See <a href="#">Chapter 13: Threat Protection</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module Control</td>
<td>Start, stop, test, and get help on plugins and modules. See <a href="#">About Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module Management</td>
<td>Install and uninstall plugins and modules. See <a href="#">About Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple CounterACT Appliance Management</td>
<td>Manage a number of Appliances within the network. See <a href="#">Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy Control</td>
<td>Start, stop, pause, test, and clear all policy actions without changing the policy definitions. See <a href="#">The Policy Manager</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy Management</td>
<td>Create, edit, or delete import and export policies. Create, edit, or delete import and export segments, Groups and Lists. See: <a href="#">The Policy Manager</a>, <a href="#">Working with Forescout Segments</a>, <a href="#">Working with Forescout Groups</a>, <a href="#">Defining and Managing Lists</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy Reports</td>
<td>View NAC reports. See <a href="#">Policy Reports and Logs</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reports</td>
<td>Work with the Reports Portal. See <a href="#">Reports</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled Reports</td>
<td>Generate schedules for reports. See <a href="#">Generating Scheduled Reports</a>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Access to Network Endpoints – Scope

Use the Scope pane to grant and limit access to specific IP address ranges or segments in the Console or web portals. Users can only see and work with endpoints in ranges assigned to them in the Scope access. For example, users can only see or control the following Forescout features in the ranges or segments defined:

- Policy Management
- Segment Management
- Group Management
- Organizational Units
- All tools listed in the Forescout Options window, with the exception of the Console Preferences folders
- Check for Updates
- Lists

If a user’s scope does not include a particular segment, options for that segment are grayed out (disabled) or a message is displayed indicating that they do not have the required user Scope to access the features.

#### Limit Scope Access

To allow users access to a specific range but limit their access to a specific feature, you can grant Scope access and then limit Permissions for that feature. For example, you can grant users permission to view the entire network range while restricting their access to Appliance configuration features.

**To limit the Scope access:**

1. Select **View hosts from specified ranges**.
2. To add a single range or segment, select **Add**.
3. In the IP Address Range dialog box, enter the range or segment you want the user to be able to access, and select OK.

4. To add multiple segments, select Segments, select the appropriate segments, and select OK.

5. Select Finish. The user definition is displayed in the CounterACT User Profiles pane.

6. Select Apply.

**Limited Scope Access Indicators**

The Console displays the following indicators to users with limited scope access:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Title bar</strong></th>
<th>The title bar indicates that the user has a limited view.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Filters pane** | - No viewing access  
                          - Partial viewing access |

When a user with limited viewing permissions attempts to view a blocked network segment or IP address range, a popup message is displayed.
Modify User Details
You can modify the permissions, password, and other details for each CounterACT user or user group. Users can also change their own passwords. See Manual User Password Change for details.

- You cannot modify the permissions for the default Forescout 8.1 “admin” user.

To modify user details:
1. From the CounterACT User Profiles pane, select a user.
2. Select Edit or double-click a user entry. The Edit User Profile dialog box opens.
3. Edit the information as required.
4. Select OK to accept changes.
5. Select Apply.

Remove Users
You can remove user profiles. Removed users are no longer authorized to log into Forescout 8.1.

- You cannot remove the default Forescout 8.1 “admin” user.

To remove users:
1. From the CounterACT User Profiles pane, select the user to be removed.
2. Select Remove and then OK.
3. Select Apply.

Password Protection
The password protection features let you:

- Define Forescout 8.1 password requirements, such as the minimum length of all Forescout 8.1 passwords.
- Define a password expiration period.
- Lock out users after multiple password failures for a defined lockout period.

- Unless specified otherwise below, these settings apply to Console users, web portal users, and users logging in to CounterACT devices through the command-line interface (CLI).

To define password policy:
1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select CounterACT User Profiles > Password and Sessions.
2. Select the **Password** tab.

![Image of the Password tab in Forescout Administration Guide]

3. Define the following password requirements:
   - Minimum password length
   - Minimum number of upper and lower case letters
   - Minimum number of alphabetic and non-alphabetic characters
   - Minimum number of digits
   - Minimum number of special characters
   - Number of times a character or digit is forbidden to be repeated

   - This option applies only to Console and web portal users, and not to users logging in to CounterACT devices through the command-line interface (CLI).
     - Minimum number of characters that the password must differ from the previous password
     - If the password can contain user name
     - If the password can contain commonly used weak passwords
       - Selecting this option also enforces the following additional requirements:
         - Minimum password length of 6 characters. *The actual minimum length requirement may be higher than this depending on the value selected in the Minimum length option.*
         - Password must contain at least five different characters
         - Password must not contain multiple pairs of consecutive characters (e.g., abcd1234)
Chapter 15: Managing Users

- Password must not be in National Insurance number format (e.g., QQ123456C)
  - Number of most current passwords that cannot be reused
  - Password expiration period
    - A Change Password dialog box opens during login when this period expires.
    - This applies to Forescout 8.1 “admin” users also.

» The enabled **Password expires after** option does not affect users of types **Group – External User Directory** or **Group - External RADIUS**
  - Number of days without a login that trigger the account to be locked

» This option applies only to Console and web portal users, and not to users logging in to CounterACT devices through the command-line interface (CLI).

» The enabled **Lock user account after** options do not affect users of types **Group – External User Directory** or **Group - External RADIUS**
  - Define a password failure threshold and lockout period to enforce when the threshold is passed. For example, if a user entered the wrong password three times, that user is locked out of Forescout 8.1 for two days.

» The Forescout 8.1 “admin” user cannot be locked out.

» Users who enter the wrong user name are not locked out.

» The enabled **Lock user account after** options do not affect users of types **Group – External User Directory** or **Group - External RADIUS**
  - Amount of time allowed between password changes

» This applies only when the password was last changed by the same user. If, for example, the Forescout 8.1 “admin” user last changed the password of a non-admin user, the non-admin user is not restricted by the time defined in this setting.

  - If the user must change their password at next login after it was changed at the Console.

» This option only applies to Console and web portal users, and not users logging in to CounterACT devices through the command-line interface (CLI).

4. Select **Apply**.

**Audit Logs**

The audit logs show information about:

- **Blocked and released users**: Blocked and released users can be viewed in the Events Viewer Log.
- **Policy changes**: The Audit Trails log CounterACT users who created and edited password policies, and performed other Console activities.

# Login Preferences

Define the following login preferences:

- Whether to display messages to users during the Console, web portal, and CLI login processes
- How users log in to Forescout web portals

## Display Terms and Conditions

You can create messages to be displayed before or after user login to the Console, web portals and CLI. Messages can describe restrictions of use, legal restrictions or other relevant information.

**To define Terms and Conditions messages:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then expand the **CounterACT User Profiles** folder.
2. Select **Password and Sessions**.
3. Select the **Login** tab.
4. Select **Before login, prompt user to accept these Terms and Conditions** or **After login, prompt user to accept these Terms and Conditions**, and enter the message to be displayed.
5. Select **Apply**.

These messages are displayed each time a user attempts to log in to the Console, CLI, and web portals.
Configure User Login to Forescout Web Portals

Two methods are available for accessing The Forescout web portals can be assessed in two ways:

- Users can log in from a web browser. Login from a browser always requires users to enter their credentials. Smart Card authentication with or without two-factor authentication is also available.
- Users can select the ellipsis icon from the Console toolbar, and select a web portal from the dropdown menu.

By default, Console login grants access to Forescout web-based tools, without additional login prompts. You can configure Forescout 8.1 to require users who are logged into the Console to re-enter credentials when accessing Forescout web portals from the Console.

To require users to re-enter credentials:
1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then expand the CounterACT User Profiles folder.
2. Select Password and Sessions.
3. Select the Login tab.
4. Disable the Console login grants access to web portals without additional login prompts option.

Set the Period for the Number of Logins Displayed

The Number of Logins column in the CounterACT User Profiles table shows the number of successful Console and web portal logins per user within a configurable time period.

If this column is not visible in the CounterACT User Profiles table, right-click a column header and select Add/Remove columns. Expand the Available Columns field, and select Number of Logins > Add > OK.

To set the time period for the number of recent logins:
1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then expand the CounterACT User Profiles folder.
2. Select Password and Sessions.
3. Select the Login tab.
4. In the In the User Profiles table, show the number of successful logins in the past field, select a time period.

Display the User Login Summary

The Forescout administrator can enable/disable the display of a dialog summarizing the user’s recent login activity. When the option is enabled, the dialog displays immediately after each, successful user log in. By default, this option is disabled.
When the Forescout platform runs in Certification Compliance mode, this option does not appear in the Console. However, dialog display is permanently enabled.

To display User Login Summary:
1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then expand the CounterACT User Profiles folder.
2. Select Password and Sessions.
3. Select the Login tab.
4. Select the option After login, show the login summary dialog.
5. Select Apply.

Session Handling Preferences
Session handling preferences determine how Forescout 8.1 handles idle, dropped, and concurrent user sessions.

Most of these settings do not apply to CLI sessions.

Prevent Multiple User Sessions
You can prevent a user from opening more than one concurrent session. Limiting access in this way can prevent unauthorized and potentially harmful access to the Console or web portals from an additional workstation. This option is enabled by default.

When Forescout 8.1 detects a login attempt made by a user who is already logged in, choose to either:

- **Terminate existing session upon new login.** If you choose to log out the existing user session, the session ends and the Console or web portal closes.
Chapter 15: Managing Users

- **Reject additional login attempts.** If you choose to reject the new login attempt, the existing user can continue to use the Console or web portal.

By default, the system allows Console and web portal sessions to exist concurrently. For example, if a user is logged in to the Console and then also logs in to the Reports Portal, the system does not consider it as an additional login attempt. If, however, the user is logged in to the Console and then attempts to log in to another instance of the Console, this is considered an additional login attempt.

> If you use implement this feature, consider adding a backup user with the same permissions as the “admin” user so that you can preserve Console and web portal access in the rare circumstance that the “admin” user is mistakenly logged out or denied access.

**To limit the number of concurrent sessions:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then expand the **CounterACT User Profiles** folder.
2. Select **Password and Sessions**.
3. Select the **Session** tab.
4. Select **Allow only one session per user**.
   - To close the user’s previous session and open a new one when the user attempts to open a new session, select **Terminate existing session upon new login**.
   - To prevent new logins for a user already logged in, select **Reject additional login attempts**.

By default, the system allows Console and web portal sessions to exist concurrently.

- To allow the user to log into both a Console and web portal session at the same time, select **Console and web portal sessions can exist concurrently**.
- To prevent the user from logging into both a Console and web portal session at the same time, select **Console and web portal sessions cannot exist concurrently**.

**Limit Session Length**

You can choose to disconnect Console users whose sessions have been open for a defined amount of time. This reduces the potential for unauthorized user access. This option is disabled by default.

> If this option is selected, and a Console session has been open for the defined amount of time, a dialog box advises the user that the session has timed out and that the Console session will close.

**To limit session length:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then expand the **CounterACT User Profiles** folder.
2. Select **Password and Sessions**.
3. Select the **Session** tab.
4. Select **Terminate each session after** and define the timeout period of Console.

   - The **Terminate inactive sessions after** option disconnects all Console and web sessions after the defined amount of time, but web users are automatically logged in again until **Terminate each session after** expires.

**Disconnect Inactive Users**

You can choose to disconnect Console and web portal users whose sessions have been inactive for a defined amount of time. This reduces the potential for unauthorized user access. This option is enabled by default.

   - If this option is selected, and a Console session has been inactive for the defined amount of time, a dialog box advises the user that the session has timed out and that the Console session will close.

**To disconnect inactive users:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then expand the **CounterACT User Profiles** folder.
2. Select **Password and Sessions**.
3. Select the **Session** tab.
4. Select **Terminate inactive sessions after** and define the period of time to wait before disconnecting inactive sessions. This time period must be less than the value configured for the **Terminate each session after** option (see [Limit Session Length](#)).

**Restore Dropped Sessions**

If a Console or web portal session suddenly drops, for example, due to a power outage, Forescout 8.1 can attempt to automatically reconnect the session using the credentials already entered. This option is enabled by default.

**To automatically restore a dropped session:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then expand the **CounterACT User Profiles** folder.
2. Select **Password and Sessions**.
3. Select the **Session** tab.
4. Select **Attempt to automatically restore dropped sessions**.
Manual User Password Change

In addition to administrator-controlled password changes (see Creating Users and User Groups), CounterACT users who authenticate using passwords can manually change their user password from the Console and from the Forescout web portals. The user password is global and applies to all Forescout Console and web portal logins.

This option is disabled for users who log in to Forescout 8.1 through an external User Directory server. For users not connecting through an external User Directory server, the Change Password option is always enabled and cannot be removed by an “admin” user.

Change password activity is written to the Audit Trail. To access the Audit Trail, select Audit Trails from the Log menu. See Monitoring User Activity for details.

To change your CounterACT User Password from the Console:

1. Select Change Password from the Tools menu.

2. Enter the old and new passwords, and select OK.

To change your CounterACT User Password from some web portals:

3. In the user name section of the web portal, select the Change Password icon.

4. In the Change Password dialog, enter the old and new passwords and select OK.
Using Smart Card Authentication

Forescout 8.1 and Forescout portals support Smart Card authentication. Users may be required to enter a PIN code when logging in with a Smart Card. Smart Card authentication requires:

- Smart Card Configuration
- Smart Card User Setup

Smart Card Configuration

When working with Smart Card authentication, you must configure Forescout 8.1 to work with Certificate Authority (CA) files and Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs), and configure the frequency (in seconds) to poll the CRLs.

To configure Smart Card authentication:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select CounterACT User Profiles > Smart Card.


4. Locate the required file and import it. CA file information appears.

5. Select **Next**. The Define CRLs pane opens.

6. Select **Add**. The CRL definition dialog box opens.

7. Define locations of Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) and the frequency (in seconds) to poll the lists.
8. Select **Finish**. User sessions are authenticated as follows:
   - Forescout 8.1 periodically checks the validity of certificates/trust chains used to authenticate live user sessions. If the certificate that authenticates a user session has been revoked, the user session is terminated. These events are logged in the Event Viewer.
   - Forescout 8.1 imports Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) at the specified frequency, and updates its certificate store. After each update, all user sessions authenticated by certificates are rechecked.

**Smart Card User Setup**

In order to work with Smart Card authentication you must verify that the Smart Card Common Name (CN) and CounterACT user name are identical, including case sensitive spelling. User names are defined in the CounterACT User Profiles pane. See [Creating Users and User Groups](#) for details about creating users.

![User Profile Definition - Step 1 of 3](image)

**Monitoring User Activity**

You can view user audit trail reports that contain information about user activities during a specified time period. These reports list operations (add, delete, edit) performed by users related to Console configurations, for example:

- Policies
- Stopping or starting Forescout 8.1
- User passwords
- Plugins and Modules

The logs provide additional information about the user activity, such as the date of the activity and the IP address from which it was carried out. These reports can be exported.
View Audit Trail Reports

To view audit trail reports:

1. In the Console, select **Audit Trails** from the Log menu. The Time Period dialog box opens.

2. Select a time period as follows:
   - To specify a relative time, select **Relative Time**. In the Last field, specify the required number of hours, days, weeks, or months.
   - To specify a time range, select **Time Range**. Set the start and end dates from the From and To fields. You can also use the calendar to set the range.

3. Select OK.

The following information is available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Add</th>
<th>Edit</th>
<th>Delete</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>🚨 Emergency</td>
<td>🚨 Alert</td>
<td>🚨 Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>🚨 Error</td>
<td>🚨 Warning</td>
<td>🚨 Notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>🚨 Information</td>
<td>🚨 Debug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>The date and time when the operation was made.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 15: Managing Users

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Status</strong></th>
<th>Whether the operation succeeded or failed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>User Name</strong></td>
<td>The user who performed the operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Host</strong></td>
<td>The IP address of the machine from which the operation was made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Element</strong></td>
<td>The resource or component the operation was performed upon (for example, users).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td>The changed information for example, in ‘adding a user’, the operation data is the added name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Record #</strong></td>
<td>Unique index number for the log entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Session ID</strong></td>
<td>A unique, positive integer value that identifies the Forescout user session associated with the reported event. A null (zero) value indicates an event generated by internal audit processes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To view details of an audit trail entry:**

- Double-click the selected line. The Audit Trail Details dialog box displays the event details.

![Audit Trail Details Dialog Box](image)

**To find an entry in the audit trail list:**

1. Select **Find**.
2. Enter the text and select the relevant options.

3. Select **Find** to locate the required text.

   Forescout 8.1 searches the active table for the specific text.

### Save Log to an External File

You can save the audit trail to an external file in TXT or XLS format.

**To save the log to an external file:**

1. In the Audit Trail dialog box, select **Export**. A standard export dialog box opens.

2. Select a location to export the file and select **Save**.
Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles

- About Management
- Console and Web Portal Management
- Standalone Appliance Management
- Enterprise Manager Management
- Appliance Management
- Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances
- Limiting User Access to Appliances
- Controlling Command-line Access to CounterACT Devices
About Management

This chapter describes the features available for managing CounterACT devices (Appliances and Enterprise Managers) and Consoles.

Not all users have access to these tools. For more information see Access to Console Tools – Permissions.

CounterACT Device Management Overview

When an Appliance registers with an Enterprise Manager, most of the Appliance settings are automatically replaced with Enterprise Manager settings. Any subsequent changes to these settings on the Enterprise Manager are automatically applied to all registered Appliances.

Automatically Applied Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General</th>
<th>NAC</th>
<th>Plugins</th>
<th>Threat Protection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Internal Network</td>
<td>• Policies</td>
<td>• Plugin settings for Switch and VPN</td>
<td>• Mark Names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Host Discovery</td>
<td>• Preferences</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Enterprise Lockdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Virtual Firewall</td>
<td>• Group Configuration Settings</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Virtual Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Backup Settings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Legitimate Traffic Rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Segments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Legitimate Email Server Rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• IP Assignments (centrally managed at Enterprise Manager but applied per Appliance)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Automatically Applied Settings That Can Be Fine-Tuned

The following settings are applied by default but may be fine-tuned per Appliance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General</th>
<th>Threat Protection</th>
<th>Plugins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Mail Settings</td>
<td>• Enforcement Mode</td>
<td>• HPS Inspection Engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Assets Portal access control</td>
<td>• Threat Protection policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Active Response network</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appliance-Specific Settings

The following settings are unique per Appliance and are not affected by Enterprise Manager settings.

- Channel configuration
- License management (Per-Appliance Licensing only)
- Appliance upgrade
Console and Web Portal Management

This section describes the following Console and web portal management options:

- Define Console Access
- Multiple Console Logins
- Define Web Access
- Disable Web Portals
- Configure HTTP Strict Transport Security
- Configure the Time Zone
- Customize Alarm Indicators
- Configure Console Memory Settings
- Configure Console View Settings

Define Console Access

By default, all IP addresses have access to the Console. You can limit the IP addresses that can access the Console.

**To manage Console access:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Access > Console**.
   
   The Ranges table lists all IP addresses that are permitted to communicate with this Console.

2. (Optional) Create a configuration for a group of Appliances, or select a configuration to modify. See **Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances**.

3. Select **Add**.
4. Enter an address range or subnet, and then select OK. The new range is added to the Ranges table.

5. To modify or delete an existing range of IP addresses, select it in the table and then select Edit or Remove.

6. Select Apply.

**Multiple Console Logins**

When more than one user logs in to a single instance of the Console, changes made by one user may overwrite changes of another user. Shared settings and files may be overwritten or corrupted when users work in this way, therefore it is not recommended for multiple users to log in to the same instance of the Console.

To support multiple CounterACT users from a single endpoint, install a separate, uniquely named instance of the Console for each user.

**Define Web Access**

You can define a range or subnet of IP addresses allowed to access specific Forescout web features, such as Forescout web portals, the Forescout Compliance Center and the Forescout SecureConnector Distribution Tool. *If you do not assign any IP addresses to a web feature, no access will be allowed to that feature.*

- Grant web access only to IP addresses that are included in the Internal Network.

**To define web access IP ranges:**

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Access > Web. The table lists all IP addresses that are permitted to access specific Forescout web features.
2. (Optional) Create a configuration for a group of Appliances, or select a configuration to modify. See Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances.

3. Select Add to define an IP address range and the web features that range can access.

4. In the IP Address Ranges section, select Add.
5. Select **All IPs** to include all IP addresses in the Internal Network, or enter a specific IP address range or subnet and then select **OK**.

6. In the Web Features section, select from the available list of web features and then select **Add**.

7. (Optional) Enter a comment.

8. Select **OK**. The IP address range and web feature/s are added to the table.

9. To modify or delete an existing range of IP addresses, select it in the table and then select **Edit** or **Remove**.

10. Select **Apply**.

### Disable Web Portals

Under some security scenarios, you may want to disable web access to one or more portals or web based services, or to disable HTTP redirection.

Use the Disable Web Portals pane to disable automatic redirection by Forescout 8.1 to web portals and web pages.

To disable a web portal or page:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **General > Web Server Configuration > Disable Web Portals**.
2. Select one or more of the following options:
   - Assets Portal
   - CounterACT Console Help
   - Dashboard Portal
   - Guest Management Portal, HTTP Login and HTTP Notification
   - HTTP Redirection*
   - Legacy Customization Tool
   - Legacy Dashboard Portal
   - Reports Portal
   - Troubleshooting Portal
   - User Portal Builder

* Disabling HTTP Redirection also disables the following actions and web pages:
   - HTTP Login
   - HTTP Notification
   - Windows Self-Remediation
   - HTTP Localhost Login
   - Start SecureConnector
   - HTTP Redirection to URL
   - Forescout SecureConnector Distribution Tool
   - Forescout Compliance Center

3. Select **Apply**.
Configure HTTP Strict Transport Security

You can define an HTTP Strict Transport Security (HSTS) web setting for the Forescout deployment. When enabled, all web traffic will be handled via HTTPS. The setting will only be applied if the Forescout web server TLS certificate is trusted.

To enable HTTP Strict Transport Security (HSTS):

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select General > Web Server Configuration > HSTS.


3. Select Apply.

Configure the Time Zone

Set the time-zone according to your geographical location or by GMT offset. This time is used for displaying and recording detection and action times in the Console.

To select a time zone:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Console Preferences > Time Zone.

2. Select a zone from the At time zone drop-down menu.

3. Select Apply. All the times displayed in the Console change to reflect the time in the selected location.
Configure NTP Server Synchronization

CounterACT devices require NTP connectivity (port 123 UDP) to an NTP server. You can enable synchronizing the system clock with an NTP time server in the **Options > General > Time** pane. When enabled, you can set the NTP server address, and also enter an authentication key string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enable sync with NTP server</th>
<th>Enables synchronizing the system clock with an NTP time server. When enabled, lets you set an NTP server address, and to enter an authentication key string (SHA1). Enabled by default.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NTP Server</td>
<td>Select an NTP server address from the list or enter an NTP server IP address or URL, and (optional but recommended) enter an authentication key (SHA1 string).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To configure the NTP server:**

1. Enter an NTP server that your organization connects to or use the Forescout default server (*ntp.forescout.net*).
2. Enter an authentication key (optional but recommended).
3. Select **Test** to test the availability of the NTP server.
4. If the test fails, contact your IT professional.

**To use a CLI command to define additional NTP servers:**

1. Log in to the Enterprise Manager CLI.
2. Run the following command:
   
   `fstool ntp setup <server IP>@<key idx>@<authentication key>`

   where `<server IP>` is the IP address of the NTP server you prefer (local or remote), `<key idx>` is the key identification index, and `<authentication key>` is the SHA1 key string used for authentication of the NTP server connection. Forescout 8.1 will use this server for time synchronization.

Customize Alarm Indicators

An alarm flashes in the Console status bar when a specific type of malicious event occurs.
You can customize the how long the alarm flashes, and filter the alarm indicator so that it reacts to only specific types of events, for example, high severity events. Severity levels are determined by the system.

**To customize the alarm indicator:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Console Preferences > Misc**.
2. Select the Alarms tab.

3. Select **Visual** for the alarm light to flash for a specific severity level.
4. Select **Audio** to activate a sound signal when the event occurs.
5. Adjust the alarm span duration as required.
6. Select **Apply**.

**Configure Console Memory Settings**

The default maximum memory settings for the Console can be changed. This may be necessary when event traffic information is loaded from the Host Details dialog box. Under certain circumstances, when event traffic information is loaded, an error message may appear stating that there was not enough memory available to accommodate the process.

**To configure memory settings:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Console Preferences > Memory**.
2. Define the maximum required memory limitations.

3. Select **Apply**.

### Configure Console View Settings

Use this procedure to configure some aspects of Console views.

**To configure Console view settings:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Console Preferences** > **Misc**.
2. Select the **View** tab.
3. Enable or disable the following settings:
   - **Fit table columns to view**: Forescout 8.1 resizes columns to fit the window.
   - **Display IPv4 CIDR**: Determines whether ranges of IPv4 addresses are shown using CIDR subnet/mask notation, or using start-end range notation.

4. Select **Apply**.

### Configure the Network Traffic Boundaries

The Console system tray hosts the network traffic gauge. The gauge reflects the Forescout view of your current, network traffic load, using traffic boundaries that you can configure.

**To configure network traffic boundaries:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Console Preferences** > **Misc.** > **Network Traffic Gauge** tab.
2. Define the following traffic boundaries:
   - **Low Traffic: Upper Boundary (Mbps)**
   - **Medium Traffic: Upper Boundary (Mbps)**
3. Select **Apply**.
Standalone Appliance Management

In an environment where there is only one Appliance, Forescout 8.1 functions as a standalone component. This means the Enterprise Manager does not manage the Appliance. See Appliance Management for details.

Enterprise Manager Management

The Enterprise Manager is a dedicated, second-tier management and aggregation device that communicates with multiple CounterACT Appliances distributed across the network. It manages Appliances, and collects information detected by them. This information is available for display and reporting in the Console.

The following Enterprise Manager tasks can be performed:

- Upgrade the Enterprise Manager Software
- View Enterprise Manager System Health Information
- Stop and Start the Enterprise Manager

Upgrade the Enterprise Manager Software

You can upgrade your version of the software from the Console.

For High Availability devices, back up the pair before you upgrade. See Backing Up System and Component Settings for details. The pair must be up and running when you upgrade. To upgrade a single active High Availability node when the Secondary node has failed or has not been set up, make sure the Secondary node is not accessible, and create the file .ignorestandby under /etc/ on the node to be upgraded.

After you upgrade your Enterprise Manager to version 8.1, a new process will be available for upgrading Appliances, allowing you to upload the upgrade file prior to and independently of the upgrade itself. For larger deployments, this can significantly reduce the time it takes to perform the upgrade, allowing you to complete the process within a defined maintenance window.

The first time you upload a file to an Appliance/s, the file is uploaded to the Enterprise Manager before being copied to the Appliance. This initial upload may take some additional time. Once the file is uploaded to the Enterprise Manager, the upgrade file will be automatically stored for any future uploads/upgrades to other Appliances.

Review the Forescout Release Notes for important information before performing an upgrade.

Not all users have access to the tools detailed in this section.

To upgrade Enterprise Manager software:

4. Download or obtain the upgrade file and save it to a location on your computer.

5. Select Options from the Tools menu and if necessary, select CounterACT Devices.
The installed CounterACT devices and their current versions are displayed.

6. Select an Enterprise Manager and select **Upgrade**. Do not select an Enterprise Manager together with Appliances (they cannot be upgraded at the same time). The Upgrade Enterprise Manager dialog box opens.

7. Locate the upgrade file you saved on your computer and select **OK**. After a check of the digital signature of the upgrade file is performed, the CounterACT Upgrade screen opens.

8. Read the terms and conditions, and then select **I accept the Terms and Conditions**. It is recommended to read the Release Notes.

   When upgrading an Appliance connected to an Enterprise Manager already upgraded to the current Forescout version, the pre-upgrade check is not performed, and the Upgrade button is immediately available in the CounterACT Upgrade screen.

9. Select **Verify**. A pre-upgrade check is performed to verify that the environmental and software requirements are met. When the verification finishes, the Pre-Upgrade Verification summary screen opens.

10. Select **Upgrade** if you are sure you want to proceed with the upgrade. Once you confirm, the upgrade process proceeds to completion and cannot be interrupted or cancelled.

11. After the upgrade is complete, download the Console and install it.

    **High Availability Devices** – Upgrade for High Availability devices can take a long time (up to a number of hours). If the upgrade of the second node and the synchronization are not shown in the log, you can verify the status via icons on the Console status bar:

    | Icon               | Description                                                   |
    |--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
    | ![Checkmark]       | Indicates the status of the High Availability Appliances connected to the Enterprise Manager. |
    | ![Checkmark]       | Indicates the status of the Enterprise Manager High Availability pair. |
    | ![Stop]            | Indicates that High Availability is down on the Appliance.   |
    | ![Stop]            | Indicates that High Availability is down on the Enterprise Manager. |

12. When the upgrade is completed successfully, select **Close**. If the upgrade is not successful, contact your Forescout representative and **do not** continue with more upgrades.

**Upgrade the Console**

During an Enterprise Manager upgrade, any Console applications connected to the Enterprise Manager lose their connection. When the upgrade is available, you are informed that your Console software needs to be automatically updated.

**To update the Console software:**

1. When prompted to perform a Console update, select **Yes**. If you select **No**, the application automatically closes.

   The update process consists of two stages.
a. The software is downloaded. A dialog box shows the download progress.

b. The software is upgraded. The Software Installation progress window opens, showing the installation progress.

2. When the upgrade completes, select Launch Console at the bottom of the window to return to the Forescout Login dialog box.

**View Enterprise Manager System Health Information**

You can view at-a-glance system health information about your Enterprise Managers. This feature can be also used for troubleshooting.

To view Enterprise Manager health information:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then, if necessary, select **CounterACT Devices**. The CounterACT Devices pane lists the installed Enterprise Managers.

2. Place the cursor over the **Status** icon for the Enterprise Manager health information that you want to view. The Enterprise Manager details are displayed in a pop-up.

   Items in red may require your attention.

   *The fields displayed may differ depending on your Forescout deployment setup. For example, which licensing mode you are using, or whether you are using a virtual machine.*

The CounterACT Devices pane displays the following system health details:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>License</th>
<th>License status information.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>License Request</td>
<td>License request details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Availability</td>
<td>Indicates whether a High Availability system is running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Swap
Indicates whether the swap exceeded 100 kilobytes per second consecutively in the last minute, i.e., swap polling exceeded 100 on each of the polls (1 every five seconds). When this happens, the system may work slowly. To resolve this issue, add physical memory to the Appliance or replace the current Appliance with a new Appliance that has more physical memory.

### CPU Utilization
Indicates the percentage of actual CPU Utilization. If the value is high, contact your Forescout representative.

### Uptime
Indicates the amount of time the Enterprise Manager has been running.

### Time Gap from Console
Indicates the time delay between the Console and the Enterprise Manager.

### Connection
Indicates whether the Enterprise Manager Console is connected to the Enterprise Manager.

---

**Stop and Start the Enterprise Manager**

You cannot start and stop the Enterprise Manager from the Console. It is possible, however, to halt Enterprise Manager communication with Appliances. This is done using the `fstool` utility. For more information about using the utility, see the `fstool Command Reference Guide`.

**To control communication:**

1. Log in to the Enterprise Manager CLI.
2. Run the following command:
   ```
fstool service start|stop|restart|status|shutdown
   ```

---

**Appliance Management**

The following Appliance Management tasks can be performed:

- [View Appliance Health Information](#)
- [Register Appliances with the Enterprise Manager](#)
- [Upgrade Appliance Software](#)
- [Upgrade the Console](#)
- [Start and Stop Appliances](#)
- [Working with Appliance Folders](#)
- [Managing Groups of Appliances](#)
- [Appliance Endpoint Performance Capacity](#)
- [Working with Appliance Channel Assignments](#)
- [View Information about CounterACT Devices](#)
- [View Appliance Traffic Statistics](#)
View Appliance Health Information

You can view at-a-glance system health information about your Appliance. This feature can be also used for troubleshooting.

To view health information:
1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select an Appliance from the CounterACT Devices pane. The Appliance health details are displayed in the Status section.

Items in orange or red require your attention.

- The fields displayed may differ depending on your Forescout deployment setup. For example, which licensing mode you are using, or whether you are using a virtual machine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>License</td>
<td>The number of days remaining until the demo license expires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License Capacity</td>
<td>Bandwidth and endpoint assignment capacity violations. See <strong>Appliance Endpoint Performance Capacity</strong> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandwidth</td>
<td>Statistical information on bandwidth usage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Availability</td>
<td>Indicates whether a High Availability System is running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swap</td>
<td>Indicates whether the swap exceeded 100 kbps consecutively in the last one minute, i.e., swap polling exceeded 100 on each of the polls (1 every five seconds). When this happens, the system may work slowly. To resolve this issue, add physical memory to the Appliance or replace the Appliance with a new Appliance that has more physical memory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lost Packets</td>
<td>Indicates whether the Appliance engine lost on an average more than a 10% packet loss in the last one minute. Packet loss is displayed in 10% accuracy, i.e., 0% is 0-10, 10% is 10-20, and so on. The string <strong>O.K.</strong> is displayed if the packet loss is less than 10%. When packet loss is more than 10%, HTTP Redirection and Virtual Firewall may not work consistently. For the same source and destination, they might work in some cases and fail in others. To resolve, upgrade the Appliance or configure the channels to monitor less traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU Utilization</td>
<td>The percentage of actual CPU Utilization. If the value is high, contact your Forescout representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Gap from EM</td>
<td>Indicates whether the time set in the Enterprise Manager and at an Appliance varies by more than five minutes. When this happens, the event time may be incorrectly displayed in the Console. To resolve this, the Appliance or the Enterprise Manager clock should be reset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delay from EM</td>
<td>Indicates whether the communication delay between the Enterprise Manager and an Appliance is more than one minute. If this happens, contact your Forescout representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uptime</td>
<td>The amount of time the Appliance has been running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Gap from Console</td>
<td>The time delay between the Console and the Appliance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP</td>
<td>The NTP server connection status and server IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Packet Engine</td>
<td>The status of the Forescout Packet Engine: this is the engine that runs the Appliance. If this is down, many of your Forescout 8.1 features will not work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channels</td>
<td>Indicates whether Channel connections are working properly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection</td>
<td>Information about the connection between the Appliance and the Enterprise Manager. An error may include, for example, a version mismatch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action Threshold</td>
<td>Indicates that actions are on-hold on the device. This happens when endpoints exceed the action threshold defined for the device. Action thresholds are designed to automatically implement safeguards when using restrictive actions. See <a href="#">Working with Action Thresholds</a> for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Select Close.

#### Register Appliances with the Enterprise Manager

Your system is installed to begin working with minimal user intervention. However, the tools provided for managing Appliances through the Enterprise Manager are only available when you register your Appliances with the Enterprise Manager.

Appliances may have been added via the Initial Setup Wizard. If necessary, you can add additional Appliances.Verify that the Appliance is operating as a Standalone Appliance and is not connected to any other Enterprise Manager before you add the Appliance.
You cannot add an Appliance running CounterACT version 7 or below to an Enterprise Manager running version 8 or above.

You must have a valid Forescout license installed for your deployment. See Chapter 18: License Management for specific license requirements.

To add a new Appliance:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu.
2. Select CounterACT Devices.
3. Select Add.
4. Enter the Appliance IP address.
5. The default port number is displayed. This port is used to enable a network connection. It is recommended to keep the default setting.
6. Define the admin password to be used to connect to this Appliance.
7. Select the folder in which you want to add the Appliance. For more information about how to work with folders, see Managing Groups of Appliances.
8. Select OK. Messages indicate that the components are connecting and that the Appliance is being registered with the Enterprise Manager. You are prompted to verify the Appliance public key signature before continuing.
9. To verify the Appliance key, log in to the Appliance CLI and run the following command:
In the Bash shell, run `fstool key`. Refer to the Forescout CLI Commands Reference Guide for more information.

A message opens with the key ID.

10. When the Initial Setup Wizard opens, set up the Appliance as required. See Set Up an Appliance with Enterprise Manager Settings for details.

**Upgrade Appliance Software**

You can upgrade your version of the software from the Console. The procedure here applies to High Availability devices as well.

After you upgrade your Enterprise Manager to version 8.1, a new process will be available for upgrading Appliances, allowing you to upload the upgrade file prior to and independently of the upgrade itself. For larger deployments, this can significantly reduce the time it takes to perform the upgrade, allowing you to complete the process within a defined maintenance window.

The first time you upload a file to an Appliance/s, the file is uploaded to the Enterprise Manager before being copied to the Appliance. This initial upload may take some additional time. Once the file is uploaded to the Enterprise Manager, the upgrade file will be automatically stored for any future uploads/upgrades to other Appliances.

Review the Forescout Release Notes for important information before performing an upgrade.

For High Availability devices, back up the pair before you upgrade. See Backing Up System and Component Settings for details. The pair must be up when you upgrade. To upgrade a single active High Availability node when the Secondary node has failed or has not been set up:

Make sure the Secondary node is not accessible, and create the file `.ignorestandby` under `/etc/` on the node to be upgraded.

Refer to the Forescout Release Notes for this version for important upgrade information.

Not all users have access to the tools detailed in this section. See Access to Console Tools – Permissions for information about granting and preventing access.

**To upgrade to a new version:**

1. Before upgrading Appliances, you should upgrade the Enterprise Manager.

2. Download or obtain the upgrade file (FSP) for version 8.1 and save it to a location on your computer.

3. Select Options from the Tools menu.

CounterACT devices or Appliances are shown with their current version.

4. Select an Appliance or group of Appliances and select Upgrade. Do not select Enterprise Managers together with Appliances, because you cannot upgrade both Appliances and Enterprise Managers at the same time.
This dialog only appears after you upgrade your Enterprise Manager to version 8.1.

5. Select the scope of the upgrade:
   - Upload Only. Upload the file to the device but do not begin the upgrade.
   - Upload and Upgrade. Upload the file to the device and begin the upgrade.
   - Upgrade. Upgrade from the uploaded file. Only available after the file has already been uploaded to the Enterprise Manager.

6. Select Browse..., locate the upgrade file that you saved on your computer and select OK. After a check of the digital signature of the upgrade file is performed, the Forescout Upgrade screen opens.

7. Select OK. Once you confirm, the upgrade process proceeds to completion and cannot be interrupted or cancelled.
8. Review the Forescout Upgrade dialog box to see the status of the upgrade process. You can close the dialog box and continue to see the status in the Upgrade Status column of the CounterACT Devices pane. This column disappears when the upgrade has completed for all CounterACT devices in the deployment.

High Availability Devices – Upgrade for High Availability devices can take a long time (up to a number of hours). If the upgrade of the second node and the synchronization are not shown in the log, you can verify status via icons on the Console status bar:

- Indicates the status of the High Availability Appliances connected to the Enterprise Manager.
- Indicates the status of the Enterprise Manager High Availability pair.
- Indicates that High Availability is down on the Appliance.
- Indicates that High Availability is down on the Enterprise Manager.

9. When the upgrade is completed successfully, select **Close**. If the upgrade is not successful, contact your Forescout representative and **do not** continue with more upgrades.
Manually Upload the Upgrade File to an Appliance

In Forescout environments that experience connectivity issues (for example, the Appliance disconnects from the Enterprise Manager), you may prefer to manually upload the upgrade file to an Appliance/s.

To manually upload the file:

1. Before upgrading Appliances, you should upgrade the Enterprise Manager.
2. Download or obtain the upgrade file (FSP) and save it to a location on your computer.
3. Unzip the data.zip file from the FSP file.

The unzip can be performed on any machine.

4. Rename the data.zip file to fssetup.zip.
5. Copy the extracted ZIP file to the following location on the Appliance machine:
   /usr/src/fssetup.zip

The copied file will populate the Upgrade Status field in the Upgrade Status column of the CounterACT Devices pane after up to an hour from the time of copy, and only after the Enterprise Manager is upgraded with Forescout 8.1.

High Availability Upgrade Options

High Availability upgrades are performed on both nodes in the pair. Use the upgrade dialog box to indicate if you want to complete the upgrade if one of the nodes of the pair cannot be properly upgraded.

If you clear the Continue the upgrade if one node of the cluster cannot be upgraded checkbox, the upgrade will only continue if both nodes are running and functional. If you select the checkbox, the upgrade will continue even if the standby node is not working or powered-off.

Troubleshooting the Upgrade

Troubleshooting logs and web pages are available to help you handle upgrade complications. The web pages are accessed from the Forescout Options window, CounterACT Devices, Status section. The logs are displayed during the upgrade process in the Upgrade Progress dialog box.
Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles

Upgrade the Console

During Appliance upgrade, any Consoles applications connected to the Appliance lose their connection. When the upgrade is available, you are informed that your Console software needs to be automatically updated.

For more information about updating Console software, see Upgrade the Console.

Start and Stop Appliances

When an Appliance stops, Threat Protection, NAC, Discovery detections and other functionality are stopped. In addition, plugin and module functionality is stopped. As a result, blocked endpoints are released and plugin/module actions previously taken on endpoints are undone.

When you start the Appliance again, plugin/module activity and endpoint detection resume. In addition, all endpoints that were released as a result of the Stop operation are returned to their previous state.

See Access to Console Tools – Permissions for more information about granting and preventing access to this feature.

To start or stop an Appliance:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu.
2. Right-click an Appliance in the CounterACT Devices pane and select Start or Stop.
3. When prompted for confirmation, select Yes.
4. Select **Close**. The Appliance is displayed as stopped.

**To start or stop the Appliance when logged on to a single Appliance:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select the Appliance in the Appliances pane and then select **Start** or **Stop**.

**Working with Appliance Folders**

Use Appliance folders to group CounterACT devices into a tree structure, and to correlate Appliances with geographical or functional segments of the Internal Network. The Appliances in a folder handle endpoints in the Internal Network segments you assigned to the folder.

Define Appliance folders to:

- Help Forescout 8.1 efficiently support large or geographically disperse networks
- Implement automatic IP allocation between Appliances
- Create failover clusters (licensed feature: refer to the *Forescout Resiliency Solutions Guide*.)

Use Forescout segments based on the Internal Network to assign IP addresses to folders or Appliances. Define these segments in the Segment Manager before you work with folder tools. For example, if your network expands, you typically:

- Install new Appliances
- Use the Segment Manager to define segments with your network's new IP addresses. See **Working with Forescout Segments**.
- Add these segments to the Internal Network. See **Working with the Internal Network**.
- Follow the procedures described in this section to define folders that contain the new Appliances, and to assign the new segments to Appliances.

> If you change the definition of Internal Network segments, this can change which IP addresses are assigned to folders or Appliances.
Static and Automatic IP Allocation

You can assign IP addresses to Appliances in two ways:

- **Automatic IP Allocation**: Assign segments to a folder. If the folder contains several Appliances, Forescout 8.1 automatically assigns IPs in these segments to available Appliances in the folder. Endpoint sessions are distributed proportionally based on each Appliance's licensed capacity.

- **Static Allocation**: Assign segments to a single Appliance. This Appliance handles endpoints in these segments. If this Appliance is part of a folder, it does not participate in automatic IP allocation.

IP addresses not assigned to a folder or Appliance are handled by the Enterprise Manager. The Enterprise Manager also handles IP addresses that are assigned to a folder that has no Appliances available.

User Permissions for This Feature

The following user permissions are required to work with the features described in this section. For more information about user permissions, see Access to Console Tools – Permissions.

The following general permissions are required:

- CounterACT Configuration
- CounterACT Policy Management

To work with folder tree actions, the following addition permissions are required:

- Multiple CounterACT Appliance Management (update)
- CounterACT Appliance Control

Write permission is required to save changes.

To work with Appliance folders:

1. In the Console, select **Options**. The Options window opens.
2. In the Options tree, select **CounterACT Devices > IP Assignment and Failover**.
   
   The IP Assignment and Failover pane opens.
   – The tree of Appliance folders is shown in the left pane.
   – The main table lists information for the selected folder.

If you defined Appliance folders when working with earlier releases, the folders appear in the tree.
For each Appliance, the table lists the following information:

- The **Status** of the Appliance, as reported in the CounterACT Devices pane.
- The **Appliance** name or other identifier.
- The full path to the **Folder Location** that includes the Appliance.
- **Assigned Segments** that are assigned to the Appliance. Segments listed in italic font are assigned to the parent folder; segments listed in plain font are statically assigned to the Appliance itself.
- The **IP Addresses** corresponding to the assigned segments. If some segments are statically assigned to Appliances in the folder, this column indicates the remaining unassigned IP addresses.

3. To modify the folder tree, select a node in the tree and perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Add a folder" /></td>
<td>Add a folder. You are prompted to name the new folder. The new folder is created as a child of the selected node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Edit the name of the selected folder" /></td>
<td>Edit the name of the selected folder. This string appears in the <strong>Folder ID</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Delete the selected folder" /></td>
<td>Delete the selected folder. Before you can delete a folder, you must remove all its segment assignments and child nodes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Move the selected folder and its child nodes" /></td>
<td>Move the selected folder and its child nodes to another location in the tree. The selected folder is moved under the new parent node that you specify.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Assign segments to the folder" /></td>
<td>Assign segments to the folder. The network segments you specify here appear in the <strong>Assigned Segments</strong> field. To support these segments, Forescout 8.1 allocates endpoints to free Appliances (which do not have statically assigned segments).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ![Reassign segments to this folder from Appliances in child folders](image) | Reassign segments to this folder from Appliances in child folders. All segments statically assigned to Appliances in sub-folders of the selected folder are assigned to the selected folder.  
  - Reassigned segments now participate in load sharing.  
  - Segments assigned to sub-folders are not reassigned  
  - This action skips sub-trees with a folder-level segment assignment. |
Configure the selected folder as a failover cluster. This folder should have only folder-level segment assignments. You cannot include an Appliance with static segments assignments in a failover cluster.

This is an optional, licensed feature. For details on licensing and failover cluster configuration, refer to the *Forescout Resiliency Solutions Guide*.

4. To move Appliances to a folder:
   
   a. Find the Appliance(s) you want to move:
      
      Select a folder in the tree. The table lists the Appliances in that folder. Use the Assigned Appliances search field to refine the table: enter an Appliance or folder ID, or enter an IP address to locate the Appliance or folder that handles that network segment.

      By default, **Show child folder information** is enabled and the table includes Appliances in the selected folder’s sub-folders.

      To view all Appliances in your network that are not yet in a folder, clear **Show child folder information** and select the All Appliances node of the folder tree.

   b. Select the Appliances you want to move, and then select **Move**.
      
      In the dialog box, specify a folder and select **OK**. The selected Appliances are now members of the folder.

5. To assign network segments to an Appliance:
   
   a. Find the Appliance you want to modify:
      
      Select a folder in the tree. The table lists the Appliances in that folder. Use the Assigned Appliances search field to refine the table: enter an Appliance or folder ID, or enter an IP address to locate the Appliance or folder that handles that network segment.

      By default, **Show child folder information** is enabled, and the table also lists Appliances in the selected folder’s sub-folders.

   b. Select the Appliance you want to modify. Then select **Assign**.
      
      The Assign IP Ranges dialog opens.

   c. Specify the segments you want to assign to the Appliance, and select OK. The segments are statically assigned to the selected Appliance. As a result, only this Appliance handles only those endpoints in these segments and it does not support segments assigned to its folder.

6. Select **Apply** to save configuration changes.

**Overlapping IP Assignments**

Forescout 8.1 verifies that each network IP address is assigned to only one Appliance. This ensures, for example, accurate endpoint monitoring and policy execution.
If you mistakenly assign an IP address to more than one Appliance, Forescout 8.1 displays a table that lists the ranges and segments to which the overlapping IP address was defined, as well as the exact IP address ranges that overlap. Review this information and update IP assignments in the IP Assignment dialog box so that each IP address is only assigned to one Appliance. You can export the information in the table to a .CSV file.

Although there is no limit to the total number of entries displayed in the Overlapping IP Assignments dialog box, a maximum of 10 overlapping ranges are displayed at any one time. To see any additional overlapping ranges that might exist, first resolve the overlap conflicts displayed in the table. Once resolved, additional ranges are displayed.

**Unassigned IPs**

When Forescout 8.1 detects an endpoint with an IP address that is included in the Internal Network, but is not assigned to an Appliance, it generates an entry in the Event Log. These unassigned endpoints can be viewed in the Detections pane by selecting **Show Only Unassigned**.

Modify the Appliance Folders tree to assign the segment that contains the endpoint to an Appliance or folder. Forescout 8.1 can then connect to the endpoint. When there are no longer any unassigned endpoints, an entry in the Event Log indicates that all detected endpoints are assigned to an Appliance.

**Conflicting Configurations**

When you configure Forescout modules and other components, you can define groups of Appliances that have the same configuration settings, as described in [Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances](#).
In some cases, these configuration settings may conflict with the Appliance groupings you define in the Appliance Folders tree. For example, endpoint connection settings of the Endpoint Module may conflict with endpoint-handling settings of the Appliance Folders tree. A popup message notifies you of any conflicts when you save your Appliance Folders configuration. Review the two configurations applied to the Appliance to identify and resolve the conflict.

Managing Groups of Appliances

CounterACT Appliance folders let you simplify and unify CounterACT device management and configuration tasks. These folders are especially useful for medium- and large-scale Forescout deployments. This section discusses the following topics:

- Update Appliance Connection Details
- Configure Sets of Appliances
- View and Manage Plugin and Module Assignments per Folder

Update Appliance Connection Details

Update the IP address or port number used to connect an Appliance with an Enterprise Manager, while preserving all Appliance configurations. You may need to do this if:

- The Appliance IP address changes and you want to connect using the new IP address. In this case, the **Status** column and the **Device Alert** column indicate that the Appliance is disconnected.
- You can use the fstool netconfig command to change the Appliance IP. See **Sample fstool netconfig Session** for details.
- The Appliance is connected using the IPv4 address and the user wants to connect to it using its IPv6 address. In this case, the **Status** column and the **Device Alert** column indicate that the Appliance is connected.

**To update Appliance connection details:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select an Appliance from the CounterACT Devices pane and then select **IP/Port**....

![Appliance IP/Port Details](image)
3. Enter the new IP address or host name of the Appliance. Verify that you have updated the Appliance IP address and name on the machine.

4. Enter a port number of the Appliance. This port is used to communicate with the Enterprise Manager and the Appliance Console.

5. Enter a password for the “admin” user for this Appliance. Verify that you have updated the password for this user from the Appliance Console.
   - Log in to the Console for this Appliance and select Tools > Options > CounterACT User Profiles. See Modify User Details for information about changing the password. You must enter the current password even when only updating the IP address and name or port.

6. Select OK. The Appliance connection details are updated. The Device Alerts and connection status indicator columns in the CounterACT Devices pane is updated to indicate that the Appliance is connected.

**Configure Sets of Appliances**

You can simultaneously configure groups of Appliances with identical configuration for specific features. This ensures more streamlined configurations across the network. For details, see Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances.

**View and Manage Plugin and Module Assignments per Folder**

You can quickly view all CounterACT devices with a specific plugin or module installed.

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Modules.

2. Management tasks, for example, Start, Stop, Rollback, and Configure, can also be performed from this dialog box.

3. Double-click the Content Module of interest, or expand a module and double-click the plugin of interest.
On the Devices tree, navigate to and select the Appliance, folder, or Enterprise Manager to display the list of devices on which the plugin or module is installed.

**Appliance Endpoint Performance Capacity**

Each Appliance has a set number of allotted endpoints. This number is set automatically based on default values assigned to the hardware model of your Appliance. Limiting the number of endpoints per Appliance enables Forescout 8.1 to perform more effectively.

When the number of endpoints is exceeded, warnings are issued in the Appliance and Enterprise Manager Consoles, and in trace log files.

**License Endpoint Capacity**

In addition to endpoint performance capacity, Forescout licenses also have a license endpoint capacity which defines how many endpoints your Appliance (Per-Appliance licensing) or deployment (Flexx licensing) is allowed to handle. See About License Management for more details.

**Working with Appliance Channel Assignments**

A channel defines a pair of interfaces used by the Appliance to protect your network.

In general, one interface monitors traffic going through the network (monitor interface). The other interface generates traffic back into the network (response interface). Response traffic is used to:

- Protect against self-propagating malware, worms and hackers.
- Carry out Virtual Firewall blocking.
- Perform policy actions. These actions may include, for example, redirecting web browsers or blocking access to the Internet.
A single interface may also be used as both the monitoring and the response interface.

Monitoring and response interfaces are recorded in the Data Center when installing the Appliance. In addition, the appropriate physical connections are made when connecting the Appliance to the switch.

When first logging in to the Console, the Initial Setup Wizard prompts you to define Channel interface settings to match these connections. These settings appear in the Channels pane. They are also displayed when you select Edit in the CounterACT Devices pane and select the Channels tab.

If not defined via the wizard, you should manually define the channel interface settings. See Add Channels for details.

If this task was completed by the wizard, use the Channels pane to edit and remove channel definitions, modify VLAN tagging definitions and manually define VLANs.

If you change the monitoring interface assignment because no traffic is detected, or for any other reason, you must readjust the physical interface connections in the Data Center.

**About VLAN Tagged Traffic**

By default, all VLAN tagged traffic and all untagged traffic is monitored by the Appliance. The Appliance matches these tags when sending response packets. This means response traffic has VLAN IDs identical to the IDs of the original monitored traffic. This (recommended) default applies when monitoring and responding to a trunk port.

**Add Channels**

It is recommended to create channels to match Appliance interface connections to monitor and respond to traffic on network interfaces.

**To add channels:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Channels**.

2. From the **Select Appliance** drop-down menu, select the Appliance to which you want to add channels. If you already defined channels in the Initial Setup Wizard, the pane displays those channels and the traffic detected on the Appliance.

3. From the **Channel** drop-down menu, select **Add**.
The interfaces detected on your Appliance appear in the Interface List. Every few seconds, traffic is captured on the selected interface according to the various VLANs.

Review the interfaces and related information to verify that traffic is visible on interfaces to which you connected in the Data Center, for example, if traffic is actually mirrored. If you change an interface assignment in this dialog box because no traffic is detected or for any other reason, you must go back to the Data Center and readjust the physical interface connections.

The following information is available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>If the interface is up or down.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IF (Interface)</td>
<td>The monitoring interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Traffic (kbps)</td>
<td>The total VLAN traffic monitored by the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirrored</td>
<td>The percentage of total traffic that is not broadcast and not directed at the Appliance. This information lets you know if the device is monitoring traffic. A value of less than 20% indicates that the switch was not correctly configured. Under most circumstances, the mirrored traffic percentage should be very high on all but the relatively quiet VLANs. A quiet VLAN displays a high percentage of Broadcast traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcast</td>
<td>The percentage of Broadcast traffic detected on the VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unicast</td>
<td>The percentage of Unicast traffic sent to and from the Ethernet address on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># VLANs</td>
<td>The VLAN number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Interface IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Duplex</td>
<td>The current speed and whether the interface is automatic or full or half duplex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conf Speed/Duplex</td>
<td>The configured speed and whether the interface is automatic or full or half duplex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A description of the interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Troubleshooting alerts appear at the bottom of the dialog box if traffic detection is exceptionally low or high.
4. From the **Monitor** drop-down menu, select the interface connected in the Data Center to a mirroring port.

5. From the **Response** drop-down menu, select the interface connected in the Data Center.

6. Select **OK**. The Channels pane displays the configured channel setup. Alternatively, select **Advanced** to modify VLAN tagging definitions. See [Customize VLAN Tagging Definitions](#).

---

**Channels Manager**

The dialog box contains the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Enabled (checkbox)</strong></th>
<th>When selected, activates the channel configuration. Monitoring and response activity will not function until you select <strong>Apply</strong> from the Channels pane.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monitor Interface Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monitor VLAN</strong></td>
<td>All VLAN IDs discovered for the selected monitoring interface. If you defined a channel that works with an IP layer, that VLAN is displayed as <strong>IP LAYER</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Traffic (Bps)</strong></td>
<td>The total VLAN traffic detected on the monitored interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mirrored Traffic</strong></td>
<td>The percentage of mirrored traffic from the total VLAN traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Symmetric Traffic</strong></td>
<td>Indicates whether the interfaces passed the Symmetric Traffic test. The test verifies that the Appliance can see symmetric traffic on the monitoring interfaces. That is, for every TCP conversation both incoming and outgoing traffic is visible. When this condition is detected, the traffic received on the channel is ignored until the condition has cleared. The test runs continually. If the test failed, you can review related troubleshooting information at the bottom of the Channels pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong># of Hosts</strong></td>
<td>The total number of endpoints monitored on the VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Response Interface Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Response VLAN</strong></td>
<td>All VLAN IDs discovered for the selected response interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traffic (Bps)</th>
<th>The total VLAN traffic detected on the response interface.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Response</td>
<td>Indicates whether the Response test succeeded on the VLAN. The test verifies that the Appliance successfully sends response traffic to the network. The test runs continually. If the test failed, you can review related troubleshooting information at the bottom of the Channels pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The response interface IP address, i.e., the DHCP address used by the Appliance for response traffic. By default, the IP address is acquired through DHCP. If the DHCP is not successful, Forescout 8.1 cannot respond to ARP requests. In this case, manually define the address. Addresses are defined per VLAN, if required. See Manually Add a VLAN for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Select **Use DHCP by Default** if a DHCP address is used by Forescout 8.1 for monitored traffic. Clear **Use DHCP by Default** to manually configure the IP address.

8. Select the **Enabled** checkbox for each VLAN that you want to activate.

9. Select **Apply**. A Symmetric and Response test is performed. If the test fails, you can review related troubleshooting information at the bottom of the dialog box.

**Customize VLAN Tagging Definitions**

By default, all VLAN tagged and untagged traffic is monitored by the Appliance. These tags are matched when sending response packets. This means that response packets have VLAN IDs identical to the IDs of the monitoring packet that triggered the response. This default (recommended) applies when monitoring and responding to a trunk port.

**Appliance Management Interface VLAN Tagging Requirements**

The Appliance Management interface should be untagged.
To customize VLAN tagging:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Channels**.

2. From the **Channel** drop-down menu, select **Add**.

3. Using the **Monitor** and **Response** drop-down menus, define the channel monitor and response settings and then select **Advanced** to access the advanced options.

4. In the Monitor – Advanced VLAN Options section, select one of the following options:
   - Select **All Traffic (Tagged & Untagged)** to monitor all traffic on the interface.
   - Select **All Tagged Traffic** to monitor all tagged traffic on the interface.
   - Select **Untagged** to monitor untagged traffic on the interface.
   - Select **Custom** to define specific VLAN IDs to include or exclude from the definition. You can include untagged traffic in this list by selecting **Include Untagged Traffic**.
5. In the Response – Advanced VLAN Options section, select one of the following options:
   - Select **Match Monitoring Tags** to send response packets with VLAN IDs identical to the IDs of the monitoring packet that triggered the response. Select this option when responding to a trunk port.
   - Select **Untagged** if the response packets for this channel are not tagged with VLAN IDs.
   - Select **Custom** to define a specific VLAN ID. This option is used when responding to a tagged port, on behalf of untagged traffic.
   - **IP layer**
     The Appliance can use its own management interface to respond to traffic. Although this mode can be used with any channel, it is ideal where the Appliance is monitoring ports that are not part of any VLAN, and thus there is no way to respond to the monitored traffic using any other switch port. This is typical when monitoring a link connecting two routers. Using this mode has the limitation of not being able to respond to ARP requests, which limits the ability of Forescout 8.1 to detect scans aimed at the IP addresses included in the monitored subnet. This limitation does not apply when traffic between two routers is monitored.

6. Select **OK**. The Add Channel dialog box closes.

7. Select **Apply**.

*Manually Add a VLAN*

Add a VLAN to monitor a specific path of traffic. You may need to do this, for example, if there is currently no traffic running on the VLAN.

If this is the case, search for possible reasons, for example, the interface is not connected, a switch is not correctly configured, or the ports are down.

**To add a VLAN:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Channels**.
2. From the **Select Appliance** drop-down menu, select the Appliance to which you want to add a VLAN. The Appliance channel list is displayed in the Channels pane.
3. From the **VLAN** drop-down menu, select **Add**.
4. Configure the VLAN settings and select OK.

Console Indicators

An indicator is displayed on the Console status bar if:

- There is a connectivity problem on enabled VLANs or defined channels.
- No channels are enabled.
- A new VLAN is automatically discovered by the Appliance.

A tooltip provides details about the event that occurred.

802.1ad and 802.1QinQ VLAN Tag Termination Traffic

You can configure Forescout 8.1 to identify 802.1ad and 802.1QinQ VLAN Tag Termination traffic. Identifying this traffic expands VLAN discovery, provides increased visibility and enables Forescout 8.1 functionality for QinQ traffic, including:

- Threat Protection
- HTTP Actions
- Virtual Firewall

Identification of 802.1ad and 802.1QinQ VLAN Tag Termination traffic is only supported when the Response Interface is set to IP Layer in Options > Channels.
You can identify traffic containing either service provider VLAN tags (external) or customer VLAN tags (internal). Be aware that enabling either internal or external tag identification will determine which VLAN the traffic is associated with. Enabling either type of 802.1ad and 802.1QinQ VLAN Tag Termination traffic does not affect untagged/tagged traffic handling.

This feature is disabled by default.

To enable identifying 802.1ad and 802.1QinQ VLAN Tag Termination traffic:

1. Perform one of the following for each Appliance:
   - To identify traffic containing service provider VLAN tags (external), log in to the Appliance CLI and run the following command:
     \[\text{fstool set_property engine.conf.params.VlanQStacking 1}\]
   - To identify traffic containing customer VLAN tags (internal), log in to the Appliance CLI and run the following command:
     \[\text{fstool set_property engine.conf.params.VlanQStacking 2}\]

2. Run the following command:
   \[\text{fstool service restart}\]

To disable identifying 802.1ad and 802.1QinQ VLAN Tag Termination traffic:

- Run the following commands:
  \[\text{fstool set_property engine.conf.params.VlanQStacking 0}\]
  \[\text{fstool service restart}\]

View Information about CounterACT Devices

To view and edit CounterACT device information:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select the CounterACT device in the CounterACT Devices pane. The Status section opens below the device list.
3. Double-click the CounterACT device to open the Host Details dialog box. Alternately, you can select **Edit** in the CounterACT Devices pane.

The device details are displayed on the Status, Channels, and Fingerprint tabs of the Host Details dialog box.

Status Tab

You can view at-a-glance system health information about Appliances on the Status tab.

Information about Appliance health is displayed in a tooltip when you hover over a specific Appliance in the Status column of the CounterACT Appliances pane. Icons summarize the Appliance status in the Status column. Appliance health information is also displayed in the Status tab when you double-click an Appliance or select **Edit** in the CounterACT Devices pane.
If the status of an item in the Status section is acceptable and does not require special attention, it is shown in black. Alerts are shown in orange, and error messages in red.

Information displayed is useful for troubleshooting. Entries in red may require special attention.

The following Appliance status information is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>License</td>
<td>The validity of a license, and the time remaining to expiration, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity</td>
<td>The bandwidth and number of endpoints per Appliance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Availability</td>
<td>High Availability system status information:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• N/A: No High Availability system is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• UP: High Availability is installed and running. Both nodes are up and synchronized.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Not supported: Versions are incompatible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Degraded: Review the tooltip for details about why the High Availability system was degraded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Refer to the *Forescout Resiliency Solutions User Guide* for more information about High Availability. See *Additional Forescout Documentation* for information on how to access this guide.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Swap</td>
<td>Indicates whether the swap exceeded 100 kilobytes per second consecutively in the last minute, i.e., swap polling exceeded 100 on each of the polls (1 every five seconds). When this happens, the system may work slowly. To resolve this issue, add physical memory to the Appliance or replace the Appliance with a new Appliance that has more physical memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lost Packets</td>
<td>Indicates whether the Appliance engine experienced on an average more than a 10% packet loss in the last one minute. Packet loss is displayed in 10% accuracy blocks, i.e., 0% is 0-10, 10% is 10-20, and so on. OK is displayed if the packet loss is less than 10%. When packet loss is more than 10%, HTTP Redirection and Virtual Firewall may not work consistently. For the same source and destination, they might work in some cases and fail in others. To resolve this issue, upgrade the Appliance or configure the channels to monitor less traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU Utilization</td>
<td>Indicates the percentage of actual CPU Utilization. If the value is high, contact your Forescout representative.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Channels Tab**

Entries in the Channels tab indicate the logical setup and traffic between the monitor and response interfaces that the CounterACT Appliance uses to interact with the network.

![Channels Tab Diagram](image.png)

Alerts on specific channels where traffic problems have been detected appear at the bottom of the Channels pane.
To modify the listings and monitor traffic:

1. Select Channel to add, edit or remove channel listings.
2. Select VLAN to add a single VLAN listing, or to perform actions on all VLANs listed including remove, enable and disable.
3. Select Traffic to view the traffic monitored by a specific interface.

For details about how to work with channels, see Working with Appliance Channel Assignments.

Fingerprint Tab

The Appliance fingerprint lets you verify the authenticity of the Appliance and confirm the connection between the Appliance and the Enterprise Manager. Compare the displayed fingerprint with the fingerprint retrieved from the CounterACT device to verify.

To verify the fingerprint:

1. Log in to the CounterACT device CLI.
2. Run the following command:
   ```bash
   fingerprintkey
   ```

   In the Bash shell, run `fstool key` instead. Refer to the Forescout CLI Commands Reference Guide for more information.

3. Verify that the output of the command matches the value displayed in the Fingerprint tab.

View Appliance Traffic Statistics

View dynamic network traffic information about the Appliances in your enterprise.

To view traffic:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu.
2. Right-click an Appliance from the Devices pane and select Traffic.
Chapter 16: Managing Appliances, Enterprise Managers, and Consoles

For more information about Appliance traffic, see Add Channels.

Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances

You can configure plugins and modules and certain features for individual Appliances or for a group of Appliances. This allows easy support of large, geographically dispersed environments.

When this option is available, configuration settings are organized using a row of tabs. Each tab duplicates all the configuration fields in the pane. Initially, only the Default tab is present.

Use the following controls to create and manage configurations:

- Select the Plus-sign tab to create a new configuration.
- When there are several configurations, it may be difficult to locate the configuration that applies to a specific device. Select the device from the CounterACT Devices drop-down. The configuration that applies to that device is highlighted for editing.
Apply Uniform Configuration Settings to All Appliances

The settings of the Default tab apply to all CounterACT devices that are not included in other configurations. If you do not create other configurations, these settings apply to all CounterACT devices. Settings for the Enterprise Manager are defined only in the Default tab. As a result, the Enterprise Manager is not available when you define a new tab for configuration settings.

Define a Configuration for a Single Device or Group of Devices

Use this procedure to define configuration settings that apply to a specified CounterACT device or group of devices.

To create a separate configuration for a device or group of devices:

1. Select the Plus-sign tab. The Select CounterACT devices to configure dialog box opens.

2. Select the CounterACT devices to which these configuration settings you want to apply these settings.

3. (Optional) Specify a text label for this configuration instance in the Name (Optional) field.

4. Select OK. A tab is added to the pane.
Configuration settings you define while this tab is selected apply only to the CounterACT devices you selected in step 2.

**Edit and Update a Configuration**

Use the **Edit** and **Delete** icons to update a configuration.

**To modify the scope of configuration settings:**

1. Select the Edit icon on a tab. The Edit devices to configure dialog box opens.
2. Edit the devices to which these configuration settings apply:
   - Select devices to add to the configuration.
   - Clear selected devices to remove them from the configuration.
3. (Optional) Modify the text label of the configuration.
4. Select **OK** to save changes to the configuration.

**To delete a configuration:**

1. Select the Delete icon on a tab.
2. Select **Yes** to confirm deletion.
   
   The configuration tab is removed from the pane.

*Settings of the Default tab apply to all devices that were in the scope of the deleted configuration.*

**Limiting User Access to Appliances**

Endpoint IP address assignments made to a particular Appliance may be out of your user Scope. When this happens, you cannot configure or edit the configuration. Appliances that contain endpoint IP assignments out of your scope are displayed with an empty red circle or red circle with a line through it.

An empty red circle indicates that you do not have access to any IP addresses managed by the Appliance. A circle with a line indicates that you have partial access.
Scope definitions are made by Forescout 8.1 administrators for the purpose of granting and limiting user access to specific endpoints or segments in the network. Scope definitions are configured in the CounterACT User Profiles pane. To access the pane, select **Options** from the **Tools** menu, and then select **CounterACT User Profiles**.

**Viewing Limitations**

Certain Appliances may contain endpoint IP address assignments that are not in your Scope. When this happens, you may not be able to view or edit the Appliance configuration.

A red no-entry icon appears on Appliances that contain endpoint IP address assignments partially out of your Scope. For example:

Other endpoint IP address assignments made to an Appliance may be entirely out of your user scope. When this happens, the Appliance does not appear in the drop-down menu.

Scope definitions are made by Forescout 8.1 administrators for the purpose of granting and limiting user access to specific endpoints or segments in the network. Scope definitions are configured in the CounterACT User Profiles pane. To access the pane, select **Options** from the **Tools** menu, and then select **CounterACT User Profiles**.

**Controlling Command-line Access to CounterACT Devices**

CounterACT devices expose a command-line interface (CLI) that is used by administrators for device installation and setup, or to issue fstool commands, or when file import/export tools are not supported by the Console.
The user accounts defined at the CLI level are not related to Console or web portal users.

The following tools support more secure management of CLI level access.

- Configure Session Security Features for Command-Line Interaction
- Configure Password Protection for the Boot Loader

### Configure Session Security Features for Command-Line Interaction

Define audit log file properties and other security features that apply when users log in to CounterACT devices through the CLI. By default, logs report general operations related to, for example, some of the following activities:

- User login
- Stopping or starting Forescout 8.1

You can configure CounterACT devices to monitor additional audit events to help discover violations of security policies used on your system (os.enable.audit.rules property). These additional audit events may relate to some of the following activities:

- Service requests
- File modification
- Time modification
- Permission changes

**To configure security features for command-line interaction:**

1. Log in to the CounterACT device CLI and run the `fstool set_property` command followed by the relevant property from the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>os.forward_audit_to_syslog</td>
<td>Forward a copy of the audit log files to the syslog server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value is 0 (disabled).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os.audit_max_log_size.value</td>
<td>The size in MB of the audit log files to be generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value is 6 (6MB). Maximum value is 50 (50 MB).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os.audit_free_space_alert.value</td>
<td>The percentage of free disk space left that triggers an alert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value is 0.5 (0.5%). Maximum value is 10 (10%).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os.audit_num_log.value</td>
<td>The number of recently created audit log files to be kept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value is 5. Maximum value is 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os.enable.audit.rules</td>
<td>When this property is set to True, CounterACT devices monitor additional audit events and conditions that indicate security exposure (for example, service requests or file modifications).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os.enable.audit.rules.immutable</td>
<td>It may be necessary to disable enhanced auditing, for example, if enhanced auditing causes performance issues. When this property is set to True, the audit events monitored by the os.enable.audit.rules property cannot be disabled until the device is rebooted. This property is only enforced if os.enable.audit.rules is set to True.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. After setting one or more of the properties above, run the following command:

   fstool os_security config

**Configure Password Protection for the Boot Loader**

CounterACT devices use the GNU GRUB boot loader. To prevent malicious changes to boot settings, you can protect access to these settings by requiring a password.

> Once you define a boot loader password, you cannot disable password protection or define a null password.

**To configure password protection for the boot loader:**

1. Log in to the CounterACT device CLI.

2. Run the following command:

   fstool grub -setpassword

   The following prompt appears:

   Enter grub password:

3. Enter the password. The following prompt appears:

   Re-type grub password:

4. Re-enter the password. The following prompt appears:

   Successfully updated grub password.

   The system prompts for this password when users try to edit boot loader settings.
Chapter 17: The Dashboard

- About the Dashboard
- Accessing the Dashboard
- What You See in the Dashboard
- Before You Begin
- Working with Dashboard Widgets
- Dashboard Feature Updates
About the Dashboard

The Dashboard is a web-based information center that provides an overview of the network and delivers dynamic at-a-glance information about:

- Device compliance
- Device classification
- Device management status

The dashboard is designed for corporate executives who want a quick overview of important network activities, and for security administrators who want to easily monitor their security state. This information is collected from Forescout 8.1 policies and is periodically updated as endpoints are monitored and controlled by Forescout 8.1.

Accessing the Dashboard

Two methods are available for accessing the Dashboard:

- Login from the Console.
- Login from a web browser (requires authentication).

To access the Dashboard from the Console:

- Select the ellipsis icon on the Toolbar, and select Dashboard. The Dashboard opens in a new browser window.

To access the Dashboard from a web browser:

1. Browse to the following URL: http://<Device_IP>/board.
   Where <Device_IP> is the IP address of the Enterprise Manager or an Appliance. A login page opens.
2. Enter the User Name and Password of a user that can access the dashboard. Typically, the credentials you use to access the Console also grant access to the dashboard. For more information, see Configure User Login to Forescout Web Portals.

Control User Access to the Dashboard

By default, all Forescout users can access the Dashboard page. Using the command line interface, Forescout administrators have the capability to control user access to the Dashboard page. Access control consists of the following activities:

- Block user access to the Dashboard page
- List currently blocked users
- Allow user access to the Dashboard page

To control user access to the Dashboard page:

1. On the Enterprise Manager, log in to the command line interface (CLI).
2. Run any of the following fstool command lines:
   a. To block user access to the Dashboard page:
      
      \texttt{fstool www block\_web\_client\_ip \<affected\ user\ IP\ addresses>}
   b. To list all currently blocked users:
      
      \texttt{fstool www list\_blocked\_web\_client\_ip}
   c. To allow user access to the Dashboard page:
      
      \texttt{fstool www unblock\_web\_client\_ip \<affected\ user\ IP\ addresses>}

In both the block and the allow fstool command lines, specify affected user IP addresses using any of the following IP address formats:

- IPv4 Address Formats
- IPv6 Address Formats

**IPv4 Address Formats**

In the fstool command lines for controlling user access to the Dashboard page, specify affected, user IPv4 address(es) using any of the following IP address formats:

- An individual IPv4 address, for example, 10.1.2.3
- Multiple IPv4 addresses, separated by a space, for example, 192.168.1.104 192.168.1.205
- A partial IPv4 address (the first 1 to 3 bytes of the address), for example, 10.1
- Multiple, partial IPv4 addresses, separated by a space, for example, 10 172.20 192.168.2
- A network/net mask pair, for example, 10.1.0.0/255.255.0.0
- A network/net mask pair (CIDR notation), for example, 10.1.0.0/16
IPv6 Address Formats
In the fstool command lines for controlling user access to the Dashboard page, specify affected, user IPv6 address(es) using any of the following IP address formats:

- An individual IPv6 address, for example, `2001:db8::a00:20ff:fea7:ccea`
- A partial IPv6 address, for example, `2001:db8:1:1::a`
- A network/net mask pair (CIDR notation), for example:
  - `2001:db8:2:1::/64`
  - `2001:db8:3::/48`

What You See in the Dashboard
The default Dashboard installation provides the following information:

- Network Overview
- TOTAL DEVICES
- CAMPUS WIRED
- CAMPUS WIRELESS
- DATA CENTER/CLOUD
- OT NETWORK
- Compliance Trends
- Classification Status
- Computer Manageability

Network Overview
The Counter Area of the Dashboard displays a summary of the total numbers of endpoints and devices in each of the monitored categories:

- TOTAL DEVICES
- CAMPUS WIRED
- CAMPUS WIRELESS
- DATA CENTER/CLOUD
- OT NETWORK

Compliance Trends
The Compliance widgets provide a picture of the compliance status and trends on your network.

- Non-Compliant Endpoints by Operating System – dynamic, changes over time
- Overall Non-Compliant Endpoints – dynamic, changes over time
- Overall Compliance – static display of total numbers
**Classification Status**

There are two widgets available that provide the classification status of devices on your network.

- High Level Classification
- IoT Classification

**Computer Manageability**

The Computer Manageability widget provides information about managed computers, guest computers, and non-managed computers that are connected to your network.

**Dashboard Layout**

This section provides an overview of the Dashboard layout.

---

**Application Header**

The Forescout Web Client provides the Application Header (the Header) that contains the following items:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logo</td>
<td>Forescout corporate logo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applications</td>
<td>The available applications that users can navigate to and access. Currently, the Forescout Web Client offers the following application options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- DASHBOARD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
### Chapter 17: The Dashboard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>User</strong></td>
<td>Icon and the username that is currently logged in to the Forescout Web Client. Hovering your cursor over the icon/username displays the user login information summary tooltip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Log Out</strong></td>
<td>Select this icon to log out of the Forescout Web Client. Upon user logout, the Forescout Web Client login page displays. Hovering your cursor over the icon displays the log out tooltip.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Counter Area

The Dashboard Counter Area presents the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LAST UPDATE</strong></td>
<td>The last time the data was polled and updated. The timestamp is presented in USA time format (mm/dd/yyyy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL DEVICES</strong></td>
<td>The total number of detected devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CAMPUS WIRED</strong></td>
<td>The number of wired devices detected on the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CAMPUS WIRELESS</strong></td>
<td>The number of wireless devices detected on the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DATA CENTER/CLOUD</strong></td>
<td>The number of devices detected in your data center or cloud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OT NETWORK</strong></td>
<td>The number of detected Operational Technology devices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To change the update interval of the Dashboard, use the CLI command `fstool set_property` to change the interval (in seconds) in the `dashboard.portal.polling.time.seconds` property.

To change the Last Updated time format, use the CLI command `fstool set_property` to change the `dashboard.portal.date.format` property.

### Dashboard Widgets

Each widget in the Dashboard displays a donut chart, a trend chart, or a counter chart with statistics that are collected from Forescout 8.1 policies. The policies provide the number of hosts that are compliant, their classification function, and changes over time in the number of hosts that are compliant.

Drag and drop widgets to re-arrange their display in the page; click on a widget, drag it from its existing location to a different location in the Dashboard and then click again to release (drop) it into its new location.
Dashboard widgets provide the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>High Level Classification</strong></td>
<td>General classification of devices according to the following categories: Computer, IoT, Network Infrastructure, Mobile, Other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-Compliant Endpoints by Operating System</strong></td>
<td>Non-compliant devices on the network, according to the operating system they are running (Windows, Linux, Mac).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Overall Non-Compliant Endpoints</strong></td>
<td>A general view of non-compliant devices in the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Overall Compliance</strong></td>
<td>Compliant or non-compliant devices in the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IoT Classification</strong></td>
<td>Classification of device types according to the following categories: Printers, VoIP, Wearables, Healthcare, Surveillance, Building Automation, Other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Computer Manageability</strong></td>
<td>Managed Computers, Guest Computers, or Non Managed Computers on the network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Before You Begin**

The following tasks should be performed before working with the Dashboard:

- Enable JavaScript in browsers that are running the Dashboard.
- Run the Dashboard Policy Template

**How the Dashboard is Populated**

To begin populating reports in the Dashboard, verify that you are running a set of basic policy templates that retrieve the compliance statistics, classification results and managed device properties from your network. The default set of Dashboard policies is installed with Forescout 8.1, but needs to be activated by Run the Dashboard Policy Template.

If you are monitoring Data Center or Operational Technology statistics in your network, you need to define the IP range scope for your Data Center and OT Network in the Dashboard policy template.

**Run the Dashboard Policy Template**

Use the Dashboard policy template to activate the default Dashboard policies, and to configure the IP scope for your Data Center and OT Network.

**To run the template:**

1. Log in to the Forescout Console and select the Policy tab.
2. Create a new folder to hold the default Dashboard policies.
3. Select the folder, and select Add from the Policy Manager. The Policy Wizard opens.
4. Expand the **Dashboard** folder, and select **Dashboard Policies**. The **Dashboard Policies** pane opens.

5. Select **Next**.

6. Use the Set Data Center Range and Set OT network Range options to define which endpoints are inspected. The following options are available for defining the scope:
   - **Segment**: Select a previously defined segment of the network.
   - **IP Range or Subnet**: Define a range of IP addresses or a Subnet.
7. Select **Next**. The Summary pane opens, displaying a summary of the policies that have been activated.

8. Select **Finish**.
9. Select **Apply** to save the policy settings.

**Working with Dashboard Widgets**

This section describes how to create and work with Dashboard widgets.

- **Select the Reporting Interval**
- **Expand a Widget**
- **Add a Widget**

**Select the Reporting Interval**

You can view data for the different time intervals, for example, the last week or the last month.
To select a reporting interval:
- Select a reporting interval from the drop-down menu.
  
  The chart refreshes the display to include data from the selected interval.

**Expand a Widget**

When you expand a widget to full screen size, the expanded view provides additional information in the **Host List** pane and **Host Details** pane.

**To expand a widget and display it in full screen mode:**

1. Click anywhere in the chart, or select the ellipsis icon ⋯ in the widget, and select **Expand Chart** from the dropdown menu.

2. The widget is displayed in full screen mode.

3. Expanded widgets display the following information:
   - **Chart**: An enlarged view of the chart, with buttons corresponding to each sub-rule displayed at the top of the chart. Selecting the sub-rule buttons determines what data is displayed in the expanded chart.
– **Host List**: A list of the individual endpoints detected by Forescout 8.1 that are represented in the chart. The properties displayed are host name, IP Address, network segment, MAC Address, and network function. The Search box at the top of the pane lets you search the Host List for specific entries.

– **Host Details**: The detailed properties for a host selected in the Host List.

4. To return to the regular view, select the collapse chart icon in the upper left corner of the expanded widget.

**Add a Widget**

The Widget Builder wizard lets you add custom widgets based on the specific information you want to see in the Dashboard. The wizard lets you select any policy that you defined in Forescout 8.1. Each widget provides a chart presented in one of three Widget types:

- **Donut**: A circular chart that displays the total number and the relative percentages of each property matched in the sub-rule, according to the policies selected in this widget.

![Donut Chart](image)

- **Trend**: A graph that displays the number of devices that match the sub-rules over time according to the policies selected in this widget.

![Trend Chart](image)

> When you hold your cursor over the trend chart, a tooltip displays the number value of that point in the chart.
Chapter 17: The Dashboard

- **Counter**: A widget that displays the number of devices that match the policy sub-rules, according to the policy selected for this widget. Up to four counters can be included in each Counter widget.

To create report widgets that accurately reflect the data you want to see in the Dashboard, you should understand how Forescout 8.1 policies and other basic features work.

**To add a widget:**

1. At the lower right corner of the Dashboard, select Add Widget. The Widget Builder wizard opens.
2. Select the chart type you want to use: **Donut**, **Trend**, or **Counter**.

3. Select a Policy and Sub-Rules to populate the chart, and select **Next**.

4. Enter a title for the new widget, and select **Next**.
5. If you are adding a Counter widget, select the Widget Layout options and the trend arrow directions for each sub-rule, and select **Next**.

A summary of the selected widget options is displayed.
6. Select **Finish** to complete create the widget.

When you add a widget to the Dashboard, it is placed in the next available spot at the bottom of the screen. Scroll up and down to view additional widgets.

**Edit a Widget**

The Widget Builder wizard provides you the capability to edit custom widgets. The wizard guides you through the editing process.

**To edit a Dashboard widget:**

1. In the Dashboard page, hover your cursor over a custom widget. The widget frame is highlighted.
2. Within the widget frame, hover your cursor over the menu icon , in the upper-right corner of the frame, and select this icon. The menu opens.

3. In the menu, select **Edit**. The Widget Builder window opens.

4. In the Widget Data page, edit any of the following:
   a. **SELECT CHART** – modify the widget’s display format, either **DONUT**, **TREND** or **COUNTER**
   b. **SELECT POLICY** - modify the policy that the widget must reference
   c. **SELECT SUB RULES** - based on the selected policy, modify the policy sub-rules that the widget must reference for information

   The **NEXT>** and **CANCEL** buttons are available for use.
5. In the Widget Labels page, edit any of the following:
   a. **WIDGET TITLE** – modify the widget title
   b. **SUB RULE LABELS** – modify any of the existing sub-rule labels. These labels display in the widget’s legend

   The `<BACK, NEXT>` and **CANCEL** buttons are available for use.

6. In the Summary page, review your widget modifications, **Title, Widget Type** (display format), each policy sub-rule and its label. The information presented is **view-only**.

   The `<BACK, FINISH` and **CANCEL** buttons are available for use.

   Select `<BACK` to return to any of the previous Widget Builder pages to re-modify information, as needed.

   Select the **FINISH** to complete the editing session, save your widget modifications and return to the Dashboard, where the edited widget displays.

**Dashboard Feature Updates**

The Dashboard Plugin delivers the Dashboard (application) page. The Dashboard Plugin is a component of the Forescout Core Extensions Module. Periodic updates to the Dashboard are delivered whenever the Module is updated.
Chapter 18: License Management

✔ About License Management
✔ Flexx Licensing
✔ Per-Appliance Licensing
✔ Switch from Per-Appliance to Flexx Licensing
✔ Receiving License Alerts
Chapter 18: License Management

About License Management

Forescout version 8.1.0 supports two different licensing modes:

- Flexx Licensing
- Per-Appliance Licensing

Each Forescout deployment uses one of these modes. You may have multiple deployments that use different licensing modes. License requirements differ according to the licensing mode activated on your deployment.

The following table describes each mode and the products that need to be licensed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Licensing Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>What needs to be licensed?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Flexx Licensing          | ▪ Licenses are activated centrally on the Enterprise Manager or Standalone Appliance.  
                           ▪ License endpoint capacity is calculated per-deployment; you can distribute this capacity across Appliances as you see fit.  
                           ▪ eyeSight, eyeControl and eyeExtend products (Extended Modules) are acquired separately and with an associated endpoint count.  
                           **eyeExtend Products: Individual Products** are supported.  
                           **Integration Modules: Multiple Modules** are not supported. | ▪ Each licensed product per deployment.  
                           Licensed products enable specific capabilities in Forescout (eyeSight, eyeControl, eyeRecover, eyeExtend). |
| Per-Appliance Licensing  | ▪ Licenses are activated separately on the Enterprise Manager and on each Appliance in the deployment.  
                           ▪ License endpoint capacity is calculated per-Appliance; each Appliance license includes a specific number of endpoints that the Appliance can handle.  
                           ▪ Extended Modules are acquired separately and with an associated endpoint count.  
                           **eyeExtend Products: Individual Products** and **Integration Modules: Multiple Modules** are supported. | ▪ Each Appliance and Enterprise Manager in your deployment. See **Per-Appliance CounterACT Device License**.  
                           ▪ Each Extended Module. See **Per-Appliance Extended Module License**. |

Identifying Your Licensing Mode

**To identify your licensing mode:**

- From the Console, select Help > About ForeScout.
Chapter 18: License Management

Flexx Licensing
Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for information on working with Flexx Licensing Mode:
www.forescout.com/company/resources/flexx-licensing-how-to-guide/

Per-Appliance Licensing
If you are using per-Appliance licensing, you must install a license for each Appliance and Enterprise Manager in your deployment as well as for each Extended Module.

- Per-Appliance CounterACT Device License
- Per-Appliance Extended Module License

Per-Appliance CounterACT Device License
The request and installation procedures, identical for all CounterACT devices, are described in this section. The following subjects are covered:

- Your Demo License
- Virtual Licenses
- Generate a License Request
- View and Manage Your License Requests
- Download Your License from the Web
- Receive Your License via Email
- Saving Your Request to a File
Chapter 18: License Management

- **View License Alerts**

### Your Demo License

During system installation, a demo license is automatically installed. Each demo license is valid for 30 days. During this period, you should receive a permanent license from Forescout and place it in an accessible folder on your disk or network. Install the license from this location before the 30-day demo license expires or request to extend your demo license. If you did not receive your license, you can generate a request. See **Generate a License Request** for details about requesting an extension or a permanent license.

You are alerted that your demo license is about to expire in the following ways:

- Periodic email reminders.
- An **Alert** icon (⚠️) appears in the Status and License columns in the CounterACT Devices pane (accessible by selecting **Options** from the **Tools** menu), including the number of days remaining before license expiration.
- When you move your cursor over the Appliance entry in the CounterACT Devices pane.
- An icon and tooltip on the Console status bar. The triangle is green if you are waiting for license approval and is red if there is a license violation.

### Virtual Licenses

This section provides information about virtual licenses and about connecting to the Forescout License Server. Refer to the *CounterACT Installation Guide* for information about installing CounterACT virtual systems. See **Additional Forescout Documentation** for information on how to access this guide.

**Virtual Demo License (Virtual Machines)**

After the Appliance installation, you should have installed a demo license provided by your Forescout representative by email. The license can be installed during the initial Console setup using the Initial Setup Wizard and is valid for 30 days from the time it was generated by the Forescout representative. See **License (Forescout Virtual Systems Only, Per-Appliance Licensing Mode)**.

You must request and install a permanent license from the Console before the demo license expires. You can also request an extension to the demo license from this location.

If you skipped the virtual demo license installation at the Initial Setup Wizard, you can generate a request from the Console. See **Generate a License Request** for details.

**Virtual Permanent License**

Before your demo license expires, you must install a permanent license. This license has an installation begin and end date. You must install the permanent license within these dates, which are indicated when the license is issued.
Virtual License Authorization

The demo and permanent license are authorized daily by the Forescout License Server. 

Communication with Forescout’s License Server is performed by one CounterACT device, which has access to all other CounterACT devices. This is required so that one device can perform the authentication for all the devices. The first device that has connectivity is used for the communication. If there are no communication problems, the first device on the list usually communicates with the Forescout License server for all devices in the network. You should expect daily traffic from that device equivalent to the number of VM devices installed.

Licenses that cannot be authorized for a month will be revoked. When this happens, significant CounterACT functionality will stop. You will be contacted via email regarding the expiration date and violations. In addition, license alerts, violations, status and troubleshooting information can be accessed from the Appliance, Details pane. 

If policies are stopped as a result of a license being revoked (for example, due to expiry or license violations) and an authorized license is subsequently installed, the policies are not automatically restarted. You must restart policies from the Console. See Policy Manager Tools and Stop the Policy from the Appliance.

Connecting to the Forescout License Server

Connection to the Forescout License Server (at https://license2.forescout.com) is performed via a CounterACT device connected to the Internet. By default, CounterACT assumes that all devices are connected. 

At least one CounterACT device must have an Internet connection, but you may select more than one to ensure a continuous connection. Several devices may be required, for example, if one device is temporarily down or if you are not sure which device has an Internet connection. You can define a proxy for these connections. 

Licenses that cannot be authenticated for one month are revoked. You will receive a warning email once a day indicating that there is a communication error.

Specify a Device to Connect to the License Server

You select a specific device to be used to connect to the Forescout License Server.
To specify a device:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select License Server.

![License Server](image-url)

2. Select Specific CounterACT Devices.

3. Select Add. The Add a device dialog box opens.

![Add a device](image-url)

4. Select a device from the Available Devices drop-down menu.

5. (Organizations working without an Internet connections can use a proxy to ensure communication with the Forescout License server.) Select Use Proxy and define the proxy.

6. To test the connection to the selected CounterACT device, select Test.

7. Select OK.

8. Repeat steps 3 to 7 as required.
Generate a License Request

This section describes how to generate a request for:

- Extending your demo license
- A new license

To generate a license request for Appliances:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then, if necessary, select **CounterACT Devices**.
2. Select the Appliances for which you need a license.
3. Select **Generate Request** from the **License** drop-down menu.

A License Request Form opens, showing the IP addresses of the selected Appliances.
4. Complete the contact information.

5. To extend the license, select **Extend Demo Licenses By** and specify an extension period. If you clear the checkbox, a permanent license request is sent.

6. In the License Submit Method section, select one of the following options:
   - **Submit request via web**: It is advisable to use this automated method because it is the fastest of the three methods. See [Download Your License from the Web](#) for details.
     - If your organization uses a proxy to perform HTTP access from the Console, proxy settings are taken from those configured in the Windows machine that hosts the Console.
   - **Submit request by email**: The license is sent to the email address that you enter in the License request form. See [Receive Your License via Email](#) for details.
   - **Save request to file**: Select this option if you currently do not have Internet access and cannot send the request via the web or by email options. Send the request from, for example, a USB drive. See [Saving Your Request to a File](#) for details.

7. Select **Submit**.

8. Depending on the selected license submit method, an additional step may be required before the request is submitted:
   - If you are requesting a license for a virtual Appliance, provide the Appliance model type in the dialog box that opens and select **OK**.
   - If you chose to save a request to a file, provide the path in the dialog box that opens and select **Apply**.
View and Manage Your License Requests

After you request a permanent license or license extension, the request status is automatically displayed in the Console. You can view the status and cancel requests that are no longer relevant. To make changes to the request, you must cancel the specific entry by deleting it. Then re-enter a modified request.

Cancel a License Request

You can cancel a license request from the CounterACT Devices pane or from the License Request Manager dialog box.

To cancel license requests in the CounterACT Devices pane:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select CounterACT Devices.
2. Move your cursor over the Status column to view the request status is in the Status section of the CounterACT Devices pane.
3. To cancel your request, select Cancel Request.

To cancel license requests from the License Request Manager:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu.
2. In the CounterACT Devices pane, select License and then select Check Request Status from the drop-down menu.

The License Request Manager opens and displays basic request information.
3. To delete an unnecessary request, select the request and then select **Cancel Request**.

**View License Request Details**

You can view details about the status of your license request, contact information, submission request and time, and other license-related matters. Depending on whether you have requested a license for Appliances or an Enterprise Manager, the details shown vary. Details for Appliances include endpoint and bandwidth information, which is automatically determined by your Appliance model.

**To view license request details:**

- In the License Request Manager dialog box, select the request and select **View Details**.

For example, for an Enterprise Manager License Request:
For example, for CounterACT Appliance Console License Request:

### Download Your License from the Web

If you selected **Submit request via web** in the License Request Form, you can either download and install it automatically or download and save it, and then install it at a later date. When your license is ready to be downloaded, you are notified via an email sent to the address that you provided in the **License Request Form**. In addition, the following indicators appear in the CounterACT Console:

- An icon (_icon) is displayed on the status bar.
- _Ready_ is displayed in the Status column in the CounterACT Devices pane.
- _Signed and Ready to Install_ is displayed in the Status column when you select **Check Request Status** in the CounterACT Devices pane.

### To download and automatically install a license:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu, then select the Appliances for which you need a license.
2. Select **Check Request Status** from the **License** drop-down menu.
3. Select **Download/Install**. The License Installation process dialog box opens describing the installation process. When completed, the status of the process changes to **Done**.
Chapter 18: License Management

The license request is removed from the License Request Manager.

4. After a license is downloaded and installed, it is added to a list of installed licenses. To view this list, select Show Installed.

To download a license and install it later:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu, then select the Appliances for which you need a license.

2. Select Check Request Status from the License drop-down menu.

3. Select Download/Save from the License Request Manager.

4. Browse and select the location where you want to save the license.

5. When you are ready to install the license, select Options from the Tools menu.

6. Select Install from File from the License drop-down menu.
7. Select the saved license file and then select **OK**.

**Receive Your License via Email**

If you selected **Submit request via email** in the License Request Form, your license is sent to the email that you entered in that form.

**To save and install the license:**

1. Save the licenses that you receive by email to a file.
2. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu, then select the Appliances for which you need a license.
3. Select **Install from File** from the **License** drop-down menu.

4. Navigate to and select your license, and then select **OK**.

**Saving Your Request to a File**

If you selected **Submit request to file** in the License Request Form, you must transfer the saved request file to Forescout another way.
To save your request to a file and submit it at a later date:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu, then select the Appliances for which you need a license.

2. Select Generate Request from License the drop-down menu. The License Request Form opens.

3. Select the option Save request to a file and select Save.

   ![License Request Form]

4. Enter in the license file path or select the folder where want to save your request file, and select Apply.

5. Submit the saved request to a Forescout representative. For example, transfer the request file to a USB drive and send it from another computer.

View License Alerts

You can view license alerts in the Console.

To view License alerts:

1. Log in to the Enterprise Manager via the Console.

2. Select Options from the Tools menu and then, if necessary, select CounterACT Devices.

3. Select Alerts from the License drop-down menu.
The License Alerts dialog box displays the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appliance Name</th>
<th>The CounterACT device name.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>License Alerts</td>
<td>All licenses that are near their expiration dates are listed in red.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity Alert</td>
<td>Indicates violations in bandwidth utilization and endpoint capacity for the Appliance where the license is installed. These alerts are displayed for informational purposes only, and no action is taken by Forescout if a violation occurs. Your Appliance, however, may not work as efficiently when capacity violations occur. See Appliance Endpoint Performance Capacity for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Per-Appliance Extended Module License

Extended Module licenses provide access to eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules).

Each Extended Module license has an associated capacity, indicating the number of endpoints the license can handle.

How Module Licenses Work

In order for a module to be functional, a valid module license is required. You can only install one license per module.

Demo Licenses

You will receive a demo license after installing a module. This license is valid for 90 days.
The demo license period for integration modules that package groups of related licensed modules is 30 days. The expiration period is calculated from the first installation of any of the packaged modules. The expiration date applies to all packaged modules, regardless of how many of the modules are installed. If you only installed one of the two packaged modules, the expiration date applies to both modules. See Integration Modules: Multiple Modules.

Request a demo license extension or permanent license before the expiration date.

Permanent Licenses

Each module is licensed for a specified number of devices. A module needs to be licensed for the total number of devices that are managed by CounterACT or, if the module license is applied to an Enterprise Manager, the module needs to be licensed for the total number of devices that are managed by the Enterprise Manager.

EMM/MDM modules are licensed for a specified number of mobile devices. An EMM/MDM module needs to be licensed for the total number of mobile devices managed by an EMM/MDM system and which appear in the CounterACT inventory.

Each module license is intended for installation on an individual Appliance or Enterprise Manager. If a network has multiple Enterprise Managers, or multiple Standalone Appliances, then module licenses should be purchased separately for each CounterACT device. The size of each module license should cover the number of devices managed by each CounterACT device.

If you add Recovery and High Availability devices to your CounterACT system after purchasing Module licenses, you will need to request licenses to work with the updated system.

Module licenses should be installed on the Enterprise Manager. Once installed, they are automatically applied to all managed Appliances. If your environment does not have an Enterprise Manager, module licenses should be installed on the Standalone Appliance.

Not all users have access to the module features. See Access to Console Tools – Permissions for details.

Request a Demo Extension or Permanent License

You can request a demo license extension or permanent license before the demo period expires.

To request a demo extension or permanent license:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Licenses.
2. Select **Request License** and then select **Generate Request**.

3. The pane may include company information taken from previous CounterACT license installations or requests. Update the information if required or enter new information if none is displayed. License alerts and license files will be sent to the address listed here. You can enter more than one email address. Separate addresses with spaces, commas or semicolons.

4. Select **Next**.
5. Request either a permanent license, which does not have a time limitation, or to extend your demo license for a specific time period.

6. Select **Next**.

7. Indicate the number of endpoints you want the license to handle. Options may vary depending on the module you are working with.

8. Select **Next**.
9. Select one of the following options for submitting the license request:

- **Submit request via web**: Your request is sent to the Forescout license server. After your request is accepted, the license is sent to the email address you entered in the request wizard. You can also download the license from the Modules pane. If your organization uses a proxy to perform HTTP access from the Console, proxy settings are taken from those configured in the Windows machine that hosts the Console.

- **Submit request via email**: Your request is sent to the Forescout module license team. After your request is accepted, the license is sent to the email address you entered in the request wizard.

- **Submit request to file**: Select this option if you currently do not have Internet access and cannot send the request via the web or by email options. Submit the saved request to a Forescout representative, for example, transfer the request file to a USB drive and send it from another computer.

10. Select **Finish**.

See [Install Licenses](#) for details.

### Viewing and Cancelling Module License Requests

After sending your license request, the request details and status are automatically displayed in the Modules pane. You can view the status and cancel requests that are no longer relevant. To make changes to the request, you must cancel the specific entry by deleting it and then re-enter a modified request.

**To view and cancel requests:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Licenses**.
2. Select **Request License** and then select **Request Details**.
3. To cancel a request, select a module and then select **Cancel Request**.

**Install Licenses**

Once approved, your license is sent to the email addresses entered in the License Request wizard. If you sent your request via the web, the license can also be accessed from Modules pane. In addition, the following indicators appear in the CounterACT Console:

- An icon (搡) is displayed on the status bar.
- *Ready* is displayed in the Status column in the Modules pane
- *Signed and Ready to Install* is displayed in the Status column when you select *Check Request Status* in the Modules pane.

**To install a license you received by email:**

1. Save the license.
2. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Licenses**.
3. Select **Install License** and then select **Install from File**.
4. Navigate to and select the saved file and select **OK**.

**To download and install a license:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Licenses**.
2. Select the module for which you need a license.
3. From the **Install License** drop-down menu, select one of the following options:
   - **Install from Server**: If the request was submitted via HTTP, to download and install the license from the server.
– **Download from Server:** If the request was submitted via HTTP, to
download the license file from the server and install it from a file later.
– **Install from File:** If you have a license file to install.

Or:

a. Select **Request Details** from the **Request License** drop-down menu.
The Module license requests dialog box opens.
b. Select a license request that appears as ready to install, corresponding to
the license you want to install.
c. Select either **Download from Server**, **Install from Server** or **Install
from File**.

A pop-up dialog indicates that the license is downloading.

After the license is downloaded and installed, it is added to a list of installed
licenses.

4. To view the installed licenses list:

a. Select **Request Details** from the **Request License** drop-down menu.
b. In the Module license requests dialog box, select **Show Installed**.
c. Select a license request to view its details in the **Details** pane.

**Viewing Module Information**

License information appears in the Modules pane after the plugin is installed.

This information includes for example:

- License Request Status
- License Capacity Status
- Extensive information about endpoints being managed via the module
  plugins.

This information is automatically updated when the license request status and license
status changes.

In addition the module name and status appear in the Modules pane.
Previously Installed Plugins

You will be alerted to licensing requirements for plugins already installed if you install a plugin update after the CounterACT module is released.

Tracking Extended Module License Activity

Information about Extended Module license activity is automatically shown in the CounterACT Audit Trails log and Events Viewer.

Audit Trails Log

The Audit Trails log indicates when a module license was installed.

To access the Audit Trails log:
1. In the Console Log menu, select Audit Trails.
2. Enter a time period and select OK. The Audit Trails log opens.

Event Viewer

The Event Viewer indicates:
- When a module license was installed
- Periodic license alerts
- When a module license expires
- When a module license is invalid
- When the number of devices handled by the license is exceeded

To access the Event Viewer:
- Select Event Viewer from the Log menu. The Event Viewer opens.

Viewing Endpoint Information

You can view extensive information about the endpoints that were detected by the modules. Quickly find information that is important to you by using the search filter and plugin drop-down filter.

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Licenses.
2. Select a module.
3. Select Details.

Switch from Per-Appliance to Flexx Licensing

If you are running Forescout version 8.1 in Per-Appliance Licensing, you can switch to work with Flexx licensing. Refer to the Forescout Flexx Licensing How-to Guide for information on working with Flexx Licensing.

If you are running CounterACT version 7.0.0 and would like to simultaneously upgrade to version 8.1 and switch to work with Flexx licensing, refer to the procedure described in the Forescout Installation Guide.
Contact your Forescout representative for more information on licensing modes.

**Forescout eyeExtend products (ForeScout CounterACT Extended Modules) in Flexx Licensing**

If you are using Forescout Extended Modules, be aware that Integration Modules that package together *groups of related licensed modules* are not supported when using Flexx licensing. Only eyeExtend products that package *individual licensed modules* are supported. An exception to this is the Open Integration Module, which is an eyeExtend product even though it packages more than one plugin.

Before switching modes, uninstall any Integration Modules and reinstall them as Extended Modules. See [eyeExtend Products (Extended Modules)](product-packaging) and [Product Packaging](product-packaging) for details.

**To switch to Flexx licensing:**

1. Verify that you have:
   - Valid credentials to access the [Forescout Customer Portal](customer-portal). Contact your Forescout sales representative for details.
   - A valid license entitlement.

2. Log in to the Enterprise Manager via the Console.

3. Navigate to **Options > Licenses** and select **Switch to Flexx Licensing**.

4. In the Switch to Flexx Licensing dialog box, enter the Deployment ID, and then select **Download License Request**.
The Deployment ID is listed in the Proof of Entitlement email that you received from Forescout notifying you that your purchases are available in the Customer Portal.

5. Select a file name and location to save the request file, and select **Save**.

6. In the Licenses tab of the Forescout Customer Portal, upload the license request file that you downloaded and then download the license file.

7. In the Console, select **Options > Licenses** and then **Switch to Flexx Licensing** to return to the Switch to Flexx Licensing dialog box.

8. In the **Upload License** field, select **Choose file** to find the new license file and then select **Switch to Flexx Licensing**.

Continuing with the process will restart the Console, Enterprise Manager, and all connected Appliances in the deployment. The License Migration dialog box opens.

If your deployment includes a Recovery Enterprise Manager or High Availability device, verify that it is connected to the Enterprise Manager before you activate the license file on your deployment.

9. Select **Yes**.

A dialog box opens indicating that the license was activated successfully.

If the Failover Clustering Module is installed in your deployment, uninstall it from the Console (on the Enterprise Manager) on the Options > Modules pane. When using Flexx licensing, Failover Clustering functionality is supported by the Forescout eyeRecover license (Forescout CounterACT Resiliency license).

**Receiving License Alerts**

Forescout 8.1 license alerts provide information about the status of your installed licenses, for example, if the license is about to expire or if you have added endpoints and exceed your license capacity.

You receive alerts if there are issues regarding your licenses. Alerts are displayed through:

- Periodic email reminders

  You can sign these emails using a digital certificate, as specified by the Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) standard. See Signing Emails with an S/MIME Certificate for details.

- Pop-up reminders at the Console

- An icon and tooltip on the Console status bar. The triangle is green if you are waiting for license approval and is red if there is a license violation.
Chapter 19: Additional Options

- Working with the Internal Network
- Managing Email Notification Addresses
- Signing Emails with an S/MIME Certificate
- Define Endpoint Discovery Rules
- Set the Enforcement Mode
- Backing Up System and Component Settings
- Recovering an Enterprise Manager
- Language Support
- Pre-Registration and Guest Registration Management
- The Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program
Working with the Internal Network

The Internal Network is a set of network segments or IP ranges that defines your network in the Forescout platform. When Forescout eyeSight detects endpoints with IP addresses within the Internal Network, they are assumed to be in your network.

The Internal Network defines the extent of Forescout platform management activity. For example, when a Forescout policy scope is defined as "All IPs," the policy is applied to all IP addresses in the Internal Network. Network segments that are part of your physical network, but are not included in the Internal Network definition, are not managed by Forescout products. In addition, endpoints in the Internal Network must be visible to Forescout Appliances.

During installation, the Internal Network is defined when you run the Initial Setup Wizard. See Internal Network for details.

Administrators with appropriate permissions can use the Segment Manager tool to edit the segment definitions that define the Internal Network. See Working with Forescout Segments and Chapter 15: Managing Users, Access to Console Tools – Permissions. For example, if your network expands, you typically:

- Use Segment Manager to define segments with your network's new IP addresses.
- Use the procedure described in this section to add these segments to the Internal Network.

Several Forescout tools use the segments that define the Internal Network. For example, you use these segments to assign sectors of your network to Appliances, to define the scope of a policy, and to define the active response range for Threat Protection features.

In addition to defining the IP addresses in the Internal Network, you can specify how Forescout 8.1 handles endpoints without IP addresses. For more information, see Work with Hosts without IPv4 Addresses.

Define the Internal Network

To define the Internal Network:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Internal Network. The Internal Network Pane opens.
2. To add or remove IP addresses to the Internal Network, select Segments.
3. Select and clear checkboxes to specify the segments that make up the Internal Network, and select **OK**. Only the selected segments are included in the Internal Network. The table reflects your choices.

4. To remove a segment from the Internal Network, select it in the table and then select **Remove**.

5. Select **Apply**.

**Work with Hosts without IPv4 Addresses**

Optional settings let Forescout 8.1 detect and manage endpoints based on their MAC or IPv6 address when an IPv4 address is not available to Forescout 8.1. This option is useful, for example:

- When a rogue device without an IP address is discovered by the network switch.
- When an IP address is discovered after the MAC address.
- If you want to create a white list of MAC addresses allowed to access your network. Create the white lists and then add them to policies. See [Defining and Managing Lists](#) for details.
- To detect IPv6-only endpoints in an IPv6 enabled environment.

Devices with no known IP addresses are presented in the Console with Layer 2 information only, i.e., information related to the switch at which the endpoint is connected. When the IP address is discovered, and is part of the Internal Network, comprehensive endpoint information is displayed, along with the discovered IP address. If an IP address is later discovered, but that address is not in the Internal Network, the endpoint is still displayed in the Console with Layer 2 information.

> When you enable these options, it is very important that the Internal Network definition includes all network segments that Forescout 8.1 should be monitoring.
Chapter 19: Additional Options

Not all host properties and actions are supported when only the MAC address is known for an endpoint. The following properties and actions can be performed on endpoints detected without an IP address:

- NIC vendor property
- All Switch properties

**Manage Actions**
- Add to Group
- Add Value to List
- Recheck Host
- Delete Host
- Delete Properties

**Audit Actions**
- Send Message to Syslog

**Notify Actions**
- Send Email

**Restrict Actions**
- Switch Block
- Assign to VLAN
- 802.1X Plugin actions
- Wireless Plugin actions

**To enable management of endpoints without an IPv4 address:**
1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Internal Network**. The Internal Network pane opens.
2. Select **Handle new hosts with MAC address and no IPv4 address** at the bottom of the Internal Network pane.

**Work with Hosts Whose IPv4 Address Is Used by Another Host**

Forescout 8.1 can retain host information on hosts that had an IPv4 address within the Internal Network but currently do not have one because another host obtained it. For example, if you are working with guest hosts that frequently log in and out of the network. Selecting this option retains previous authentication events on these hosts, and (depending on the relevant policy) does not require them to authenticate when they reconnect.

**To retain disconnected host information:**
1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Internal Network**. The Internal Network pane opens.
2. Select **Retain disconnected host information for hosts whose IP address is used by another host**.

Use the **Last Known IPv4 address** property to create conditions based on the previous IPv4 address.

### Managing Email Notification Addresses

The email addresses defined during initial setup are used to:

- Send notices when specific endpoint events, email worm events and service attacks occur. Not applicable to policy detections.
- Send notices expiration warning notice regarding your licenses.
- Send system operation alerts.

You can update the addresses to which Forescout 8.1 sends email alerts. Options are available to add, modify, or delete addresses.

Options are available to configure the mail options differently for different Appliances in your enterprise and to view different configurations per Appliance. See [Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances](#).

An option is also available to define the maximum number of emails delivered to these addresses daily, and to define how many events are listed in each email. See [Operator Notification](#) for information about Threat Protection mail, and [Policy Preferences](#).

**To update the addresses:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **General > Mail**.

2. Update the address in the **Operator email** field. If you are using more than one address, enter a space in between each address.

3. Enter mail relay, DNS domain, and DNS server values.

4. Select **Apply**.

5. Select **Test Email** to send a test email to this address.
Signing Emails with an S/MIME Certificate

You can sign emails sent by Forescout 8.1 using a digital certificate, as specified by the Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) standard.

- This does not include mails sent by the Forescout License Server (only relevant when operating in Per-Appliance Licensing), for example, mails sent regarding:
  - Forescout eyeExtend (ForeScout CounterACT Extended Module) license request and approval status.
  - CounterACT device license request and approval status.

- Generate CSRs and Import Signed Certificates
- Work with Digitally Signed Emails

Generate CSRs and Import Signed Certificates

Use the Certificates pane to generate Certificate Signing Requests (CSRs) that are submitted to a Certificate Authority (CA). After the CA returns a signed certificate, use the Certificates pane to import the certificate into Forescout 8.1.

After a signed S/MIME certificate is imported into Enterprise Manager, you can enable digital signing of email messages. For detailed information about defining and provisioning certificates, see Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface.

When you generate a CSR:

- In the Used for and Key Usage fields of the CSR wizard, specify that the certificate will be used for email signing.
- In the Email Address field, specify the email address of the Enterprise Manager that applies the digital signature to emails. When you install the signed certificate on the Enterprise Manager, emails are sent with this certificate and the email address configured in the certificate appears in the From field of the emails. The address should be meaningful, so that users can recognize that it comes from the Enterprise Manager.

Work with Digitally Signed Emails

When digital signatures are enabled, all emails sent by Forescout 8.1 are signed using the S/MIME certificate. The body of the email is sent as clear text in digitally signed emails. It is not encrypted.

To work with digitally signed emails:

1. In the Console, select Options.
2. In the Options tree, select General > Digital Signature.
3. Verify the S/MIME certificate: the tab shows data fields for the current signed certificate.

4. Select **Digitally sign all emails** to enable this feature.

5. Select **Apply**.

6. To apply the settings of Step 4 to guest registration emails, restart the User Directory Plugin.

   The Windows Live Mail email client does not correctly display signed guest registration emails.

When this feature is enabled, the Enterprise Manager applies the digital signature to emails. Because of this, emails normally sent directly by the Appliance are routed through the Enterprise Manager.

**Define Endpoint Discovery Rules**

By default, Forescout 8.1 automatically discovers information about endpoints, such as MAC addresses and NetBIOS names. This is referred to as *endpoint property information*.

Properties that are automatically discovered appear in the Home view, Detections pane, the Assets Portal and Reports.

By default, the following properties are discovered:

- Domain User names
- NetBIOS host names
Chapter 19: Additional Options

- MAC Addresses
- DNS names
- Device Interfaces
- Basic User Directory Plugin properties (this plugin is bundled with Forescout 8.1)
- Switch Plugin properties (this plugin is bundled with Forescout 8.1)

Additional properties may also be discovered by default, depending on the plugins installed. For example, if you installed the VPN Plugin, related VPN properties are discovered.

You can use the Host Discovery feature to control properties automatically learned. You may need to do this to:
  - Expand the information discovered at your network
  - Limit the information discovered at your network
  - Discover properties at specific network segments
  - Discover properties at specific times or under specific conditions

**Expanding the Information Discovered by Default**

You can update the default to include additional information, such as, properties that are only available via the policy (Nmap details) or properties that are discovered via plugins. See Chapter 8: Base Modules, Content Modules, and eyeExtend Products and Chapter 4: Policy Management for details.

**Limiting the Information Discovered by Default**

Under certain circumstances, you may want to prevent discovery tasks on endpoints, where the information is not needed. You can use the host discovery wizard to perform this task as well.

 Certain properties are learned regardless of the limitations defined in the Host Discovery tool, including:
  - Properties learned passively by Forescout 8.1, such as admission events, MAC addresses, NetBIOS domain and host names, or open ports.
  - Properties listed in policies.
  - Properties displayed in Detections pane columns.

> Limiting discovery does not impact the policy discovery mechanisms. If you choose not to discover certain properties via the Network Host Discovery Policy, they can still be discovered via the policy.

> **(Flexx Licensing only)** If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeSight (ForeScout CounterACT See) license, you cannot add or edit endpoint discovery rules. If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeExtend license, you cannot add properties supported by that license to discovery rules.

**To define discovery rules:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Discovery**.
By default, Forescout 8.1 collects information for properties displayed in the Console table columns. You can disable this collection by clearing the **Resolve properties displayed in the Console Detections pane** checkbox.

By default, Forescout 8.1 prompts users working in the Asset Inventory with add properties to the Inventory Discovery rule. You can disable this prompt by clearing the **Prompt user to add properties to the Inventory Discovery rule** checkbox.

2. Select **Add**. The Discovery Wizard opens.

3. Enter a rule name and description, and then select **Next**.
4. Select the properties to be discovered, and select **Next**.

5. Define the IP addresses to which to apply the rule.
   - Select **Segments** to add segments of the Forescout Internal Network to the scope of the rule.
   - To remove a segment, select it in the table and select **Remove**.

6. Select **Next**.
Chapter 19: Additional Options

Use the activation options to define when inspection is activated for this policy. For example, the Admission Event trigger is activated when a user joins the network. You can configure more than one trigger.

7. Select the activation events required to initiate endpoint evaluation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time Based Recheck</th>
<th>The policy is run at a certain date and time. Two options are available:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Every</strong>: Select this option to run a policy at specific intervals. Short intervals are recommended, for example, if you want to check that a web or email service is consistently running, or if you want to verify the integrity of any other mission critical service in your network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Scheduled</strong>: Define a schedule for running the policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Admission Based Recheck</th>
<th>Three options are available:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>None</strong>: Do not inspect on the basis of an admission event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Recheck on any admission</strong>: When any of the following admission events occur:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- An endpoint performed a DHCP request and then sends ARP request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- An endpoint IP address was changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- A new endpoint was detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- An endpoint was connected to a switch port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Customized</strong>: Customize admission based inspection. Select <strong>Define</strong> to customize the admission values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A delay time exists between the detection of Network Admission triggers and the onset of the policy evaluation. When an endpoint boots, the IP address is assigned quickly, before most of its services have loaded. Waiting 30 seconds (default delay time) increases the chances that the policy evaluation starts when more details could be learned about the endpoint (after all services have loaded). You can update the delay default time.

8. Select **Finish**.
Set the Enforcement Mode

Set up your system to work with either full enforcement or partial enforcement. The Full Enforcement mode enables complete functionality. The Partial Enforcement mode lets you monitor network traffic but limits your ability to respond to it. Specifically, the Threat Protection, HTTP Actions, and Virtual Firewall options are disabled. This mode is recommended for evaluation purposes only.

The Partial Enforcement Mode icon is displayed on the status bar if your system is set to this mode.

The icon on the status bar may indicate that Forescout 8.1 is running in Forced Partial Enforcement mode. This indicates there might be connectivity problems between Forescout 8.1 and the network.

To set the Enforcement mode:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select General > Enforcement Mode.

2. Select one of the enforcement modes:
   - To work with full enforcement, select Full Enforcement. If your network is configured with NAT devices and you want to detect them, select NAT Detection to detect NAT devices.
   - To work with partial enforcement, select Partial Enforcement.

3. Select Apply.
Backing Up System and Component Settings

Backup and restore procedures let you save CounterACT device system or component settings and scheduled or saved reports. You can later restore them to the CounterACT device. This feature should be used in case of CounterACT device hard drive failure or when data is lost for any other reason.

You can perform the following backup-related tasks:

- Schedule Automatic Backups of Forescout 8.1 Settings to External Servers
- Perform a One-Time System Backup
- Back Up and Restore the rSite for Your Appliances

Endpoint events and your site structure (real and virtual endpoints) are not saved. The impact of losing this information is minimal, as the tool should be used in cases of hard drive failures and not to store endpoint and site information.

- You must restore the same version of Forescout as you backed up.
- A remote recovery feature is also available. This feature lets you set up a comprehensive remote recovery system for Enterprise Managers that have failed as a result of a crisis, such as an earthquake or fire. See Recovering an Enterprise Manager.

Schedule Automatic Backups of Forescout 8.1 Settings to External Servers

You can schedule automatic backups of Forescout 8.1 system or component settings to a remote server, via FTP, SFTP, or SCP. Using scheduled backups provides extra safety and protection against hard drive failures and data loss.

If you are logged in to the Console via an Enterprise Manager, the Enterprise Manager and all registered Appliances are backed up to individual files.

You must first configure a backup server and an encryption password before performing a system or a component backup.

- Configure a Backup Server
- Configure an Encryption Password
- Perform a System Backup
- Perform a Component Backup

Configure a Backup Server

You must configure a backup server. The backup server is used for both Perform a System Backup and Perform a Component Backup.

To configure a backup server:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Advanced > Backup.
2. Select a protocol to use to transfer the backup file.

3. Enter transfer details, including the destination server, port, directory to receive the file, and the user name.

4. In the Client Authentication Method section, select one of the following authentication methods:
   - **Password**. Standard password authentication.
   - **Public Key** (SFTP and SCP only). The public key is used to establish the connection between the CounterACT device and the backup server in order to transfer the backup file to the server. A key-pair consisting of a public and private key is automatically generated during Forescout 8.1 installation. The private key is protected by a passphrase. You can also generate a new key-pair by selecting Generate new key-pair.

   Select **View public key** to view the key in OpenSSH (one-line) or RFC 4716 (SSH2) format. Key-pair information is shared with Recovery Enterprise Managers and High Availability CounterACT devices. You can view the status of the creation and transfer of each backup file in the Event Viewer. Only CounterACT users with update permissions for Backup can generate key-pairs.

5. (SFTP and SCP only) In the Authenticate Destination Server section, perform the following to validate the server used during the transfer of the backup file:
a. Select **Enable**.

b. Select **Server public key**. You must enter a destination server before selecting a key.

c. In the Server Public Key dialog box, select **Retrieve Key** to retrieve the public key of the defined server. If you already have the key information, you can type/copy it into the dialog box.

d. Select **OK**.

6. (Optional) Select **Test File Transfer** to verify connectivity.

7. Select **Apply**.

**Configure an Encryption Password**

Both system and component backup files, backed up either manually or via a schedule, are encrypted using AES-256 to protect sensitive file data. To encrypt backup files, you must configure an encryption password. This password is mandatory, and must be defined before backup configuration.

The encryption password is also used to encrypt files manually backed up via the Options > CounterACT Devices pane. When backing up files using this method, you are requested to define a password if you have not previously done so.

**To configure the password:**

1. Select **Options > Advanced > Backup** and select the **Encrypted Password** tab.

2. Define a password. The password must be at least six characters long, and must contain at least one digit and one letter.

   **Remember and/or record this password as you will need to use it to restore the backup file.**

**Perform a System Backup**

You can perform scheduled backups of the Forescout 8.1 system to FTP, SFTP and SCP sites. Using scheduled backups provides extra safety and protection against hard drive failures and data loss. The maximum number of Appliances that can be concurrently backed up is 1-100. The restore procedure requires you to reinstall Forescout 8.1.
Chapter 19: Additional Options

The system backup feature saves all CounterACT device and Console settings. This data includes the following:

- Configuration
- License
- Operating System configuration
- Plugins/Modules

These categories include, for example:

- Forescout 8.1 IP address
- License information
- Channel
- Email
- Internal network parameters
- Basic and advanced NAC Policy definitions
- Legitimate traffic definitions
- Report schedules

**To perform a system backup:**

1. Select **Options** from the Tools menu and then select **Advanced > Backup**.

To perform a scheduled system backup, you must first configure a backup server and an encryption password. See **Configure a Backup Server** and **Configure an Encryption Password**.

2. To enable scheduled backups, select the System Backup tab and select **Enable System Backup**.
3. If you want to limit the number of backup files to store, select **Limit the number of backup files to store** and set the maximum number.

   The number of backup files stored is equal to the number you configure here plus an additional backup file. This ensures that the requested number of backup files is stored in case of a transfer failure.

   If you apply this option and run the backup, and then decrease the configured number of backup files to store, you will need to manually delete any superfluous backup files.

4. Configure the **Maximum number of concurrent backups**. The maximum number of Appliances that can be concurrently backed up is 100.

5. Select the event time and recurrence pattern in the Backup Schedule section.

6. Select **Apply**.

7. (Optional) Select **Backup Now** to perform a one-time backup to the defined server.

   The backup files are saved to the server defined in the Backup Server tab, in the following format:

   EnterpriseManager_<EM_IP_Address>_<backup_index>.fsb
   <Appliance_IP_Address>_<backup_index>.fsb

**Perform a Component Backup**

You can perform scheduled backups of Forescout 8.1 components to FTP, SFTP and SCP sites. Using scheduled backups provides extra safety and protection against hard drive failures and data loss. The Component Backup feature does not require you to reinstall Forescout 8.1.

Component Backup is supported for the following components:

- **Switch Plugin, Version 8.7.0 and above.** When importing a backed-up Switch Plugin configuration (export_switch.xml), only those switch configurations that are both present in the export_switch.xml file and not listed in the Switch pane of the Console (Options > Switch) are imported. This is based on a comparison of switch IP addresses. Ensure the import of the complete Switch Plugin configuration backup by removing all configuration entries from the Switch pane, before performing the import.

- The Component Backup does not include the ACL Inventory in its backup of the Switch Plugin configuration.

- **Wireless Plugin, Version 1.4.0 and above.**

- **Policies.** Using the policy backup feature saves all policy-related data, including segment, condition and action information for each policy’s rules and sub-rules. Policies are restored using the Policy import process. See [Export and Import Policies](#) for details. You cannot import a policy that has the same name as an existing policy. You must change the name of one of the policies for the import to succeed. You will be asked to enter the Encryption Password upon import.

**To perform a component backup:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Advanced > Backup**.
2. To perform a scheduled system backup, you must first configure a backup server and an encryption password. See Configure a Backup Server and Configure an Encryption Password.

3. To enable scheduled backups, select the Component Backup tab and then select Enable Component Backup.

4. If you want to limit the number of backup files to store, select Limit the number of backup files to store and select a number.

   The number of backup files that will be stored is equal to the number you configure plus an additional backup file. This ensures that the requested number of backup files is stored in case of a transfer failure.

   If you apply this option and run the backup, and then decrease the configured number of backup files to store, you will need to manually delete any superfluous backup files.

5. Select the event time and recurrence pattern in the Backup Schedule section.

6. Select Apply.

7. (Optional) Select Backup Now to perform a one-time backup to the defined server.

   The backup files are saved to the server defined in the Backup Server tab, in the following format:

   Component_backup.EnterpriseManager_<EM_IP_Address>_backup_index.zip

**Perform a One-Time System Backup**

This section describes how to perform a one-time backup of Forescout 8.1 system settings. Before you perform a backup, you must configure an encryption password, which will encrypt the settings using AES-256 to protect sensitive file data. See Configure an Encryption Password for details.
To back up your system settings:

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2. Select a component from the CounterACT Devices pane.
3. Select **Backup**. By default, the device name, Forescout version number, date, and time make up the name of the backup file.

   The backup file name can only contain alphanumeric characters. Special characters are not allowed (for example, $ % *).

---

Back Up and Restore the rSite for Your Appliances

You may want to back up and restore your rSite – machines and open services currently learned by the Appliance. Because the Appliance continuously learns and maintains the rSite, this is recommended. You can use it, for example, to replace an Appliance.

This tool may only be used for a single version. You cannot back up the rSite from one version and restore to another.

To back up and restore the rSite:

1. Log in to the CLI of the CounterACT device that contains the rSite that you want to back up.
2. Run the following command:
   ```
   fstool set_property fs.backup.def config license os plugin site
   ```
   There is no need to restart the Appliance.
3. Perform backup and restore of the CounterACT device.
4. To restore original backup behavior, run the following command:
   ```
   fstool set_property fs.backup.def config license os plugin
   ```
   Rsite information is no longer included in backups.
Recovering an Enterprise Manager

A Forescout remote recovery tool provides a comprehensive recovery system for an Enterprise Manager that is no longer functioning, for example, if it failed as a result of an earthquake or fire. This feature provides complete and continued management of Appliances from a remote Recovery Enterprise Manager after the crisis.

Refer to the Forescout Resiliency Solutions User Guide for more information about this feature and other Forescout resiliency solutions. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access this guide.

Language Support

Forescout 8.1 offers the following tools for displaying and working with local languages:

- Display Endpoint Information in a Local Language
- Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages
- Display Local Languages in Reports, Actions, and Other Features
- Localize Guest Management Portal

Display Endpoint Information in a Local Language

An extensive range of endpoint information is automatically displayed in the active code page language set at the endpoint, such as user and host names, registry key information, file paths, and processes. This information is displayed in the required languages in the Console Detections pane, Details pane, Assets Portal, and in reports.
Display NetBIOS Names and NetBIOS Domains

You must perform the following configuration to display Microsoft Windows NetBIOS Names and NetBIOS Domains in a foreign language. Forescout 8.1 resolves in the selected language and in English, if both languages are detected.

To display:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Advanced > Language Localization > NetBIOS Name Information.

2. Select a language or language set.

3. Select Apply.

If Windows host names or Windows domain names appear as “######” (boxes) in the Console, select a language to match the local language.

Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages

Some policy actions send web page messages and emails to endpoints. You can edit these messages or localize them so that they appear in any language your operating system supports. Actions that can be localized include:

- HTTP Notification
- Windows Self Remediation
- HTTP Login
- Start SecureConnector
- Default Email Messages

To localize text:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Advanced > Language Localization > Endpoint Messages.

The table lists text strings that Forescout 8.1 displays in various interactions between Forescout 8.1 and a detected endpoint.
2. In the search field of the Endpoint Messages pane, enter any portion of the text that you want to localize.

   The table displays all entries that include the portion of text, which you provided in the search field.

3. Select a table entry and then select Edit, or double-click a table entry.

   The Edit Locale Text dialog box displays the text of the selected entry.

4. Modify the text as needed.

5. Select OK.

   Select a table entry and then select Default to return to the default text.

6. Select Apply. Your changes are saved in the Forescout 8.1 configuration.

Sample Web Pages

This section displays sample message pages that can be localized.
**HTTP Notification**

Welcome To The Network

User Notification

Please restart your computer within the next 12 hours.
- IT Dept.

I confirm that I have read this message

**Windows Self Remediation**

Welcome To The Network

Vulnerability Alert

Dear User,

Your computer was found to be missing important security updates. Please follow the URLs below to update your computer. When finished, select 'Recheck my computer' to ensure that all vulnerabilities have been removed.

URLs:
- https://www.acme.com/poc1
- https://www.acme.com/poc2

Recheck my computer
HTTP Login

Start SecureConnector

ForeScout SecureConnector Distribution Tool

Use this page to download SecureConnector installers. Use these installers to distribute SecureConnectors to endpoints without direct end user interaction with CounterACT.

Create SecureConnectors for:
- Windows
- macOS / OS X
- Linux
- macOS / OS X
- Linux
- Show the SecureConnector icon on the endpoint systems
- Install Permanently as Service

When SecureConnector runs on endpoints, it creates an encrypted and authenticated tunnel from the endpoint to this Appliance. If the Appliance is not assigned to manage this host, the host will automatically reject the tunnel to the managing Appliance. The tunnel creation is used to remotely inspect the host using the SecureConnector agent.

SecureConnector connects to the Appliance using a TCP connection on:
- Port 10000 for Windows SecureConnector
- Port 10000 for macOS / OS X SecureConnector
- Port 10000 for Linux SecureConnector

Note: the Windows SecureConnector installation file name should not be changed.

ForeScout Agent Download

Select Version
- VWA2
- V4G4

Your SecureConnector configuration has been saved and is ready for download. Once downloaded, SecureConnector can be distributed across any network segment using standard distribution methods. For example, you can send the following link via email:
https://[B.39.2.3]:443/SC-CHNGSC/1/GR30E50/01/FD09D8+H8ae+x38B+7jYj99S/OnH1+u40KmK+EAAAEB.exe

Download
Chapter 19: Additional Options

Default Email Messages

This action sends an email message to the user that is logged in to the detected host. The system obtains the email address from the LDAP directory database.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>CountACT event at (ip)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Message to email recipient | Hello, 
CountACT has detected a NAC event on your computer. |

Tags: Add Tags

Display Local Languages in Reports, Actions, and Other Features

Forescout 8.1 supports foreign text entered in reports, action, conditions and other features. No configuration is required to detect or display foreign language text.
Localize Guest Management Portal Texts


For details about customizing texts that Forescout 8.1 processing generates in a user's endpoint, see Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages.

Pre-Registration and Guest Registration Management

Many organizations want to provide limited network and Internet access to company visitors, such as contractors, visiting professionals, and other network guests. You can use the HTTP Login action to detect, register and control network guests. Approved guest information is displayed in the Guest Management Portal and in the Guest Registration Pane. In addition, you can manually add guests there and later verify that they are authenticated using the action.

Guest requests for access to your corporate network are generated when the HTTP Login action is manually applied to a detected endpoint or applied during a Forescout 8.1 Corporate/Guest Control policy evaluation of detected endpoints.
Guest Management Portal

The Guest Management Portal is a Web-based portal that enables corporate personnel to view and manage network guests who have requested access to the organization’s network. When access is approved, guests can browse the network and possibly use other network resources.

Individuals who manage network guests from this portal are referred to as sponsors. Sponsors can use the Guest Management Portal for various tasks, including:

- Viewing all their sponsored guests.
- Importing lists of guests to be granted network access, and adding a single guest. These guests are automatically approved for network access.
- Approving and declining guests who registered for network access using the Guest Registration form.
- Revoking network access to guests who were approved.
- Assigning and updating network access approval periods.
- Assigning tags to guests. Tags can be used in Forescout policies.

Sponsors’ corporate email addresses must be included in the Sponsors table. If not, they cannot access the Guest Management Portal. See Define Sponsors.

The screens in Guest Management Portal in your organization may differ from the examples shown in this document.

For detailed information about working with the Guest Management Portal, refer to the following documents.

- Guest Management for Forescout Operators How-to Guide
- Guest Management Portal for Sponsors How-to Guide
See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access these guides.

You can localize the strings in the Guest Management Portal. See Localize Guest Management Portal.

You can customize the appearance of the Guest Management Portal with the look-and-feel and branding requirements of your organization. For details, see Appendix 7: Customizing User Interfaces.

**Guest Registration Pane**

Use the Guest Registration pane to:

- Add approved guests, edit and remove them. Generate registration codes and administer guest tags. See Registered Guests.

  Individuals defined as Sponsors can add and import pre-approved guests directly to the Guest Management Portal. Refer to the Guest Management Portal for Sponsors How-to Guide. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access the guide.

- Define a password policy to be enforced when passwords are system-generated or self-selected by guests for login to the corporate network. See Define Password Policy.

- Define how certain guest fields are validated. See Define User Policy.

- Define the corporate sponsors who can use the Guest Management Portal for managing guests. See Define Sponsors.

- Define the terms and conditions for registered guests and for sponsors using the Guest Management Portal. See Define Terms and Conditions.

- Define the manner in which Forescout 8.1 notifies guests about the state of their guest registration requests. See Define Guest Notifications.

- Define the manner in which Forescout 8.1 notifies corporate sponsors about the state of guest registration requests that are assigned to be administered by the sponsor. See Define Sponsor Notifications.

When you are finished configuring the Guest Registration pane, select **Apply** to save your changes in the Forescout 8.1 configuration.

The Forescout Console user who works with Guest Registration functionality must have the Plugin Management update permission. See Access to Console Tools – Permissions for details.
To open the Guest Registration pane:

- Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Guest Registration. The Guest Registration pane opens.

For more information about working with the Guest Registration pane, refer to the Guest Management for Forescout Operators How-to Guide. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access this guide.

Registered Guests

Guests can be managed from both the Guest Registration pane option in the Console and from the Guest Management Portal.

- Operators use the Registered Guests tab in the Guest Registration option of the Console to view and manage all guests.
- Sponsors use the Guest Management Portal to view and manage only guests assigned to them.
- Admin Sponsors use the Guest Management Portal to view and manage all guests that have registered for network access, and to override the decisions of other sponsors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Sponsors</th>
<th>Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View guests.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add pre-approved guests, including the following information:</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full name</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email (Required)</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone number</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Task

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Add the following guest information:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▪ Date range of network access approval (Required)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Tags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Message to be sent to the guest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Company name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Comment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Add the following guest information:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▪ Password for network access.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Create Tags.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approve network access for guests who submitted a Guest Registration form.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decline network access for guests who submitted a Guest Registration form.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revoke guests who have network access.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remove guests from the Console and the Guest Management Portal lists.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Automatically purge guests a certain number of days after their accounts expire, or are declined or revoked. Purging removes them from the Console and the Guest Management Portal lists.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

In the Guest Registration, Registered Guests tab, you can perform the following guest management activities:

- **Add Guests Using the Console**
- **Remove Guests**
- **Purge Inactive Guests**
- **Edit Guests**
- **Retrieve Registration Codes**
- **Manage Guest Tags**

### Add Guests Using the Console

If you know ahead of time that your organization is expecting guests and you have their identity information, you can pre-approve the guests and later verify that they are authenticated.

Individuals defined as Sponsors can add and import pre-approved guests directly to the Guest Management Portal. It is recommended to add guests using the Guest Management Portal. Refer to the *Guest Management Portal for Sponsors How-to Guide*. See *Additional Forescout Documentation* for information on how to access the guide.

**(Flexx Licensing only)** If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeControl (Forescout CounterACT Control) license, you cannot add, edit or import registered guests from the Guest Registration pane.
To view and add guests at the Console:

1. Select the Registered Guests tab of the Guest Registration pane. The list of guests is displayed.

2. To add a guest, select **Add**.

3. Complete the guest information, and provide a password for guest login.

4. Select **OK**.

5. After all guests have been added, select **Apply**. The added guests are automatically approved for network access.

6. It is the responsibility of your organization to forward the login credentials to guests added at the Console. Forescout 8.1 does not do this for you.

From the Registered Guests tab, you can also:

- Select **Import** to import guest entries into the tab from a CSV file.
- Select **Export** to export guest entries from the tab into a CSV file.

**Remove Guests**

Guests that you remove are automatically and immediately signed out of the network, and their accounts are purged from both Forescout 8.1 and the Guest Management Portal. Users who are removed while still browsing are notified by a web message of this management action.
In the Guest Management Portal, sponsors can revoke their approved guests and decline guest requests. Refer to the Guest Management Portal for Sponsors How-to Guide. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access the guide.

**To remove a guest:**
1. In the Registered Guests tab of the Guest Registration pane, select a guest entry.
2. Select Remove and then select Apply.

**Purge Inactive Guests**

Guests become inactive when their status is changed to Declined, Revoked, or Expired. Guests can be automatically purged a certain number of days after they become inactive. Inactive guest accounts are purged from both the Forescout Console and the Guest Management Portal.

**To purge inactive guests:**
1. Select Options from the Tools menu. The Options window opens.
2. Select Guest Registration.
3. At the bottom of the Registered Guests tab, select Purge after.
4. Enter the number of days to wait before a guest is purged after its status is set to Declined, Revoked, or Expired.
5. Select Apply.

**Edit Guests**

You can edit guest registration values. If you update the password, you must notify the guest.

**(Flexx Licensing only)** If you do not have a valid Forescout eyeControl (Forescout CounterACT Control) license, you cannot add, edit or import registered guests from the Guest Registration pane.
To edit a guest:

1. In the Registered Guests tab of the Guest Registration pane, select a guest entry.
2. Select Edit. The Edit Guest dialog box opens.
3. Update the guest information.
4. Select OK and then select Apply.

In the Guest Management Portal, sponsors can edit the approval period requested by guests. Refer to the Guest Management Portal for Sponsors How-to Guide. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access the guide.

Retrieve Registration Codes

Registration codes are used when working with the HTTP Login action that requires guests to register before the Guest Registration request is processed. If the guest does not provide the correct code, the request is not processed. Use this feature to ensure that only guests with whom you’ve shared the registration code can apply for network access.

Enable the registration code option from the Registration Page tab in the HTTP Login action.

To retrieve registration codes to send to guests:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Guest Registration.
2. In the Registered Guests tab of the Guest Registration pane, select Codes.
3. A unique code is shown for each day. Identify the registration code for the day you expect your guest to require network access.

4. It is the responsibility of your organization to forward the code to the network guests. Forescout 8.1 does not do this for you.

**Manage Guest Tags**

You can create policies that evaluate guests for their guest tag assignments. For example, create a policy that detects *Building A*-tagged guests and assigns them to a specific VLAN or allows them minimum network access.

Use *guest tags* to categorize network guests into specific groups as they are approved/declined network access by a sponsor. For example, *Limited Access* guests, *Full Access* guests, *Building A* guests, and *Sales Visitors* guests.

These tools are available when **Guests must be approved by the sponsor...** is selected in the Guests tab of the HTTP Login action.

The Forescout 8.1 administrator creates guest tags, and a sponsor, using the Network Access Request page to approve/decline guests, can assign tags to guests.

To work with tags, perform the following:

- **Create Tags**
- **Assign Tags**
- **Create Policies with Your Tags**

**Create Tags**

Create tags that sponsors can assign to guests.

**To create tags:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Guest Registration**.
2. In the Registered Guests tab, select **Tags**.
3. In the Guest Tags dialog box, you can select the following options:
   − **Sponsor may select multiple tags**: Enables the sponsor to assign the guest multiple tags.
   − **Sponsor is required to tag the guest**: Makes it mandatory for the sponsor to assign the guest one or more tags.

   If you do not select any option, sponsors can optionally assign each guest a single tag.

4. Select **Add**.

5. Enter the tag name.

6. If you selected **Selected by default at the sponsor's page** in the Guest Tags dialog box, the tag is displayed when the Add Guest page opens in the Guest Management Portal. The sponsor can manually remove it.

7. Select **OK**.

8. After all tags have been added, select **OK** to save the guest tags in the Forescout 8.1 configuration.

**Assign Tags**

Sponsors can assign tags to guests when approving/declining guest network access using a Network Access Request page, and when adding guests in the Guest Management Portal. Guest tag assignment is not available to sponsors when approving pending guests in the Guest Management Portal.
Create Policies with Your Tags

**Guest Tags** property values come from the tags that you create. See [Create Tags](#). For example, if you created a *Limited Access* guest tag, this tag appears as a property value.

Control guests based on their guest tags. Do this by incorporating the evaluation of the **Guest Tags** property in your policies. For example, create a policy that detects guests with an *Authentication, Signed In Status* property value of *Signed In as a Guest* and a *Guest Tag* property value of *Building A* and then assigns them to a specific VLAN or allows them minimum network access.
To incorporate guest tags:

1. Edit or create a policy.
2. Define the condition so it includes the Guest Registration > Guest Tags property. The list of available property values contains all the tags created in the Guest Registration pane.

Define Password Policy

Use the Password Policy tab to define requirements enforced on passwords that are used by approved guests to log in to the network. These requirements are applied to both system-generated passwords for guest login and passwords that registering guests define themselves.

When defining the HTTP Login action, in the Guests tab, select Provide a system-generated password to self-registering guests to have Forescout 8.1 generate passwords for guest login.

To define password requirements:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu and then select Guest Registration.

2. In the Password Policy tab, define any of the following password requirements:
   - Minimum password length – the default, minimum length is 6 characters
   - Minimum number of uppercase characters to include
   - Minimum number of lowercase characters to include
   - Minimum number of digits to include
   - Minimum number of special characters to include

3. Select Apply to save your changes in the Forescout 8.1 configuration.
Chapter 19: Additional Options

Define User Policy

Use the User Policy tab to define how certain guest fields are validated.

The Email field is always mandatory for guests, and guests are identified by its contents.

- Clear Allow invalid email addresses to ensure that this field contains a valid email address.
- In environments where guests are identified by information other than their email address, select Allow invalid email addresses so that no validation is done on the field and any value is accepted in the Email field.

Define Sponsors

Use the Sponsors tab to define the corporate sponsors who are authorized to log in to the Guest Management Portal and use the portal to manage guests. Corporate employees whose contact emails are provided by guests in the Guest Registration form must be included in the Sponsors table. You can Add, Edit, and Remove sponsor capabilities.

   All sponsor email addresses must be configured in Active Directory.

In the tab, you can select the All domain members are sponsors option to define all user directory domain members as sponsors.
Add sponsors in any of the following ways:

- Individually, by defining an email address
- As a group, by defining an Active Directory group
- Globally, by selecting all Active Directory members

**To define sponsors:**

1. In the Sponsors tab of the Guest Registration window, select Add.

![Add Sponsor dialog box](image)

2. Define the following sponsor information:
   - **Email or Active Directory Group**: Enter sponsor's Active Directory email address or an Active Directory group. If you specify an Active Directory group, all of Active Directory group members become sponsors.
   - **Type**: One of the following sponsor types must be assigned to each sponsor entry:
     - **Sponsor**: A Sponsor can access the portal to view and manage guests assigned to them only.
     - **Admin Sponsor**: An Admin Sponsor can access the portal to view and manage all guests that have registered for network access, and can override the decisions of other sponsors.
   - **Description** (optional)

3. Select Apply to save your changes in the Forescout 8.1 configuration.

**Define Terms and Conditions**

Use the Terms and Conditions tab to enable the presentation of terms and conditions to any of the following recipients:

- Only registering guests
- Only sponsors (working in the Guest Management Portal to manage guests)
- Both of the above

**To define the terms and conditions:**

1. In Guest Registration window, select the Terms and Conditions tab.
2. Specify the terms and conditions to be presented to recipients using one of
the following methods:

- Select the **URL** option. In the associated field, provide the absolute URI of
  a Web page for presentation to the designated recipients. Select **Test** to
  ensure that the address is correct.
- Select the **Text** option and select **Edit**. A <recipient> Terms & Conditions
  window opens. In the window, enter or update the terms and conditions to
  be presented to the designated recipients. Select **OK**.

3. Select **Apply** to save your changes.

**Define Guest Notifications**

Use the Guest Notifications tab to instruct Forescout 8.1 about guest notification
method and triggers.

- Use either or both of the following media to send notifications to guests:
  - Email
  - SMS (text messaging)
- Optionally notify guests about the state of their network access when:
  - Their guest registration request is pending.
  - Their guest registration request is approved.
  - Their guest registration request is rejected.
  - Their previously approved network access is revoked. This state can only
    occur when the managing sponsor of the guest is working with the [Guest
    Management Portal](#).
  - Their network access period has expired.
**Customize Guest Notifications**

In the Console, customize notifications that Forescout 8.1 sends to guests. To customize notifications, select **Options > Advanced > Language Localization > Endpoint Messages**. The Endpoint Messages pane opens.

For details about customizing texts that Forescout 8.1 processing generates in a user's endpoint, see [Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages](#).

**Define Sponsor Notifications**

Corporate personnel are considered a sponsor of a guest when either one of the following conditions is true:

- The registering guest specified the person's email address in the Contact Person Email field of the Guest Registration form.

- The person's email address is provided in the **Pre-defined sponsors for all guests** field in the Guests tab of the HTTP Login action.

Use the Sponsor Notifications tab to instruct Forescout 8.1 to notify sponsors about any or all of the following guest network access events:

- A guest registration request is pending for a guest for whom they are a sponsor.

- A guest registration request is approved for a guest for whom they are a sponsor.

- A guest registration request is rejected for a guest for whom they are a sponsor.

- A guest registration request is revoked for a guest for whom they are a sponsor. This event can only occur when a managing sponsor of the guest is working with the [Guest Management Portal](#).
Chapter 19: Additional Options

Customize Sponsor Notifications

In the Console, customize notifications that Forescout 8.1 sends to sponsors. To customize notifications, select **Options > Advanced > Language Localization > Endpoint Messages**. The Endpoint Messages pane opens.

For details about customizing texts that Forescout 8.1 processing generates in a user's endpoint, see [Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages](#).

The Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program

Forescout continually attempts to provide better classification and posture assessment services to customers. Customers who voluntarily opt in to the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program allow anonymous information from their environment, such as policy-based or manual endpoint classification, to be shared with Forescout researchers for improving the product. It also lets you share with Forescout additional information regarding your classification changes that will aid Forescout in capturing your requirements in future content updates. By contributing to the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program, you benefit from a better out-of-the-box classification service.

Refer to the [Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program Data Security Document](#) for an up-to-date list of the shared properties and how they are anonymized. See [Additional Forescout Documentation](#) for information on how to access this document.

Using analytics, Forescout researchers can use the anonymous data shared by you and other customers to:

- Develop classification profiles for new devices
- Better classify existing devices
- Reduce the number of false positive classifications
- Develop new techniques for assessing endpoint posture

The Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program is a voluntary program. Customers are under no obligation to share their data to help Forescout improve classification. In the long term, the program benefits customers in the form of more detailed classification profiles.
By default, after you accept the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program participation terms, your CounterACT devices share selected endpoint properties with Forescout. Before any data is uploaded, all personally identifiable information (PII) is removed, and potentially sensitive data is sanitized. For example:

- Usernames, as well as other information garnered from the corporate user directory about the logged in users, are removed.
- The IP and MAC addresses of endpoints are converted to simulated addresses using a one-way function which ensures that the data shared with Forescout can never reveal the actual addresses of endpoints in your network.

Anonymized properties from managed CounterACT Appliances are transmitted to the Enterprise Manager which uploads the information to the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program. Each Appliance uploads (via the Enterprise Manager) no more than once per day. For example, if you have one Enterprise Manager and five Appliances, six distinct uploads will run at random times each day.

- The Enterprise Manager connects to a server named ds.forescout.com using HTTPS (port 443/TCP). Ensure that your firewall is configured to allow this, or configure the proxy server settings.

Sharing Additional Endpoint Properties

You can opt to share properties created by the Forescout Flow Analyzer, which detects flow information regarding the endpoints in your environment. The Flow Analyzer collects a statistical sampling of data about network traffic, such as average packet size, average packet rate per second, inbound and outbound bandwidth usage, and DNS resolutions. Sharing these additional properties would be an important contribution to the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program.

- The purpose of the Flow Analyzer is to provide additional properties to the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program. Properties resolved by the Flow Analyzer are not available to an administrator in the Policy Manager.

You can also opt to allow Forescout 8.1 to share other properties with Forescout. Refer to the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program Data Security Document for an up-to-date list of these additional shared properties. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access this document.

Opting In or Out of Data Sharing

If you have not yet accepted or rejected the Forescout Research and Intelligent Analytics Program participation terms, you are prompted to accept the participation terms each time you log in to the Forescout Console.

**To opt in or out of data sharing:**

1. In the Console, select Tools > Options and then select Advanced > Data Sharing in the Options tree.
2. To opt in to the program, select **Share selected endpoint properties and plugin configuration and usage information with Forescout**. The Participation Terms open.

3. Read the terms, and then select **I accept these Terms**, and select **OK**.
In the Data Sharing window the **Share selected endpoint properties and plugin configuration and usage information with Forescout** option is selected and the **Share all endpoint properties with Forescout** option becomes available for selection.

4. To opt out of the program, clear the **Share selected endpoint properties and plugin configuration and usage information with Forescout** option.

5. Configure the Proxy settings if your Enterprise Manager does not have a direct connection to the Internet.

6. Select **Apply**.
Appendix 1: Handling Network Connectivity Failures

This appendix details how to handle network connectivity failures between the Appliance and your enterprise network.
During installation, a connectivity test is performed to verify that packets are properly injected into the network and that Forescout 8.1 sees symmetric traffic on the monitoring interfaces. That is, for every session, both incoming and outgoing directions are visible. In addition to being run automatically during installation, the test will also be run after configuration changes are made to the network (for example, NAC or Active Response range, Ethernet NIC, VLAN).

Possible reasons the test results may not be successful include:

1. The tool did not see enough TCP sessions to make a decision. By default, the test is run until it sees 250 TCP sessions, and (but) no longer than 15 minutes.
   
   **Symptom:** A message to this effect is shown.
   
   **What to do:** Make sure Forescout 8.1 is connected to the mirroring port and sees live data.

2. The mirroring port is misconfigured in such a way that only one side (incoming or outgoing) is mirrored.
   
   **Symptom:** All sessions are asymmetric.
   
   **What to do:** Configure the switch to mirror both incoming and outgoing traffic.

3. There is an asymmetric routing of packets going in to and out of the containment cell.
   
   **Symptom:** Some asymmetric sessions are detected.
   
   **What to do:** Mirror the other port that traffic is going through. This may require additional NICs (for example, if the other port is on a different switch or the bandwidth requirements of both ports exceed the mirror port capacity).

4. The wrong port is mirrored.
   
   **Symptom:** Not much traffic is seen, as in (1) or some asymmetric sessions are detected, as in (3).
   
   **What to do:** Mirror the right port.

5. The packet loss rate is high.
   
   **Symptoms:** Some asymmetric sessions are detected.
   
   **What to do:** Make sure the capacity of the mirroring port can accommodate the actual traffic of the mirrored ports. Both incoming and outgoing traffic should be accounted for. Use a higher capacity mirroring port (for example, gigabit) or mirror the incoming and outgoing traffic to different ports (and use an additional NIC).

6. Some of the traffic in one direction is encapsulated (tunneled).
   
   **Symptom:** Some asymmetric sessions are shown.
   
   **What to do:** Either mirror traffic after it is de-encapsulated or mirror when both directions are encapsulated (and is ignored).

7. Some traffic is tagged with VLAN IDs, which are not defined in the system.
   
   **Symptoms:** Number of "Wrong VLAN ID" packets detected is shown.
   
   **What to do:** Define proper VLAN IDs (Channel configuration) or instruct the switch to remove the VLAN ID while mirroring (if only one VLAN is mirrored).
Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints

- When Is Remote Access to Endpoints Needed?
- Domain Account Requirements
- Troubleshooting Domain Credentials
- Troubleshooting Deep Inspection
When Is Remote Access to Endpoints Needed?

Forescout 8.1 needs remote access to the endpoint’s registry service to properly access service pack installations, antivirus installations, and perform other important tasks. This appendix details how to obtain remote access.

Domain Account Requirements

Authentication at the domain level allows the service to make local registry checks while running a remote scan. This allows the service access to additional information in system registry settings that otherwise would not be available. With this information, the service can perform more in-depth vulnerability assessments.

You should create a special domain account that is used by the service for Windows authentication. This domain account needs assigned privileges most suitable for use with the service, not the default privileges. Specifically, the domain account needs privileges that allow read access to remote registries and minimal domain access otherwise.

Remote registry read permissions are controlled by this key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\SecurePipeServers\winreg
```

Various methods for setting this registry key on target endpoints are available. The available options depend on the Windows version running on the endpoints. Options include:

- Using a Domain-Wide Policy. This option is recommended for Windows 2000-style domains.
- Using an Administrator Group. This option may be used with Windows NT-style domains.
- Using the Security Configuration wizard. This option may be used with Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 1.
- Set ACL Remotely Using the SetACL Tool. This option may be used with Windows NT-style domains.

Using a Domain-Wide Policy

This option is only available to Windows 2000-style domains that support ACL-level control through domain-wide registry policies. This is the recommended option for Windows 2000 style domains.

To configure the account:

1. Log in to the Domain Controller as Administrator.
2. Open the Active Directory Users and Computers MMC snap-in.
3. Create a new Global group called CA_scanners by selecting New and then Group from the User folder in the Tree tab.
4. Open the properties dialog box for the group.
5. Select the Members Of tab.
6. Remove the Everyone group by selecting Remove. The Members Of section should be empty.

7. Create a new user account called CA_account by selecting New and then User from User folder in the Tree section.

8. Add the new user account to the "CA_scanners" group.

9. Confirm that the user has no unintended permissions on the domain. For example, check the "Member of" section to confirm that it only has the "CA_scanners" group listed.

10. Open the "Domain Security Policy" MMC snap-in, and add the remote access key:
   a. Go to the "Registry" section.
   b. Select "Add Key".
   c. Add the following key:
      HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\SecurePipeServers\winreg

11. Select the new registry key by selecting Windows Setting and then Registry from the Tree tab.

12. Add the CA_scanners group, and set "Read" and "Execute" permissions only by selecting the read and execute checkbox.

13. Open the Set the Template Security Policy Setting dialog box to configure this key.

14. Select the Propagate inheritable permissions to subkeys option.

15. Select OK. The new registry-key ACL policy is propagated to all Windows endpoints participating in the domain (standalone endpoints are not affected in any way). The time it takes for this configuration to be propagated to endpoints may vary, depending on network configuration and traffic.

To set the registry processing options:
1. Open the Group Policy MMC.
2. Select the Default Domain Policy, and go to the Group Policy section.
3. Select Default Domain Policy and then Computer Configuration, Administrative Templates, then System, Group Policy.

Using an Administrator Group
You can create a new user account in the Global administrator group. This option may be used with Windows NT-style domains.

To set up the account:
1. Log in to the Domain Controller as Administrator.
2. Create a new user account called "CA_account".
3. Make the CA_account a member of the Global group Domain Admins.
4. In the Member Of section of the group properties, keep only the Group Domain Admins and remove any other groups.

The Global group Domain Admins should be used for access to remote systems as this group is automatically added to the Administrators Local group on each system when it becomes a member of the Windows NT domain.

**Using the Security Configuration Wizard**

Windows Server 2003 SP1 provides a security configuration wizard to easily manage server lockdown and security settings.

To be sure that the TCP ports used by the scanner for local security checks are available, verify that Remote Windows Administration is enabled in the Select Administration and Other Options.

**Working with Windows XP SP2 Machines**

If your network includes endpoints that run under Windows XP SP2, you will need to change the Windows Firewall Settings so Forescout 8.1 can perform remote inspection on these machines. This means that you should have access to port 137 UDP and port 139/445 TCP, which is closed by default on XP SP2 machines. Allowing access means that Forescout 8.1 can retrieve Windows related information.

It is recommended to allow access from all CounterACT devices to each endpoint. This ensures that no matter where the endpoint is located, it is managed by the system. For example, if the user is roaming with a laptop, the device is properly scanned. To allow this kind of access, the firewall on each endpoint should allow connections from any of the CounterACT devices.

**Updating Group Policy Objects with New Windows Firewall Settings**

To update your Group Policy objects for network environments using Active Directory and Windows XP SP1, it is recommended that you use the Group Policy Management Console, a free download available from Microsoft. For more information, see Group Policy Management Console with Service Pack 1.

Update your Active Directory Group Policy objects with the new Windows Firewall settings using the Group Policy snap-in (provided with Windows XP SP2).

**To update these objects:**

1. Install Windows XP SP2 on a computer that is a member of the domain that contains the computer accounts of the other computers running Windows XP on which you plan to install Windows XP SP2.
2. Restart the computer and log in to the Windows XP SP2 computer as a member of the Domain Administrators security group, the Enterprise Administrators security group, or the Group Policy Creator Owners security group.
Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints

3. From the Windows XP endpoint, select **Start**, select **Run**, enter **mmc**, and then select **OK**.

4. On the **File** menu, select **Add/Remove Snap-in**.

5. In the Standalone tab, select **Add**.

6. In the **Available Standalone Snap-ins** list, select **Group Policy**, and then select **Add**.

7. In the Select Group Policy Object dialog box, select **Browse**.

8. In the Browse for a Group Policy Object dialog box, select the Group Policy object that you want to update with the new Windows Firewall settings.

9. Select **OK**.

10. Select **Finish** to complete the Group Policy Wizard.

11. In the Add Standalone Snap-in dialog box, select **Close**.

12. In the Add/Remove Snap-in dialog box, select **OK**.

13. In the Console tree, open **Computer Configuration** > **Administrative Templates** > **Network** > **Network Connections** > **Windows Firewall**.
14. Select **Domain Profile** and then **Windows Firewall**: Define port exceptions.

15. Select **Enabled**.

16. Select **Show**.

17. Select **Add**.

18. Define the desired rule. For example:

   `139:TCP:192.168.10.51:enabled:Port139ForCounterACT` would define a rule allowing the endpoint at 192.168.0.51 to access port 139 on WinXPSP2 computers in the scope controlled by this group policy.

19. Repeat steps 17 and 18 for additional rules.

20. Select **OK**.

   *A restart may be needed on the client machines in order for this definition to take effect.*

---

**Troubleshooting Domain Credentials**

This section describes Domain Credential troubleshooting procedures:

- **Test the Domain Credentials**
- **Test the Credentials on the Endpoint Using a Localhost Query**
- **Test the Credentials in the Endpoint Using Remote Query**

**Test the Domain Credentials**

Perform the following steps to test the domain credentials.
1. Log in to an endpoint using the CounterACT user name and password. If this fails, check the CounterACT user settings on the Domain Controller.
2. Check that the endpoint is a member of the Domain and is authenticating against the Domain Controller.
3. Check that the login is using the Domain, rather than localhost credentials.

**Test the Credentials on the Endpoint Using a Localhost Query**

This test ensures that a query can be performed using the domain credentials.

1. Log in to an endpoint using any credentials other than the CounterACT user. This endpoint should be a member of the domain.
2. Open a command window (Start>Run>“cmd”).
3. Run the command:
   
   C:\>net use \127.0.0.1\C$ /user:<domain>\counteract
   
   – <domain> is the fully qualified domain of the network.
4. The command should return the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local name</th>
<th>Remote name</th>
<th>Resource type</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th># Opens</th>
<th># Connections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\127.0.0.1\C$</td>
<td>Disk</td>
<td>OK</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
   | The command completed successfully.

   If this test fails:
   – Check the domain syntax. Perhaps it needs to be more fully qualified. For example, domain, domain.com or hq.domain.com.
   – Check the credentials on the Domain Controller.

**Test the Credentials in the Endpoint Using Remote Query**

1. Log in to another endpoint that is also a member of the domain.
2. Open a command window (Start>Run>“cmd”).
3. Run the command:
   
   net use \<IP_address>\c$ <password> /user: <domain>\counteract
   
   – <IP_address> is the IP address of the target machine
   – <password> is the password for the CounterACT user

   If this fails, perform the following tests:
   - Domain Configuration Test
   - TCP/IP Configuration Test
   - Port Setup Test
   - NetBIOS over TCP/IP Setup Test
Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints

- Services Test
- Shares Test

Domain Configuration Test

1. Open the System dialog.

2. Select Start, select Run, enter rename this computer, and then press Enter.

3. Set the domain configuration – in the <Computer_Name> tab, select Change. Verify that the machine is a member of the domain and that the domain is spelled correctly.

4. Verify that the NetBIOS domain name is identical to the one configured in the Host Properties Scanner Plugin configuration pane. This is done by running the command nbtstat -n, which should produce the following output.
TCP/IP Configuration Test

Open the properties dialog box of the relevant network connection.

To open the dialog box:

1. Select **Start > Control Panel > Network and Internet > View Network Status and Tasks > Change adapter settings** and right-click the Local Area Connection.

2. Select **Properties**. The following components should be installed (marked in red in the figure below):
   - Client for Microsoft Networks.
   - File and printer sharing for Microsoft network.

The “Client for Microsoft Networks” should be configured as follows:
Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints

Port Setup Test
Forescout 8.1 should have access to either one of the following ports: 139/TCP, 445/TCP.

Group policy test
In a Windows XP group policy, the domain can be configured to set the end-system’s personal firewall settings. For more details, see Working with Windows XP SP2 Machines.

Local configuration of the firewall
Allow monitored network connections:

2. Select Change Scope, then add the CounterACT device IP address to the Custom List.

Disabling the firewall
For testing purposes the firewall can be disabled.

To disable the firewall:
1. In the Advanced tab, select Setting from the Windows Firewall group.
2. Disable the firewall by turning it off.
NetBIOS over TCP/IP Setup Test

NetBIOS over TCP/IP should be enabled either directly or from the DHCP server. Verify that either the Default or Enable NetBIOS over TCP/IP option is selected.

Services Test

Verify that the services listed in step (circled in red) are running.

**To verify:**

1. Open the services view by selecting **Start > Control Page > Administrative Tools > Services**. Verify that the following services (in red) are running:
   - Remote Procedure Call (RPC)
   - Remote Registry Service
   - Server
Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints

2. If a service is not running, right-click it and select **Start** to start it.

**Shares Test**
Verify that the default c$ share exists.

**To verify:**
1. From **My Computer**, right-click drive “C” and select **Properties**.
2. In the Sharing tab, the following should be configured:

![Properties](image)

**Troubleshooting Deep Inspection**
Verify the following if you cannot perform deep inspection on network Windows endpoints:

- Windows 2000
- Windows XP
- Windows Server 2000
- Windows Vista
Appendix 2: Remote Access to Endpoints

- Windows 7
- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Server 2008
  32-bit and 64-bit machines are supported.
- For Windows Vista machines, verify that Vista UAC is disabled. For more information see: [http://www.petri.co.il/disable_uac_in_windows_vista.htm](http://www.petri.co.il/disable_uac_in_windows_vista.htm)
- Verify that the following services are enabled: Remote Procedure Call, Server Service, and Remote Registry Service.
- Verify that File & Print Sharing for Microsoft Networks (connection properties) is installed.
- Verify that you have domain-level administrative privileges on each computer being scanned or that you are a member of the Domain Admins Group. This group allows writing to the file system but not to the registry.
- If your network includes endpoints that run under Windows XP SP2, you can change the Windows Firewall Settings so that Forescout 8.1 can perform remote inspection on these machines. This means that you should have access to port 137 UDP and port 139/445 TCP. Allowing access means Forescout 8.1 can retrieve Windows related information. By default, these ports are open on Windows 2000 machines.
- Verify that you have cleared **Use Sharing Wizard** for the endpoint (for XP systems only).

**To clear Use Simple File Sharing:**

1. Double-click **My Computer**.
2. Select **Folder Options** from the **Tools** menu.
3. Select the View tab.
4. Clear the **Use Sharing Wizard** option and select **OK**.

![Folder Options](image.png)
Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate

This appendix describes how to generate and import a trusted certificate and remove the browser security warning that opens when trying to access the Forescout Web Portals, for example, the Assets Portal or the Reports Portal.
This appendix describes how to generate and import a trusted certificate and remove the browser security warning that opens when trying to access the Forescout Web Portals, for example, the Assets Portal or the Reports Portal. The Appliance runs a web server to operate these portals. Access to them requires a secured connection (HTTPS), because the information provided is sensitive.

The procedure described below should be carried out on the Enterprise Manager and each system Appliance, as required.

During the installation of the Appliance or Enterprise Manager, a default self-signed certificate is created for this purpose. However the certificate was not signed by a CA such as VeriSign or Thawte. This causes the web browser not to trust the self-signed certificate. As a result, a security alert warning is displayed each time you connect to a Forescout portal.

If you set up the HTTP Login action so that credentials sent to the Appliance are transmitted, you may also want to generate the certificate.

To prevent this message from appearing, the certificate that the web server is using needs to be signed by a known CA, and the web server should be accessed using its DNS name (and not its IP address).

Use the tools of the Certificates pane to generate and import a trusted certificate, as follows:

1. Generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR), with your company details.
2. Submit the CSR to a Certificate Authority and request a signed TLS certificate.
3. Import the signed certificates you receive.

For detailed information about defining and provisioning certificates, see Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface.
Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection

- About HTTP Redirection
- HTTP Redirection Procedure
- Security Considerations
- Sample fstool netconfig Session
About HTTP Redirection

The browser notification, login, and remediation actions require that the Appliance see traffic going to the web. In order for these actions to work properly, you may need to set the IP address used by the HTTP redirection features. This appendix details this procedure.

The HTTP feature works by redirecting an HTTP request made by a user to the Appliance for further processing. By default, the redirection is sent to the management IP address of the Appliance. In an environment where the management network and the general network are separated there is a need to change the default behavior, otherwise the redirection will fail. To address this situation, a different network card needs to be connected to the network and assigned an IP address so it can process the redirection requests. Unless it is connected to a trunk port on which it handles multiple VLANs, the injection interface can be used for this purpose.

HTTP Redirection Procedure

To configure HTTP redirection:

1. Connect a NIC other than the one used for management to the general purpose network. If the injection interface is not configured to handle VLANs on a switch trunk port, it can be used for this purpose.

2. Configure the NIC with a proper IP address and default gateway by using the `fstool netconfig` command. See the following sample session.

3. Test connectivity to and from Forescout 8.1 by pinging various addresses in the network. Invoke the `fstool fw` command to temporarily allow outgoing ICMP traffic prior to these tests.

4. Configure Forescout 8.1 to redirect HTTP requests to the new address by using the following command:

   `fstool set_property http.server.ip.address <Address>`

5. Restart the Appliance services by using the `fstool service restart` command.

6. Verify that HTTP redirection works with the new address by applying a proper policy rule to an IP address inside the general network.

7. Verify that connectivity with the management station has not been lost (for example, using the CounterACT device).

8. If you are logged on to a single Appliance:
   - For the Appliance, HTTP redirection can be performed using DNS names, and not just IP addresses. This is desired if a security certificate has been obtained and installed on the Appliance (for more information about certificates see Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate).
   - The system redirects using the DNS name of an Appliance if its IP address (reversibly) resolves to a name, and the name (forwardly) resolves to the IP address. This behavior can be controlled by setting the `fs.redirect.dns.enabled` property:
fstool set_property fs.redirect.dns.enabled true
fstool service restart

The default setting for this property is false (i.e., redirection using DNS names is not performed).

Security Considerations
After these changes are applied, the Appliance has IP connectivity to both the general-purpose network and to the isolated management network. Several measures are in place to prevent the Appliance from connecting the two networks.

The Appliance is configured to not route traffic (net.ipv4.ip_forward = 0). This attribute is monitored periodically, and is reset if found in the wrong state, so as to avoid mistakes made manually.

The Appliance built-in firewall blocks all forwarding (FORWARD chain policy is DROP). This is also monitored periodically and reset if found in the wrong state.

Sample fstool netconfig Session

The `fstool netconfig` command supports IPv6 address format.

```
fstool netconfig

CounterACT Machine Network Configuration Options:
1) Configure network interfaces
2) Configure default gateway
3) Restart network service
4) Quit

Choice (1-4) : 1

-----------------------------------
CounterACT Machine Network Interfaces Configuration
-----------------------------------
* eth0 Address: 10.0.4.214 Netmask: 255.255.255.0
* eth1 Address: unassigned
* eth2 Address: unassigned
* eth3 Address: unassigned

(E)dit,(A)dd VLAN,(D)elete VLAN,(B)ack,(H)elp : e

Choose interface to configure:
1) eth0 Address: 10.0.4.214 Netmask: 255.255.255.0
2) eth1 Address: unassigned
3) eth2 Address: unassigned
4) eth3 Address: unassigned

Choice (1-4) : 2
```
IP address for eth1 ('none' for no address) : 1.2.3.4 eth1
network mask [255.255.255.0] :

Update eth1 configuration? (yes/no) : yes

Updating /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth1...

Network service should be restarted for changes to take effect.

Restart network service? (yes/no) : no (do it later)

--------------------------------------------
CounterACT Machine Network Interfaces Configuration
--------------------------------------------
* eth0 Address: 10.0.4.214 Netmask: 255.255.255.0
* eth1 Address: 1.2.3.4 Netmask: 255.255.255.0
* eth2 Address: unassigned
* eth3 Address: unassigned
(E)dit,(A)dd VLAN,(D)elete VLAN,(B)ack,(H)elp : B

CounterACT Machine Network Configuration Options:
1) Configure network interfaces
2) Configure default gateway
3) Restart network service
4) Quit

Choice (1-4) : 2

Default gateway IP address [1.2.3.5] : 1.2.3.5
Default gateway set to 1.2.3.5.
Apply change now? (yes/no) : yes
Change applied.
Press ENTER to continue

CounterACT Machine Network Configuration Options:
1) Configure network interfaces
2) Configure default gateway
3) Restart network service
4) Quit

Choice (1-4) : 3
Appendix 4: HTTP Redirection

Restart network service? (yes/no) : yes
Restarting network service...

Shutting down interface eth0: [ OK ]
Shutting down interface eth1: [ OK ]
Setting network parameters: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface eth0: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface eth1: [ OK ]
net.ipv4.ip_forward = 0
net.ipv4.conf.default.rp_filter = 1
kernel.sysrq = 0
kernel.core_uses_pid = 1

Done restarting network service

CounterACT Machine Network Configuration Options:

1) Configure network interfaces
2) Configure default gateway
3) Restart network service
4) Quit

Choice (1-4) : 4
Appendix 5: SNMP Support and Integration

- SNMP Integration
- Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications
SNMP Integration

Forescout 8.1 hosts an SNMP service that provides the following SNMP support:

- Standard MIBs over SNMPv1, SNMPv2c and SNMPv3
- Trusted notifications using SNMPv3 with USM traps and INFORMs
- SNMPv3 with:
  - Rich authentication (MD5 or SHA)
  - Encryption (AES or DES)
  - View of the MIB tree via industry standards

SNMP functionality is supported in IPv4, IPv6, and dual-stack CounterACT device configurations.


This section describes how to configure the SNMP service on CounterACT devices, including definition of external MIB users and trap targets, and enabling/disabling of Forescout 8.1-specific traps. Users who configure the SNMP service on CounterACT devices should be familiar with SNMP and with the View Based Access Control Model (VACM).

About SNMP Service Settings

Configuration tools for the SNMP Service are based on the configuration model of the View Based Access Control Module (VACM). This module was defined as part of SNMP v3, and is widely supported for SNMP v1/v2 interaction. It provides settings to control user access privileges and to define trap targets and behaviors.

Typically, you configure the service in the SNMP Settings pane of the Forescout Console. This pane provides a subset of the most useful settings supported by the VACM model. For details about using the options of the SNMP Settings pane, see Configure SNMP Service Settings.

Configure SNMP Service Settings

Configuration tools for the SNMP Service are based on the configuration model of the View Based Access Control Module (VACM). This module was defined as part of SNMP v3, and is widely supported for SNMP v1/v2 interaction. It provides settings to control user access privileges and to define trap targets and behaviors.

You configure these settings in the SNMP Settings pane of the Forescout Console.

Related Tasks and Options

- Import an SNMP configuration file. The SNMP Settings pane reflects imported settings. You can use imported settings as the basis for further modifications. See Import SNMP Service Settings.
- Export current settings to a file. See Export SNMP Service Settings.
During initial configuration, it is recommended to define the properties in the SNMP Settings tabs in the order in which they appear. For example, it is recommended to define Views before you define Users.

To configure SNMP Service settings:

1. In the Console, select Tools > Options. In the Options tree, select General > SNMP Settings.

2. (Optional) To define or modify a configuration for a subset of CounterACT devices, see Configure Features for an Appliance or Group of Appliances.

3. From this pane, you can perform the following tasks:
   - Start and Stop the SNMP Service from the Console
   - Disabling TCP Timestamps
   - Import SNMP Service Settings
   - Export SNMP Service Settings
   - Configure SNMP Views
   - Configure SNMP Users
   - Configure Trap Targets
   - Test Trap Targets
   - Enable and Disable Forescout 8.1 Traps

Start and Stop the SNMP Service from the Console

Use the Run SNMP service option to start and stop the SNMP service on configured devices.
To stop or start the SNMP service from the Console:

- In the General tab of the SNMP Settings pane, do one of the following:
  - Select **Run SNMP Service** to start the SNMP service on configured devices.
  - Clear **Run SNMP Service** to stop the SNMP service on configured devices.

When the service is enabled, the firewall on the CounterACT device automatically opens.

**Disabling TCP Timestamps**

You can disable TCP timestamps to prevent potential attackers from discovering information on system uptime. Disabling these timestamps also prevents system administrators from accessing this information. TCP timestamps are enabled by default.

**To disable TCP timestamps:**

1. In the Console, select **Options > General > SNMP Settings**.
2. In the General tab, select **Disable TCP timestamps**.

**Import SNMP Service Settings**

Use this procedure to import SNMP service settings from an SNMP .conf file. Imported settings overwrite the current settings of the SNMP Settings pane of the Console. After import, the Console-based configuration of the SNMP Settings pane reflects the settings of the imported file. You can use this imported configuration as the basis for further customization.

- **SNMPv3 Authentication/Privacy credentials will not be imported, and must be added manually after the import. SNMPv3 traps will not be sent until these credentials are added.**

**To import SNMP service settings:**

1. In the General tab of the SNMP Settings pane, select **Import Settings from File**. Browse to an SNMP .conf file.

   The imported file overwrites the configuration in the SNMP Settings pane.

   A dialog box lists lines of the file that were not imported, if any. For example, if the imported file contains VACM settings not supported by the SNMP Settings pane in the Console, these lines are listed in the results window.

2. Select **OK**.
3. Review imported settings in the tabs of the SNMP Settings pane, then do one of the following:
   - Select **Cancel** to roll back the import. Previous settings of the SNMP Settings pane are restored.
   - Select **Apply** to accept imported settings. The tabs of the SNMP Settings pane reflect imported settings.

**Export SNMP Service Settings**

Use this procedure to save current settings of the SNMP Settings pane to a `.conf` file.

**To export SNMP service settings:**

1. In the General tab of the SNMP Settings pane, select **Export Settings to File**. In the Export dialog box, browse to the desired target directory and enter a name for the `.conf` file.
2. Select **Export**. A file is created in the target directory. The file contains the current settings of the SNMP Settings pane.

**Configure SNMP Views**

Use this procedure to define inbound Views that restrict user access to the Forescout 8.1 MIB.

**To configure Views:**

1. In the SNMP Settings pane of the Options tree, select the Views tab. The table lists existing views.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Add** to create a new view.
   - Select an existing view in the table, and select **Edit** to modify it.

The Configure View dialog box opens.
3. Define the view using the following fields and options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>View Name</strong></td>
<td>This value is not necessarily unique. Several views can have the same name, each of them defining different access range of MIB objects. When a view is applied to a user or group, all access ranges with the same name are applied together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OID/Subtree</strong></td>
<td>A subtree in the CounterACT device MIB, for example: .3.4.5.2.78. Apply the view to an SNMP user to define user access to this subtree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mask</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Select this option to mask specific OIDs in the subtree. Specify the mask as a colon-separated list of hexadecimal octets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Include in access range</strong></td>
<td>Determines how the view affects the access range of users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exclude from access range</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Include in access range – the subtree is <em>permitted</em> to users when this view is applied to them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Exclude from access range – the subtree is <em>prohibited</em> to users when this view is applied to them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To remove a view, select it in the table and select **Remove**.

**Configure SNMP Users**

Use this procedure to define inbound users that can access the Forescout 8.1 MIB. These users are not necessarily CounterACT users.

**To configure SNMP users:**

1. In the SNMP Settings pane of the Options tree, select the Users tab. The table lists users that can interact with the SNMP service on CounterACT devices.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Add** to create a new user.
   - Select an existing user in the table, and select **Edit** to modify it.
3. In the **User Name** field, specify a unique name for this SNMP user.

4. In the **Community** field, specify the community string `config` with which the user communicates with Forescout 8.1.

5. In the SNMP Settings area, select the version of the SNMP protocol that is used to communicate with this user. To follow security best practices and certification requirements, only use SNMP v3 (default). Lower versions are not in line with these guidelines.

   (Optional) When SNMP V3 is selected, **Authentication** and **Privacy** encryption options are available. Specify encryption protocols and passwords. This data is not imported when you [Import SNMP Service Settings](#).

6. In the Define Sources area, define the network addresses from which this user can access the SNMP service. Do one of the following:

   - Select **Add** to add a source.
   - Select a source in the table and select **Edit** or **Remove**.

   Each entry in the list can be a specific FQDN or IP address, or a subnet declared using the IP/MASK or IP/BITS convention. For example:

   - `10.10.10.0/255.255.255.0`
   - `2001:db8:abcd:3f02::/64`
7. In the Apply Views area, select the views that filter access for this user. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Add** to apply a view to the user.
   - Select an existing view in the table, and select **Edit** to modify it.

In the Apply View dialog box, define how a view is applied using the following fields and options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>View Name</strong></th>
<th>The drop-down menu lists all view names currently defined in the Views tab that have not yet been assigned to this user.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Read Only</strong> Read and Write</td>
<td>This setting determines permissions granted to the user for the MIB objects in this view:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Read Only – user can only read the MIB objects in this view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>▪ Read/Write – user can read and write to the MIB objects in this view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To remove a view from a user, select it in the table and select **Remove**. The view still appears in the Views tab, but no longer applies to this user.

**Configure Trap Targets**

Use this procedure to define targets that receive outbound traps from the Forescout 8.1 SNMP service.

**To configure trap targets:**

1. In the SNMP Settings pane of the Options tree, select the Trap Targets tab.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select Add to create a new target.
   - Select an existing target in the table, and select Edit to modify it.

   The Trap Configuration dialog box opens.

   Define a target using the following fields and options. Select OK to save changes. To test trap reporting to this target, see Test Trap Targets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP Address or FQDN</th>
<th>The network address to which the traps are sent. This can be a specific FQDN or IP address.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community</td>
<td>The community string that is used to communicate with this target.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap Type</td>
<td>The type of SNMP trap message that is sent to this user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. To remove a target, select it in the table and select Remove.

4. To test communication with trap targets, see Test Trap Targets.

Test Trap Targets

Use this procedure to verify that configured targets receive traps from Forescout 8.1.

To test trap targets:
1. In the SNMP Settings pane of the Options tree, select the Trap Targets tab.
2. Select Send Test Trap. Select OK to confirm.
   A test trap is sent to all the targets configured in the Trap Targets table.

Enable and Disable Forescout 8.1 Traps

Use this procedure to configure which Forescout 8.1-specific outbound traps are sent by CounterACT devices to external trap targets.

Standard SNMP traps are always sent, and cannot be disabled.

To configure active traps:
1. In the SNMP Settings pane of the Options tree, select the Active Traps tab.
Appendix 5: SNMP Support and Integration

The table lists all the Forescout 8.1-specific traps supported by the SNMP service on CounterACT devices. By default, all traps are enabled.

2. (Optional) Use the search field to show traps that match a substring of any trap identifier fields, or a MIB subtree.

3. Do one of the following:
   - Clear the checkbox next to a trap to disable it. The trap is not sent by CounterACT devices.
   - Select the checkbox next to a trap to enable it. The trap is sent when CounterACT devices experience triggering events or thresholds.
   - Use the Clear All and Select All buttons to enable or disable all currently displayed traps.

4. Select Apply to save configuration changes.

Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications

To work with the SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances, you must define performance thresholds for the following Appliance resources, which are monitored and reported by MIB attributes:

- CPU Usage (percent)
- Memory Swaps (kilobytes per second)
- Packet Loss (percent)
- Number of Hosts (percent)
- Bandwidth (percent)

For each resource, both an upper threshold value (upper bound) and a lower threshold value (lower bound) are defined. These boundaries are used to generate Threshold Crossing Alarm (TCA) trap notifications, as follows:

- When a MIB attribute has a value below the Lower Bound, the monitored resource is considered to have Normal functional status.
When the value of a MIB attribute increases from Normal (below the Lower Bound) until it exceeds the Upper Bound value, the monitored resource is considered to be in High/Exceeded status, and an alarm trap notification is sent with severity set to Warning (6).

When the value of a MIB attribute decreases from High/Exceeded (above the Upper Bound) to below its Lower Bound, the monitored resource is considered to have returned to Normal status, and a trap notification with severity set to Cleared (1) is sent to clear the previous alarm trap.

Define the thresholds for SNMP MIB attributes in the Console **Tools > Options > Advanced > Performance Thresholds** pane.
Appendix 6: SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances

✔ About the SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances
✔ MIB Table Objects for CounterACT Appliances
✔ SNMP Trap Notifications for CounterACT Appliances
Appendix 6: SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances

About the SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances

A MIB Table for CounterACT Appliances provides objects that report detailed information about status, configuration and performance information.

SNMP queries made to an Enterprise Manager return a table containing the MIB attributes of the Enterprise Manager and all its managed Appliances.

SNMP queries made to a specific CounterACT Appliance return a table containing a single row providing the MIB attributes of the queried Appliance.

To obtain the Forescout 8.1 SNMP MIB file:

1. In the Forescout Console, select Options.
2. In the Options tree, select General > SNMP Settings.
3. In the Forescout MIB area of the General tab, select Export ForeScout MIB.

Load this file in your external management system.

- The ArcSight Module also provides SNMP MIB and Trap Notification information about the interaction between CounterACT devices and their peer ArcSight servers. Refer to the ArcSight Module documentation. See Additional Forescout Documentation for information on how to access documentation.

- In order for an external network management system to query a CounterACT Appliance SNMP MIB and receive SNMP trap notifications, you must enable SNMP on the CounterACT Appliance. By default, the Forescout 8.1 SNMP agent is disabled. See Appendix 5: SNMP Support and Integration for details.
MIB Table Objects for CounterACT Appliances

The CounterACT Appliance MIB contains the following objects:

**ctDeviceTable**

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3

This object contains a table of MIB object values for all CounterACT Appliances managed by this Appliance.

- For an Enterprise Manager (EM) this object contains a table of values for all its managed Appliances. Each row contains the MIB values of a single managed Appliance.
- For a managed or standalone Appliance this table contains a single-row table representing the MIB values of the Appliance.

The following related trap notifications are provided:

- ctDeviceAddedTrapNotification
- ctDeviceRemovedTrapNotification

**ctDeviceId**

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.1

An internally defined unique identifier for the CounterACT Appliance. The Enterprise Manager assigns a unique Device ID to itself, and to each managed Appliance. The Device ID provides a consistent reference to the Appliance as long as it is associated with the Enterprise Manager.

**ctDeviceIpAddress**

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.2

The IP address of this Appliance.

- For an Enterprise Manager this is the IP address of the device.
- For a managed Appliance this is the IP address of the Appliance as perceived by the Enterprise Manager.

**ctDeviceIpAddressType**

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.3

The type of IP address in the **ctDeviceIpAddress** object. Valid values are:

- **ipv4 (1)** Indicates that an IPv4 address is used, as defined by the InetAddressIPv4 textual convention.
- **ipv6 (2)** Indicates that an IPv6 address is used, as defined by the InetAddressIPv6 textual convention.

**ctNumberOfManagedEndpoints**

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.12
The total number of endpoints currently managed by this Appliance. For an Enterprise Manager, this object contains the total number of endpoints directly managed by the Enterprise Manager.

**The following related trap notifications are provided:**
- `ctDeviceTrapEndpointCapacityExceeded`
- `ctDeviceTrapEndpointCapacityNormal`

### ctDeviceCpuUtilization

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.5

Percentage of the Appliance's allocated processor resources currently in use. This value is an average taken across all processors.

**The following related trap notifications are provided:**
- `ctDeviceTrapHighCPUUtilization`
- `ctDeviceTrapNormalCPUUtilization`

### ctDevicePacketLoss

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.13

Packet loss as a percent of received IP packets. This is the fraction of received packets that were not handled by the Appliance over a sliding window of the last 30 seconds. When packet loss is excessive, HTTP Redirection and Virtual Firewall actions may not work consistently. To resolve, upgrade the Appliance or configure the channels to monitor less traffic.

**The following related trap notifications are provided:**
- `ctDeviceTrapHighPacketLoss`
- `ctDeviceTrapNormalPacketLoss`

### ctDeviceMemorySwaps

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.6

Amount of memory swapped (kbytes) over the last minute. If this value exceeds the recommended threshold, the system may work slowly. To resolve this issue, add physical memory to the Appliance or replace the Appliance with a model that has more physical memory.

**The following related trap notifications are provided:**
- `ctDeviceTrapHighMemorySwapping`
- `ctDeviceTrapNormalMemorySwapping`

### ctDeviceConnectionStatus

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.4

Indicates the network connectivity status. Possible states are: `connectionOK (1)` Indicates that the Appliance is up and ready.
connectionFailed (2) Indicates the connection to the network failed. There may be a network outage or the Appliance may be down.

connectionStatusUnknown (3) Indicates that the connection status cannot be verified at this time (for example, if the Appliance is down or unreachable).

**The following related trap notification is provided:**
- ctDeviceConnectionStatusChangedTrap

**ctDeviceEngineStatus**

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.11

Indicates the status of the Packet Engine service, which monitors network traffic and discovers network endpoints. Possible states are:

- **ready (1)** Indicates that the Packet Engine is up and ready.
- **initializing (2)** Indicates that the Packet Engine is starting up and currently initializing.
- **down (3)** Indicates that the Packet Engine is currently down.
- **statusUnknown (4)** Indicates that the Packet Engine status cannot currently be verified. For example, the CounterACT Appliance may be down or unreachable.
- **notApplicable (5)** Indicates that the Packet Engine is administratively disabled.

**The following related trap notification is provided:**
- ctDevicePacketEngineStatusChangedTrap

**ctDeviceCurrentBandwidth**

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.10

Bit-rate consumed by the Appliance communication resources expressed in kilobytes per second; averaged over a sliding window (see Forescout documentation for more details). This value accounts for internal traffic between CounterACT Appliances and traffic handled by the Packet Engine. If this value exceeds recommended thresholds for each Appliance model, Appliance performance may be affected. To resolve this issue, contact Forescout support or sales representative.

**The following related trap notifications are provided:**
- ctDeviceHighBandwidthUtilizationTrap
- ctDeviceNormalBandwidthUtilizationTrap

**ctDeviceHaStatus**

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.9

Indicates the status of the High Availability (HA) service, which monitors the status of the active and the passive (standby) Appliances in a High Availability pair. Possible states are:

- **ok (1)** Indicates that the standby CounterACT device is up, responsive and is in sync with the active CounterACT device.
statusDegraded (2) Indicates that the standby CounterACT device is unreachable, down, or currently out of sync with the active CounterACT device.

inMaintenanceMode (3) Indicates that the active or the standby CounterACT device is undergoing maintenance operations such as setup or upgrade.

notSupported (4) Indicates that High Availability is not supported or configured on this Appliance.

statusUnknown (5) Indicates that the High Availability status cannot be determined because the Enterprise Manager cannot connect to the Appliance.

**The following related trap notification is provided:**

- ctDeviceHaStatusChangedTrap

**ctDeviceLicenseStatus**

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.8

Indicates the status of the licensing service. This service monitors the licensed operating capacity of Forescout 8.1 relative to the number of managed endpoints, used Appliance bandwidth, software modules and other license terms. Possible states are:

valid (1) Indicates that the current license status is OK and usage is within the licensed capacity.

violation (2) Indicates that there are one or more license violations, for example, services running with usage capacity exceeding the currently deployed licenses.

invalid (3) Indicates that the currently deployed license is expired or invalid.

statusUnknown (4) Indicates that the license status cannot be verified at this time (for example, the Appliance is down or unreachable).

**The following related trap notification is provided:**

- ctDeviceLicenseStatusChangedTrap

**ctDeviceNtpStatus**

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.7

Indicates the status of the network time synchronization service, which handles synchronization with the associated NTP server. Possible states are:

syncOk (1) Indicates the Appliance is synchronized with the NTP server.

syncFailed (2) Indicates the Appliance failed to connect to the NTP server, or failed to get a valid response from the NTP server.

notApplicable (3) Indicates that the NTP is not configured or that the NTP service is down.

statusUnknown (4) Indicates that the Appliance is currently unreachable and that the current status cannot be verified.

**The following related trap notification is provided:**

- ctDeviceNTPStatusChangedTrap
ctDeviceActionsOnHoldStatus

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.14

Indicates the status of the pending actions queue. This object indicates if there are policy-driven actions that were blocked because the number of pending actions exceeded the queue size defined in the Console (Options > NAC > Action Thresholds). Queue size and action thresholds can be defined per action and/or per device.

Possible states are:

- **ok (1)** Indicates that policy actions are within the defined Action thresholds, and that there are no policy driven actions in a blocked state.

- **blockedOnExceedingThreshold (2)** Indicates that actions are blocked. One or more policies have created a queue of actions that exceeds the administrator defined threshold. The administrator can review and release blocked actions from the Console (Options > NAC > Action Thresholds).

- **blockStatusUnknown (3)** Indicates that the queue status cannot be verified (for example, if the CounterACT device is down or unreachable).

The following related trap notification is provided:

- ctDeviceActionOnHoldStatusChanged

ctDeviceChannelStatus

**OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.15

Indicates the status of the network interfaces used by the Appliance to mirror monitored traffic and insert management input. A channel is defined as a pair of monitor and response interfaces. Possible states are:

- **ok (1)** Indicates that the Appliance is currently monitoring network traffic.

- **warning (2)** Indicates a significant change in traffic on the channel’s monitoring interface. The volume of mirrored traffic may have dropped significantly, indicating that not all traffic is being monitored. A trap with this severity may report a transient effect. If the Appliance does not recover channel function within a minute or two, troubleshooting intervention is typically necessary. Significant, persistent missed traffic prevents Forescout 8.1 from reliably implementing detection, prevention, and remediation actions – and may require reconfiguration of the Appliance’s channels.

- **error (3)** Indicates that the Appliance’s internal test of the channel’s response interface repeatedly fails, and/or traffic on the monitoring interface may be asymmetric. The Appliance cannot reliably track communications or insert response traffic. This effectively prevents the Appliance from implementing detection, prevention, and remediation actions.

- **unknown (4)** Indicates that the status of channel interfaces cannot be verified at this time (for example, if the CounterACT Appliance is down or unreachable).

- **notApplicable (5)** Indicates that channels are not configured or administratively disabled.

The following related trap notification is provided:

- ctDeviceChannelStatusChangedTrap
SNMP Trap Notifications for CounterACT Appliances

The SNMP trap notifications described in this section are issued when the value of a configuration, status, or performance attribute of the CounterACT Appliance SNMP MIB changes on an Appliance.

Appliance SNMP trap notifications include varbinds to identify the reporting Appliance and to indicate severity and other information. See Common Trap Notification Varbinds.

Several of the trap notifications described here are threshold crossing alarms (TCA). Trap notification is triggered when MIB values pass configurable performance thresholds. For information about setting these thresholds, see Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications.

- The ArcSight Module also provides SNMP MIB and Trap Notification information about the interaction between CounterACT devices and their peer ArcSight servers. Refer to the ArcSight Plugin documentation.

- In order for an external network management system to query a CounterACT Appliance SNMP MIB and receive SNMP trap notifications, you must enable SNMP on the CounterACT Appliance. By default, the Forescout 8.1 SNMP agent is disabled. See SNMP Integration for details.

CounterACT Appliance trap notifications can contain the following MIB objects:

- **ctConfigurationChangedTrap**
  
  **OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.14

  Indicates a configuration change on the Appliance. In addition to the common trap notification varbinds, this trap provides the following additional varbinds to identify the configuration change:

  - **fsFieldOid**
    
    **OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.3.24
    
    The OID of the changed object. For example, if the Forescout 8.1 operator changed the ArcSight server name, this varbind contains the OID of the arcSightServerName object.

  - **fsOldValue**
    
    **OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.3.25
    
    The value of the MIB attribute before the configuration change.

  - **fsNewValue**
    
    **OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.3.26
    
    The updated value of the MIB attribute after the configuration change.

- **ctDeviceAddedTrapNotification**

  **OID:** .1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.15

  Indicates that a CounterACT Appliance was added to Enterprise Manager (EM).
**Appendix 6: SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances**

*ctDeviceRemovedTrapNotification*

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.16

Indicates that a CounterACT Appliance was removed from Enterprise Manager (EM).

*ctDeviceTrapEndpointCapacityExceeded*

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.25

This trap notification is sent when the `ctNumberOfManagedEndpoints` MIB attribute crosses the upper bound of the *Number of Hosts* threshold. Trap severity is *warning*(6).

This alarm trap is cleared by the `ctDeviceTrapEndpointCapacityNormal` trap notification.

To set performance thresholds, see [Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications](#).

*ctDeviceTrapEndpointCapacityNormal*

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.26

This trap notification is sent when the `ctNumberOfManagedEndpoints` MIB attribute crosses the lower bound of the *Number of Hosts* threshold. Trap severity is *clear*(1).

This trap notification is only sent after a `ctDeviceTrapEndpointCapacityExceeded` alarm trap was sent.

To set performance thresholds, see [Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications](#).

*ctDeviceTrapHighCPUUtilization*

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.19

This trap notification is sent when the `ctDeviceCpuUtilization` MIB attribute crosses the upper bound of the *CPU Usage* threshold. Trap severity is *warning*(6).

This alarm trap is cleared by the `ctDeviceTrapNormalCPUUtilization` trap notification.

*ctDeviceTrapNormalCPUUtilization*

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.20

This trap notification is sent when the `ctDeviceCpuUtilization` MIB attribute crosses the lower bound of the *CPU Usage* threshold. Trap severity is *clear*(1).

This trap notification is sent only after a `ctDeviceTrapHighCPUUtilization` alarm trap is sent.

To set performance thresholds, see [Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications](#).

*ctDeviceTrapHighPacketLoss*

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.28

This trap notification is sent when the `ctDevicePacketLoss` MIB attribute crosses the upper bound of the *Packet Loss* threshold. Trap severity is *warning*(6).

This alarm trap is cleared by the `ctDeviceTrapNormalPacketLoss` trap notification.

To set performance thresholds, see [Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications](#).
ctDeviceTrapNormalPacketLoss

OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.29

This trap notification is sent when the ctDevicePacketLoss MIB attribute crosses the lower bound of the Packet Loss threshold. Trap severity is clear(1).

This trap notification is sent only after a ctDeviceTrapHighPacketLoss alarm trap is sent.

To set performance thresholds, see Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications.

ctDeviceTrapHighMemorySwapping

OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.23

This trap notification is sent when the ctDeviceMemorySwaps MIB attribute crosses the upper bound of the MemorySwaps threshold. Trap severity is warning(6).

This alarm trap is cleared by the ctDeviceTrapNormalMemorySwapping trap notification.

To set performance thresholds, see Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications.

ctDeviceTrapNormalMemorySwapping

OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.24

This trap notification is sent when the ctDeviceMemorySwaps MIB attribute crosses the lower bound of the MemorySwaps threshold. Trap severity is clear(1).

This trap notification is sent only after a ctDeviceTrapHighMemorySwapping alarm trap is sent.

To set performance thresholds, see Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications.

ctDeviceConnectionStatusChangedTrap

OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.33

Indicates a change in the ctDeviceConnectionStatus MIB attribute. The severity of this alarm trap reflects the current value of the MIB attribute, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value of ctDeviceConnectionStatus</th>
<th>Severity of ctDeviceConnectionStatusChangedTrap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connectionOK (1)</td>
<td>cleared(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectionFailed (2)</td>
<td>critical (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectionStatusUnknown (3)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ctDevicePacketEngineStatusChangedTrap

OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.33

Indicates a change in the ctDeviceEngineStatus MIB attribute. The severity of this alarm trap reflects the current value of the MIB attribute, as shown in the following table.
### Appendix 6: SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances

#### Forescout Administration Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value of <strong>ctDeviceEngineStatus</strong></th>
<th>Severity of <strong>ctDevicePacketEngineStatusChangedTrap</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>engineReady (1)</td>
<td>cleared(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineInitializing (2)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineDown (3)</td>
<td>critical (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineStatusUnknown (4)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineNotApplicable (5)</td>
<td>warning (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ctDeviceHighBandwidthUtilizationTrap**

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.21

This trap notification is sent when the **ctDeviceCurrentBandwidth** MIB attribute crosses the upper bound of the *Bandwidth* threshold. Trap severity is *warning* (6).

This alarm trap is cleared by the **ctDeviceNormalBandwidthUtilizationTrap** trap notification.

To set performance thresholds, see Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications.

**ctDeviceNormalBandwidthUtilizationTrap**

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.22

This trap notification is sent when the **ctDeviceCurrentBandwidth** MIB attribute crosses the lower bound of the *Bandwidth* threshold. Trap severity is *clear* (1).

This trap notification is sent only after a **ctDeviceHighBandwidthUtilizationTrap** alarm trap is sent.

To set performance thresholds, see Performance Thresholds for SNMP Notifications.

**ctDeviceHaStatusChangedTrap**

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.30

Indicates a change in the **ctDeviceHaStatus** MIB attribute. The severity of this alarm trap reflects the current value of the MIB attribute, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value of <strong>ctDeviceHaStatus</strong></th>
<th>Severity of <strong>ctDeviceHaStatusChangedTrap</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>haStatusOK (1)</td>
<td>cleared(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haStatusDegraded (2)</td>
<td>major(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haInMaintenanceMode(3)</td>
<td>warning(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haNotSupported(4)</td>
<td>cleared(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haStatusUnknown(5)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ctDeviceLicenseStatusChangedTrap**

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.17

Indicates a change in the **ctDeviceLicenseStatus** MIB attribute. The severity of this alarm trap reflects the current value of the MIB attribute, as shown in the following table.
## Appendix 6: SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances

### Value of ctDeviceLicenseStatus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value of ctDeviceLicenseStatus</th>
<th>Severity of ctDeviceLicenseStatusChangedTrap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>licenseValid (1)</td>
<td>cleared(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licenseViolation (2)</td>
<td>warning(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licenseInvalid (3)</td>
<td>major(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licenseStatusUnknown (4)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ctDeviceNTPStatusChangedTrap

**OID**: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.18

Indicates a change in the ctDeviceNtpStatus MIB attribute. The severity of this alarm trap reflects the current value of the MIB attribute, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value of ctDeviceNtpStatus</th>
<th>Severity of ctDeviceNTPStatusChangedTrap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ntpSyncOk (1)</td>
<td>cleared(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntpSyncFailed (2)</td>
<td>major(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntpNotApplicable (3)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntpStatusUnknown (4)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ctDeviceActionOnHoldStatusChanged

**OID**: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.32

Indicates a change in the ctDeviceActionsOnHoldStatus MIB attribute. The severity of this alarm trap reflects the current value of the MIB attribute, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value of ctDeviceActionsOnHoldStatus</th>
<th>Severity of ctDeviceActionOnHoldStatusChanged</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actionsOk (1)</td>
<td>cleared(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actionsBlockedOnExceedingTreshold (2)</td>
<td>major(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actionsBlockStatusUnknown (3)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ctDeviceChannelStatusChangedTrap

**OID**: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.0.31

Indicates a change in the ctDeviceChannelStatus MIB attribute. The severity of this alarm trap reflects the current value of the MIB attribute, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value of ctDeviceChannelStatus</th>
<th>Severity of ctDeviceChannelStatusChangedTrap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>channelsOk (1)</td>
<td>cleared(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>channelsWarning (2)</td>
<td>warning(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>channelsError (3)</td>
<td>critical(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>channelsUnknown (4)</td>
<td>indeterminate(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 6: SNMP MIB for CounterACT Appliances

**Value of ctDeviceChannelStatus**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ctDeviceChannelStatus</th>
<th>Severity of ctDeviceChannelStatusChangedTrap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>channelsNotApplicable (5)</td>
<td>is warning(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Common Trap Notification Varbinds**

SNMP trap notifications issued by Forescout 8.1 always include a sequence of variable bindings (*varbinds*). A varbind is an SNMP *key-value* attribute pair, composed of the varbind OID (key) and its assigned value. For example, the trap notification `ctDeviceChannelStatusChangedTrap` always includes the following varbind:

\[.1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.3.21 = 1\]

where:

\[.1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.3.21\] is the OID of varbind `fsTrapSeverity`

1 is the severity value assigned to this OID. For the `ctDeviceChannelStatusChangedTrap` trap notification, a varbind severity value of 1 indicates that trap’s severity is now cleared, given that the channel status has changed to `channelsOk`.

The following varbind objects are common to all Forescout 8.1 trap notifications:

**ctDeviceId**

**OID:** `1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.1`

An internally defined unique identifier for the CounterACT Appliance. The Enterprise Manager assigns a unique Device ID to itself, and to each managed Appliance. The Device ID provides a consistent reference to the Appliance as long as it is associated with the Enterprise Manager.

**ctDeviceIpAddress**

**OID:** `1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.2`

The IP address of the Appliance or Enterprise Manager that issued the SNMP trap notification.

**ctDeviceIpAddressType**

**OID:** `1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.4.3.1.3`

The type of IP address in the `ctDeviceIpAddress` varbind object. Valid values are:

- `ipv4` (1) Indicates an IPv4 address as defined by the InetAddressIPv4 textual convention.
- `ipv6` (2) Indicates an IPv6 address as defined by the InetAddressIPv6 textual convention.

**fsTrapSeverity**

**OID:** `1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.3.21`

The severity assigned to the trap notification:
Cleared (assigned value = 1): Indicates that this trap notification clears one or more previously reported alarm traps. This trap clears all alarms for this managed object that have the same Alarm type.

Indeterminate (assigned value = 2): Indicates that the severity level cannot be determined.

Critical (assigned value = 3): Indicates that a service-affecting condition has occurred and immediate corrective action is required. This severity is reported when a managed object goes completely out of service and its function must be restored.

Major (assigned value = 4): Indicates that a service-affecting condition has developed and urgent corrective action is required. This severity is reported when there is a severe degradation in the capability of the managed object and its full capability must be restored.

Minor (assigned value = 5): Indicates a fault condition that does not affect service. Corrective action should be taken to prevent a more serious fault that may affect service. This severity is assigned to a detected alarm condition that is not currently degrading the capacity of the managed object.

Warning (assigned value = 6): Indicates the detection of a potential or impending service-affecting fault, before any significant effects have been felt. Action should be taken to further diagnose (if necessary) and correct the problem before it affects service.

Informational (assigned value = 7): Provided for informational purposes only.

With the exception of the Informational severity, all the other severity levels are defined in the CCITT standard X.733.

$fsTrapTime$

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.3.21

Date and time when the event occurred in the Appliance, provided in the format of the DateAndTime field, as specified in the SNMPv2-Textual Conventions standard.

$fsTrapId$

**OID:** 1.3.6.1.4.1.11789.3.21

A unique identifier for each issued trap notification. The ID is an integer based on a counter which increments monotonically until a maximum value is reached, and then begins again from zero.

Based on a corporate network configuration (UDP), it is possible that the trap receiver may receive multiple copies of the same trap notification. In such a case, the Trap ID and Trap Time can be used to identify duplicate trap notifications.
Appendix 7: Customizing User Interfaces

- The Forescout 8.1 User Portal Builder
- The Legacy Customization Tool
- Customize Text and Labels
The Forescout 8.1 User Portal Builder

Use the Forescout 8.1 User Portal Builder to customize the following Forescout 8.1 user interfaces:

- HTTP Notification
- HTTP Login
- Guest Management Portal

The legacy Customization Tool is still used for customizing the interfaces for HTTP Localhost Login, Start SecureConnector, Start Macintosh Updates, Start Windows Updates, Windows Self Remediation and Compliance Center. See The Legacy Customization Tool.

When using the User Portal Builder, each skin is responsive to laptop/PC mode, tablet mode, and mobile device mode. There is no unique customization for mobile devices.
Opening the User Portal Builder

To access the User Portal Builder, see Logging In to Forescout Web Portals. Alternatively, you can select Options from the Tools menu, navigate to NAC > HTTP Redirection, and select Open User Portal Builder.
Using the User Portal Builder to Customize Skins

The User Portal Builder includes an out-of-the-box default skin for each of the Forescout 8.1 user interfaces.

Each Forescout 8.1 user interface has its own type of skin. You can customize a skin in different ways:

- Basic Customization
- Advanced Customization

Basic Customization

The User Portal Builder provides a simple way to edit and preview:

- the color settings of the most commonly customized fonts
- the color settings of the most commonly customized background areas and buttons
- the logo

New skins can be added, and skins that were added can be edited.

**To add a new skin:**

1. In the User Portal Builder, select **Add**.

```
+ ADD | EDIT | DEPLOY

5 Add HTTP Login Skin
   Add HTTP Notification Skin
1 Add Guest Management Portal Skin

Default HTTP Login Skin

HTTP Notification
HTTP Login
```

2. Select the user interface:
   - **Add HTTP Login Skin** to customize the HTTP Login window.
   - **Add HTTP Notification Skin** to customize the HTTP Notification window.
   - **Add Guest Management Skin** to customize the Guest Management Portal.

3. A copy of the default skin opens for you to edit.
4. Edit the skin colors and logo as needed, and assign a name to the new skin. ** Uploaded logo files must be in PNG format and cannot be larger than 1 MB. **

5. Name the skin, and select **Save** to save it to the User Portal Builder. **

**Advanced Customization**

You may want to configure user interface features that are not included in the User Portal Builder basic customization. For example:
Appendix 7: Customizing User Interfaces

- Fonts and font sizes
- Field shapes and positions
- Background images

**To edit customized features:**

1. In the Add Skin page, select **Use a CSS file**.

2. Select **Download the default CSS template** to download the CSS file of a pre-defined skin template. (Optional)

3. Edit the downloaded skin or a previously added skin.

4. When you are done editing the CSS file, select the **Upload CSS** button to upload it to the User Portal Builder.

   - The User Portal Builder cannot be used to localize user interface text. To localize the text, select **Options** from the Console **Tools** menu, and navigate to Advanced > Language Localization > Endpoint Messages. For more information, see Localize Forescout 8.1 Redirected Web Pages and Messages.

**Deploying a Skin for a User Interface**

Exactly one skin is deployed throughout your network for each type of user interface. In the User Portal Builder, select the skin to be deployed in place of the one currently deployed, and then select **Deploy**.
The Legacy Customization Tool

Use the legacy Customization Tool to customize the following Forescout 8.1 user interfaces for laptops and PCs:

- HTTP Localhost Login
- Start SecureConnector
- Start Macintosh Updates
- Start Windows Updates
- Windows Self Remediation
- Compliance Center

Opening the Legacy Customization Tool

To open the Customization Tool:

1. Select Options from the Tools menu, navigate to NAC > HTTP Redirection, and select Open Legacy Customization Tool.
Appendix 7: Customizing User Interfaces

The HTTP Redirection Page: Customization Tool page opens in your web browser. The page contains a table that lists all saved customized pages. When first using the tool, a default template is displayed. This default template is automatically selected to be used to create a new customized template.
To use a customized page, it must be published. In the HTTP Redirection Page: Customization Tool page, the template published status is displayed in the Status column. The icons and descriptions are as follows:

- Template used when FCC compliance is enabled
- Template used when FCC compliance is disabled
- Template used for all general pages
- Indicates that the template is not being used
- Indicates that the template has been published in the past

The HTTP Redirection Page: Customization Tool page contains the following buttons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Creates new templates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Opens saved customized pages for modification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplicate</td>
<td>Creates a duplicate customized page from an existing saved customized page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Deletes a saved customized page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publish</td>
<td>Integrates saved customized pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preview</td>
<td>Previews a saved customized page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export</td>
<td>Exports saved customized pages to external systems, such as backup servers in Web Developer mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import</td>
<td>Imports saved customized pages from external systems, such as backup servers in Web Developer mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Select **Add** to create a new template or select an existing template and select **Edit**. The Customization Tool opens.
For customization, Forescout 8.1 provides you with the basic option for entering the customization elements, as well as an advanced HTML editing option.

To work with the advanced features, prior HTML knowledge is required.

3. In the Name section type the template name in the Label field and a template description in the Description field.

4. Complete the rest of the fields in accordance with your preferences; see Basic Customization Using the Tool and Advanced Customization Using the Tool.
5. Select **Save**. If the template name already exists, an overwrite confirmation dialog box opens. Select **OK**. The template is saved and the page preview opens.


### Using the Customization Tool to Customize Skins

Each Forescout 8.1 user interface has its own type of skin. You can customize a skin in different ways:

- Basic Customization Using the Tool
- Advanced Customization Using the Tool

#### Basic Customization Using the Tool

There are three configuration areas available for customization:

- **Page Body**: Used to configure the page Header and Footer.
- **Page Properties**: Used to configure the page background.
- **File Manager**: Used to manage images, CSS files and JS files used in the Header, the Footer and the background.

#### HTML Head Tag Elements

The **HTML Head Tag Elements** area is used to add HTML Head Tag elements. See Advanced Customization Using the Tool.

#### Header and Footer

In the Header and Footer area there are two sub-areas, one for the Header and one for the Footer.

The Header and Footer customization options are the same.

#### Images

The **Image** drop-down menu lists all uploaded images. For details, see File Manager. To include an image in the Header or Footer, select the image from the drop-down menu.

Where the selected image is placed in the Header or Footer, the image alignment is customized by selecting one of the following options under the **Image** field:

- Left
- Center
- Right
**Text**

In the **Text** field type the text to be displayed in the Header.

Where the entered text is placed in the Header or Footer, the text alignment is customized by selecting one of the following options under the **Text** field:

- Left
- Center
- Right

The following figure illustrates center aligned text.

For advanced customization select **Advanced Header Customization** or **Advanced Footer Customization**, see [Advanced Customization Using the Tool](#).

**Page Properties**

In the Page properties area there are the following sub-customization areas:

- Page Background Color: Used to customize the page background color.
- Page Background Image: Used to add an image in the page background.
Appendix 7: Customizing User Interfaces

- Use Forescout StyleSheet: Used to remove the pre-configured Forescout page configuration.

**Page Background Color**

The current background color is displayed in the icon.

To customize the background color, select the icon. The Background Color Customization panel opens.

The current background color is displayed at the top right. To its left, the proposed (selected) color is displayed.

In the center color strip all the available colors are displayed. Where the arrow is located, the expanded color option is displayed in the left area. The color can be selected from the left area or a color code can be entered on the panel’s right side.

Select your preferred color and then apply the color by selecting the icon. The color is displayed in the modified icon.

**Page Background Image**

The Page Background Image drop-down menu provides a list of all uploaded images. See File Manager for details about how to add an image to this list. To include an image in the background, select the image from the drop-down menu.

**Use Forescout StyleSheet**

The default Forescout style sheet is the standard HTTP message page. This is set up to enable three customization areas, Header, Footer and background.

To enable more HTML customization options clear Use Forescout StyleSheet. After clearing the checkbox, the current page configurations are removed, effectively providing a page without styling.

**File Manager**

The File Manager area is used for managing images used in the HTTP page customization. The images can be used in the Header, Footer and the background. Only images, CSS files and JS files uploaded to the File Manager can be utilized in the page customization.
To upload an image:
2. Navigate to the folder containing the image to upload.
3. Select the image and select Open. The path is displayed in the field next to the browse button.
4. Select Upload. The uploaded image is displayed in the File Manager uploaded file list. The uploaded image is also added to the Image drop-down menu in the Header and Footer and Page Properties sections.

To preview an uploaded image:
1. Select the checkbox next to the image to view.
2. Select Preview. The image is displayed in the Preview Area.

If an image is used in the Header, Footer or background, a ✔ is displayed in the File Manager uploaded file list.

To remove an image from the list:
1. Select the checkbox next to the image to remove.
2. Select Remove. The image is removed from the list.

If the image is being used in the Header, Footer or background, an error message dialog box opens.

Advanced Customization Using the Tool
Advanced customization requires good HTML knowledge. Forescout 8.1 provides the following advanced customization options:

- Additional Head Tags Elements
- Advanced Header and Footer customization

In the HTML Head Tag Elements section, additional HTML Head Tag elements can be added to enhance the HTML customization options. These can include elements such as scripts, instructions to the browser where to find style sheets, and meta-information.

The following tags can be added to this section: <title>, <base>, <link>, <meta>, <script> and <style>.

For advanced Header or Footer customization, in the Header and Footer section select Advanced Customization. The simple customization Image and Text field area is replaced by the advanced customization text box displaying the basic customization HTML equivalent.
Appendix 7: Customizing User Interfaces

It is important that the Place holder for the Forescout Message area is not deleted from the code.

The advanced HTML customization automatically overrides the basic customization.

**Saving and Integrating a Customized Page**

To use a customized page, it must be published. In the HTTP Redirection Page: Customization Tool page the template published status is displayed in the Status column. The icons are as follows:

- Used when the endpoint is FCC compliant
- Used when FCC detects that the endpoint is not compliant
- Used for all general pages

**To create a duplicate customized page from an existing page:**

1. Create the customized page as required see Basic Customization Using the Tool and Advanced Customization Using the Tool.

2. Select Duplicate. The Save As dialog box opens.

3. Enter a new page name and description, and select Save. The customized page is saved and is displayed in the Customize HTTP Page the next time it is opened.

**To publish a page:**

1. Save the customized page.
2. Select **Publish**.

3. From the drop-down menu, select one of the following publishing options:
   - **General**: This option is for all pages.
   - **Comply (FCC mode)**: This option is for all FCC compliant pages.
   - **Not Comply (FCC mode)**: This option is for all noncompliant FCC pages.

4. Select **Publish**. The customized page is integrated.

**Customized Forescout Compliance Center (FCC) Pages**

The Forescout Compliance Center (FCC) lets you display your compliance status at endpoints for the purpose of:

- Letting endpoint users log in
- Bringing endpoints users to network compliance

When the FCC mode is activated, the two FCC customized pages are engaged. If the endpoint is compliant the Comply (FCC Mode) customized page is used. The following FCC compliant page example has a green background. See [Working with the Forescout Compliance Center](#) for details.
If the endpoint is not compliant the Not Comply (FCC Mode) customized page is used. The following FCC noncompliant page example has a red background and a stop sign.

When FCC mode is disabled in Forescout 8.1, the General customized page is used.

To use this feature, you must have both Assets Portal User and Policy Management permissions. See Access to Console Tools – Permissions for details.

The customized page can be integrated in one of three ways:

- **General**: The customization is applied to all Forescout 8.1 redirected pages.
- **Comply (FCC Mode)**: The customization is applied only to Forescout 8.1 endpoints that are compliant with the Forescout Compliance Center requirements.
- **Not Comply (FCC Mode)**: The customization is applied to all Forescout 8.1 endpoints not compliant with the Forescout Compliance Center configuration.

**Customize Text and Labels**

Several Forescout 8.1 HTTP actions include texts and labels displayed on mobile endpoints. You can edit these items or can localize them so that they appear in any language that your operating system supports.
Text and label edits you make are applied to laptop/PC and mobile endpoints, with the exceptions of three items that are applied to mobile endpoints only. These three items are described below.

You can apply HTML formatting code to texts, for example, bold and underlines. A new line <Enter> in action text areas is automatically translated to a <br> tag.

**To localize/customize HTTP Mobile Redirect Texts:**

1. Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu and then select **Advanced > Language Localization > Endpoint Messages**.
2. Type the word *mobile* in the search field.
3. Select an entry and select **Edit**.

4. Enter the new text.

5. Select **OK**. You can select **Default** to return to the default text.
The elements tagged in the screen are described in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Displayed</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Why you are being asked for a User Name and Password? You have been asked to provide your user name and password in order to connect to a secured network. In the Login page, enter your user name and password, then select <strong>Login</strong>. Otherwise, you may connect as a guest by tapping the Register button and completing the form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ForeScout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Don't have a username?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface

- About the Certificate Interface
- Configure Certificate-Related Settings
- Configure the Trusted Certificates Table
- Configure the System Certificates Table
About the Certificate Interface

The Forescout 8.1 certificate interface is the easy-to-use method for handling both trusted and system certificates. This interface replaces previously used *fstools* features.

Each certificate is associated with a specific scope, allowing the same or different certificates to be used for different Forescout 8.1 subsystems running on different devices. A scope is one or more specific Forescout 8.1 services or applications running on one or more CounterACT devices.

**To access the Certificate Interface:**

- In the Forescout Console, select **Options > Certificates**. The Certificates pane opens. This pane provides general certificate-related configuration settings. See [Configure Certificate-Related Settings](#).

- In the Options tree, select **Certificates > Trusted Certificates**. Use this pane to add certificate authority (CA) certificates to the Trusted Certificates table, and to configure the scopes for which they are trusted. See [Configure the Trusted Certificates Table](#).

- In the Options tree, select **Certificates > System Certificates**. Use this pane to create certificates and add them to the System Certificates table, and to configure the scopes for which they are used. See [Configure the System Certificates Table](#).

> Certificates used in earlier versions of Forescout are automatically migrated, along with their scopes, to the System Certificates and Trusted Certificates tables.

Configure Certificate-Related Settings

Configure and tune the following certificate-related settings:

- [Configure Certificate Expiration Monitoring](#)
- [Auto-download CRLs](#)
- [Verify Ongoing TLS Sessions](#)
Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface

Configure Certificate Expiration Monitoring

Define email addresses for Forescout 8.1 to send notifications regarding certificate expiration. By default, notifications are only sent to the Forescout 8.1 Operator. You can also send notifications to an additional email address.

To configure certificate expiration monitoring:

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has CounterACT Crypto Administration permissions.

2. Select Options, and navigate to Certificates. The Certificates pane opens.

3. In the Email Notice for Certificate Expiration section, configure to send email notices as follows:
   - Send only to CounterACT Operator (the Operator email address is configured in the Console in Options > General > Mail).
   - Send to CounterACT Operator and to one additional email address.

4. Configure the time interval to Send initial notice (prior to expiration). By default, the value is 60 days.

5. Configure the time interval to Send repeat notices every X time interval. By default, the value is 2 weeks.

6. Select Apply.

Auto-download CRLs

Configure whether, and how often to auto-download certificate revocation lists (CRLs) of trusted and system certificates. If a new CRL is found, there may be new revocation information available in the system. This option is enabled by default, with the time period set to check for new CRLs every hour.
**Forescout 8.1 works with complete CRL files. It does not support delta CRL files.**

**To auto-download CRLs:**

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has *CounterACT Crypto Administration* permissions.
2. Select Options, and navigate to **Certificates**. The Certificates pane opens.
3. In the **Auto-download CRLs of trusted and system certificates** section, select **Auto-download Certificate Revocation Lists every**, and set a time interval to check for new CRLs.
4. Select **Apply**.

**Verify Ongoing TLS Sessions**

Configure whether, and how often to verify certificates for ongoing TLS sessions. Sessions can sometimes be kept alive for performance reasons to serve multiple requests (for example, User Directory Plugin connection to Active Directory server for properties). By default, this option is cleared.

**To verify ongoing TLS sessions:**

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has *CounterACT Crypto Administration* permissions.
2. Select Options, and navigate to **Certificates**. The Certificates pane opens.
3. In the Ongoing TLS Sessions section, select **Re-verify TLS sessions every**, and set a time interval to verify ongoing TLS sessions. By default, the time period is 1 day.
4. Select **Apply**.

**Configure the Trusted Certificates Table**

To ensure secure communication, Forescout 8.1 verifies certificates presented by external services and applications. Peer certificates can be verified only if the issuer chain they present ends with a certificate authority (CA) that is trusted for the specific scope.

Ensure that each subsystem is scoped to the correct certificate on every device on which it runs.

> When you add, edit or remove a certificate or trust chain, Forescout 8.1 restarts plugins and product components in the scope of that certificate or trust chain.

**Import and Configure Trusted Certificates**

Import the CA certificates to be trusted by Forescout 8.1 into the Trusted Certificates table, and define the issuer chain and scope for which each certificate is trusted.
To import a trusted certificate and configure its scope:

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has CounterACT Crypto Administration permissions.

2. Select Options, and navigate to Certificates > Trusted Certificates.

3. Select Add to import a CA certificate file for verifying system certificates presented by external services and applications. The Add a Trusted Certificate wizard opens.

4. Select the browse button.
5. Browse to and select the CA certificate file to be imported, and select **Apply**. The file is imported.

6. Select or clear the checkbox to enable or disable the imported certificate for the defined scope. Certificates are trusted only if they are enabled for the scope.

7. Select **Next**. The Certificate Details pane opens, displaying the details of the imported certificate.

8. Select **Next**. The Trusted for Subsystems pane opens.

9. To set the scope of subsystems that trust peers presenting certificates signed by this CA, do one of the following:
   - To indicate that all Forescout 8.1 subsystems trust peers presenting a certificate signed by this CA, select **All subsystems**.
   - To indicate that only specific Forescout 8.1 subsystems trust peers presenting a certificate signed by this CA, select **Subsystems selected below**. In the table, select the relevant subsystems.
Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface

- The CA certificate scope includes also the CounterACT device on which the subsystem runs. See step 11.

10. Select Next. The Trusted for Devices pane opens.

11. To set the scope of CounterACT devices on which the CA certificate is trusted, do one of the following:
   - To trust the CA certificate on all CounterACT devices, select All CounterACT devices.
   - To trust the CA certificate on only specific CounterACT devices, select CounterACT devices selected below. In the table, select the relevant devices.

- The CA certificate scope includes also the subsystem that presents the signed certificate. See step 9.

12. Select Finish.

13. Select Apply. A dialog box displays all the changes to be applied. If the changes are correct, select OK.

   Forescout 8.1 restarts plugins and product components in the scope of the CA certificate.

**Edit Trusted Certificate Entries**

Edit the certificate scope, or replace the CA certificate for the defined scope.

- **To edit a CA certificate entry:**
  1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has CounterACT Crypto Administration permissions.
2. Select Options, and navigate to Certificates > Trusted Certificates. The Trusted Certificates pane opens.

3. Select the table entry to be edited, and select Edit. In the Edit the Trusted Certificate dialog box, the Certificate Details tab opens, displaying the details of the CA certificate.

4. To import a different CA certificate for the scope defined in this table entry, select the Import button, browse to and select the CA certificate file to be imported, and select Apply. The file is imported.

5. Select or clear the checkbox to enable or disable the certificate for the defined scope. A CA certificate is trusted only when enabled for the scope.

6. To change the subsystem scope, select the Trusted for Subsystems tab.
7. To set the scope of Forescout 8.1 subsystems that trust this CA certificate, do one of the following:

   – To trust this certificate for all Forescout 8.1 subsystems verifying external certificates, select **All subsystems**.
   – To trust this certificate for specific Forescout 8.1 subsystems verifying external certificates, select **Subsystems selected below**. In the table, select the relevant subsystems.

   > The CA certificate scope includes also CounterACT device on which the subsystem runs. See step 9.

8. To change the CounterACT device scope, select the Trusted for Devices tab.
9. To set the scope of CounterACT devices on which Forescout 8.1 subsystems can run when presenting the system certificate signed by this certificate, do one of the following:

- To allow subsystems running on all CounterACT devices, select **All CounterACT devices**.
- To allow subsystems running on only specific CounterACT devices, select **CounterACT devices selected below**. In the table, select the relevant devices.

> The CA certificate scope includes also the subsystem that presents the signed certificate. See step 7.

10. Select **OK**.

11. Select **Apply**. A dialog box displays all the changes to be applied. If the changes are correct, select **OK**.

Forescout 8.1 restarts plugins and product components in the scope of the CA certificate.

### Remove Trusted Certificate Entries

You can remove a certificate table entry.

**To remove a certificate entry:**

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has **CounterACT Crypto Administration** permissions.

2. Select Options, and navigate to **Certificates > Trusted Certificates**. The Trusted Certificates pane opens.

3. Select the table entry to be removed, and select **Remove**.

4. Select **Apply**. A dialog box displays all the changes to be applied. If the changes are correct, select **OK**.

Forescout 8.1 restarts plugins and product components in the scope of the CA certificate.

### Configure the System Certificates Table

To ensure secure communication, Forescout 8.1 presents system certificates to external services and applications for them to authenticate Forescout 8.1. The scope defined in the certificate table determines which certificate Forescout 8.1 presents for each specific subsystem, such as Web Portal and User Directory Plugin, running on each specific device.

Ensure that each subsystem is scoped to the correct certificate on every device on which it runs.

> When you add, edit or remove a certificate or trust chain, Forescout 8.1 restarts plugins and product components in the scope of that certificate or trust chain.
Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface

Use the System Certificates pane to add or import certificates, their private keys, and their issuer chains, and to configure the subsystems and devices using these certificates.

System certificates used in earlier versions of Forescout are automatically migrated, along with their scopes, to the System Certificates table as system certificates. The description of each of these migrated certificates begins with Migrated from, followed by the Forescout 8.1 subsystem that uses it.

Certificate Precedence between Appliance and Enterprise Manager

When adding an Appliance to an Enterprise Manager, the certificates of one may take precedence over the other, according to the following scenarios:

- A first Appliance is added to an Enterprise Manager. You can copy the full Appliance configuration, including certificates to the Enterprise Manager, or to define them from scratch.
- An Appliance is added to an Enterprise Manager that has no certificates for the Appliance. The Appliance certificates are pushed to the Enterprise Manager, and scoped for the Appliance.
- An Appliance is added to an Enterprise Manager that has certificates whose scope covers the Appliance. The Enterprise Manager certificates take precedence, and the Appliance certificates are removed. The Enterprise Manager certificate should be scoped for all-devices to qualify.
- To retain the original Appliance certificates, export them to a PKCS#12 file before adding the Appliance to the Enterprise Manager, and import the saved certificates once the Appliance has been successfully added.

Import and Configure System Certificates

Import system certificates into the System Certificates table, and define the issuer chain and scope for which each certificate is presented by Forescout 8.1 to an external service or application.

To import and configure a PKCS#12 certificate:

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has CounterACT Crypto Administration permissions.
2. Select Options, and navigate to Certificates > System Certificates. The System Certificates pane opens.
3. Select **Add from PKCS#12** to import a certificate. The Manage System Certificate wizard opens to the Import pane.

4. Select the browse button, select the PKCS#12 file to be imported, and select **Apply**.

5. Select **Next**, enter the private key password for the signed certificate file, and select **OK**. The file is imported.

6. Select **Next**. The Certificate Details pane opens, displaying the details of the imported certificate.

7. Select **Next**. The Issuer Chain pane opens.

8. To add a certificate into the issuer chain, select **Add**, browse to and select the certificate file to be imported to the chain, and select **Apply**. The file is imported.
9. Select **Next**, the Scope pane opens.

10. To set the scope of Forescout 8.1 subsystems that present the system certificate to external services and applications, do one of the following in the **Used for Subsystem** field:
   - To present the system certificate for all subsystems, select **All**.
   - To select a specific subsystem for which the certificate is presented, select the relevant subsystem.

   You can select either **All** or one specific subsystem. To use the same certificate for some, but not all, Forescout 8.1 subsystems, duplicate the certificate and edit the new certificate’s scope. See [Duplicate System Certificate Entries](#).

11. To set the scope of CounterACT devices on which Forescout 8.1 subsystems can present the system certificate, do one of the following in the **Used for Device** field:
   - To allow subsystems running on all CounterACT devices to present the certificate, select **All**.
   - To allow subsystems running on only a specific CounterACT device to present the certificate, select the relevant device.

   You can select either **All** or one specific device. To use the same certificate for some, but not all, CounterACT devices, duplicate the certificate and edit the new certificate’s scope. See [Duplicate System Certificate Entries](#).
12. Select **Next**. The Description pane opens.

13. Enter a user-friendly description to identify this certificate and its scope in the System Certificates table.

14. Select or clear the checkbox to enable or disable the imported certificate for the defined scope. Certificates are presented only when enabled for the scope.

15. Select **Finish**. The certificate is displayed in the System Certificates pane.

16. Select **Apply**. A summary of the changes to be applied is displayed. If the changes are correct, select **Yes**.

   Forescout 8.1 restarts plugins and product components in the scope of the certificate.

**Generate a New System Certificate**

If a new certificate is required for communicating with external services or applications, use the System Certificates > Generate CSR option to do the following:

1. Define the scope of the new system certificate.
2. Generate a certificate signing request (CSR).
3. Copy the CSR text and send it to an external certificate authority (CA).
4. After the CA creates and sends the signed system certificate to Forescout 8.1, import it to the certificate table entry.
5. Define or review the issuer chain of the certificate.
6. Define a user-friendly description to easily identify the certificate in the System Certificates table.

**Self-Signed Certificates**
If you need a temporary certificate until a permanent one is issued, or if a "dummy" certificate will suffice for demo/lab environments where the security, even of secure connections, is not as critical, you can create a new system certificate that is self-signed. To work with this type of certificate, it is recommended to do one of the following:

- Add the self-signed system certificate as trusted to the services that need to verify it.
- Disable certificate validation at the verifying end.

**Generate a CSR for a New System Certificate**

To generate a CSR for a signed system certificate and configure its scope:

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has *CounterACT Crypto Administration* permissions.

2. Select Options, and navigate to **Certificates > System Certificates**. The System Certificates pane opens.

3. Select **Generate CSR** to create a signed certificate to be verified by external services and applications. The Manage System Certificate wizard opens to the CSR Form pane. For your convenience, most of the fields are automatically populated with the values used during the last CSR. You can set the certificate validity from 30 days to 10 years. The default validity is three years.
4. Complete the fields and select **Next**. When the CSR generation completes, the details of the generated CSR are displayed.

5. Select **Next**.
Appendix 8: Configuring the Certificate Interface

6. Do one of the following:

- If you have not yet received the signed certificate from the external CA, select **Import certificates later**. When the certificate becomes available, you can download it to the local file system and then use the Edit feature to import it to this certificate table entry. See Edit System Certificate Entries.

- If you have access to the certificate file created by the external CA, select **Import certificates from selected PKCS#7 file**, and browse to and select the signed certificate file to be imported (the following file extensions are supported: .p7b, .pem, .7).

- If you can view the text of the PEM certificate created by the external CA, select **Import certificates from the PEM text below**, and paste the text of the signed certificate into the Import pane.

7. Select **Next**. The Issuer Chain pane opens.
8. To add a certificate into the issuer chain, select **Add**, browse to and select the certificate file to be imported to the chain, and select **Apply**. The file is imported.

9. Select **Next**, the Scope pane opens.

10. To set the scope of Forescout 8.1 subsystems that present the system certificate to external services and applications, do one of the following in the **Used for Subsystem** field:
   - To present the system certificate for all subsystems, select **All**.
   - To select a specific subsystem for which the certificate is presented, select the relevant subsystem.

   You can select either **All** or one specific subsystem. To use the same certificate for some, but not all, Forescout 8.1 subsystems, duplicate the certificate and edit the new certificate's scope. See **Duplicate System Certificate Entries**.

11. To set the scope of CounterACT devices on which subsystems can present the system certificate, do one of the following in the **Used for Device** field:
   - To allow subsystems running on all CounterACT devices to present the certificate, select **All**.
   - To allow subsystems running on only a specific CounterACT device to present the certificate, select the relevant device.

   You can select either **All** or one specific device. To use the same certificate for some, but not all, CounterACT devices, duplicate the certificate and edit the new certificate's scope. See **Duplicate System Certificate Entries**.

12. Select **Next**. The Description pane opens.
13. Enter a user-friendly description to identify this certificate and its scope in the System Certificates table.

14. Select or clear the checkbox to enable or disable the imported certificate for the defined scope. Certificates are presented only when enabled for the scope.

15. Select **Finish**. The certificate is displayed in the System Certificates pane.

16. Select **Apply**. A summary of the changes to be applied is displayed. If the changes are correct, select **Yes**.

**Duplicate System Certificate Entries**

You can create a duplicate of a certificate entry and then modify it. This is useful when you want to use the same certificate for a different scope.

**To duplicate a certificate entry:**

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has *CounterACT Crypto Administration* permissions.

2. Select Options, and navigate to **Certificates > System Certificates**. The System Certificates pane opens.

3. Select the table entry to be duplicated, and select **Duplicate**. In the System Certificate dialog box, the Certificate Details tab opens, displaying the details copied from the existing system certificate.

4. Edit the scope of the new certificate, or replace the certificate. See [Edit System Certificate Entries](#).

**Export System Certificate Entries**

Export System Certificates as a PKCS#12 file.

**To export a certificate entry:**

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has *CounterACT Crypto Administration* permissions.

2. Select Options, and navigate to **Certificates > System Certificates**. The System Certificates pane opens.
3. Select the table entry to be exported, and select **Export to PKCS#12**. The Export system certificate dialog box opens.

![Export System Certificate Dialog Box](image)

4. Select a certificate file to export to, and provide a private key password and an alias name for the file. Select **OK** to finalize.

**Edit System Certificate Entries**

Edit the certificate scope, or replace the certificate for the defined scope.

**To edit a certificate entry:**

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has *CounterACT Crypto Administration* permissions.

2. Select Options, and navigate to **Certificates > System Certificates**. The System Certificates pane opens.

3. Select the table entry to be edited, and select **Edit**. In the System Certificate dialog box, the Certificate Details tab opens, displaying the details of the system certificate.
4. To import a replacement certificate for the scope defined in this table entry, select the **Import** button, browse to and select the certificate file to be imported, and select **Apply**. The file is imported.

5. Select or clear the checkbox to enable or disable the certificate. A certificate is presented to external services and application only when it is enabled for the scope.

6. To manage the certificate issuer chain, select the Issuer Chain tab.

7. To add a certificate file to the issuer chain, select **Add**, browse to and select the certificate file to be imported to the chain, and select **Apply**. The file is imported.

8. To change the certificate scope, select the Scope tab.

9. To set the scope of Forescout 8.1 subsystems that present the system certificate to external services and applications, do one of the following in the **Used for Subsystem** field:
   - To present the system certificate for all subsystems, select **All**.
   - To select a specific subsystem for which the certificate is presented, select the relevant subsystem.

   You can select either **All** or one specific subsystem. To use the same certificate for some, but not all, Forescout 8.1 subsystems, duplicate the certificate and edit the new certificate’s scope. See [Duplicate System Certificate Entries](#).
10. To set the scope of CounterACT devices on which subsystems can present the system certificate, do one of the following in the **Used for Device** field:
   - To allow subsystems running on all CounterACT devices to present the certificate, select **All**.
   - To allow subsystems running on only a specific CounterACT device to present the certificate, select the relevant device.

You can select either **All** or exactly one specific device. To use the same certificate for some, but not all, CounterACT devices, duplicate the certificate and edit the new certificate’s scope. See [Duplicate System Certificate Entries](#).

11. To review the certificate signing request (CSR) used for creating this certificate, select the CSR Details tab.

12. Select **OK**.

13. Select **Apply**. A summary the changes to be applied is displayed. If the changes are correct, select **Yes**.

   Forescout 8.1 restarts plugins and product components in the scope of the certificate.

---

**Remove System Certificate Entries**

You can remove a certificate table entry.

**To remove a certificate entry:**

1. Log in to the Forescout Console using an account that has **CounterACT Crypto Administration** permissions.

2. Select Options, and navigate to **Certificates > System Certificates**. The System Certificates pane opens.

3. Select the table entry to be removed, and select **Remove**.

4. Select **Apply**. A summary the changes to be applied is displayed. If the changes are correct, select **Yes**.

   Forescout 8.1 restarts plugins and product components in the scope of the certificate.
Appendix 9: Security Deployment Hardening
Best Practices

☑️ About Security Best Practices
☑️ Restrict Access to the Management Interface
☑️ High Availability Sync
☑️ Maintain Up-To-Date Versions
☑️ Define Secure Configuration Settings
☑️ Backup Forescout Settings
About Security Best Practices

Forescout 8.1 provides IT and security teams with visibility and control over their enterprise network using various protocols and integration techniques.

Several options are available to let you harden your Forescout security stature and protect your Forescout deployment. This appendix describes these options.

Restrict Access to the Management Interface

Forescout management interfaces provide privileged admin access to the Forescout platform and should be carefully protected. Restricting access to those interfaces significantly reduces the attack surface against the Forescout platform.

This section describes guidelines for restricting access to management interfaces.

When possible, connect management interfaces to an out-of-band management network segment. The management network can be physically isolated from the corporate LAN and detached from external networks.

Restrict access to the management interface in the following ways:

- Restrict Workstation Access to Management Interfaces
- Protect iDRAC Interfaces
- Limit Access to the Console
- Limit Access to Web Portals
- Limit Access via SSH

Restrict Workstation Access to Management Interfaces

Workstations that access the Forescout management interfaces should be well protected against malicious events, by use of segmentation and endpoint security mechanisms.

Protect iDRAC Interfaces

Protect the Enterprise Manager and Appliance remote system management interfaces (iDRAC) as you would other management interfaces, such as the Console or SSH.

By default, when CounterACT appliances are shipped, the iDRAC component is not configured with an IP address, and all services (except the web interface) are disabled.

If you don’t intend to use remote management via iDRAC, it is recommended to verify that the dedicated network interface labeled “iDRAC” is not connected to any network.

When using iDRAC for remote management, verify that:

- The iDRAC network interface is connected to a dedicated out-of-band management network
- IP-based access restrictions are configured to allow access only from trusted network sources
Appendix 9: Security Deployment Hardening Best Practices

- Strong authentication schemes are used when authenticating to iDRAC
- When accessing iDRAC web interfaces, use a valid SSL certificate

Refer to the section on remote system management integration in the *Forescout Installation Guide* for more information about configuring this option.

**Limit Access to the Console**

Define a list of IP addresses that can access the Console to limit access to specific endpoints.

See [Define Console Access](#) for more information about configuring this option.

**Limit Access to Web Portals**

Define a list of IP addresses that can access Forescout web portals to limit access to specific endpoints. See [Define Strict Web Access](#) for more information.

**Limit Access via SSH**

Define a list of IP addresses that can access the Enterprise Manager via SSH to limit access to specific endpoints. Refer to the section on updating SSH access to the Enterprise Manager in the *Forescout CLI Commands Reference Guide* for more information about configuring this option.

**High Availability Sync Connectivity**

The Forescout platform enables synchronization of data to the High Availability pair for recovery purposes. When adding the High Availability secondary node to the primary node, verify that you pair a legitimate Appliance. To do this, use a direct network connection between the two nodes (not over the LAN).

Refer to the *Forescout Resiliency and Recovery Solutions User Guide* for more information about High Availability pairing.

**Maintain Up-To-Date Versions**

Make sure your Forescout software is up-to-date and that you are using the latest releases.

See [Checking for Updates](#) for more information.

**Define Secure Configuration Settings**

It is strongly advised to change the default settings of the following Forescout options to more secure settings, providing there are no network functionality constraints preventing you from doing so:

- [Password and Sessions Policy Settings](#)
- [Working with Permissions and Scope Options](#)
Password and Sessions Policy Settings

Define a secure password policy for Console users, as well as secure session timeout and expiration settings.

The following table lists best practice recommendations for configuring your password policy. See Password Protection for more information about configuring the values below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Recommended Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum password length</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum number of upper- and lower-case letters</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum number of alphabetic and non-alphabetic characters</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum number of digits</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum number of special characters required in password</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of forbidden repeated characters or digits</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum number of characters that the password must differ from the previous password</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If password can contain user name</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If password can contain commonly used weak passwords</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Working with Permissions and Scope Options

Verify that you have configured Console and web portal permissions and scope options.

The Permissions and Scope options offer powerful user control. For example:

- Allow access to the entire network range, but never allow access to certain high security features, such as the Appliance configuration or Action Threshold features.
- Allow access to a specific network range, such as a particular building, and grant permission to all Forescout tools.
In addition, you can create users or user groups that have access to only the Console or only to web portals, or users that can access both.

- **Users who have no permissions cannot log in to the Console or to any of the Forescout web portals.**

**Access to Network Endpoints – Scope**

Use the Scope pane to grant and limit access to specific ranges or segments in the Console or Assets Portal. Users can only see and work with endpoints in ranges that they are assigned Scope access to.

See **Access to Network Endpoints – Scope** for more information about configuring these options.

**Smart Card Authentication Settings**

If your organization uses smart cards for authentication, enable smart card authentication to the Forescout Console and web portals.

See **Using Smart Card Authentication** for more information about configuring this option.

**HPS Inspection Engine Settings**

Use the HPS Inspection Engine Settings to define the following:

- **Authentication Method**
- **SMB Version**
- **SMB Signing**
- **TLS Settings**

Refer to the **HPS Inspection Engine Configuration Guide** for information about these options.

**Authentication Method**

For Remote Inspection, two authentication methods are supported:

- **Kerberos is considered the most secured and is recommended.** When using Kerberos, verify the following:
  - Before enabling Kerberos, make sure that the Kerberos protocol is operational on the network.
  - When the Forescout platform uses Kerberos authentication, define a dedicated user in the domain controller for Forescout platform interaction with the endpoints. In accordance with Kerberos best practices, it is recommended that delegation permissions be disabled for this user.
- Otherwise, select the NTLMv2. It is more secure than NTLM v1.

**To define authentication settings:**

1. Navigate to the HPS Inspection Engine pane > Remote Inspection.
2. Select one of the following Authentication Methods from the drop-down menu:
Appendix 9: Security Deployment Hardening Best Practices

- Kerberos
- NTLMv2

Do not select NTLM v1. It is not as secure as NTLMv2.

**SMB Version**

The higher the SMB version is, the more secure the communication. SMB v1 is known to be vulnerable to various network-based attacks. Use the SMB settings to define the SMB version used to communicate with endpoints.

Select SMB v2 or higher when enabled in the network.

**To define the SMB version:**

1. Navigate to HPS Inspection Engine > Remote Inspection.
2. In the Minimum SMB Protocol Version field, select **SMBv2** or higher.
3. Select Apply.

**SMB Signing**

SMB Signing secures SMB communications by use of a digital signature. SMB Signing helps identify SMB Injection attacks and prevent man-in-the-middle (MitM) attacks. As a good security practice in Windows-based environments, system administrators should require SMB signing on endpoints on their networks (for example, via GPO).

To reduce the risk of malicious users (such as in the case of MitM attackers) leveraging Forescout RPC-based Remote Inspection (using SMB), the Forescout platform can verify that SMB signing is required (or at least enabled) on endpoints and remotely inspect endpoints only with SMB signing.

**To enable SMB Signing:**

1. Enable (or require) SMB signing on endpoints (a network policy regardless of the Forescout platform settings).
2. Navigate to the HPS Inspection Engine pane > Remote Inspection.
3. Select **Require SMB Signing**.
4. Select Apply.

**TLS Settings**

Configure SecureConnector to support TLS 1.2 only.

**To configure TLS settings:**

1. Navigate to HPS Inspection Engine pane > SecureConnector.
2. Set the Minimum Supported TLS version to TLS v1.2.

When you configure SecureConnector to require TLS version 1.1 or 1.2 to connect to an Appliance, the following versions of Windows cannot be managed by SecureConnector due to their TLS support limitations:

- Windows XP
- Windows Vista
– Windows 2008 Server (pre-R2)

3. Select Apply.

**User Directory Settings**

Secure LDAP communications between the Forescout platform and Active Directory to protect and eavesdropping and man-in-the-middle (MitM) attacks.

- Enable Active Directory authentication using TLS.
- Define a long and complex password as the Directory password on Active Directory. Use these credentials only for the Forescout authentication against the User Directory.

Because of high privileges and the unlikelihood of recurrent password changes for the account that is used by the Forescout platform, it is important to use extra-strong passwords. See Password Protection for more information.

**To define User Directory settings:**

1. Navigate to Options > User Directory.
2. Type in: Port number 636.
3. Select Use TLS checkbox.

**HTTPS Redirection Settings**

*Enable redirect only via HTTPS.* See Globally Redirect via HTTPS for information on how to configure this setting. It is strongly recommended that HTTPS redirect is only done with a certificate that is trusted by the endpoints. Either globally trusted or organization-wide trust via a local CA. See Generating Appendix 3: Generating and Importing a Trusted Web Server Certificate for more information about this option.

**Web Server Settings**

It is recommended to implement the following:

- Define Strict Web Access
- Disable Unused Web Portals
- Enable HTTP Strict Transport Security

**Define Strict Web Access**

Define strict access lists for web access, allowing only specific IP addresses or narrow subnets. Define a range of IP addresses allowed to access the web. IP addresses in this range have access to Forescout web features.

See Define Web Access for information about how to configure this option.

**Disable Unused Web Portals**

You might want to disable:

- Portals that are not used
- Web access to one or more portals or web-based services under relevant security scenarios
- HTTP redirection

This will decrease the potential attack surface.

See [Disable Web Portals](#) for more information about these options.

**Enable HTTP Strict Transport Security**

Enable the HSTS HTTP header that will block browsers from accessing the portal via un-encrypted channels.

See [Configure HTTP Strict Transport Security](#) for information on how to configure this option.

**SNMP Settings**

*Configure Forescout to use SNMP v3.* SNMP v3 encrypts the communications and protects the credentials from eavesdropping.

See [Configure SNMP Users](#) for more information about configuring this option.

**FIPS Support**

The Forescout platform can run in FIPS 140-2 mode, as required by the US Federal government. This mode is disabled by default. *Forescout recommends enabling FIPS mode.* FIPS mode ensures that the Forescout platform only uses FIPS-140 approved cryptographic ciphers.

Refer to the *Forescout Installation Guide* for information about enabling FIPS mode.

**Backup Forescout Settings**

*It is recommended to schedule automatic backups of the Forescout system or component settings to a remote server, via SFTP or SCP.* Using scheduled backups provides extra safety and protection in case of hard drive failure and data loss.

When using SFTP and SCP protocols, authentication with public key is preferred over authentication with password as it achieves a higher level of security.

For password-based authentication it is important to use strong passwords. See [Password Protection](#) for more information.

If you have logged in to the Console via an Enterprise Manager, the Enterprise Manager and all registered Appliances are backed up to individual files.

You must first configure a backup server and an encryption password before performing either a system or a component backup.

> For backup encryption use a strong and complex password that follows the recommendations above.

See [Schedule Automatic Backups of Forescout 8.1 Settings to External Servers](#) for more information about this option.